# English Grammar In Use

130 bài ngữ pháp tiếng Anh



Raymond Murphy



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN TRỂ

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE by Raymond Murphy

130 Bài ngữ pháp tiếng Anh và 5 Phụ lục giải thích các trường hợp đặc biệt của ngữ pháp

> Dịch và Chú giải Trần Huỳnh Phúc (Giảng viên đại học Sư Phạm)

Nhà xuất bản Trẻ

# MỤC LỤC

	•
hì của độn	ig từ (verb tenses)
Bài t	Present continuous (I am doing)
Bài 2	Simple present (I do)
Bài 3	Present continuous (I am doing) hay Present simple (I do)
Bài 4	Present tenses (I am doing/I do) với nghĩa tương lai
Bài 5	Going to (I am going to do)
Bai 6	Simple Future (Will) (1)
Bài 7	Simple Future (Will) (2)
Bài 8	Will hay going to?
Bài 9	Các câu với when và lf (When I do) If I do)
Bài 10	Future Continuous (Will be doing) và Future Perfect (will have done)
Bài 11	Simple past (I did)
Bài 12	Past continuous (I was doing)
Bài 13	Present Perfect (I have done) (1)
Bài 14	Present Perfect (2)
Bài 15	Present Perlect (3)
Bài 16	Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing)
Bài 17	Present Perfect Continuous hay Present Perfect?
Bài 18	Present Perfect và Present Perfect Continuous voi how long, for và
	since
Bài 19	Present Perfect với how long, và simple Past với when ; since và for
Bài 20	Present Perfect hay Simple Past? (1)
Bài 21	Present Perfect hay Simple Past? (2)
Bài 22	Past Perfect (I have done)
Bài 23	Past Perfect Continuous (I have been doing)
ôna từ đặc	c biệt /Model verbs)

Bài 24	HAVE và HAVE GOT
Bài 25	USED TO (I used to do)
Bài 26	CAN, COULD VAIBE ABLE TO
Bài 27	COULD (could do và could have done)
Bài 28	MUST va CAN'T
Bài 29	MAY và MIGHT
Bài 30	MAY và MIGHT (tương lai)
Bai 31	CAN, COULD, MAY và WOULD trong tối nói lịch sự
Bài 32	MUST và HAVE TO
Bài 33	MUST, MUSTN'T, NEEDN'T, và NEEDN'T HAVE
Bài 34	SHOULD (1)
Bài 35	SHOULD (2)

```
Câu điểu kiện (Conditionals)
   Bài 36
              Conditional sentences (hiện tại, tương lại)
   Bài 37
              Câu có IF và WISH (thời hiện tại)
   BAi 38
              Câu có IF và WISH (thời quá khứ):
   Bài 39
              WOULD
   Bài 40
              IN CASE
   Bai 41
              UNLESS; AS LONG AS VA PROVIDED/PROVIDING (THAT)
Dạng bị động (Passive)
               Passive voice (1) (be done/have been done)
   Bài 42
   Bài 43
              Påssive volce (2) (các thì hiện tại và quá khứ)
   Bài 44
              Passive voice (3)
   Bài 45
               It is said that... / He is said to ..., v.v... và supposed to
   Bài 46
               Causation form (have something done)
Lởi nói tường thuật (Reported speech)
    Bài 47 .
               Reported speech (1)
    Bài 48
               Reported speech (2)
Câu hỏi (Questions)
    Bài 49
               Questions (Câu hỏi) (1)
    Bài 50
               Questions (Câu hỏi) (2)
                   (Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ... )
               Auxiliary verbs (Trợ động từ) trong câu trả lời/hội ngắn;
    Bài 51
               So am I / Neither am I
               I think so / I hope so ...
    Bài 52
               Question tags (Câu hỏi đuôi)
Động từ ở hình thức -ING và động từ nguyên mẫu
    Bài 53
               Verb + -ing
    Bài 54
               Verb + to -infinitive
    Bài 55
               Verb + object + infinitive
    Bài 56
               Infinitive hay -ing? (1): với like, would like
    Bài 57
               Infinitive hay -ing? (2): với begin, start, intend, continue, remember, try
    Bài 58
               Infinitive hay -ing? (3): vôi be afraid, need, help
    Bài 59
               Preposition + -ing
    Bài 60
               Verb + preposition + -ing
    Bài 61
               Expressions + -ing
    Bài 62
               Be/aet used to
    Bài 63
               Infinitive of purpose và mệnh để với so that
    Bài 64
               Prefer và would rather
    Bài 65
               Had better do something
               It's time someone did something
```

```
Bài 66
               See someone do và see someone doing
    Bài 67
               -ing clauses (Feeling tired, I went to bed early)
    Bài 68
               Chance và opportunity (dip, cơ hội)
    Bài 69
               Uncountable nouns (Danh từ không đếm được)
    Bai 70
               Countable nouns (Danh từ đếm được, với a / an và some)
    Bài 71
               A / an và the
    Bài 72
               The (1)
    Bài 73
               The (2)
    Bài 74
               Danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được (có và không có the)
    Bài 75
               Cách dùng the với hospital, school, v.v...
    Bài 76
               Cách dùng the với địa danh
    Bài 77
               Cách dùng the với các tên riêng khác
Danh từ (nouns) và đại từ (pronouns)
  Bài 78
               Sifigular or piural?
    Bài 79
               Possessive case of nouns
               Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives (Đại từ và tính từ sở hữu)
    Bài 80
    Bài 81
               Reflexive Pronouns (Đại từ phản thân)
    Bài 82
               All / all of, no / none of, most / most of, etc.
    Bài 83
               Both / both of, neither / neither of, either / either of
    Bài 84
               Some và any
               Các kết hợp với some và any
    Bài 85
               No, none và anv
               Các kết hợp với no và any
    Bài 86
               Much, many, little, few, a lot và plenty
    Bài 87
               All, every và whole
Mệnh để quan hệ (Relative clauses)
    Bài 88
               Relative_clauses (1):
               - Mệnh để bắt đầu bằng who / that / which
    Bài 89
               Relative clauses (2): mệnh để có hoặc không có who / that
    Bài 90
               Relative clauses (3): mệnh để với whose, whom và where
   Bài 91
               Relative clauses (4): mệnh để "cung cấp thêm thông tin" (1)
   Bài 92
               Relative clauses (5): mệnh để "cung cấp thêm thông tin" (2)
   Bài 93
               Mệnh để bắt đầu bằng -ING và -ED
Tính từ (adjectives) và trạng từ (adverbs)
   Bài 94
              Tính từ (Adjectives) tận cùng bằng -ing và -ed
   Bài 95
              Thứ tự của tính từ ("a nice new house")
              Tính từ đứng sau động từ ("Do you feel tired?")
   Bài 96
              Tính từ và trạng từ (1) (quick / quickly)
   Bài 97
              Tính từ và.trạng từ (2) (good / well, fast / hard / late, hardly)
```

Bài 98

So và such

```
Enough và tọc
   Bài 99
               To-infinitive sau tính từ
   Bài 100
   Bài 101
               So sánh của tính từ và trạng từ (1): cheaper, more expensive
   Bài 102
               So sánh (2)
   Bài 103
               So sánh (3) -as ... as / than
               So sanh cực cấp -the longest, the most enjoyable, etc.
   Bài 104
Tråt tự từ (Word order)
               Trật tự từ (1) - động từ + túc từ ; nơi chốn và thời gian
    Bài 105
               Trật tự từ (2) - trạng từ đi với động từ
    Bài 106
    Bài 107
               Still và yet
               Any more / any longer / no longer
    Bài 108
               Quite và rather
    Bài 109
               Although / though / even though
               In spite of / despite
    Bài 110
               Even (ngay cả, thâm chí).
               As (chỉ lý do và chỉ thời gian)
    Bài 111
    Bài 112
               Like và as
    Bài 113
               As if
Giới từ (Prepositions)
    Bài 114
               At / on / in (chỉ thời gian)
               For, during và while
    Bài 115
               By và until
    Bai 116
               By the time ...
    Bài 117
               In / at / on (chỉ vị trí) (1)
    Bài 118
               In / at / on (chỉ vị trí) (2)
    Bài 119
               To, been to, into
               By car / in my car
    Bài 120
               On time / in time
               At the end / in the end
    Bài 121
               Danh từ + giới từ ("reason for" "cause of", v.v...)
    Bai 122
               'Giới từ + danh từ ("by mistake", "on television", v.v...)
    Bài 123
                Tính từ + giới từ (1)
    Bài 124
               Tính từ + giới từ (2)
    Bài 125
               Động từ + giới từ (1)
    Bai 126
               Động từ + giới từ (2).
    Bài 127
               Động từ + giới từ (3)
    Bài 128
               Động từ + túc từ + giới từ (1)
                Đông từ + túc từ + giới từ (2)
    Bài 129
    Bài 130
                Động từ kép (get up, break down, fill in, etc...)
Phụ lục 1: Danh mục các thì hiện tại và quá khứ
Phụ lục 2: Động từ qui tắc và bất qui tắc
```

Phụ lục 3: Chính tả (Spelling) Phụ lục 4: Dạng rút gọn

Phụ lục 5: Tiếng Anh của người Mỹ

# BÀI 1: PRESENT CONTINUOUS (I am doing)

a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Ann đang ở trong xe. Cô ấy đang trên đường đi làm.

She is driving to work.

Cô ấy đang lái xe đi làm.

Điều này có nghĩa là vào lúc này, ngay tại thời điểm chúng ta nói, cô ấy đang lái xe.

Sau đây là thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn (Present Continuous):

l am (= l'm)

he / she / it is (= he's, v.v...)

we / they / you are (= we're, v.v...)

driving

Chúng ta dùng thì **Present Continuous** (Hiện tại tiếp diễn) khi nói về một việc nào đó đang diễn ra ngay lúc nói:

- Please don't make so much noise: I'm studying.
   Xin đừng làm ồn quá như thế. Tôi đang học. (Không dùng "I study").
- "Where is Margaret?" "She's having a bath"
  - "Margaret đâu rồi?" "Cô ấy đang tắm". (Không dùng "She has").
- Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more.
   (Bây giờ chúng ta hãy ra ngoài. Trời hết mưa rồi).
- (at a party) Hello, Ann. Are you enjoying the party?

(Tại một bữa tiệc) Chào Ann. Bạn thích bữa tiệc này chứ? (Không dùng "do you enjoy").

- b) Chúng ta cũng dùng Present Continuous khi nói về một việc nào đó diễn ra trong khoảng thời gian của lúc nói, nhưng không nhất thiết chính xác ngay lúc nói. Hãy xem tình huống mẫu sau:
  - Tom and Ann are talking and drinking in a café. Tom say: "I'm reading an interesting book at the moment. I'll lend it to you when I've finished it".

(Tom và Ann đang nói chuyện và đang uống nước tại một quán cà phê. Tom nói: "Hiện thời tôi đang đọc một cuốn sách hay lắm. Tôi sẽ cho bạn mượn cuốn sách đó khi nào tôi đọc xong").

Tom không đọc cuốn sách đó vào lúc anh ta nói. Anh ấy có ý nói rằng anh ấy đã bắt đầu đọc trước đó và hiện thời thì chưa đọc xong. Anh ấy đang đọc nửa chừng. Sau đây là một số ví dụ khác:

Silvia is learning English at the moment.
 (Hiện thời Silvia đang học tiếng Anh). (Không dùng "learns")

Have you heard about Tom? He is building his own house.

(Ban đã nghe tin gì về Tom chưa? Anh ấy đang xây căn nhà riêng cho anh ta).

(Không dùng "builds").

Nhưng có thể là ngay lúc nói Silvia và Tom không đang thực hiện những công việc này.

Chúng ta thường dùng Present Continuous khi nói về khoảng thời gian bao gồm cả hiện tại. Ví dụ: today (hôm nay), this season (mùa này) v.v...

- "You're working hard today". "Yes, I have a lot to do"
  - "Hồm nay bạn làm việc mệt nhọc quá". "Vâng, tôi có nhiều việc phải làm".
- Tom isn't playing football this season. He wants to concentrate on his studies.

  (Mùa này Tom không chơi bóng đá. Cậu ta muốn tập trung vào việc học của mình).

Chúng ta dùng Present Continuous khi nói về những tinh hướng đang thay đổi.

- The population of the world is rising very fast.

  (Dan số thế giới đang gia tăng rất nhanh). (Không dùng "rises").
- Is your English getting better?
   (Vốn tiếng Anh của bạn có khá hơn không?). (Không dùng "does... get?")

#### **UNIT 1: Exercises**

		·		
1 /	n this exe	rcise you have to put the verb into the correct form.	:	
		Please don't make so much noise. I am studying (s	study).	•
		Let's go out now. It isn't raining (not/rain) any more		
	•	Listen to those people. What language are they sp		ev/speak)?
1	Please	be quiet, I (try) to concentrate.		
2		lt (snow).		•
3		(you/look) at me like that? Have I said someth	ina wrona	?
4		(make) a lot of noise. Can you be a bit quieter?		
5		e me, I (look) for a phone box. Is there one n		
6		cinema) It's a good film, isn't it? (you/enjoy)		
7		Can you hear those people next door? They (st		ch other again
8		(you/wear) your coat today? It's very warm.		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
g	_	(not/work) this week. I'm on holiday.		- ' - '
1		to lose weight. I (not/eat) anything today.		
	Complete jet	these sentences using one of these verbs: become change rise Improve	fall	Increase

You don't have to use all the verbs and you can use some of them more than once

He is still ill but he ...... better slowly.

2

- These days food ..... more and more expensive.
- The world ...... Things never stay the same.
- The cost of living ...... Every year things are dearer.
- George has gone to work in Spain. When he arrived, his Spanish wasn't very good
- 7 The economic situation is already very bad and it ....... worse.
- 1.3 Read this conversation between Brian and Steve. Put each verb into the correct form. The first one has already been done for you.

Brian and Steve meet in a restaurant:

Brian:

Hello, Steve, I haven't seen you for ages. What (1) are you toing (you/do) these days?

Steve: Brian:

1 (2) ...... (train) to be a shop manager. Really? (3) ..... (you/enjoy) it?

Steve:

Yes, it's quite interesting. How about you?

Brian:

Well, I (4) ...... (not/work) at the moment, but I'm very busy. I (5) .......

(build) a house.

Steve:

.Realty? (6) ...... (you/do) it alone?

Brian:

No, some friends of mine (7) ...... (help) me.

#### KEY

- 1.1 am trying
  - 2 is snowing
  - 3 are you looking
  - 4 are making
  - 5 am looking
  - 6 Are you enjoying
  - 7 are shouting
  - are you wearing
  - am not working
  - 10 am not eating
- 1.3 2 am training
  - 3 Are you enjoying
  - 4 am not working
  - 5 am building
  - 6 Åre you doing. are helping

- . 1.2 1 is rising / is falling / is increasing
  - 2 is aettina
    - 3 is getting / is becoming
  - 4 is changing
  - 5 is rising / is increasing
  - 6 is improving (or is getting better)
  - 7 is getting / is becoming

# BÀI 2: SIMPLE PRESENT (I do)

a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Alex là một tài xế xe buỷt. Nhưng lúc này anh ta đang ngủ trên giường. Vì thế:

He is not driving a bus (he is asleep)
(Anh ấy không đang lái xe buýt (anh ấy đang ngủ)).

ngử)).

Nhưng: He drives a bus
(Anh ấy lái xe buýt).

Sau đây là thì Hiện tại đơn (Simple Present):

1 / we / you / they drive

Chúng ta dùng thì **Simple Present** (Hiện tại đơn) để diễn tả các sự việc một cách tổng quát. Chúng ta không nhất thiết chỉ nghĩ đến hiện tại. Chúng ta dùng thì này để nói đến một sự việc nào đó xảy ra liên tục hay lặp đi lặp lại nhiều lần, hay một việc nào đó thường là đúng. Sự việc đó có xảy ra ngay lúc nói hay không là điều không quan trọng.

he / she / it / drives.

- The earth goes round the sun. (Trái đất xoay quanh mặt trời).
- Nurses look after patients in hospital.
   (Y tá chăm sóc bệnh nhân ở bệnh viện).
- In Britain most of the shops close at 5.30 p.m.
   (O Anh hầu hết các cửa tiệm đóng cửa lúc 5 giờ 30).
   Hãy nhợ rằng, chúng ta nói he / she / it s. Đừng quên chữ s.
- I work in a bank. Barry works in a shop.
   (Tôi làm việc ở một ngân hàng. Barry làm việc ở một cửa tiệm).
- b) Chúng ta dùng do / does để thành lập câu nghi vấn (questions) và câu phủ định (negative).

Does he / she / it

Does he / she / it

I / we / you / they don't work?

he / she / it doesn't

- Excuse me, do you speak English? (Xin lỗi, anh biết nói tiếng Anh không?).
- "Would you like a cigarette?" "No, thanks, I don't smoke".
   ("Anh hút một điểu thuốc chứ?" "Không, cảm ơn. Tôi không hút thuốc").

- What does this word mean?
   (Chữ này nghĩa là gi?) (Không dùng "What means this word?")
- Rice doesn't grow in Britain.
   (Lúa không trồng được ở Anh).

Đối với câu ngh! vấn xem thêm bài 49.

- c) Chúng ta dùng thì Simple Present khi nói về mức độ thường xuyên của những sự việc mà chúng ta thực hiện.
  - I get up at 8 o'clock every morning.
     (Môi sáng tôi thức dây lúc 8 giờ) (Không dùng \*am getting\*)
    - How often do you go to the dentist? (Anh có thường đi nha sĩ không?)
  - Ann doesn't often drink tea. (Ann không thường uống trà).
  - In summer Tom usually plays tennis twice a week.

    (Vào mùa hè, Tom thường chơi quần vợt một tuần hai lần).
- d) Lưu ý rằng chúng ta nól:
  - "Where do you come from?" (= Where are you from?)

    (Anh từ đầu tới?" (Không dùng: ".Where are you coming from?")
  - He comes from Japan.
    (Anh ấy từ Nhật đến) (Không dùng: "He is coming from Japan")
- e) Khi muốn để nghị một điều gì, bạn có thể nói: Why don't you ...? (Tại sao bạn không ...?)
  - "I'm tired". "Why don't you go to bed early?"
    ("Tôi mệt". "Thế sao bạn không đi ngủ sớm?")

#### **UNIT 2: Exercises**

2.1 In this exercise you have to put the verb into the correct form.

Examples: Water bolls (boil) at 100 degrees centigrade.

George doesn't go (not/go) to the cinema very often. How many languages do you speak (you/speak)?

- 1 The swimming bath ....... (open) at 9.00 and ..... (close) at 18.30 every day.
- 2 What time ....... (the banks/close) in Britain?
- 3 I have a car but I ...... (not/use) it very often.
- 4 How many cigarettes ...... (you/smoke) a day?
- 5 "What ........ (you/do)?" "I'm an electrical engineer".
- 6 "Where ...... (your father/come) from?" "He ...... (come) from Scotland".
- 7 If you need money; why ....... (you/not/get) a job?
- 8 1 ...... (play) the piano, but I ....... (not/play) very well.
- 9 I don't understand the word "deceive". What ....... ("deceive"/mean)?

;	the in Exam 1 T 2 N 3 C	nformation is wrong. Write two corresponds the sun goes round the eart.  The earth goes round the sure the sun rises in the west.  Alice catch cats.  Carpenters make things from metal.	ct senter h. <u>The s</u> n.	un doesn't go round the earth.
	word Exar 1 A 2 I 3 I 4 T 5 I 6 F	If(s) in brackets.  Inples: Tom play tennis. (How often' I get up in the morning. (What tim Ann watches television. (How often?) write to my parents. (How often?) have dinner in the evening. (What form works. (Where?)	?) How c e/usually ?) How o time/usu	questions. Begin your question with the often does Tom play tennis?  /?) What time do you usually get up? ften
Κŧ	ΞΥ			
2.1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	opens closes do the banks close don't use do you smoke do you do does your father come comes don't you get play don't play does "deceive" mean	2.3 1 2 2 3 4 5 6 7	How often does Ann watch television? How often do you write to your parents? What time do you usually have dinner (in the evening)? Where does Tom work? How often do you go to the cinema? Why do people do stupid things? How often does the car break down?
2.2	1 2 3 4	The sun doesn't rise in the west. It Mice don't catch cats. Cats catch Carpenters don't make things from The River Amazon doesn't flow in Ocean.	mice. n meta <b>!</b>	•

# BÀI 3: PRESENT CONTINUOUS (I am doing) hay SIMPLE PRESENT (I do)

Trước khi học bài này, bạn phải học bài 1 và 2.

a) Hãy xem xét phần giải thích dưới đây và so sánh các ví dụ sau:

Present Continuous (I am doing) (Thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn)

Dùng thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về một việc nào đó đang diễn ra ngay lúc nói hay chung quanh khoảng thời gian lúc nói:

#### I am doing

quá khứ

hiên tại

tương lại

- The kettle is boiling. Can you turn it off, please?
   (Âm nước dang sối. Bạn làm ơn tắt
  - (Am nước đang sối. Bạn làm ơn tắt công tắc được chữ?)
- Listen to those people. What language are they speaking?
   (Hāy lắng nghe những người kia nói. Họ đang nói tiếng qì vậy?)
- "Where's Tom?" "He's playing tennis" ("Tom đầu?" "Cậu ấy đang chơi quần vơt").
- What are you doing here?
   (Anh dang làm gì ở đây?)
- Silvia is in Britain for three months. She's learning English. (Silvia & Anh trong 3 tháng. Cô ta dang học tiếng Anh).

Dùng thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn để chỉ một tình huống tạm thời:

- I'm living with some friends until I can find a flat.
  - (Tôi đang sống cùng với mấy người bạn cho đến khi tôi tìm được một căn hộ).
- That machine isn't working. It broke down this morning.
   (Cái máy đó không hoạt động. Nó đã hồng sáng nay).

Simple Present (I do)

(Thì Hiện tại đơn)

Dùng thi Hiện tại đơn để nói về các sự việc một cách tổng quát hay sự việc xây ra lặp đi lặp lại.

quá khử

hiện tại

tương lai

- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius (Nước sối ở 100°C)
- Excuse me, do you speak English? (Xin lỗi, anh biết nói tiếng Anh không?)
- Tom plays tennis every Saturday. Tom chơi quần vợt mỗi thứ Bảy).
- What do you usually do at weekends? (Ban thường làm gì vào những ngày cuối tuần?)
- What do you do? (= What's your job?) (Ban lant nghế gì?)
- Most people learn to swim when they are children.

(Hấu hết người ta học bơi khi còn nhỏ).

Dùng thì Hiện tại đơn cho tình hướng ổn định.

- My parents live in London. They have been there for 20 years.
  - (Cha mẹ tôi sống ở London. Họ đã ở đó được 20 năm).
  - That machine doesn't work it hasn't worked for years.
    - (Cái máy đó không hoạt động. Nó đã không hoạt động nhiều năm rồi).

b) Một số động từ chỉ được dùng trong các thì đơn. Ví dụ: bạn không thể nói "I am knowing" (Tôi dạng biết). Đạn chỉ có thể nói "I known" (Tôi biết). Sau đây là danh mục các động từ không thường dùng ở thì tiếp diễn. (Nhưng cũng số những trường hợp ngoại lệ).

want like belona know suppose remember need love see release mean forget prefer hate hear believe understand seem have (khi mang nghĩa là "có, sở hữu" - Xem thêm ở bài 24) think (khi mang nghĩa là "tin, cho là").

- Do you like London? (Ban thích Luân Đốn không?) (không dùng "are you liking")
- He doesn't understand.
   (Anh ta không hiểu) (không dùng "he isn't understanding").
- These shoes belong to me.
   (Những chiếc giảy này là của tới) (không dùng "are belonging").
- What do you think Tom will do? (= What do you believe he will do?)
   (Anh nghĩ Tom sẽ làm gì?)

#### Nhưng:

What are you thinking about? (= What is going on in your mind?)
 (Ban dang nghĩ gì thế?)

#### **UNIT 3: Exercises**

3.1	In	this	exercise	you	have	Ø	decide	whether	the	verb	in	these	sentences	are	right	Of
	wre	ona.	Correct ti	hose	which	ar	e wrond	ı. The vei	b is	unde	rlin	ed.			•	
								,, -,,,-,			,				-	

Ex	ramples: I don't know your telephone number.	RIGHT
	Please don't make so much noise. I study.	WRONG-am studying.
1.	Look! Somebody is climbing up that tree over there.	oten dark hilde hate dook olden daan jakk aand dadk aan door aan aan orden a
2.	Can you hear those people? What do they talk about?	200 200 PM DOS 230 TOO GOO DOS 250 DOS 474 LOS DOS 764 AVE 3-7
3.	Are you believing in God?	
4.	Look! That man tries to open the door of your car.	201 (91 201 207 107 col 101 010 207 201 201 to but 201 201 101 to 2
5.	The moon goes round the earth.	
6.	I'm thinking it would be a good idea to leave early.	
7.	The government is worried because the number of	
	people without jobs is increasing.	*
8.		

3.2 Now you have to put the verb into the correct form, present continuous (I am doing) or present simple (I do).

Examples: Please don't make so much noise. I am studying (study).

How many languages does <u>Tom speak</u> (Tom/speak)?

This machine <u>doesn't work</u> (not/work). I hasn't worked for years.

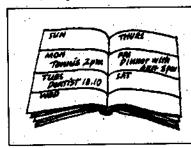
1	I (not/belong) to a political party.
2	Hurry! The bus (come). I (not/want) to miss it.
3	The River Nile (flow) into the Mediterranean.
4	The river (flow) very fast today - much faster than usual.
5	(it/ever/snow) in India?
6	We usually (grow) vegetables in our garden but this year we (not/grow) any.
7	A: Can you drive?
	B: No, but I (learn). My father (teach) me.
8	You can borrow my umbrella. I (not/need) it at the moment.
9 .	(at a party) I usually (enjoy) parties but I (not/enjoy) this one very much.
10	George says he's 80 years old but I (not/believe) him.
11	Hon is in London at the moment. He (stay) at the Hilton Hotel. He usually (stay) at the Hilton Hotel when he's in London.
In i	these sentences think about whether the situation is temporary or permanent.
12	My parents (live) in Bristot. They were born there and have never lived
	anywhere else. Where (your parents/live)?
13	She (stay) with her sister at the moment until she finds somewhere to live.
14	A: What (your father/do)?
В:	He's a teacher, but he (not/work) at the moment.

# KEY .

3.1	1	right	3.2 1	don't belong
	2	wrong-are they talking	2	is coming don't want
	3	wrong-Do you believe	3	flows
	4	wrong-is trying	4	is flowing
	.5 6	right	5	Does it ever snow
	7	wrong-I think right	6	grow aren't growing
	8	wrong-i usually go	. 7	am learning is teaching
	-	gr usdany go	8 9	don't need
			-	enjoy am not enjoying don't believe him
				is staying stays
			12	live do your parents live
				is staying
			. 14	does your father do isn't working.

# BÀI 4: PRESENT TENSES (I am doing/I do) với nghĩa tương lai

 a) Thì Present Continuous (Hiện tại tiếp diễn) mang nghĩa tương lai. Hãy xem xét tinh hướng mẫu sau:



Đày là nhật ký của Tom cho tuần tới.
He is playing tennis on Monday afternoon.
(Anh ấy sẽ chơi quần vợt vào chiều thứ Hai).
He is going to the dentist on Tuesday morning.
(Anh ấy sẽ đi nha sĩ vào sáng thứ Ba).
He is having dinner-with Ann on Friday.
(Anh ấy sẽ ăn tối với Ann vào thứ Sáu).
Trong tất cả các ví dụ này, Tom đã quyết định xong và đã sắp xếp để thực hiện những việc đó.

Khi bạn đang nói về những việc mà bạn đã sắp xếp để thực hiện, bạn dùng thì Hiện tại tiếp điển (present continuous) - không dùng thì Hiện tại đơn (simple present).

- A: What are you doing tomorrow evening?
   (Ban sẽ làm gì vào tối mai?) (Không dùng "What do you do?")
- B : I'm going to the theatre.
   (Tôi sẽ đi xem hát) (Không dùng "I go")
- A: Are you playing football tomorrow?
   (Phải ngày mai bạn chơi bóng đá không?)
- B: Yes, but Tom isn't playing. He has hurt his leg.
   (Vâng, nhưng Tom không chơi. Cậu ấy bị đau chân).
- A : Ann is coming tomorrow.
   (Ngày mai Ann đến).
- B : Oh, is she? What time Is she arriving? (Ö! Vậy hả? Mấy giờ cô ta đến?)
- A : At 10.15. (Vào lúc 10 giờ 15).
- B : Are you meeting her at the station? (Ban sẽ gặp cổ ta tại nhà ga chữ?)
- A: I can't. I'm working tomorrow evening. (Không thể được. Sáng mai tôi làm việc).

Cũng có thể dùng going to (do) trong các câu sau:

- What are you going to do tomorrow evening? (Ban định làm gì tối mai?)
- Tom is going to play tennis on Monday afternoon. (Tom se chơi quần vợt vào chiếu thứ Hai).

Nhưng thì Present Continuous thường tự nhiên hơn khi bạn đang nói về những việc đã được sắp xếp. (Xem thêm bài 5). Không dùng will để nói về những việc mà bạn đã thu xếp để thực hiện.

- What are you doing this evening?
  (Tối nay bán sẽ làm gi?) (Không dùng "what will you do").
  Alex is getting married next month.
  (Alex sẽ lập gia định tháng tới) (Không dùng "Alex will get").
- b) Thì simple Present (Hiện tại đơn) với nghĩa tương lại.

Chúng ta dùng thì Hiện tại đơn khi nói về thời khóa biểu, chương trình v.v... (ví dụ như đối với việc vặn chuyển công cộng, xem phim).

- What time does the film begin? (Mäy giờ phim bắt đầu chiếu?)
- The train leaves Plymouth at 10.30 and arrives in London at 13.45 (Xe lửa rời Plymouth lúc 10 giờ 30 và đến London lúc 13 giờ 45).
- The football match starts at 8 o'clock.
   (Trận bóng đá bắt đầu lúc 8 giờ).

days and explain to him why you can't come.

Tomorrow is Wednesday. (Ngày mai là thứ Tư).

Nhưng thường thì chúng ta không dùng thì Simple Present cho những việc đã được thu xếp mang tính chất cá nhân:

What time are you meeting Ann? (Mấy giờ bạn sẽ gặp Ann?) (Không dùng "do you meet").

### **UNIT 4: Exercises**

Us	friend of yours is planning to go on I e the words in brackets to make your ample: (where/go?) Where are you	ques	day very soon. You ask him about his plan: estions. ng?
1 2 3	(**************************************	<b>4</b> 5	(go/by car?)(where/stay?)
WO	<u>-</u>	S.	sentences about her holiday plans. Use th
Exa	n is going on holiday. You have to w rds in brackets to write your sentences ample: (go/Scotland) She is going to s	s. Scot	tland.
Exa Exa 1	n is going on holiday. You have to wirds in brackets to write your sentences ample: (go/Scotland) She is going to the cleave/next Friday) She	s. Scoti	dand.
Exe 1 2	n is going on holiday. You have to with its going on holiday. You have to with your sentences ample: (go/Scotland) She is going to select (leave/next Friday) She(stay/in Scotland for two weeks)	s. Scoti	dand.
######################################	n is going on holiday. You have to wirds in brackets to write your sentences ample: (go/Scotland) She is going to the cleave/next Friday) She	s. Scot	dand.

Tom	: Can you come on Monday evening?	Monday Griday
You	: Sorry, I'd love to but I'm playing volleyball.	Volley ball 7-30 pm
Tom	: What about Tuesday evening then?	WORK LATE HILL OPM. SOTUTOO
You	: I can't I'm afraid. I (1)	Work rate (110 4PM.)
Tom	: Well, what are you doing on Wednesday evening?	rhearre (with mother)
You	: (2)	Thursday . Nores
Tom.	: I see. Well, are you free on Thursday evening?	meet Julia 8 p.m.
You	: I'm afraid not. (3)	

4.4 Put the verb into the most suitable form, present continuous (I am doing) or present simple (I do).

Examples: We are going (go) to the theatre this evening. Does the film begin (the film/begin) at 3.30 or 4.30?

. 1	We(have) a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?
2	1 (not/go) away for my holidays next month because I haven't got
	enough money(you/go) away?
3	The concert this evening (start) at 7.30.
4	George, is it true that you (get) married next week?
	The art exhibition (open) on 3 May and (finish) on 15 July.
6	What time (the next train/leave)?
7	Ann, we (go) to town (you/come) with us?

#### KEY

- I'm working late (till 9 p.m.). 4.1 How long are you staying? When are you leaving? 3 Are you going alone? mother. Are you going by car? Where are you staying?
- 4.2 She is leaving next Friday
  - She is staying in Scotland 2 for two weeks.
  - She is going with a friend of hers. 3
  - They are staying in a hotel.
  - They are going by train.

- - I'm going to the theatre with my
  - I'm meeting Julia (at 8 p.m.)
- 4.4 1 are having
  - am not going ... Are you going 2
  - 3 starts
  - 4 are getting
  - 5 opens ... finishes
  - does the next train leave 6
  - are going ... Are you coming

# BÀI 5: GOING TO (I am going to do)

- a) Chúng ta dùng going to (do) khi nói về một việc mà chúng ta đã quyết định sẽ làm hay một việc chúng ta dự định sẽ làm trong tương lai:
  - A: There's a film on television tonight. Are you going to watch it?
     (Có một phim trên truyền hình tối nay. Bạn sẽ xem chứ?)
  - B : No, I'm too tired. I'm going to have an early night. (Không, tôi quá mệt. Tôi sẽ đi ngủ sớm).
  - A: I heard Ann has won a lot of money. What is she going to do with it?
     (Tôi nghe nói Ann đã kiếm được nhiều tiền. Cô ta định sẽ làm gì với số tiến đó?)
  - B : I've heard she's going to travel round the world.

    (Tôi nghe nói có ta định đi du lịch vòng quanh thế giới).
  - A : Have you made the coffee yet? (Anh đã pha cà phê chưa?)
  - B : No, but I'm just going to make it. (just = ngay lúc này).
     (Chưa, nhưng tôi sắp sửa pha cả phê ngay đây).

Để biết sự khác biệt giữa will và gọing to, hãy xem Bài 8.

- b) Chúng ta thường dùng thì Present Continuous khi nói về một việc mà ai đó đã sắp xếp để thực hiện - ví dụ như sắp đặt để gặp một người nào đó, để đi đến nơi nào đó. Going to cũng có thể được dùng ở đây:
  - What time are you meeting Ann? (hay: "are you going to meet")
    (Mây giờ bạn định gặp Ann?)
  - I'm travelling to Scotland on Monday. (hay: "I'm going to travel")
     (Tôi sẽ đi Scotlen vào thứ Hai).

#### Xem thêm bài 4a.

- c) Chúng ta dùng was/were going to để nói về một việc mà ai đó đã dự định làm trong quá khứ (nhưng đã không thực hiện).
  - We were going to travel by train but then we decided to go by car.
     (Chúng tôi đã định đi bằng xe lửa nhưng rối lại quyết định đi bằng xe hơi)
  - A : Did Tom do the examination? (Tom đã làm bài thi chứ?)
  - B : No, he was going to do it but in the end he changed his mind.
     (Không, anh ấy đã định làm nhưng cuối cùng đổi ý).
  - I was just going to cross the road when someone shouted "Stop!".
     (Tôi vừa định bằng qua đường thì người nào đó đã là lên "Dừng lại!").
- d) Going to còn có một nghĩa khác nữa. Hãy xem tình hướng mẫu sau :



Người đàn ông không thể thấy được là mình đang đi đâu. Có một cái hố trước mặt ông ta.

He is going to fall into the hole.

(Ông ta sắp ngã xuống hố).

Ở đây người nói đang nói về điều mà anh ta nghĩ rằng sẽ xảy ra. Dĩ nhiên anh ta không có ý nói người đàn ông có ý định ngã xuống hố.

Trong trường hợp này chúng ta dùng going to

khi nói về điều mà chúng ta nghĩ sẽ xảy ra. Thường thì có cái gì đó ở tình huống hiện tại. (Người đàn ông đang đi đến cái hố) làm cho người nói tin vào điều sắp xảy ra.

- Look at those black clouds! It's going to rain. (Hãy nhìn những đám mây đen kìa! Trời sắp mưa rồi). [Những đám mây hiện đang ở đó].
- Oh, I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick. (Ő! Tôi cảm thấy khó chịu. Tôi nghĩ là mình sắp ốm rồi). [Lúc này tôi cảm thấy khó chiu].

ועונ	5 : Exercises	Dé bistèu khát biệt giữa will và going to 1
1 In ti	his exercise you have to say when you ar	re going to do something.
xampl	es : Have you cleaned the car? (tomorro	w) Not yet. I'm going to clean it tomorrow.
	Have you made the coffee? (just)	
1	Have you phoned Tom? (after lunch)	
2	Have you had dinner? (just)	Not yet
3	Have you painted your flat? (soon)	Not
4	Have you repaired my bicycle? (just)	
2 In t	his exercise you have to write questions v	with going to.
	imple: I've won a lot of money. (what/with	그림 사용 👅 하지 🖷 중요한 글 것이다. 내용 하는 사람들은 사용하는 사람들이 없어 있다.
1	I'm going to a party tonight. (what/wea	ur?)
2	Tom has just bought a painting. (where	re/hang it)
3	I've decided to have a party. (who/invit	te)
.3 In t	his exercise you have to use was/were g	joing to.
Exa	imple: Did you travel by train?	
	No, I was going to travel	by train but I changed my mind.
1	Did you buy that jacket you saw in the	shop window?
	No, I but I ch	hanged my mind.

	.2	Did Sue get married?		
		No, she but she		
	3	Did Tom resign from his job?  No, but		
	4	Did Wayne and Sharon go to Greed	o for	their helidere 2
	•			
	5	No, Did you play tennis yesterday?		,
	•			
		No,		
	6	Did you invite Ann to the party?		
5.4	Now	you have to say what you think is go.	ing to	happen in these situations.
	Exar	nple: The sky is full of black clouds.	(rain)	It's going to rain.
	1	he is not very intelligent. (fail) He		v. He hasn't-done any work for them and
	2	It is 8.30. Tom is leaving his house	. He I	nas to be at work at 8.45 but the journey
	3	There is a hole in the bottom of the	e bos	at. It is filling up with water very quickly.
		(sink) (t		
	4	Ann is driving. There is very little ne	etrot l	eft in the tank. The nearest petrol station
		is a long way away (run out of natio	511 S	to the fleatest perior station
		to a long may away. (Idin out or pent		***************************************
				•
<b>V</b> [	ΞΥ	•	٠.	•
ŊΕ	<b>_</b> T			
5.1	1	I'm going to phone him after lunch.	4	No, they were going to go to Greece
	2	I'm just going to have it.		(for their holldays) but they changed
	3	Not yet. I'm going to paint it soon.		their minds.
	4	Not yet. I'm just going to repair it.	. 5	
	•	·		No, I was going to play tennis but I changed my mind.
5.2	1	What are you going to wear?	6	No, I was going to invite her (to the
	2	Where is he going to hang it?		party) but I changed my mind.
	3	Who are you going to invite?		-
5.3	1		5.4 1	He is going to fall (his
		changed my mind.		examinations).
	2	No, she was going to get married	2	He is going to be late.
		but she changed her mind.	3	
	3	No, he was going to resign (from		She/The car is going to run out

## BÀI 6: SIMPLE FUTURE (will) (1)

- a) Chúng ta dùng will ('ll) (túc là thì Simple Future tương lại đơn) khi quyết định ngay vào lúc nói để làm một việc gì đó :
  - Oh, I've left the door open. I'll go and shut it.
     (ÔI Tôi đã để mở cửa. Tôi sẽ đi đóng cửa lại).
  - "What would you like to drink?" "I'# have a lemonade, please".

    ("Anh muốn uống gì?" "Làm ơn cho một ly nước chanh").
  - \*Did you phone Ann?\* "Oh, no, I forgot. I'll do it now". ("Anh đã gọi điện cho Ann chưa?" "Ö! Chưa, tôi quên rỗi. Tôi sẽ gọi ngay bây giờ").
  - I'm too tired to walk home. I think I'll get a taxi.
    (Tôi quá một không thể đi bộ về nhà. Tôi nghĩ là mình sẽ đón xe taxi).

Ban không thể dùng thi Simple Present trong những câu này:

- I'll go and shut it. (Không dùng "I go and shut it").

Không dùng will để nói về một việc mà ai đó đã quyết định trước hay đã xem xét trước để thực hiện.

I can't meet you tomorrow because my parents are coming to see me.
 (Tôi không thể gặp bạn ngày mai được bởi vì cha mẹ tôi sẽ đến thăm tôi) (không dùng "my parents will come").

Phủ định (negative) của will là won't (will not):

- Receptionist: I'm afraid Mr Wood can't see you until 4 o'clock.
   (Tiếp viên: Tôi e rằng ông Wood không thể gặp ông trước 4 giờ được).
- You; Oh, in that case I won't wait.
   (Ban : Ó! Néu thể thì tôi không thể đợi được).

Chúng ta thường dùng I thìnk I'll (Tôi nghĩ rằng tôi sẽ ...) hay i don't think I'll ... (Tôi không nghĩ rằng tôi sẽ ...) khi chúng ta quyết định làm diễu gì.

- I think I'll stay at home this evening.
   (Tôi nghĩ rằng tôi sẽ ở nhà chiều nay).
- I don't think I'll go out tonight. I'm too tired.
   (Tôi không nghĩ rằng tôi sẽ đi chơi tối nay. Tôi quá mệt rồi).
- b) Chúng ta thường dùng will trong các tình huống sau :
  - \* Ngỏ ý muốn làm gì giúp aì :
    - That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
       (Cái túi đó có vẻ nặng. Tôi sẽ giúp chị xách nó) (Không dùng "I help").
    - "I need some money". "Don't worry. I'll lend you some" ("Tôi cần ít tiến". "Đừng lo. Tôi sẽ cho anh mượn").
  - \* Đồng ý hay từ chối làm điều gì đó :
    - A : You know that book I lend you? Can I have it back?
       (Ban còn nhỏ cuốn sách tôi cho bạn mươn chữ? Tôi có thể lấy lại chứ ?)
    - B: Of course. I'# bring it back this afternoon.
       (Tất nhiên rỗi, Tổi sẽ mang trả chiều nay), (Không dùng "I bring").

- l've asked John to help me but he won't. (Tôi đã nhờ John giúp tôi nhưng anh ta từ chối).
- The car won't start (= the car 'refuses' to start).
   (Chiéc xe không khởi động được).
- \* Hứa họn làm điểu gì đó :
- Thank you for lending me the money, I'll pay you back on Friday. (Câm ơn anh đã cho tôi mượn tiến. Tôi sẽ trả cho anh vào thứ Sáu). (Không dùng "I pay").
- I won't tell Tom what you said. I promise.
   (Tôi sẽ không kể cho Tom nghe những gì anh nói. Tôi hửa đấy).
- 1 promise l'Il phone you as soon as l'arrive.
   (Tôi húa sẽ gọi điện cho anh ngay khi tôi đến nơi).
- \* Yêu cấu ai làm điều gì đó (will you ...?) ;
- Will you shut the door, please?
   (Anh làm on đóng cửa lại giữm nhé).
- Will you please be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.
   (Anh làm dn yên nào! Tôi đang cổ tập trung suy nghĩ đây).

## **UNIT 6: Exercises**

6.1	In th	is exercise you have to complete the sentences with I'II + a suitable verb.  Example : I'm too tired to walk home. I think I'll get a taxi.
	1	I feel a bit hungry. I thinksomething to eat.
	- 2	It's too late to telephone Tom nowhim in the morning.
	3	"It's a bit cold in this room", "Is it? on the heating then",
	4	"We haven't got any cigarettes". "Oh, haven't we? and get some.
	5	"Did you write that letter to Jack?" "Oh, I forgot. Thanks for reminding me it this evening".
	6	"Would you like tea or coffee?" " coffee, please".
		you have to use I think I'll or I don't think I'll Read the situation and the your sentences.
	Exar	nples: It's cold. You decide to close window. Lthink I'll close the window. It's raining. You decide not to go our. Ldon't think I'll go out.
	1	You feel tired. You decide to go to bed. I
	2	A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car but you decide to walk.
		Thank you but
	3	You arranged to play tennis. Now you decide that you don't want to play.
	4.	You were going to go swimming. Now you decide that you don't want to go.

6.3	Now	you have to offer to do things. Tom has	a lot of things to do and in each case you
	offer	to do them for him.	
	Exan	nple: Tom: Oh, I must do the washing-up	you: No, it's all right, I'll do the washing-
uр.			
•	1	Tom: Oh, I must get the dinner ready.	You: No, it's all right. I
	2	Tom: Oh, I must do the shopping.	You: No,
	3	Tom: Oh, I must water the plants.	You:
6.4	This	time you have to agree and promise to d	o things.
	Exar	nple: A: Can you clean the windows?	B : Sure, I'll clean them this afternoon.
		A : Do you promise?	B : Yes, I promise I'll clean them this
			afternoon.
	1	A : Carr you phone me later?	B ; c tonight.
		A : Do you promise?	B:Yes
	2	A : Can you repair the clock?	B : Okay, tomorrow.
		A : Do?	В:
	3	A : Please don't tell anyone.	B : All right, I won't tell anyone.
		A:?	B:
	4	A : Please don't hurt me.	B : Don't worry.
			В;
K	ΕY		
	<u> </u>		
6.1	1	I'll have / I'll get 6.4	1 B: Sure, I'll phone you tonight.
	. 2	I'll phone / I'll telephone / I'll ring	B: Yes, I promise I'll phone you
		i'il call.	tonight.
	3	1'll turn / I'll switch / I'll put	2 B: Okay, i'll repair it tomorrow.
	4	l'Il go	A : Do you promise?
	5	I'll do / I'll write	B: Yes, I promise I'll repair it
	6	I'll have	tomorrow.
6.2	2 1	I think I'll go to bed.	3 A: Do you promise?
	2	think I'll walk.	B: Yes, I promise I won't tell
	3	I don't think I'll play tennis.	anyone.
	4	I don't think I'll go swimming.	4 B: I won't hurt you.
6.3	-	I'll get the dinner ready.	A: Do you promise?
	2	No, it's all right. I'll do the shopping.	B: Yes, I promise I won't hurt you.
	3	No, it's all right. I'll water the plants.	

# BÀI 7: SIMPLE FUTURE (will) (2)

a) Khi chúng ta nói về tương tại, chúng ta thường nói về việc mà người nào đó đã sắp xếp để thực hiện hay có ý định thực hiện. Trong tình hướng này không dùng will:

Tom is playing tennis on Monday.

(Tom sẽ chơi quần vợt vào thứ Hai). (Không dùng "Tom will play")

 Are you going to watch television this evening? (Không dùng "will you watch")

Đối với sự sắp xếp và ý định, xem Bài 4 và 5.

Nhưng thường, khi chúng ta nói về tương lai, chúng ta không nói về sự sắp xếp hay ý định. Hãy xem ví dụ sau :

- Tom : I'm very worried about my examination next week. (Tom : Tôi rất lo lắng về kỳ thi của mình vào tuần tới).

 Ann: Don't worry, Tom. You'll pass. (Ann: Dùng lo Tom. Ban sẽ đậu mà).

"You'll pass" không phải là một sắp xếp hay ý định. Ann chỉ nói điều gì sẽ xảy ra hay điều mà có ta nghĩ sẽ xảy ra ; có ta đang đoán trước tương lai. Khi chúng ta đoán trước một điều xảy ra ở tương lai hay một tình huống tương lai, chúng ta dùng will/won't.

- When you return home, you'll notice a lot of changes.
   (Khí trở về nhà, anh sẽ lưu ý thấy nhiều thay đổi).
- This time next year I'll be in Japan. Where will you be? (Giờ này năm tới tôi sẽ ở Nhật. Bạn sẽ ở đầu?).
- Tom won't pass his examination. He hasn't done any work for it.
   (Tom se không thi đậu. Cậu ta không học chút nào để thị cả).

Chúng ta thường dùng will với các từ và các đặc ngữ này:

probably I'll probably be a bit late this evening. (Có lẽ tôi sẽ đến khá muôn tối nay).

(I'm) sure You must meet Ann. I'm sure you'll like her. (Anh phải gặp Ann. Tội chắc là anh sẽ thích cô ấy).

(i) expect I expect Carol will get the job. (Tôi mong Carol sẽ nhận được việc làm đó).

(I) think Do you think we'll win the match?

(Anh nghī chúng tả sẽ thắng trận đấu chứ?)

#### b) Will và shail

Bạn có thể dùng shall hay will với I và we :

We shall (or we will) probably go to Scotland in June.
 (Chúng ta sẽ có thể đi Xcótlen vào tháng Sáu).

Nhưng trong tiếng Anh chúng ta thường dùng dạng rút gọn l'II và we'll :

- We'll probably go to Scotland in June.

Phủ định của shalf là shan't (hay shall not):

i shan't (or i won't) be here tomorrow.
 (Tôi sẽ không ở đây ngày mai).

Không dùng shall với he / she / it / you / they.

Lưu ý rằng chúng ta dùng shall (không dùng will) trong các câu nghi vấn shall i .....? và shall we .....? (để chỉ để nghị, thình cầu v.v...):

- Shall I open the window? (Do you want me to open the window?)
   (Tôi mô cửa số nhé?)
- !'ve got no money. What shall I do? (= What do you suggest I do?) (Tôi không có tiến. Tôi nên làm gì?)
- Where shall we go this evening? (Chúng ta sẽ đi đầu tối nay?)

Với **will** xem thêm Bài 6,8 và 9.

#### **UNIT 7: Exercises**

7.1 Decide which form of the verb is correct (or more natural) in these sentences. Cross out the one which is wrong.

Example: Tom isn't free on Saturday. He will ork / is working.

- 1 Lwill go / am going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?
- 2 According to the weather forecast it will rain / is raining tomorrow.
- 3 I'm sure Tom will get / is getting the job. He has a lot of experience.
- 4 I can't meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.
- 5 A: Have you decided where to go for your holidays yet?
  - B ; Yes, we will go / are going to Italy.
- 6 Don't worry about the dog. It won't hurt / isn't hurting you.

		ver these questions using the words in Drackets.	41
E.	хаг	nple: When do you think he'll arrive? (expect / tonight)	expect he'll arrive tonight.
	4	What do you think she'll say? (probably/nothing)	She
		Where do you think she'll go? (expect/London)	
		When do you think she'll leave? (think/tomorrow)	1,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
		How do you think she'll go there? (expect/by train)	1
	5	When do you think she'll be back? (think/quite soon)	1
	6	Do you think you'll miss her? (I'm sure/very much)	Yes

7.3 Now you have to read a situation and then write a sentence with shall 1? In each situation you are talking to a friend.

Example: It's very hot in the room. The window is shut. Shall I open the window?

•	Ask your friend for advice
2	You're going out. It's possible that it will rain and you're not sure whether to take an umbrella or not. Ask your friend for advice
3	It's Ann's birthday soon and you don't know what to give her. Ask your friend for advice. What
4	Your friend wants you to phone him / her later. You don't know what time to phone.  Ask him / her. What
This t	ime you have to make sentences with shall we?
E	cample: You and your friend haven't decided what to do this evening. You say:
	What shall we do this evening?
5	You and your friend haven't decided where to go for your holidays. You say :
6	You and your friend haven't decided what to have for dinner. You say :
7	You and your friend are going out. You haven't decided whether to go by car or to walk. You say:
VE	

#### KEY

These verb forms are more natural.

- 7.1 1 am going
  - 2 will rain
  - 3 will get
  - 4 is coming
  - 5 are going
  - 6 won't hurt
- 7.2 1 She'll probably say nothing.
  - 2 | expect she'll go to London.
  - Tokpoor one ii go to conton
  - 3 I think she'il leave tomorrow.
  - 4 I expect she'll go there by train.
  - 5 I think she'll be back quite soon.
  - 6 Yes, I'm sure I'll miss her very much.
- 7.3 1 Shall I buy it?
  - 2 Shall I take an umbrella?
  - 3 What shall I give Ann for her birthday?
  - 4 What time shall I phone (you)?
  - 5 Where shall we go for our holidays?
  - 6 What shall we have for dinner?
  - 7 Shall we go by car or (shall we) walk?

## BÀI 8: WILL hay GOING TO?

#### a) Nói về những hành động tương lai :

Chúng ta dùng cả will lẫn going to để nói về những hành động tương tại, nhưng có sự khác biệt rõ ràng.

Hảy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau :

Xe đạp của Helen bị bể bánh. Cô ấy kể cho cha mình nghe.

Helen: My bicycle has a flat tyre. Can you repair it for me?

(Xe đạp của con bị bể bánh. Ba có thể sửa giúp con không?)

Father: Okay, but I can't do it now. I'll repair it tomorrow.

(Được rối, nhưng ba không thể sửa vào lúc này. Ngày mai ba sẽ sửa cho).

Will: Chúng ta dùng will khi chúng ta quyết định làm điều gì đó ngay vào lúc nói. Trước đó người nói chưa quyết định làm. Trước khi Helen kể cho cha cô ấy nghe, ông ta chưa biết gì về chuyện bể bánh xe.

Sau đó, mẹ của Helen nói với chồng bà ta.

Mother: Can you repair Helen's bicycle? It has a flat tyre.

(Ông có thể sửa xe đạp cho Helen không? Nó bị bể bánh).

Father: Yes, I know. She told me. I'm going to repair it tomorrow.

(Được, tôi biết rồi. Nó đã nói với tôi. Ngày mai tôi sẽ sửa).

Going to: Chúng ta dùng *going to* khi chúng ta đã quyết định trước đó làm một điều gi. Cha của Helen đã quyết định sửa chiếc xe đạp trước khi vợ ông ấy nói với ông ấy.

#### Sau đây là một ví du khác :

Tom dang nấu cơm khi anh bắt chợt phát hiện ra rằng không có muối :

Tom: Ann, we haven't got any salt.

(Ann, chúng tạ chẳng còn chút muối nào cả).

Ann: Oh, haven't we? I'll get some from the shop then. (she decides at the time of speaking).

(Ô, thật à? Vậy để em ra tiệm mua một lt). Trước khi ra khỏi nhà, Ann nói

với Jim:

Ann: I'm going to get some salt from the shop. (she has already decided) Can I

get you anything, Jim?

(Em sẽ ra tiệm mua một lì muối. Anh có muốn em mua gì cho anh không,

Jim?)

#### b) Nói về điều gì sẽ xảy ra (dự đoán những sự việc tương lai)

Chúng ta dùng cả *will* lẫn *going to* để nói về điều mà chúng ta nghĩ sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai :

- Do you think Tom will get the job? (Anh có nghĩ rằng Tom sẽ nhận được công việc đó không?)
- Oh dear, it's already 4 o'clock. We're going to be late.
   (Ôi anh yêu, đã bốn giờ rối. Chúng ta sẽ trẻ mất thôi).

Chúng ta dùng going to (chứ không dùng will) khi có một cái gì đó ở tình huống hiện tại cho thấy điều sẽ xảy ra trong tương lại (nhất là tương lại gần). Người nói cảm thấy chắc chẳn về điều sẽ xảy ra do có tình huống hiện tại (xem thêm bài 5d):

- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain. (the clouds are there now).
   (Hāy nhìn những đám mây đen kìa. Trời sắp mưa rồi).
- I feel terrible, I think I'm going to be sick. (I feel terrible now)
   (Τόι cảm thấy khó chịu quá. Τὸι nghĩ tôi sắp 6m rồi).

Đừng dùng will trong những tình hướng như trên. Trong những tình hướng khác, tốt hơn ta nên dùng will (xem thêm bài 7):

- Ann will probably arrive at about 8 o'clock. (Ann có thể sẽ đến vào lúc 8 giờ).
- I think Tom will like the present you bought for him.
   (Tôi nghĩ rằng Tom sẽ thích món quả mà anh đã mua tặng anh ấy).

## **UNIT 8: Exercises**

in t Exe	his exercise you have to put the verb into the correct form using will or going t mples: A: Why are you turning on the television?
	B : I'm going to watch (watch) the news.
	A : Oh, I've just realised - I haven't got any money.
	B : Don't worry - that's no problem. I'll lend (lend) you some.
Tho	se clouds are very black, aren't they? I think it is going to rain (rain).
. 1	A : I've got a terrible headache.
	B: Have you? Wait there and I (get) an aspirin for you.
. 2	A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
	B:1(wash) the car.
3	A : I've decided to re-paint this room.
	B : Oh, have you? What colour (you/paint) it?
4	A : Look! There's smoke coming out of that house. It's on fire!
	B : Good heavens! I (call) the fire-brigade immediately.
5	A: The ceiling in this room doesn't look very safe, does it?
	B: No, it looks as if it
6	A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
	B: Yes, I (buy) something for dinner.
7	A: I can't work out how to use this camera.
	B : It's quite easy, I(show) you.

	8	A: What would you like to drink - tea or coffee?
	٠.	B : I (have) tea, please:
	9	A : Has George decided on what to do when he leaves school?
		B : Oh yes. Everything is planned. He (have) a holiday for a few weeks
		and then he (start) a computer programming course.
	40	A : Did you post that letter for me?
	10	B : Oh, I'm sorry. I completely forgot. I (do) it now.
	44	
	31	A : What shall we have for dinner?
		B: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.
		A : Come on, hurry up! Make a decision!
		B : Okay then, We (have) chicken.
	12	Jack : We need some bread for lunch.
		Ben : Oh, do we? I (go) to the shop and get some. I feel like a wal
٠		Before he goes out, Ben talks to Jane :
		Ben : I (get) some bread. Do you want anything from the shop?
		Jane : Yes, I need some envelopes.
		Ben: Okay, I (get) you some.
	10	John has to go to the airport to catch a plane. He hasn't got a car
	1,5	John : Alan, can you take me to the airport this evening?
		the of source ! (take) you lid be delighted.
		Atan : Of course I (take) you. I'd be delighted.
		Later that day Eric offers to take John to the airport.
		Eric : John, do you want me to take you to the airport?
		John : No, thanks, Eric. Alan (take) me.

## **KEY**

- 8.1.1 I'll get
  - 2 I'm going to wash
  - 3 are you going to paint
  - 4 i'll call
  - 5 it is going to fall
  - 6 I'm going to buy
  - I'll show
  - 8 I'll have
  - he is going to have he is going to start
  - 10 l'll do
  - 11 we'll have
  - 12 I'll go ...

I'm going to get ...

l'II get 13 I'll take ...

Alan is going to take

# BÀI 9: Các câu với WHEN và IF

(When I do .../If I DO ...)

#### a) Hãy xem ví dụ sau đây :

A: What time will you phone me tonight?

(Tối nay bạn sẽ gọi điện cho tôi lúc mấy giờ?)

B: I'll phone you when I get home from work.

(Tôi sẽ gọi điện cho bạn khi tôi đi làm về).

"Tôi sẽ gọi điện thoại cho bạn khi tôi đi làm về" là một câu có hai phần : "Tôi sẽ gọi điện thoại cho bạn" (phần chính) và "khi tôi đi làm về" (phần when).

Câu này mang nghĩa tương lai (tối nay) nhưng bạn không thể dùng will hoặc going to ở phần when của câu. Thay vào đó, chúng ta dùng một thì hiện tại, thường là thi Simple Present (I do).

 l'il send you a postcard when I'm on holiday. (not "when I will be") (Tôi sẽ gởi cho bán một tấm bưu thiếp khi tôi đi nghĩ).

When the rain stops, we'll go out. (not "when the rain will stop") (Khi mua tanh chúng ta sẽ ra ngoài).

Chúng ta cùng áp dụng qui tắc trên sau các CONJUNCTIONS of TIME (Liên từ chỉ thời gian) :

while (trong khi) after (sau khi) before (trước khi) until/till (cho đến khi) as soon as (ngay khi).

Can you look after the children while I am out? (not "will be"). (Cô có thể trông giùm mấy đứa trẻ trong khi tôi đi vắng được không?)

Before you leave, you must visit the museum. (not "will leave")
 (Trước khi bạn ra đi, bạn phải ghé thăm Viện Bảo tàng).

Wait here until I come back. (not "will come")
 (Hảy chờ ở đây cho đến khi tôi trở lai).

b) Bạn cũng có thể dùng thi Present Perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành). (I have done) sau when / after / until v.v... để chỉ rằng hành động thứ nhất sẽ được hoàn thành trước hành động thứ hai.

When the read this book, you can have it.
 (Khi tôi đọc xong quyển sách này, bạn có thể mượn nó).

Don't say anything while Tom is here. Wait here until he has gone.
 (Đừng nói gì cả trong khi Tom có mặt ở đây. Hãy chờ ở đây cho đến khi anh ta đã đi khỏi).

Thường thì chúng ta có thể dùng thì Present Simple hoặc thì Present Perfect :

- l'Il come as soon as l-finish; or : l'Il come as soon as l've finished (Tôi sẽ đến ngay khi tôi hoàn tất công việc ; hoặc : Tôi sẽ đến ngay khi tôi xong việc).
- You'll feel better after you have something to eat; or: You'll feel better after you've had something to eat.

(Bạn sẽ cảm thấy khỏe hơn sau khi ăn chút gì đó ; hoặc : Bạn sẽ cảm thấy khỏe hơn sau khi đã ăn chút gì đó).

- c) Sau if chúng ta cũng dùng thì Simple Present (I do) để nói về tương lại :
  - It's raining. We'll get wet if we go out. (not "if we will go") (Trời đang mưa. Chúng ta sẽ bị ướt nếu chúng ta ra ngoài).
  - Hurry up! If we don't hurry, we'll be late. (not "if we won't hurry") (Nhanh lên nào! Nếu chủng ta không vội lên, chúng ta sẽ bị trễ giờ).

Cẩn thận đừng nhấm lẫn giữa when và lf.

Dùng when cho những điều chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra.

I'm going shopping this afternoon. When I go shopping, I'll buy some food. (Chiều nay tôi sẽ đi mua sắm. Khi tôi đi, tôi sẽ mua một lì thức ăn).

Dùng If (chứ không dùng when) cho những điều có thể sẽ xảy ra.

- I might go shopping this afternoon. If I go shopping, I'll buy some food. (Chiếu nay có thể tôi sẽ đi mua sắm. Nếu tôi đi, tôi sẽ mua một ft thức ăn).
- If it rains this evening, I won't go out. (not "when it rains") (Nếu tối nay trời mưa, tôi sẽ không ra khỏi nhà.
- Don't worry if I'm late tonight. (not "when I'm late") (Xin đừng lọ lắng nếu tối nay tôi đến trễ).

_		9 : Exercises
9.1		he sentences in this exercise are about the future. Put the verbs into the corre
		williwon't or the simple present (I do).
	Exar	nple: When I see (see) Tom tomorrow, I'll invite (invite) him to our party.
	1	Before you (leave), don't forget to shut the windows.
	2	(phone) you as soon as I (arrive) in London.
	3	Please don't touch anything before the police (come).
	4	Everyone (be) very surprised if he (pass) the examination.
	5	When you (see) Brian again, you (not / recognise) hlm.
	6	We (not/start) dinner until Jack (arrive).
	7	(you/be) lonely without me while 1 (be) away?
	8	If I (need) any help, I (ask) you.
	9	Come on! Hurry up! Ann (be) annoyed if we (be) lat
9.2	This	time you have to make one sentence from two sentences.
	Exa	mple: You are going to leave soon. You must visit the museum before that.
		You must visit the museum before you leave.
	1	I'll find some where to live. Then I'll give you my address.
		when
	_ 2	It's going to start raining. Let's go out before that
		Let's before

	3	I'm going to do the shopping. The	en l'II	come straight b	ack home.
		after	Г	IN *** ** ** ** *** *** *** *** *** ***	
	4	You'll be in London next month.	You i en	nust come and s	ee me then.
	6	We'll make our decision. Then w	eʻll le	t vou know.	
		as sc	on a	S	
9.3	in th	nis exercise you have to put in whe	n ori		· · ·
	Exa	mple : If it rains this evening, I won	't an	ni. Nist	
	1				
	2	I'm going to Paris next week	÷	I'm mere, I noi	be to visit a friend of mine.
	3	Tom might phone this evening I think he'll get the job. I'll be very		ne does,	can you take a message?
	4	I hope to be there by 10.30. But	Sur	JIISEU	ne doesn't get it.
	5	I'm going shopping		t Want anuthing	here, don't wait for me.
	6	I think I'll go home now. I'm feelir	na ve	ry tired I think !'	ican germoryou.
		I get home.	.9 .0	ry wood. I dimik I	r go straight to bed
	7	I'm going away for a few days. I'll	pho	1e vou	I get back
	8	I want you to come to the party	but		Vou don't want to come
		you needn't.			
KE	Y				
	<u> </u>				
9.1	1	leave			
	2	will phone arrive		•	
	3	come ("police" is plural)			
	4	will be passes			
	5	see won't recognise			•
	6	won't start arrives			
	7	Will you be am			•
	8	need will ask			•
	9	will be are			
9.2	1	I'll give you my address when I fir	ad (a	have found) co	ne where to live
	2	Let's go out before it starts raining	, 1	11440 108110) 801	ile wilete to live.
	3	I'll come straight back home after	l do	(or have done) th	e shooping
	4	You must come and see me when	ı vou	re in London ne	xt month
	5	I'll get the dinner ready when I fin	ish (c	r have finished)	reading this book
	6	We'll let you know as soon as we	mak	or have made	our decision.
9.3	1	When	5	lf .	
	2	If	-	when	•
	3	įf.	7	when	
	Ā	if		4711011	

# BÀI 10: FUTURE CONTINUOUS (will be doing) và FUTURE PERFECT (will have done)

a) Trước hết hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:

Tom là một cổ động viên bóng đá và tối nay trên tivi có một trận bóng đá. Trận đấu sẽ bắt đầu vào lúc 7 giờ 30 và kết thúc vào lúc 9 giờ 15. Ann muốn đến gặp Tom tối nay và muốn biết giờ nào có ta có thể đến được.

Ann: Is it all right if I come at about 8.30?

(Em đến vào khoảng 8 giờ 30 được không?).

Tom: No, don't come then. I'll be watching the match on television.

(Không được đâu, đứng đến vào lúc đó. Lúc đó anh sẽ đang xem trận

bóng đá trên TV).

Oh. Well, what about 9.30?

(À, thế 9 giờ 30 được không?)

Tom: Yes, that'll be fine. The match will have finished by then.

(Được, tốt lắm. Lúc đó trận đấu sẽ đã kết thúc rồi).

b) Chúng ta dùng will be doing (thì Future Continuous - Tương lại tiếp diễn) để nói rằng chúng ta đang làm một việc gì nửa chứng vào một thời điểm nào đó trong tương lại. Trận bóng đá bắt đầu lúc 7 giờ 30 và kết thúc lúc 9 giờ 15, vì vậy trong khoảng thời gian này, ví dụ vào lúc 8 giờ 30, Tom sẽ đang xem trận bóng đá.

Dưới đây là một vài ví dụ khác:

Ann:

- You'll recognise her when you see her. She'll be wearing a yellow hat.
   (Ban sē nhận ra khi bạn gặp có ta. Cô ấy sẽ đội nón vàng).
- This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll probably be lying on a beautiful beach.
   (Vào giờ này tuần tới tôi sẽ đang nghỉ mát. Có thể lúc đó tôi sẽ đang nằm nghỉ trên một bãi biển tuyệt đẹp).

Hãy so sánh will be doing với những thể tiếp diễn khác:

Mỗi buổi sáng Tom làm việc từ 9 giờ cho đến trưa. Vì vậy:

- At 10 o'clock yesterday he was working.
   (Vào lúc 10 giờ ngày hôm qua anh ta đang làm việc) (thì Past Continuous. Hãy xem bài 12).
- It's 10 o'clock now. He is working.
   (Bây giở là 10 giờ. Anh ta đang làm việc) (thì Present Continuous. Hãy xem bài 1).
- At 10 o'clock tomorrow he will be working.
   (Vào lúc 10 giờ ngày mai anh ta sẽ đang làm việc).
- c) Bạn cũng có thể dùng will be doing theo một cách khác để nói về những việc đã được dự định hoặc quyết định rỗi.
  - I'll be going to the city centre later. Can I get you anything?
     (Lát nữa tôi định sẽ xuống trung tâm thành phố. Bạn có muốn tôi mua gì cho bạn không?).

Với ý nghĩ này **wi**ll **be doing** tương tự như **am doing** (thì Present Continuous) (xem bài 4a).

I'm going to the city centre later.
 (Lát nữa tôi sẽ xuống trung tâm thành phố).

Chúng ta thường dùng Will (you) be + ing? để hỏi về những dự tính của người khác đặc biệt là khi chúng ta muốn cái gì đó hay muốn người nào làm điều gì đó.

- "Will you be using your bicycle this evening?" "No, you can take it".
  ("Tối nay bạn có sử dụng xe đạp của bạn không?" "Không, bạn có thể dùng nó".
- Will you be passing the post office when you go out?" "Yes, why?" ("Ban có đi ngang bưu điện khi ra phố không?" "Có, thể thì sao?"
- d) Chúng ta dùng will have done (thì Future Perfect Tương lại hoàn thành) để nói rằng một việc nào đó đã xảy ra trước một thời điểm trong tương lại. Trận bóng đá mà Tom xem kết thúc vào lúc 9h15. Vì thế sau thời điểm này, ví dụ vào lúc 9 giờ 30, trận đấu đã kết thúc rồi. (The match will have finished at 9.30). Dưới đây là một vài ví dụ khác:
  - Next year is Ted and Amy's 25th wedding anniversary. They will have been married for 25 years. (Now they have been married for 24 years). (Năm tới sẽ là kỷ niệm 25 năm ngày cười của Ted và Amy. Khi đó họ đã lấy nhau được 25 năm rối). (Bây giờ họ đã lấy nhau được 24 năm rối).
  - We're late. I expect the film will already have started by the time we get to the cinema.
    - (Chúng ta trễ giờ rồi. Tôi nghĩ rằng phim đã bắt đầu khi chúng ta đến rạp hát).

#### UNIT 10: Exercises

from 8 o'clock until 8.30, So:

-xa	mple: I'm going to watch television from 9 until 10 o'clock this evening.  So at 9.30 I with be watching television.
1	Tomorrow afternoon I'm going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30.
	So at 4 o'clock tomorrow I
2	Jim is going to study from 7 o'clock until 10 o'clock this evening,
	So at 8.30 this evening he
3	We are going to clean the flat tomorrow. It will take from 9 until 11 o'clock,
	So at 10 o'clock tomorrow morning

#### 10.3 This time you have to ask questions with Will you be -ing?

Example: You want to borrow your friend's bicycle this evening. (you / use / your bicycle this evening?) Will you be using your bicycle this evening?

- 1 You want your friend to give Tom a message this afternoon.

  (you / see / Tom this afternoon?)
- 2 You want to use your friend's typewriter tomorrow evening. (you / use / your typewriter tomorrow evening?)
- 3 Your friend is going shopping. You want him/her to buy some stamps for you at the post office. (you / pass / the post office when you're in town?) ......

#### 10.4 In this exercise you have to use will have done.

Example: Tom and Ann are going to the cinema. The film begins at 7.30 and it is already 7.20. And it will take them 20 minutes to get there.

When they get there, (the film / already / start) the film will have already started.

- Chuck came to Britain from the US nearly three years ago. Next Monday it will be exactly three years since he arrived. Next Monday (he / be / here / exactly three years)

#### **KEY**

- 10.1 1 I will be playing tennis.
  - 2 he will be studying.
  - 3 we will be cleaning the flat.
- 10.2 1 Bob was reading the newspaper.
  - 2 He is reading the newspaper.
  - 3 he will be reading the newspaper.
- 10.3 1 Will you be seeing Tom this afternoon?
  - 2 Will you be using your typewriter tomorrow evening?
  - 3 Will you be passing the post office when you're in town?
- 10.4 1 Jim will have gone to bed.
  - 2 he will have spent all his money.
  - 3 he will have been here exactly three years.

# BÀI 11: SIMPLE PAST (I did)

#### a) Hāy xem ví du sau:

Tom: Look! it's raining again.

(Nhìn kìa, trởi lại đang mựa).

Ann: Oh no, not again, It rained all day yesterday too.

(Ô không, đầu phải tại đang mưa. Trời cũng đã mưa suốt ngày hôm qua rồi).

"Rained" là thi Simple Past (Quá khứ đơn). Chúng ta dùng thì Quá khứ đơn để nói về các hành động hoặc các tính huống trong quá khứ.

- I very much enjoyed the party.
   (Tôi đã rất thích bữa tiệc).
- Mr Edwards died ten years ago. (Ông Edwards da chết cách dây mười năm).
- When I lived in Manchester, I worked in a bank.
   (Khi tôi còn sống ở Manchester, tôi đã làm việc trong một ngân hàng).

#### b) Rất thường khi động từ ở thì Simple Past tận cùng bằng -ed.

- We invited them to our party but they decided not to come.
   (Chúng tôi đã mời họ dự buổi tiệc của chúng tôi nhưng họ đã quyết định không đến).
- The police stopped me on my way home last night.
   (Cảnh sát đã chặn tối lại trên đường tôi về nhà tối qua).
- She passed her examination because she studied very hard. (Cô ấy thi đậu vì cô ấy đã học rất chăm).

Nhưng nhiều động từ quan trọng lại là động từ bất qui tắc (irregular verbs). Điều này có nghĩa là hình thức quá khứ của các động từ này không tận cùng bằng -ed. Ví dụ:

- Leave ⇒ left. We all left the party at 11 o'clock.

(Tất cả chúng tôi rời khỏi bữa tiệc lúc 11 giờ).

- go ⇒ went: Yesterday I went to London to see a friend of mine.

  (Hôm qua tôi đã đi Luân Đôn để gặp một người bạn).
- cost ⇒ cost. This house cost 35.000 in 1980.
   (Căn nhà này trị giá 35.000 bảng vào năm 1980).

Quá khứ của động từ be (am/is/are) là was/were.

I / he / she / it was

We / you / they were

I was angry because Tom and Ann were late.

(Tôi đã nổi giận vì Tom và Ann đến trễ).

Xem bằng động từ bất qui tắc ở phần Phụ lục 2.

c) Trong các câu hỏi và các câu phủ định ở thì Simple Past ta dùng did/didn't + động từ nguyên thể (do/open/rain v.v...).

it rained did it rain? it didn't rain.				
	it rained	did it rain?	it didn't rain.	

- Ann: Did you go out last night, Tom?
   (Tối hôm qua bạn có ra khỏi nhà không Tom?)
- Tom: Yes, I went to the cinema. But I didn't enjoy the film.
   (Có, tôi đã đi xem phim nhưng tôi không thích bộ phim đó).
- When did Mr Edwards die?
- (Óng Edwards chết khi nào?)
- What did you do at the week-end?
   (Ban đã làm g) vào ngày nghỉ cuối tuần rồi?)
- We didn't invite her to the party, so she didn't come.
   (Chúng tôi đã không môi cô ấy dự tiệc, vì vậy cô ấy đã không đến).
- Why didn't you phone me on Tuesday?
   (Sao hôm thứ Ba bạn không gọi điện thoại cho tôi?).

Chú ý rằng chúng ta thường dùng did/didn't với have:

- Did you have time to write the letter?
   (Ban có thì giờ viết thư không?)
- I didn't have enough money to buy anything to eat.
   (Tôi đã không có đủ tiền để mua thức ăn).

Nhưng chúng ta không dùng did với động từ be (was/were):

- Why were you so angry?
   (Tại sao bạn giận dữ quá như thế?)
- They weren't able to come because they were very busy.
   (Họ đã không thể đến được bởi vì họ rất bận).
- Was Torn at work yesterday?
   (Hôm qua Tom có đi làm không?)

Đối với thì Simple Past, xem thêm các bài 12,20,21.

#### **UNIT 11: Exercises**

11.1 In this exercise you have to read a sentence about the present and then write a sentence about the past.

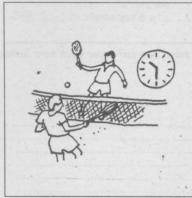
Example: Tom usually gets up at 7.30. Yesterday he got up at 7.30.

- 4 Tom usually has a sandwich for lunch. Yesterday .......

11.2 This time you have to put one of these v	rerbs in each sentence.
Example: I was hungry, so I bought some Tom's father him h Don down the stairs this We needed some money so we	now to drive when he was 17. s morning andhis leg our car. y. She a dress which£50.
11.3 in this exercise you have to write quest and you are asking him about it.	tions. A friend has just come back from holida
Examples: where/go? Where did you go food/good? Was the food good	
2 stay in a hotel?	
1 Tom (not/shave) this mo 2 We (not/eat) anything 3 I (not/rush) because I	terday beacuse I <u>wasn't</u> (not/be) very well. ming because he (not/have) time. because we (not/be) hungry.
KEY	
11.1 1 he woke up early. 2 he walked to work. 3 he was late for work. 4 he had a sandwich for lunch. 5 he went out. 6 he slept very well.  11.2 1 taught 2 fell hurt 3 sold 4 spent bought cost	11.3 1 How long did you stay there? 2 Did you stay in a hotel? 3 Did you go alone? 4 How did you travel? 5 Was the weather fine? 6 What did you do in the evenings? 7 Did you meet any interesting people? 11.4 1 didn't shave didn't have 2 didn't eat weren't
5 threw caught	3 didn't rush wasn't 4 wasn't didn't understand

# BÀI 12: PAST CONTINUOUS (thì Quá khứ tiếp diễn) (I was doing)

a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:

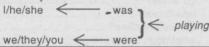


Hôm qua Tom và Jim chơi quần vợt. Họ bắt đầu chơi lúc 10 giờ và chấm dứt lúc 11 giờ.

- What were they doing at 10.30? (Họ đang làm gì vào lúc 10 giờ 30?)
  - They were playing tennnis (at 10.30) (Họ đang chơi quần vợt vào lúc 10.30)

Họ đang chơi có nghĩa là họ đang ở giữa thời điểm hành động xảy ra. Họ đã bắt đầu chơi nhưng họ chưa chơi xong.

Sau đây là thĩ Past Continuous:



Chúng ta dùng thì **Past Continuous** để nói rằng một người nào đó đang làm một việc gì vào một thời điểm nào đó trong quá khứ. Hành động hoặc tình huống đã bắt đầu trước thời điểm này nhưng vẫn chưa chấm dứt:

- This time last year I was living in Brazil. (Vào giờ này năm ngoái tôi đang sống ở Brazil).
- What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?
  (Ban đang làm gì vào lúc 10 giờ tối hôm qua?)
- b) Thì Past Continuous không cho chúng ta biết hành động đã được hoàn thành hay chưa. Có thể nó đã được hoàn thành mà cũng có thể chưa. Hãy so sánh:
  - Tom was cooking the dinner. (past continuous) (Tom đang nấu bữa tối). (thì Quá khứ tiếp diễn) = Anh ta đang nấu bữa tối nửa chừng và chúng ta không biết được là anh ta đã nấu xong rồi hay chưa.
  - Tom cooked the dinner. (past simple) = He began and finished it.
     (Tom đã nấu bữa ăn tối). (thì Quá khứ đơn) = Anh ta đã bắt đầu và đã hoàn tất việc đó.
- c) Chúng ta thường dùng thì Past Continuous (I was doing) và thì Simple Past (I did) cùng với nhau để nói rằng một việc nào đó đã xảy ra trong lúc một việc khác đang tiếp diễn.
  - Tom burnt his hand when he was cooking the dinner.
     (Tom đã bị phỏng tay khi anh ta đang nấu bữa ăn tối).
  - I saw Jim in the park. He was sitting on the grass and reading a book.
     (Tôi đã gặp Jim trong công viên. Anh ta đang ngồi trên bãi cỏ và đang đọc một quyển sách).

- It was raining when I got up.
   (Trời đang mựa khi tôi thức dậy).
- While I was working in the garden, I hurt my back.
   (Trong lúc tôi đang làm việc trong vườn, tôi bị đau lưng).

Nhưng để nói rằng một việc đã xảy ra sau một việc khác, ta dùng thì Simple Past.

Yesterday evening Tom was having a bath when the phone rang. He got out of the bath and answered the phone.

(Tối hôm qua khi chuông điện thoại reo th) Tom đang tắm. Anh ta ra khỏi nhà tắm và trả lời điện thoại).

#### Hãy so sánh:

- When Tom arrived, we were having dinner, (past continuous) = we had already started dinner before Tom arrived
  - (Khi Tom đến, chúng ta đang ăn tối). (thì Quá khứ tiếp diễn)
  - = Chúng tôi đã bắt đầu ăn tối trước khi Tom đến.
- When Tom arrived, we had dinner (past simple) = Tom arrived and then we had dinner.

(Khi Tom đến, chúng tôi ăn tối). (thì Quá khứ đơn) = Tom đến và rồi chúng tôi ăn tối.

Ghi chú: Có một số động từ (thí dụ know) thường không được dùng trong các thì tiếp diễn (continuous tenses). Xem bảng tiệt kê các động từ này ở bài 3b.

#### **UNIT 12: Exercises**

them):

1 8.45 - 9.15 had breakfast	4	12.45 - 1.30 had lunch
2 9.15 - 10.00 read the newspaper		2.30 - 3.30 washed some clothes
3 10.00 - 12.00 cleaned her flat		4.00 - 6.00 watched television
Now write sentences saying what she was do	oing	at these times:
inow write sentences saying what she was di	oing	at these times:
	oing 4	at these times:
1 At 9 o'clock she was having breakfast. 2 At 9.30 she	4	

12.1 Here is a list of some things that Ann did yesterday (and the times at which she did

12.2 A group of people were staying in a hotel. One evening the fire alarm rang. Use the words in brackets to make sentences saying what each person was doing at the time.

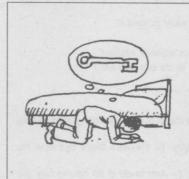
Example: (Don / have / a bath) Don was having a bath.

- 1 (Ann / write / a letter in her room) Ann .....
- 2 (George / get / ready to go out) George .....
- 3 (Carol and Dennis / have / dinner) Carol and Dennis ......

sim	ole (I	ntences from the words in brackets. Put the did) or past continuous (I was doing).		
1 (the 2 (it /	phor begin	/ feel / asleep when I / watch / television) television ne / ring / when I / have / a shower) The ph / to rain when I / walk / home)	one	
3 (we	/ see	/ an accident when we / wait / for the bus	)	
		erb into the correct form, past continuous of While Tom was cooking (cook) the dinner,		
2 La 3 4 A 5 I. 6 I W 7 T 8 W 9 W	hen it	(fall) off the ladder when sudder who sudder who sudder when sudder when sudder when sudder who sudder when sudder	acc hile	(hear) a scream. oned you?(arrive). ident(happen)(do) the washing-up 1(not/look)(rain).
12.1	2	she was reading the newspaper 12.4	1	fell was painting
	3	she was cleaning her flat	2	was reading heard
	4	she was having lunch	3	Were you watching
	5	she was washing some clothes	4	was waiting arrived
	6	she was watching television	5	wasn't driving happened
12.2	1	Ann was writing a letter in her room.	6	broke was doing slipped
	2	George was getting ready to go out.	7	took wasn't looking
	3	Carol and Dennis were having dinner.	8	didn't go was raining
	4	Tom was making a phone call.	9	were you doing
12.3	1	The phone rang when I was having a shower.	10	saw was wearing
	2	It began to rain when I was walking home	e.	
	3	We saw an accident when we were waiti		or the bus.
			-	

## BÀI 13: PRESENT PERFECT (thì Hiện tại hoàn thành) (I have done) (1)

#### a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Tom đạng tìm chìa khóa. Anh ta không tìm thấy nó.

He has lost his key. (Anh ta đã đánh mất chìa khóa).

"Anh ta đã đánh mất chìa khóa" có nghĩa là anh ta đã đánh mất nó cách đây không lâu và bây giờ vẫn chưa tìm ra.

Sau đây là thì Present Perfect:

I/we/you/they. have (= I've ...) he/she \* (= he's ...) lost has haven't have you / (...) lost lost? he/she hasn't has he/she

Chúng ta thành lập thì Present Perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành) với have/has + Past participle (phân từ quá khứ). Past Participle thường tận cùng bằng -ed (opened, decided) nhưng nhiều động từ quan trọng lại là động từ bất qui tắc (lost, written, done, v.v...). Xem phần phu luc 2.

- b) Khi chúng ta dùng thì Present Perfect thì luôn luôn có một sự liên hệ với hiện tại:
  - I've lost my key. (= I haven't got it now). (Tôi đã đánh mất chìa khóa rồi) (= Bây giờ tôi vẫn chưa tìm thấy).
  - Jim has gone to Canada. (= He is in Canada or on his way there now). (Jim đã đi Canađa) (= Bây giờ anh ta đang ở Canađa hoặc đang trên đường đến
  - Oh dear, I've forgotten her name. (= I can't remember it now). (O, trời, tôi quên mất tên cô ta rồi) (= Bây giờ tôi không thể nhớ được tên cô ta).
  - Have you washed your hair? (= Is it clean now?) (Bạn đã gội đầu chưa?) (= Bây giờ tóc bạn có sạch không?)
- c) Chúng ta thường dùng thì Present Perfect để thông báo tin tức mới hoặc loạn báo một việc vừa mới xảy ra.
  - I've lost my key. Can you help me look for it? (Tôi đã đánh mất chìa khóa. Ban có thể giúp tôi tìm nó không?)
  - Do you know about Jim? He's gone to Canada. (Ban có biết tin gì về Jim không? Anh ta đã đi Canađa).
  - Ow! I've burnt myself. (Ô! Tôi bị phỏng rồi).

Bạn có thể dùng thì Present Perfect với just (= vừa mới đây).

- "Would you like something to eat?" "No, thanks. I've just had lunch.
   ("Ban có muốn ăn chút gì không?" "Không, cám ơn. Tôi vừa mới ăn trưa xong").
- Hello, have you just arrived?

(Xin chào, bạn vừa mới đến phải không?)

Bạn có thể dùng thì Present Perfect với already để nói rằng một việc nào đó đã xảy ra sớm hơn mọng đợi:

- \*Don't forget to post the letter, will you?\* "I've already posted it".
   ("Đừng quên bỏ thư, nhé" "Tôi đã bỏ thư rối").
- "When is Tom going to start his new job?" "He has already started" ("Khi nào thì Tom sẽ bắt đầu việc làm mới?" "Anh ta đã bắt đầu rỗi").
- d) Hāy xem xét sự khác nhau giữa gone to và been to:
  - Ann is on holiday. She has gone to Italy.

    (Ann đang đi nghỉ. Cô ta đã đi Ý) (= Bây giờ cô ta đang ở đó hoặc đang trên đường đến đó).
  - Tom is back in England now. He has been to Italy. (= He was there but now he has come back).

(Bây giờ Tom đã trở về Anh quốc. Anh ta đã ở Ý). (= Anh ta đã ở đó nhưng bây giờ anh ta đã trở về).

(Xem thêm bài 119)

Đối với thì Present Perfect, xem thêm các bài 14 - 19.

Đối với thì Present Perfect và thì Simple Past, xem các bài 20 - 21.

#### **UNIT 13: Exercises**

	the word	ls given to make sente	iend and giving news about people you both know. Use nces and put the verb into the correct form.  Phil has found a new job.
			appened since I last wrote to you.
1 2 3 4 5	Jack a Suzan Monica	s/go/Brazil nd Jill/decide/to get m ne/have/a baby a/give up/smoking	Charlesarried
th	e verb g kample.	<i>iven.</i> Forn is looking for his l	ad the situation and then write a suitable sentence. Use key. He can't find it. (lose) He has lost his key. s clean. (wash) She

2 Tom was 80 kilograms. Now he weighs 70. (lose weight) .....

3	The car has just stopped because th	ere is	n't	any more petrol in the tank. (run out o			
4	petrol)	. Now	he	can't walk and his leg is in plaster			
13.3	This time you have to use just. Answer	the qu	est	ions using the words given			
	xample: Would you like something to No, thank you. I've just had d	eat. (r	10,				
1		s/l/jus1	/se	e/him) Yes			
. 2	Has Ann phoned yet? (yes/she/just/p	phone)	٠	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
3	/ / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /						
13.4	In this exercise you have to write senter	ices w	ith	already.			
Ε	xample: Don't forget to post that letter.	Ľ	e 8	already posted it."			
1	Don't forget to phone. Tom.	1.					
2	Why don't you read the paper?						
3				** ** * ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** *			
2 3 <b>KE</b>	Helto! I've justto the Jim isn't here at the moment. He's "Are you going to the bank?" "No, I've	· ·	·	to the shops.			
	<del> </del>	<u>_</u> _					
13.1	1 Charles has gone to Brazil.	13.4	1	I've already phoned him.			
	2 Jack and Jill have decided to		2	I've already read it.			
	get married.		3	No, I've already paid (him).			
	3 Suzanne has had a baby.			•			
	4 Monica has given up smoking.						
	5 George has passed his driving-test						
13.2	1 She has washed her hair.	13.5	1	been			
	2 He has lost weight.		2	gone			
	3 It has run out of petrol.		3	been			
	4 He has broken his leg.						
13.3	1 Yes, I've just seen him.						
	2 Yes, she has just phoned.						
	3 No thanks the just out one out						

# BÀI 14: PRESENT PERFECT (thì Hiện tại hoàn thành) (2)

#### a) Hãy xem mẫu đối thoại sau:

Dave: Have you travelled a lot, Nora?

(Ban đi du lịch có nhiều không, Nora?)

Nora: Yes, I've been to 47 different countries. (Có, tôi đã đến 47 quốc gia khác nhau).

Dave: Really? Have you ever been to China?

(Thật à? Ban đã từng đến Trung Quốc chưa?)

Nora: Yes, I've visited China twice.

(Có, tôi đã đến Trung Quốc hai lần).

Dave: What about India?

(Thế còn Ấn Độ thì sao?) Nora: No, I've never been to India.

(Chưa, tôi chưa từng đến Ấn Độ).



quá khứ

hiên tai

Khi chúng ta nói về một khoảng thời gian còn tiếp tục kéo dài đến hiện tại, chúng ta dùng thì Present Perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành). Nora và Dave đang nói chuyện về những nơi mà Nora đã đến thăm trong cuộc đời cô ta (đó là khoảng thời gian tiếp tục kéo dài đến hiện tại).

#### Sau đây là một số thí du khác:

"Have you read Hamlet?" "No, I haven't read any of Shakespeare's plays". ("Bạn đã đọc Hamlet chưa?" "Chưa, tôi chưa đọc vở kịch nào của Shakespeare cả").

How many times have you been to the United States? (Bạn đã đến Mỹ bao nhiều lần rồi?)

Susan really loves that film. She's seen it eight times. (Susan thực sự thích bộ phim đó. Cô ta đã xem nó tám lần rồi).

Sam has lived in Belfast all his life. (or Sam has always lived in Belfast). (Sam đã sống ở Belfast suốt cuộc đời của anh ấy). (= Sam luôn luôn sống ở Belfast).

#### Chúng ta thường dùng ever và never với thì Present Perfect

Have you ever eaten caviar.

(Ban đã từng ăn trứng cá muối chưa?)

We have never had a car.

(Chúng tôi chưa bao giờ có một chiếc xe hơi).

Chúng ta thường dùng thì Present Perfect sau cấp độ số sánh bậc nhất (superlative) (xem bài 104d).

What a boring film! It's the most boring film I've ever seen. (Bô phim dở quá! Đó là bộ phim dở nhất mà tôi đã từng xem).

b) Ban phải dùng thì Present Perfect với This is the first time ... It's the first time ... v.v... Hãy xem tình huống mẫu sau:

Ron is driving a car. He is very nervous and unsure because it's his first behind the wheel of a car. You can say:

(Ron đang lái xe hơi. Anh ta rất lúng túng và thiếu tự tin, vì đây là lắn đầu tiên anh ta ngói sau tay lái xe hơi. Bạn có thể nói:)

 This is the first time he has driven a car. (not drives) (or He has never driven a car before).

(Đây là lần đầu tiên anh ta lái một chiếc xe hơi) (hoặc: Trước đây anh ta chưa từng lái xe hơi bao giờ).

#### Sau đây là một vài thí dụ khác:

- Tom has lost his passport again. It's the second time he has lost it.
   (Tom lại đánh mất hộ chiếu. Đây là lần thứ hai anh ta đánh mất nó).
- Is this the first time you've been in hospital?
   (Có phải đây là lần đầu tiên bạn nằm bệnh viện không?).
- c) Dùng thì Present Perfect để nói rằng bạn chưa bao giờ làm một việc gì đó, hoặc bạn chưa làm một việc gì trong một khoảng thời gian kéo dài đến hiện tại.
  - I have never smoked.
     (Tôi chưa bao giờ hút thuốc).
  - I haven't smoked for three years. (not "I don't smoke for ...")
     (Tôi đã không hút thuốc trong ba năm nay).
  - I haven't smoked since September. (not "I don't smoke since ...")
     (Tôi đã không hút thuốc từ tháng Chín tới nay).
  - Jill hasn't written to me for nearly a month.
    (Gần một tháng nay Jill chưa viết thư cho tôi).
  - Jill has never driven a car.
     (Jill chưa bao giờ lái một chiếc xe hơi).

Để biết được sự khác nhau giữa for và since, hãy xem bài 19b.

#### **UNIT 14: Exercises**

14.1 You are asking someone about things he has done in his life. Use the words in brackets to make your questions.

E:	xample: (you ever / be / to Italy?) Have you ever been to Italy?  (you ever / be / to South America?)
2	(you / read / any English books?)
3	(you / live / in this town all your life?)
4	(now many times / you / be / in love?)
5	(what's the most beautiful country you / ever / visit?)
6	(you ever / speak / to a famous person?)
	The state of the s
4.2	Complete the answers to these questions. Use the verb in brackets.
	Complete the answers to these questions. Use the verb in brackets.  Die: Is it a beautiful painting? (see) Yes, it's the most beautiful painting I've ever seen.
	Complete the answers to these questions. Use the verb in brackets.

			the everale
14.3 N	ow you have to write questions and answers as show	wn in t	ne example.
Exa	ample: Jack is driving a car but he's very nervous		
	You ask: <u>Is this the first time you've dr</u> i		
	Jack: Yes, I've never driven a car b		
1	Len is playing tennis. He's not very good and does	n't kn	ow the rules.
	You ask: Is this the first time		
	Len: Yes, I've		227 YEAR ARE SERVICE THE SERVI
2	Sue is riding a horse. She doesn't look very confid	ent or	comfortable.
_	You ask:		
3	Maria is in England. She's just arrived and it's very		
	You ask:		
	Maria:		
14 4 4	nswer these questions using the words in brackets.		
	ample: When did you last smoke? (for two years)	∐haye	en't smoked for two years.
1	When did it last rain? (for ages) It		for ages.
2	When did they last visit you? (since June) They		
. 3	When did you last play tennis? (for a long time)		
4	- When did you last eat caviar? (never)		H
4 5	When did you last eat caviar? (never)		
5	When did you last drive? (for six months)		
	When did you last drive? (for six months)		
5 6	When did you last drive? (for six months)		
5 6	When did you last drive? (for six months)		
5 6 7	When did you last drive? (for six months)		
5 6	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar)	
5 6 7	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar)	It hasn't rained for ages.
5 6 7 KE'	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar)	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me
5 6 7 <b>KE</b>	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar)	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June.
5 6 7 KE	When did you last drive? (for six months)	1 1 2 3	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo
5 6 7 KE	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar)	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time.
5 6 7 KE	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar) 1 1 2 3	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar.
5 6 7 KE'	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar)	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six
5 6 7 KE'	When did you last drive? (for six months)	1 1 2 3 # 4 5	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months.
5 6 7 KE'	When did you last drive? (for six months)	ar) 1 1 2 3	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain.
5 6 7 KEY	When did you last drive? (for six months)	1 1 2 3 # 4 5	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For 'been to' and 'gone
5 6 7 KEY	When did you last drive? (for six months)	3 4 5	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For "been to" and "gone to" see Unit 13d.).
5 6 7 KEY	When did you last drive? (for six months)	1 1 2 3 # 4 5	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For "been to" and "gone to" see Unit 13d.). She hasn't written to me
5 6 7 KEY	When did you last drive? (for six months)	3 4 5	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For "been to" and "gone to" see Unit 13d.).
5 6 7 KE	When did you last drive? (for six months)	3 4 5	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For "been to" and "gone to" see Unit 13d.). She hasn't written to me
5 6 7 KE	When did you last drive? (for six months)	3 4 5	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For "been to" and "gone to" see Unit 13d.). She hasn't written to me
5 6 7 KE	When did you last drive? (for six months)	1 1 2 3 4 5 6	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For 'been to' and 'gone to' see Unit 13d.). She hasn't written to me since last summer.
5 6 7 KE	When did you last drive? (for six months)	1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	It hasn't rained for ages. They haven't visited me since June. I haven't played tennis fo a long time. I've never eaten caviar. I haven't driven for six months. I've never been to Spain. (For "been to" and "gone to" see Unit 13d.). She hasn't written to me since last summer.

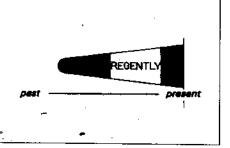
# BÀI 15: PRESENT PERFECT (thì Hiện tại hoàn thành

#### a) Hãy xem ví dụ sau:

Tom: Have you heard from George?
(Ban có nghe tin gì về George chưa?)

Ann: No, he hasn't written to me recently. (Chưa, gần đây anh ấy không viết thư cho tôi).

Chúng ta dùng thì Present Perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành) khi chúng ta nói về một khoảng thời gian kéo dài đến hiện tại. Tom và Ann đang nói chuyện về một khoảng thời gian từ lúc cách đây không lầu cho đến bây giờ. Vì vậy họ nói "have you heard" và "he hasn't written".



#### Dưới đây là một số thí dụ khác:

- Have you seen my dog? I can't find him anywhere.
   (Anh có thấy con chó của tôi đầu không? Tôi không thấy nó đầu cả).
- Everything is going fine. We haven't had any problems so far.
   (Mọi việc đều tiến triển tốt đẹp. Cho đến giờ chúng tội chưa gặp vấn để khó khắn nào cả).
- We've met a lot of interesting people in the last few days.
   (Mäy ngày nay chúng tôi đã gặp rất nhiều người thủ vi).
- Fred has been ill a lot in the past few years, hasn't he? (Máy năm qua Fred bệnh dữ lắm phải không?)
- I haven't seen George recently. Have you?
   (Gắn đây tôi không gặp George. Anh có gặp anh ta không?)

Đối với những câu có dùng for và since, xem bài 18.

- b) Chúng ta thường dùng thì Present Perfect với yet (xem thêm bài 107). Yet chỉ rằng người nói đang mong đợi một điều gì đó xảy ra. Ta chỉ dùng yet trong các câu hỏi và phủ định:
  - Has it stopped raining yet? (not \*did it stop\*)
     (Trơi hết mưa chưa?)
  - I haven't told them about the accident yet. (not "I didn't tell")
     (Tôi chưa kể cho họ nghe về vụ tai nạn).
- c) Chúng ta dùng thì Present Perfect với this morning/this evening/today/this week/this term-v.v... (khi những khoảng thời gian này chưa chẩm dứt vào thời điểm nói):
  - l've smoked ten cigarettes today. (perhaps l'Il smoke more before today finishes)
     (Hôm nay tôi đã hút mười điểu thuốc). (có lễ tôi sẽ hút nhiều hơn trước khi ngày hôm nay chẩm dứt).

- Has Ann had a holiday this year?
   (Năm nay Ann đã đi nghỉ chưa?)
- I haven't seen Tom this morning. Have you? (Sang nay tôi chưa gặp Tom. Ban đã gặp anh ta chưa?)
- (Sang nay toi chua gạp Tom. Bạn da gạp ann ta chu
   Ron hasn't studied very much this term.
   (Học kỳ này Ron chẳng học hành gì nhiều cả).
- Bill is phoning his girl friend again. That's the third time he's phoned her this evening.
   (Bill lại đang gọi điện thoại cho có bạn gái của hắn. Đó là lần thứ ba hắn gọi cho cổ ấy tối nay).

this month

- d) Chúng ta cũng dùng thì Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing) khi chúng ta nói về một khoảng thời gian tiếp tục kéo dài đến hiện tại:
  - I haven't been feeling very well recently.
     (Gân đây tôi không được khỏe).

Đối với thì Present Perfect Continuous xem các bài 16-18, đối với thì Present Perfect và thì Simple Past xem các bài 20,21.

#### **UNIT 15: Exercises**

Ex	rample: (you / hear / from George recently?) <u>Have you heard from George recently</u>
1	(you / read / a newspaper recently?)
2	(you / see / Tom in the past few days?)
3	(you / play / tennis recently?)
4	(you / eat / anything today?)
5	(you / see / any good films recently?)
	(you / have / a holiday this year yet?)
2 7	(you / have / a holiday this year yet?)
2 7	(you / have / a holiday this year yet?)  This time answer the questions in the way shown. Use yet.  xample: Have you seen the new film at the local cinema?  I haven't seen it yet but I'm going to see it.  Have you eaten at the new Italian restaurant?
2 7	(you / have / a holiday this year yet?)
2 7 Ex	(you / have / a holiday this year yet?)  This time answer the questions in the way shown. Use yet.  xample: Have you seen the new film at the local cinema?  I haven't seen it yet but I'm going to see it.  Have you eaten at the new Italian restaurant?  I

15.3	This time you have to complete the sentence. Use so fa	ar.		
E	xamples: I saw Tom yesterday but <u>Lhaven't seen him</u> It rained a lot last week but <u>it hasn't rained m</u>	so far	too	day.
1 2 3 4 5 6	We ate a lot yesterday but we	m	uch . sc t	n so far today.  I far this winter.  Ihis year.  Is term.  I want this evening
<b>15.4</b> <i>(</i>	n this exercise you have to read the situation and then kample: Ron is phoning Jill again. He has already phone it's the third time he has phoned her this eve	oned	a s	twice this evening.
1	You're late again. You've already been late once this it's the second  The car has broken down. It has already broken down it's the	wee	e t	his month.
3	Ann has just finished drinking a cup of tea. She he morning.  It's the fifth	nas al	rea	dy had four cups this
KE	Y			
15.1	Have you read a newspaper recently?     Have you seen Tom in the past few days?     Have you played tennis recently?     Have you eaten anything today?	15.4	1 2	you've been late this week.
	5 Have you seen any good films recently? 6 Have you had a holiday this year yet?		-	It's the third time the car has broken down this month.
15.2	<ul><li>1 t haven't eaten there yet but I'm going to eat there.</li><li>2 I haven't bought one yet but I'm going to buy one.</li><li>3 He hasn't asked her yet but he's going to ask her.</li></ul>	<del>.</del>	3	It's the fifth cup (of tea) she has had (or drunk) this morning.
15.3	1 haven't eaten. 2 hasn't snowed (much) 3 I haven't played (tennis) (much) so far 4 she hasn't worked hard so far 5 but I haven't watched television so far 6 haven't won			

### **BAI 16: PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS** (thì Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

(I have been doing)

a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



- Is it raining? (Trời đang mưa phải không?) No, it isn't but the ground is wet (Không, không phải nhưng đất lại ẩm ướt).
- It has been raining. (Trời vừa mới mưa xong).

Sau đây là thì Present Perfect Continuous.

We / They / You have (= I've ...)

been doing

he / she / it has (= he's ...

Chúng ta dùng thì Present Perfect Continuous (Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn) khi chúng ta nói về một hành động (một hành động diễn ra khá lâu) đã bắt đầu trong quá khứ và gần đây đã chấm dứt hoặc vừa mới chấm dứt. Dưới đây là một số thí dụ:

- You're out of breath. Have you been runing? (Bạn trông như hết hơi đấy, bạn vừa mới chạy phải không?)
- That man over there is bright red. I think he's been sunbathing. (Người đàn ông ở đằng kia da đỏ rần lên. Tôi nghĩ rằng ông ta vừa mới tắm nắng
- Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing? (Sao quần áo bạn bẩn thế? Bạn vừa mới làm gì thế?)
- I've been talking to Tom about your problem and he think ... (Tôi vừa mới nói chuyện với Tom về vấn đề của bạn và anh ta nghĩ rằng...)
- b) Chúng ta cũng dùng thì Present Perfect Continuous để hỏi hoặc nói rằng một việc đã xảy ra trong thời gian bao lâu. Trong trường hợp này hành động hoặc tình huống đã bắt đầu trong quá khứ và hiện vẫn đang diễn ra hoặc vừa mới chấm dứt.

Hãy xem xét thí dụ sau:



It is raining now. It began to rain two hours ago and it is still raining.

(Lúc này trời đang mưa. Trời đã bắt đầu mưa cách đây hai giờ và trời vẫn đang mưa).

It has been raining for two hours.

(Trời đã mưa được hai tiếng rồi).

Chúng ta thường dùng thì Present Perfect Continuous theo cách này, đặc biệt là với how long, for và since.

Sau đây là một số thí dụ khác:

- How long have you been learning English?
   (Ban học tiếng Anh được bao lâu rồi?).
- They've been waiting here for over an hour.
   (Ho đã chở ở đây hơn một giờ rối).
- 'I've been watching television since 2 o'clock. (Tôi đã xem TV từ 2 gið).
- George hasn't been feeling very well recently.
   (Gần đây George cầm thấy không được khỏe lầm).
- Have you been working hard to day?
   (Hôm nay bạn làm việc mệt nhọc lắm phải không?)

Bạn cũng có thể dùng thì **Present Perfect Continuous** (với *how long, for* và *since*) đối với những hành động lặp đi lặp lại trong một khoảng thời cian nào đó.

- She has been playing tennis since she was eight.
   (Cô ấy đã chơi quần vợt từ lúc cô ấy lên 8 tuổi).
- How long have you been smoking?
   (Bạn hút thuốc được bao lâu rồi?)

#### **UNIT 16: Exercises**

•	esent perfect continuous (I have been doing). kample: Tom is out of breath, (he/run) <u>He has been running.</u>
1 2 3	Ann is very tired. (she/work/hard)
4	Janet is hot and tired (she / play / tennis)
16.2	This time you have to ask a question for each situation.
16.2	
16.2	This time you have to ask a question for each situation.  xample: Your friend's hands are covered in oil. (you / work / on the car?)
16.2 î	This time you have to ask a question for each situation.  xample: Your friend's hands are covered in oil. (you / work / on the car?)  Have you been working on the car?

Example: It is raining now. It began raining two hours ago.
It has been raining for two hours.

1		vin is studying. He began studying	_			
2		learning Spanish. I started learning				
3	An	n is looking for a job. She began lo	oking six months ago.			
4	Ma	ary is working in London. She starte	d working there on 18 January.			
5	George smokes. He started smoking five years ago.  for five years.					
		s exercise you have to ask question ble: It is raining. How long has it bee	<del>-</del>			
1 2 3 4	Mil Jin	v foot is hurtingke plays chess n sells washing machines m is living fin High Street	How long			
KE'	Y					
16.1	1 2 3 4	She has been working hard. Bob and Bilt have been fighting. He has been lying in the sun. She has been playing tennis.				
16.2	1 2 3	Have you been crying? Have you been waiting long? What have you been doing?				
16.3	1 2 3 4 5	He has been studying for three ho I've been learning Spanish since I She has been looking for a job for She has been working in London He has been smoking for five yea	December. six months since 18 January.			
16.4	1 2 3 4	How long has your foot been hunti How long has Mike been playing of How long has Jim been selling wa How long has Tom been living in I	chess? ashing machines?			

# BÀI 17: PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing) hay PRESENT PERFECT (I have done)?

a) Hãy xem xét các tình huống mẫu sau:



Ann's clothes are covered in paint. She has been painting the ceiling.

(Quần áo của Ann dính đẩy sơn. Cô ấy đã sơn trần nhà).

Has been painting là thì Present Perfect Continuous (Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn).

Chúng ta hãy chú ý đến hành động, việc hành động đó có được hoàn thành hay chưa, là không quan trọng. Ở thí dụ trên, hành động chưa được hoàn thành.

Sau đây là một vài cặp ví dụ khác.

- Tom's hands are very dirty. He has been repairing the car. (Hai bàn tay của Tom rất bẩn. Anh ta đã sửa xe hơi).
- You've been smoking too much recently. You should smoke less.
  (Gần đây anh hút thuốc nhiều quá. Anh nên hút ít đi).



The ceiling was white. Now it's blue. She has painted the ceiling.

(Trước đây trần nhà màu trắng. Bây giờ nó màu xanh. Cổ ấy đã sơn lại trần nhà).

Has painted là thì Present Perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành).

Ở đây, điều quan trọng là hành động đã được hoàn thành. Chúng ta quan tâm đến kết quả của hành động, chứ không phải bản thân hành động đó.

- The car is going again now. Tom has repaired it.
  (Bây giờ xe hơi lại chạy được rồi. Tom đã sửa nó).
- Somebody has smoked all my cigarettes. The packet is empty.
   (Ai đó đã hút hết thuốc là của tôi. Gói thuốc trống rỗng rồi).

b)

Chúng ta dùng thể tiếp diễn (continuous) để nói một việc nào đó đã diễn ra trong bao lâu (+ how long):

Ann has been writing letters all day. (Ann đã viết thư cả ngày).

Chúng ta dùng thể đơn (simple) để nói số lượng hoặc số lần mà chúng ta đã thực hiện được (+ how much, how many):

Ann has written ten letters today. (Hôm nay Ann đã viết được mười lá thư).

- How long have you been reading that book? (Anh đã đọc quyển sách đó bao lâu
  - rői?) Jim has been playing tennis since 2
  - o'clock. (Jim đã chơi quần vợt từ lúc 2 giờ đến aiờ).
- How many pages of that book have you read?
  - (Anh đã đọc được bao nhiều trang trona auven sách đó rồi).
- Jim has played tennis three times this week.
  - (Tuần này Jim đã chơi quần vợt ba

Hav xem bài 18 để biết thêm về thì Present Perfect và how long?

 Một số động từ không được dùng ở thể tiếp diễn. Thí dụ như: know. Bạn phải nói have known, (Chứ không nói: have been knowing). Xem bảng liệt kê các động từ này ở bài 3b.

#### **UNIT 17: Exercises**

17.1 In this exercise you have	to read the situation an	nd then write two sentend	es, one with
the present perfect simple	(I have done) and one	with the present perfect	continuous (l
have been doing).		•	

Example: Tom is reading a book. He started two hours ago and he is on page 53. (he/read/for two hours) He has been reading for two hours.

(he/read/53 pages so far) He has read 53 pages so far.

1	Linda is from Australia. Now she is travelling round Europe. She began her tour three months ago.
	(she/travel/around Europe for three months)
	(she/visit/six countries so far)
2	
	Now he has just won the national championship for the fourth time.
	(he/play/tennis since he was 11)
	(he/win/the national championship four times)
3	Bill and Andy make films. They started making films together when they left college.
	(they/make/films since they left college)
	(they/make/ten films since they left college)
	This time you have to imagine that you are talking to a friend. Read the situation and

17. ask a question beginning in the way shown.

Example: Your friend is learning Arabic. How long have you been learning Arabic?

- Your friend is waiting for you. How long .....
- Your friend writes books. How many books .....
- Your friend writes books. How long .....

4	Your friend plays football for his country. How many times
h	in this exercise you have to put the verb into the correct form, present perfect simple (1 ave done) or continuous (I have been doing).  xamples: I have lost (lost) my key. Can you help me look for it?  You look tired. Have you been working (you/work) hard?
1 2	Look! Somebody (break) that window.
3 4	"Sorry I'm late". "That's all right. I
5 6	There's a strange smell in here
17.1	1 She has been travelling around Europe for three months. She has visited six countries so far.
2	He has been playing tennis since he was 11. ("has played" is also possible - see Unit 18c.) He has won the national championship four times.
3	They have been making films since they left college. They have made ten films since they left college.
	How long have you been waiting (for me)?
	How many books have you written?  How long have you been writing books?
	How many times have you played (football) for your country?
	has broken
	have been reading haven't finished
	haven't been waiting
<b>4</b> 5	The second of th
6	,

# BÀI 18: PRESENT PERFECT và PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS với how long, for và since

a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Bob và Alice là vợ chồng. Họ đã cưới nhau cách đây đúng 20 năm. Vì thế hôm nay là kỷ niệm 20 năm ngày cưới của họ.

They have been married for 20 years.

(Họ đã cưới nhau được 20 năm rồi).

Chúng ta dùng thì Present Perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành) để diễn đạt một sự việc đã tổn tại xảy ra được bao lâu:

They are married\_ Họ là vợ chồng How long have they been married?
 (Họ đã cưới nhau được bao lâu rồi?)
 They have been married for 20 years.

(Họ đã cưới nhau được 20 năm rồi).

b) Chúng ta cũng dùng thì Present Perfect Continuous (Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn) (I have been doing) để nói một việc nào đó đã xảy ra được bao lâu.

Chú ý rằng hành động đó hiện thời vẫn đang diễn ra:

- l've been learning English for a long time. (Tôi đã học tiếng Anh lâu rồi).
- Sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting long? (Xin lỗi vì tôi đến trễ. Anh đợi có lâu không?)
- It's been raining since I got up this morning. (Trời đã mưa từ lúc tôi thức dậy sáng nay).

Đôi khi hành động đó là một hành động lặp đi lặp lại (xem thêm bài 16b):

- Tom has been driving for ten years.
   (Tom đã lái xe được mười năm rồi).
- How long have you been smoking? (Anh đã hút thuốc được bao lâu rồi?)

Thì continuous (I have been doing) hay thì simple (I have done) có thể được dùng cho các hành động lặp đi lặp lại trong một khoảng thời gian dài:

- l've been collecting / l've collected stamps since I was a child.
   (Tôi đã sưu tập tem từ khi tôi còn bé).
- c) Chúng ta dùng thì simple (I have done) cho các tình huống tổn tại trong một thời gian dài (nhất là khi chúng ta dùng always). Chú ý rằng tình huống đó hiện thời vẫn đang tồn tai:
  - My father has always worked hard. (not "has always been working") (Cha tôi luôn làm việc siêng năng). (không dùng "has always been working").

Chúng ta dùng thi Continuous cho các tinh huống tồn tại trong khoảng thời gian ngắn hơn.

- John has been living in London since January.
   (John đã sống ở Luân Đôn từ tháng Giêng).
- John has always lived in London.
   (John luôn luôn sống ở Luân Đôn).
- d) Một số động từ (thí dụ như be, have, know) thường không được dùng ở hình thức continuous (xem bài 3b để biết dạnh sách và bài 24 để biết thêm về have):
  - How long have Bob and Alice been married?
     (Bob và Alice láy nhau được bao lâu rồi?)
  - Ton has had a cold for the past week. (not "has been having")
     (Suốt tuần rồi Tom đã bị cảm lạnh).
  - Tom and I have known each other since we were at school. (Tom và tôi đã biết nhau từ lúc chúng tôi còn đi học).
- e) Đứng dùng thì Simple Present (I do) hoặc thi Present Continuous (I am doing) để nói rằng một việc nào đó đã xảy ra được bao lâu rồi:
  - I've been waiting here for an hour. (not "I am waiting")
     (Tôi đã chở đây một tiếng rối). (không dùng "I am waiting")
  - How long have you known Tom? (not "do you known")
     (Anh đã biết Tom được bao lâu rối?) (không dùng "do you known")

#### **UNIT 18: Exercises**

18.1 <i>A</i> Ex	Are these sentences right or wrong? Corre camples: How long have Bob and Alice b I know Bob for five years.	ect the ones which are wrong. been married? RIGHT WRONG - have known
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Sue and Alan are married since July. It is raining all day. How long has George been unemployed Have you always been living in this how long has Ken a beard? How long do you know Ann? She has been ill for quite a long time.	
8.2 7	his time you have to write questions with	how long?
	amples: Jim is learning Chinese. I know Bob. My sister is married. How long Boris is on holiday. How long I live in Glasgow It is snowing	How long has he been learning Chinese? How long have you known Bob?

3	I know about her problem
7	Jack and Jill are looking for a flat
В	Diana teaches English in Germany
9	Dennis is in love with Margaret
10	Colin has a car
	this exercise you have to read a sentence and then write another sentence with sin
•	for.
Ex	ample: I know Bob. (for five years) Lhave known Bob for five years.
1	Jack lives in Bolton. (since he was born) Jack
2	Bill is unemployed. (since April) Bill
3	Ann has a bad cold. (for the last few days)
_	I want to go to the moon. (since I was a child)
-	My brother is studying languages at university (for two years)
_	Tim and Jane are working in Sheffied. (since February)
-	My cousin is in the army. (since he was 17)
•	They are waiting for us. (for half an hour)
0	They are watering for do. (for that are troon)
	7 3 9 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10

- 18.1 1 wrong have been married
  - wrong has been raining
  - 3 riaht
  - 4 wrong have you always lived
  - 5 wrong has Ken had
  - wrong have you known
  - right
- 18.2 1 How long has your sister been married?
  - How long has Boris been on holiday?
  - How long have you lived in Glasgow / ...have you been living in Glasgow?
  - How long has it been snowing?
  - How long has Jack smoked? / ... has Jack been smoking?
  - How long have you known about her problem?
  - How long have Jack and Jill been looking for a flat?
  - How long has Diana been teaching in Germany? / ... has Diana taught in Germany?
  - How long has Dennis been in love with Margaret? / How long have they been in love?

- 10 How long has Colin had a car?
- 18.3 1 Jack has lived in Bolton since he was born.
  - Bill has been unemployed since April.
  - Ann has had a bad cold for the last few days.
  - I have wanted to go to the moon since I was a child.
  - studying My brother has been languages at university for two years.
  - Tim and Jane have been working in Sheffied since February.
  - My cousin has been in the army since he was 17.
  - They have been waiting for us for half an hour.

### BÀI 19: PRESENT PERFECT với how long, và SIMPLE PAST với when, SINCE và FOR

#### a) Dùng thì Simple Past (I did) để hỏi hay nói khi nào một việc gì đó xảy ra:

- A: When did it start raining? (Trời đã bắt đầu mưa từ lúc nào?)
- B: It started raining at one o'clock/an hour ago.
   (Trời đã bắt đầu mưa vào lúc một giờ/cách đây một giờ).
- A: When did Tom and Ann first meet? (Tom và Ann gặp nhau lần đầu khi nào?)
- B: They first met when they were a school/a long time ago.
   (Họ gặp nhau lần đầu tiên khi còn đi học/cách đây tâu rồi)

Dùng thì **Present Perfect Continuous** (I have done/I have been đồing) để hỏi hay nói một việc gi đó đã diễn ra <u>được bao lâu</u> (tính đến thời điểm hiện tại).

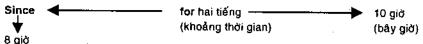
- A: How long has it been raining? (Trời đã mưa được bao lâu rồi?)
- B: It has been raining since one o'clock/for an hour.
   (Trởi đã mưa từ lúc một giờ/được một giờ rối).
- A: How long have Tom and Ann known each other?
   (Tom và Ann đã quen nhau được bao lâu rói?)
- B: They've known each other since they were at school/for a long time.
   (Ho đã quen nhau từ lúc còn đi học/lâu lắm rối).

#### b) Since và for:

Chúng ta dùng cả since lẫn for để nói một việc gì đó đã xảy ra được bao lâu:

- I've been waiting for you since 8 o'clock.
   (Tôi đã chở bạn từ 8 giờ đến giờ)
- I've been waiting for you for two hours.
   (Tôi đã chở bạn hai tiếng đồng hố rồi)

Chúng ta dùng since khi nói đến thời điểm bắt đầu của một khoảng thời gian (8 giờ). Chúng ta dùng for khi nói đến một khoảng thời gian (2 giờ),



(thời gian bắt đầu một khoảng thời gian) since (từ ...) for (trong ...) 8 o'clock 1977 two hours a week Monday Christmas ten minutes five years 12 May lunch time three days a long time April we arrived six months ages

- She's been working here since April. (= from April until now)
   Cô ấy làm việc ở đây từ tháng Tư. (= từ tháng Tư đến nay)
- She's been working here for six months. (not "since six months")
   Cô ấy làm việc ở đây được sáu tháng rối.
- I haven't seen Tom since Monday. (= from Monday until now)
   Tôi không gặp Tom từ thứ Hai (≈ từ thứ Hai đến giờ)
- I haven't seen Tom for three days. (not "since three days")
   Tôi không gặp Tom ba ngày rối.

Chúng ta không dùng for trong các cách diễn đạt với all (all day/all morning/all week/all my life, v.v...

- I've lived here all my life. (not "for all my life")
   (Tôi đã sống ở đây suốt đời tôi)
- c) Hãy lưu ý đến cấu trúc How long is it since ...? (Đã bạo lâu rồi kể từ khi ...?
  - A: How long is it since you had a holiday?
     (Từ lúc anh đi nghỉ đến nay đã bao lâu rồi?)
  - B: It's two years since I had a holiday. (= I haven't had a holiday for two years)
     (Đã hai năm rối kể từ khi tôi đi nghĩ) (= Tôi đã không đi nghĩ hai năm nay rồi)
  - It's ages since Tom visited us (= He hasn't visited us for ages)
     (Đã lâu lấm rối kể từ khi Tom đến thăm chúng ta) (= Đã lâu lấm rối anh ấy không đến thăm chúng ta)

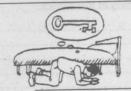
#### **UNIT 19: Exercises**

Еx	ample:	It is training. (How long/it/rain?) How long has it been raining? (when/it/start/raining?) When did it start raining?
1	Ann is	learning Italian.
	(how l	ong/she/learn/Italian?)
	(when	/ she / learn / Italian?)
2	1 know	Tom.
	(how l	ong/you/know/Tom?)
	(when	/you/first/meet/Tom?)
3	Bob a	nd Alice are married.
	(how l	ong/they/be/married?)
	(when	/they/get/married?)

1. It's been raining ....... I got up this morning.

# BÀI 20: PRESENT PERFECT (I have done) hay SIMPLE PAST (I did) (1)

#### a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Đây là Tom. Anh ta đang tìm chiếc chìa khóa. Anh ta không tìm thấy nó.

He has lost his key (Present Perfect) (Anh ta đã làm mất chìa khóa)

Điểu này có nghĩa là hiện thời anh ta chưa tìm thấy chiếc chìa khóa.

#### Năm phút sau:



Now Tom has found his key. (Bây giờ Tom đã tìm ra chìa khóa)

Điều này có nghĩa là giờ đây anh ta đang có chìa

khóa để sử dụng.

Has he lost his key? (present perfect) (Anh ta đã đánh mất chìa khóa rồi à?) (thì Hiện tai hoàn thành).

No, he hasn't. He has found it. (Không, không có. Anh ta đã tìm thấy nó) Did he lose his key? (past simple) (Anh ta có đánh mất chìa khóa không?) (thì Quá khứ đơn)

Yes, he did.

(Có, anh ta có đánh mất chìa khóa)

He lost (past simple) his key but now he has found (present perfect) it.

(Anh ta đã đánh mất (thì Quá khứ đơn) chìa khóa nhưng bây giờ anh ta đã tìm thấy (thì Hiện tại hoàn thành) nó.

Thì Present Perfect (has lost) luôn luôn cho chúng ta biết điểu gi đó có quan hệ tới hiện tại. "He has lost his key" cho chúng ta biết rằng hiện thời anh ta chưa tìm thấy nó (xem bài 13). Thì Simple Past (lost) chỉ cho chúng ta biết về quá khứ mà thối. Nếu chúng ta nói "He lost his key", chúng ta không biết được hiện giờ anh ta đã tìm thấy hay chưa. Chúng ta chỉ biết được rằng anh ta đã đánh mất chìa khóa vào một thời điểm nào đó trong quá khứ.

Sau đây là một vài thí dụ khác:

He grew a beard but now he has shaved it off (= He hasn't got a beard now) (Anh ta đã để một bộ râu quai nón nhưng bây giờ anh ta đã cạo đi rồi) (= bây giờ anh ta không để râu).

- Prices fell but now they have risen again. (= They are high now)
   (Giá cả đã hạ xuống nhưng bây giờ chúng đã tăng trở lại) (= hiện giờ giá cả rất cao).
- Đừng dùng thì Present Perfect (I have done) đối với những sự việc hay hành động không liên hệ đến hiện tại (thí dụ như các biến cố lịch sử):
  - The Chinese invented printing (not "have invented") (Người Trung Quốc đã phát minh ra việc in ấn).
  - Shakespeare wrote Hamlet. (not "has written")
     (Shakespeare da viét vô kich Hamlet)
  - How many symphonies did Beethoven compose? (not "has ... composed")
     (Beethoven dā soan bao nhiệu bản giao hưởng?)
- c) Chúng ta dùng thì Present Perfect hiện tại hoàn thành (I have done) để đưa ra thông tin mới hoặc loàn báo một việc vừa mới xẩy ra (xem bài 13). Nhưng nếu chúng ta tiếp tục nói về điều đó, chúng ta thường dùng thì SImple Past (I did).
  - A: Ow! I've burnt myself! (Öl Tôi bi phòng rôil)
  - B: How did you do that? (not "have you done") (Tai sao vây?)
  - A: I touched a hot dish. (not "have touched")
    (Tôi sở vào một cái đĩa nóng)
  - A: Look! Somebody has spilt milk on the carpet. (Nhìn kìa! Ai đó đã đánh đổ sữa lên tẩm thăm)
  - B: Well, it wasn't me. I didn't do it (not "hasn't been ... haven't done")
     (Ô! không phải tôi đầu. Tôi không làm việc đó).
  - A: I wonder who it was then. (not "who is has been")
     (Thể thì không biết ai đã làm điều đó)

Để biết thêm về thì Present Perfect và thì Simple Past, xem bài 21.

#### **UNIT 20: Exercises**

20.1 In this exercise you have to read the situation and then write a sentence. Use the verbs given in brackets. Read the example carefully first.

Example: Ten minutes ago Tom lost his key. Now he has it in his hand. (lose/find) Tom lost his key but now he has found it.

1	I lost a lot of weight but now I am too heavy again.
	(lose weight / put on weight) I but now I
2	She went to Australia but now she is back in Britain again.
	(go / come back) She but now
3	Last year Kevin bought a car. Now it belongs to someone else.
	(buy / sell)
4	The police arrested the man but now he is at home again.
	(arrest / release)
5	Bill cut his hair. Now it is long again.
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

. 6		risoner escaped fro pe / be caught)				
		underlined parts of	these sentence	es rigl	nt or wrong? C	orrect the ones which a
	vrong. Tvomolos	v. Hava vav bassala	O			
	схитрівѕ	: Have you heard?			iarriedi	BIGHT
		The Chinese hav	<u>e invented</u> prir	nting.		WRONG-invented
1		<u>has written</u> the play			-	** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
2	Aristo	tle <u>has beeñ</u> a Gre	ek philosophei	۲.		
-3		ve cut my finger. It				
4	Look	at George! He <u>had</u>	a haircut.			
5		andparents <u>got</u> ma		٦.		
6		in was the physicis			d the theory o	relativity
20.3 8	A: Yi B: Yi A: B: No A: Di B: Ro A: Hi		ody has spilt ( it (not/be) me. b it was (be) th ent(you/cut)(cu	spill) I didn en. it you t) it fo	milk_on the car 't do (not/do) it (y  urself?  or me. (that/hap)	cu/have) a haircut?  (break) his leg.
20.1	2 She 3 Kev 4 The mar 5 Bill	(a lot of) weight but went to Australia be went to Australia be in bought a car (last police arrested the new arrested by the cut his hair but now prisoner escaped	out now she ha at year) but now man but now ne police but n vit has grown	is con whethey: they: owher (again	ne back (to Bri nas sold it (to s have released thas been rele n).	tain) (again). comeone else). him (again). / The eased (again).
20.2	1 wro	ng-Who wrote	20.3	1	Have you had	1
	_	ng-Aristotle was			Did you cut	
	3 righ	_			cut	
		ng-He has had		0		healest is size ====:!=!=
		-		2	-	'broke" is also possible
	5 righ				here)	
	6 wro	ng who develop	ed		fell	•

## BAI 21: PRESENT PERFECT (I have done) hay SIMPLE PAST (I did)? (2)

- a) Đừng dùng thì Present Perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành) (I have done) khi bạn đang nói về một thời điểm hoặc một thời gian đã kết thúc trong quá khứ. (Thí dụ: yesterday, two years ago, in 1979, when I was a child). Hãy dùng thì Simple Past (Quá khứ đơn):
  - Tom lost his key yesterday. (not "has lost") (Hôm qua Tom đánh mất chìa khóa).
  - Did you see the film on television last night? (not "have you seen"). (Ban có xem bộ phim trên T.V tối hôm qua không?)
  - Mr Greaves retired from his job two years ago. (not "has retired") (Ông Greaves về hưu cách đây 2 năm).
  - I ate a lot of sweets when I was a child. (not "have eaten") (Tôi ăn rất nhiều keo khi còn bé).

Dùng thì Simple Past để hỏi một việc nào đó đã xảy ra khi nào.

- What time did they arrive? (not "have they arrived") (Ho đã đến vào lúc nào thế?)
- When were you born? (not "have you been born") (Anh sinh năm nào?)

#### Hãy so sánh:

Tom has lost his key (present perfect) (Tom đã đánh mất chìa khóa) (thì Hiện tại hoàn thành).

Ở đây chúng ta không đang nghĩ về hành động quá khứ, chúng ta đang nghĩ về kết quả của hành động đó ở hiện tại: hiện tại anh ta không có chia khóa.

Tom lost his key yesterday, (simple past) (Tom đánh mất chìa khóa hôm qua). (thì Quá khứ đơn)

Ở đây chúng ta đang nghĩ về hành động quá khứ. Chúng ta không biết được Tom đã tim ra chìa khóa hay chưa.

b) Bây giờ hãy so sánh các câu sau: Present Perfect (I have done) Simple Past (I did) I've smoked 20 cigarettes today. I smoked 20 cigarettes yesterday. (Hôm nay tôi đã hút 20 điểu thuốc lá). (Hôm qua tôi đã hút 20 điểu thuốc lá). Hôm nay là một khoảng thời gian kéo Hôm qua là thời gian đã kết thúc trọng dài đến hiện tại. Khoảng thời gian này chưa quá khứ. Vì vậy chúng ta dùng thì simple kết thúc. Vi vậy chúng ta dùng thì present past. perfect. Hiện tại Hiện tại Quá khứ today thời gian Quá khứ yesterday (thời

chưa kết thúc.

gian đã kết thúc)

- Tom hasn't been ill this year. (Năm nay Tom chưa hể bị bệnh).
- Have you seen Ann this morning?
   (It is still morning)
   (Sáng nay bạn có gặp Ann không?)
   (Hiện giờ vẫn còn là buổi sáng)
- Have you seen Ann recently?
   (Gån dåy ban có gặp Ann không?)
- We've been waiting for an hour.
  (We are still waiting).
  (Chúng tôi đã chở một tiếng đồng hỗ rồi).
  - (Chúng tội vẫn đang chờ).
  - Lan has lived in London for six years.
     (He still lives there).
     (Lan đã sống ở Luân Đôn 6 năm nay).
     (Anh ta vẫn còn sống ở đó).
  - I have never played golf (in my life).
     (Tôi chưa hể chơi gôn (trong đời).

Thì present perfect luôn luôn có một sư liên hệ với hiện tại. Xem các bài 13-20.

- Tom wasn't ill last year.
   (Năm ngoái Tom không bị bệnh).
- Did you see Ann this morning? (It is now afternoon).
   Sáng nay bạn có gặp Ann không? (Hiện giờ là buổi chiều).
- Did you see Ann last week? (Tuần trước bạn có gặp Ann không?)
- We waited (or were waiting) for an hour.

  We are an inner waiting!
  - (We are no longer waiting). (Chúng tôi đã chở trong một tiếng đồng hồ).
  - (Chúng tội không còn chờ nữa). Ian *lived* in Scotland for ten years.
- (He ng longer lives there).
  (Ian đã sống ở Scotland mười năm).
  (Anh ta không còn sống ở đó nữa).
- I didn't play golf when I was on holiday last summer. (Năm ngoài tôi không chơi gôn khi tôi đi nghỉ hè).

Thì simple past chỉ cho chúng ta biết về quá khứ. Xem các bài 11,12 và 20. UNIT 21: Exercises

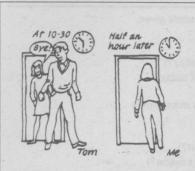
#### **UNIT 21: Exercises**

21.1 In this exercise you have to put the verb into the correct form, present perfect (I have done) or simple past (I dld). Examples: I have lost (lose) my key. I can't find it anywhere. Did you see (you/see) the film on television last night? Jill ......(buy) a new car two weeks ago. 1 His hair is very short. He \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a haircut. 2 Last night I ..... (arrive) home at half past twelve. I \_\_\_\_\_(go) to bed. ..... (you/visit) many museums when you were in Paris? 4 My bicycle isn't here any more. Somebody ...... (take) it. 5 When ..... (you/give) up smoking? 6 7 Why \_\_\_\_\_ (Jim/not/want) to play tennis last Friday?

9	The car looks very clean	(go) o	ut.			
	his time you have to make sentences		n.			
£3	amples: (I / smoke / 20 cigarettes ye I smoked 20 cigarettes yest					
	(how many cigarettes / you	•				
	How many cigarettes have you smoked today?					
1	(I / be / ill twice so far this year)					
2	(how many times / be / you / ill last	year?) How many tiπ	165			
3	(I / not / drink / any coffee so far tod					
4	(he / be / late three times this week		_			
5 6	(how many games / the team / win /					
	(how many games / the team / win /	so far this season?)				
21.3 F	rut the verb into the correct form, pres	ent perfect (I have d	one) or simple past (I did).			
Ex	ample: I didn't play (not/play) golf who	en l'was on holiday la	ast summer.			
1	Mr. Clark (work) in	a heak for 15 years	Then he cave it up			
2	Molly lives in Dublin. She	(live) there	all har life			
3	Bob and Alice are married. They	(be) mar	rried for 20 years			
4	When we were on holiday, the weat	ther	(be) awful.			
5	The weather (be	e) very nice recently,	don't you think?			
6	My grandfather died 30 years ago.					
7	I don't know Carol's husband. I	(neve	r/meet) him,			
			•			
KE'	<u> </u>	·				
21.1	l bought	2 How many ti	mes were you ill last			
:	2 has had	year?				
:	3 arrived had went		nk any coffee so far today.			
•	Did you visit	the state of the s	late three times this week.			
	5 has taken	season?	ames did the team win last			
	did you give		ames did the team win last			
	7 didn't eat didn't feel	season?				
	didn't Jim want	6 How many g	ames has the team won so			
	Have you washed	far this seaso				
10	has gone did he go	21.3 1 worked	5 has been			
21.2 1	I have been ill twice so far this	2 has lived	6 never met			
	vear.	3' have been	7 have never met			

## BÀI 22: PAST PERFECT (I had done)

#### a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Tuần trước tôi đí dự một bữa tiệc. Tom cũng đến dự bữa tiệc đó.

Tom đã về nhà lúc 10 giờ 30. Vì vậy, khi tôi đến vào lúc 11 giờ, Tom không có mặt ở đó. Khi tôi đến dự tiệc, Tom không có mặt ở đó.

He had gone home.

(Anh ta đã về nhà).

Sau đây là thì Past Perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành):

I/he/she (v.v...) had (= I'd/he'd/she'd v.v...) gone\* I/he/she (v.v...) hadn't gone. had you/he/she (v.v...) gone?

Chúng ta thành lập thì Past Perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành) với had + past participle (gone/opened/written v.v...) Đối với những past participles bất qui tắc, hãy xem phần phụ lục 2.

Đôi khi chúng ta nói về một việc nào đó đã xảy ra trong quá khứ:

I arrived at the party.
 (Tôi đã đến dư bữa tiệc).

Chúng ta dùng thì past perfect để nói rằng một việc nào đó đã xảy ra trước thời điểm này.

When I arrived at the party. Tom had already gone home.
 (Khi tôi đến dự tiệc, Tom đã về nhà rồi).

Sau đây là một số thí dụ khác:

- When I got home, I found that someone had broken into my flat and had stolen my fur coat.
  - (Khi tôi về nhà, tôi phát hiện ra rằng ai đó đã đột nhập vào căn hộ của tôi và đã đánh cấp chiếc áo khoác lông của tôi).
- George didn't want to come to the cinema with us because he had already seen the film twice.
  - (George không muốn đi xem phim với chúng tôi vì anh ta đã xem bộ phim đó hai lần rồi).
- It was my first time in an aeroplane. I was very nervous because I hadn't flown before.
  - (Đó là lần đầu tiên tôi đi máy bay. Tôi rất lo lắng vì trước đây tôi chưa hề đi máy bay).
- b) Thì past perfect (I had done) là quá khứ của thì present perfect (I have done). Hãy so sánh các tình huống sau:

#### Hiện tại

- I'm not hungry. I've just had lunch. (Tôi không đói. Tôi vừa mới ăn trưa xong).
- The house is dirty. We haven't cleaned it for weeks.
   (Căn nhà hiện giờ rất bắn. Đã mấy tuần rối chúng tôi chưa lau nó).

#### Quá khứ

- I wasn't hungry. I'd just had lunch.
   (Tôi đã không đói. Tôi vừa mới ăn trưa).
- The house was dirty. We hadn't cleaned it for weeks.
   (Căn nhà đã rất bắn. Đã mấy tuần rồi chúng tôi không lau nó).
- c) Hãy so sánh thì past perfect (I had done) và thì simple past (I did).
  - "Was Tom there when you arrived?" "No, he had already gone home" ("Khi bạn đến Tom có mặt ở đó không?" "Không, anh ta đã về nhà rối")

Nhưng:

- "Was Tom there when you arrived?" "Yes, but he went home soon afterward" ("Khi ban đến Tom có mặt ở đó không?" "Có, nhưng anh ta đã về nhà ngay sau đó")
- Ann wasn't in when I phoned her. She was in London.
   (Ann không có ở nhà khi tôi gọi điện thoại cho cô ấy. Cô ấy đang ở Luân Đôn).

Đối với thì Past Perfect Continuous, xem bài 23.

Nhưng: Ann had just gọt home when I phoned her. She had been in London. (Anh vừa về đến nhà khi tôi gọi điện cho cô ấy. Cô ấy đã đi Luân Đôn).

#### **UNIT 22: Exercises**

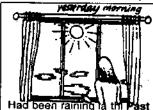
- - 4 I didn't recognise Mrs. Johnson. She ...... (change) a lot.
  - 5 Bill no longer had his car. He ...... (sell) it.
- 22.2 Complete these sentences as in the example. Use the verb in brackets.
  - Example: Mr. and Mrs. Dayis were in an aeroplane. They were very nervous as the plane took off because they (fly) had never flown before.
    - 1 The woman was a complete stranger to me (see), I ...... before.
    - 2 2 Margaret was late for work. Her boss was very surprised (be/late). She
    - 3 Jane played tennis yesterday-at least she tried to play tennis. She wasn't very good at it because she (play)

•	4	It was Keith's first driving lesson. He was (drive). He	very nervous and didn't know what to do
22.3	B Na Èxa	ow you have to make sentences using the ample: I wasn't hungry. (I/just/have/lunch)	words in brackets. I had just had lunch.
	1	Tom wasn't at home when I arrived. (he/ji	ust/go/out)
	2 .	We arrived at the cinema late. (the film/al	ready/begin)
	3	They weren't eating when I went to see the	·
	4		couldn't come. (she/already/arrange/to do
	5	I was very pleased to see Nora again aft years)	er such a long time. (I/not/see/her for five
22.4	l Pe	ut the verb into the correct form, past perfe	ct (I had done) or past-simple (I did).
	Exa	amples: "Was Tom there when you arrived Was Tom there when you arrived afterwards".	?" "No, he <u>had gone</u> (go) home". ?" "Yes, but he <u>went</u> (go) home soon
	1	The house was very quiet when I got hom	ne. Everyhody (rio) to hed
	2	I felt very tired when I got home, so I	(go) straight to bed
:	3	Sorry I'm late. The car	(break) down on my way here.
	4	There was a car by the side of the road.	It (break) down and the driver
		was trying to repair it. So we	(stop) to see if we could help
		,	
KE	ΞΥ		
22.1		had gone	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	2	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•
	3	had dled	
	4		
	5		
22.2			
	2		•
	3	She had never been late before.	•
		She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before	
22.3	4	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before.	
	1	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone out.	
	1 2	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone out. The film had already begun.	
	3 1	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone out. The film had already begun. They had just finished their dinner.	
	3 1 3 4	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone out. The film had already begun. They had just finished their dinner. She had already arranged to do someth	
	3 3 4 5	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone out. The film had already begun. They had just finished their dinner. She had already arranged to do someth I hadn't seen her for five years.	
22.4	3 4 5 1 1	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone oùt. The film had already begun. They had just finished their dinner. She had already arranged to do someth I hadn't seen her for five years. had gone	
22.4	3 4 5 1 2	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone oùt. The film had already begun. They had just finished their dinner. She had already arranged to do sometr I hadn't seen her for five years. had gone went	
22.4	3 4 5 1 1	She had never been late before she had never played (tennis) before He had never driven (a car) before. He had just gone oùt. The film had already begun. They had just finished their dinner. She had already arranged to do sometr I hadn't seen her for five years. had gone went	

# BÀI 23: PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I

### had been doing)

#### a) Hāy xem xét tình hưởng mẫu sau:



Sáng hóm qua tôi thức dậy và nhìn ra ngoài cửa số. Mặt trời dang chiếu sáng nhưng mặt đất lại rất ẩm ướt.

It had been raining.

(Trước đó trời đã mựa).

Trời không đang mưa khi tôi nhìn ra ngoài của sổ ; lúc đó mặt trời đang chiếu sáng, Nhưng trời đã mưa. Đó là lý do tại sao mặt đất ẩm ướt.

ast Perfect Continuous (Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn).

#### Dưới đây là một vài thí dụ khác:

- When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one had a black eye. They had been fighting.
  (Khi bọn trẻ bước vào nhà, quần áo của chúng do bắn, tóc tai bù xù và mắt một đứa bị tim bắm. Chúng đã đánh nhau).
- I was very tired when I arrived home. I'd been working hard all day.
   (Tôi rất mệt khi về đến nhà. Tôi đã làm việc vất và suốt cả ngày).
- b) Bạn có thể dùng thì past perfect continuous để nói một việc nào đó đã diễn ra trong bao lâu trước khi một việc khác xảy ra:
  - The football match had to be stopped. They had been playing for half an hour when there was a terrible storm.
    - (Trận bóng đá đã phải ngừng lại. Họ đã thi đấu được nửa tiếng khi cơn bão khủng khiếp ập đến).
  - Ken had been smoking for 30 years when he finally gave it up.
     (Ken đã hút thuốc được 30 năm vào lúc anh ta bỏ thuốc).
- c) Thì past perfect continuous (I had been doing) là quá khứ của thì present perfect continuous (I have been doing). Hãy so sánh:

#### Hiện tại

- How long have you been waiting? (until now)
   (Ban đã chở bao lâu rối?) (cho đến
  - (Bạn đã chơ bảo lâu rõi?) (cho đến lúc này)
  - He's out of breath. He has been running.
    - (Anh ta mệt đứt hơi. Anh ta đã chạy suốt).

#### Quá khứ

- How long had you been waiting when the bus finally came?
   (Ban đã chở đợi bao lâu cho đến khi xe buýt đến?)
- He was out of breath. He had been running.
  - (Lúc ấy anh tạ mệt đứt hơi, Anh tạ đã chay suốt trước đó).

- d) Hāy so sánh thì past perfect continuous (I had been doing) và thì past continuous (I was doing):
  - When I looked out of the window, it had been raining. (= It wasn't raining when I looked out; it had stopped). (Khi tôi nhìn ra ngoài cửa số thì trời đã mưa trước đó rối). (= Trời không đang mưa khi tôi nhìn ra ngoài cửa số. Trời đã hết mưa).
  - When I looked out of the window, it was raining. (= Rain was falling at the time I looked out). (Khi tôi nhìn ta ngoài cửa số thì trời đang mưa. (= Mưa đang rơi vào lúc tôi nhìn ra ngoài cửa số).
- e) Một số động từ (ví dụ như know) không thể dùng được ở thể tiếp diễn. Xem bài 3b để biết bảng liệt kệ những động từ này.

Đối với thì Past Perfect, hãy xem bài 22.

		this exercise you have to read a situation and then write a sentence.  ample: The two boys came into the house. One had a black eye and the other had
		a cut lip. (they/fight) They had been fighting.  Tom was watching television. He was feeling very tired. (he / study / hard all day)
	•	He
	2	(somebody / smoke / in the room) Somebody
	3	When Mary came back from the beach, she looked very red from the sun. (she / lie / in the sun too long)
	4	The two boys came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired, (they / play / football)
	5	Ann woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and she didn't know where she was. (she / dream)
23.	2 /	this exercise you have to read a situation and then write a sentence.
	Ex	ample: We began playing football. After half an hour there was a terrible storm.  We had been playing for half and hour when there was a terrible storm.
	1	The orchestra began playing at the concert. After about ten minutes a man in the audience suddenly began shouting
	2	I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and began waiting. After 20 minutes I realised that I had come to the wrong restaurant.
		when

	3	Mr. and Mrs. Jenkins went to live in the south of France. Six months later Mr. Jenkins died. They when			
	Pu cont	of the verb into the correct form, past perfect continuous (I had been doing) or past tinuous (I was doing).  I tried to catch Tom but I couldn't. He was running (run) very fast.			
	1 ,	Jim was on his hands and knees on the floor. He (look) for his cigarette lighter.			
2	2 1	We (walk) along the road for about 20 minutes when a car stopped and the driver offered us a lift.			
;	3 1	When I arrived, everyone was sitting round the table with their mouths full. They			
•	4 \	When I arrived, everyone was sitting round he table and talking. Their mouths were			
	5 ١	empty but their stomachs were full. They			
ζE	Υ				
3.1	_	He had been studying hard all day.			
	2	Somebody had been smoking in the room.			
	3	She had been lying in the sun too long. They had been playing football.			
_	5	She had been dreaming.			
3.2	1	The orchestra had been playing for about ten minutes when a man in the			
	2	audlence suddenly began shouting. I had been waiting for 20 minutes when I realised that I had come to the wrong			
	3	restaurant.  They had been living in the south of France for six months when Mr. Jenkins			
		died.			
3.3	1	was looking			
	2	had been walking			
	3	were eating			

had been eating

5 was waiting ... had been waiting

### BÀI 24:

### HAVE và HAVE GOT

#### a) Have và have got:

Chúng ta thường dùng have gọt / has gọt hơn là have / has không thôi. Vì vậy chúng ta có thể nói:

- We've got a new car.
- hoặc

We have a new car.

(Chúng tôi có một chiếc xe hơi mới). Tom's got (= Tom has got) a headache. hoặc

Tom has a headache.

(Tom bi nhữc đầu). Trong các câu hỏi (questions) và câu phủ định (negative sentences) có thể có ba hình

### thức:

- Have you got any money? (Anh có tiến không?)
- Do you have any money? (Anh có tiển không?)
- Have you any money? (less usual) (Anh có tiến không?) (ít thông dụng hơn)
- Has she got a car? (Cô ấy có xe hơi không?)
- Does she have a car? (Cô ấy có xe hơi không?)
- Has she a car? (less usual) (Cô ấy có xe hơi không?) (ít thông dung hơn)

- I haven't got any money. (Tới không có tiến).
- I don't have any money. (Tôi không có tiến).
- I haven't any money. (Tôi không có tiến).
- She hasn't got a car. (Cô ấy không có xe hơi).
- She doesn't have a car. (Cô ấy không có xe hơi).
- She hasn't a car.
- (Cổ ấy không có xe hơi).

Ö quá khứ, chúng ta thường không dùng gọt:

When she was a child, she had long fair hair. (not 'she had got'). (Khi có ấy còn bá, có ấy có mái tóc dài vàng hoe).

Trong các câu hỏi và các câu phủ định ở thì quá khú, chúng ta thường dùng did/didn't:

- Did you have a car when you lived in London? (not "had you") (Khi ban sống ở Luân Đôn bạn có xe hơi không?)
- I wanted to phone you, but I didn't have your number. (not "I hadn't"). (Tôi muốn gọi điện thoại cho bạn, nhưng tôi không có số điện thoại của bạn).
- He didn't have a watch, so he didn't know what time it was. (Anh ta không có đồng hồ, vì thế anh ta không biết mấy giờ rồi).
- b) Have dùng cho các hành động (actions):

Chúng ta cũng dùng have cho một số hành động. Thí dụ như trong các expressions sau đảy:

have breakfast/lunch/dinner/a meal/a drink/a cup of tea/a cigarette... have a swim/a walk/a rest/a holiday/a party/a good time...

have a bath/a shower/a wash

have a look (at something)

have a baby (= give birth to a baby)

have a chat (with someone)

"Have got": không được dùng trong những expressions ở trên:

I usually have a big breakfast in the morning. (not 'have got') (Tôi thường ăn sáng rất nhiều).

Hãy so sánh:

- I have a bath every morning. (= I take a bath = this is an action). (Tôi tấm mỗi buổi sáng). (Đây là một hành động).
- I've got a bath. (= There is a bath in my house) (Tôi có một bốn tắm). (Có một bốn tắm trong nhà tôi).

Khi ban dùng have để chỉ các hành động, ban có thể dùng các thể tiếp diễn (is having / are having / was having v.v...)

Where's Tom? He's having a bath. (Tom đi đầu rồi?) (Anh ấy đang tắm),

Trong các câu hỏi và các câu phủ định, bạn phải dùng do/does/did:

- I don't usually have a big breakfast, (not "I usually haven't") (Tôi thường không ăn sáng nhiều).
- What time does Ann have lunch? (not 'has Ann lunch') (Ann ăn trưa vào lúc mấy giờ?)
- Did you have a swim this morning? (not 'had you a swim')

(Sáng nay bạn có đi bơi không?)

### **UNIT 24: Exercises**

4.1 In this exercise you have to make negative sentences with have. Some sentence	es are
present (can't) and some past (couldn't).	
Examples: I can't make a phone call (any chance) I haven't get any chance	

none call. (any change) I haven't got any change.

- I couldn't read the notice. (my glasses) I didn't have my glasses.
- I can't climb up into the roof. (a ladder) I ..... We couldn't visit the museum. (enough time) We 2
- He couldn't find his way to our house. (a map) She can't pay her bills. (any money) ......
- 5 I couldn't make an omelette. (any eggs) ......
- 6 I can't get into the house. (my key) .....
- They couldn't take any photographs. (a camera)
- We couldn't go out in the rain. (an umbrella) .....
- 24.2 Complete these questions with have. Some are present and some are past.

Examples: Excuse me, have you got a light, please?

Did you have a lot of friends when you lived in London?

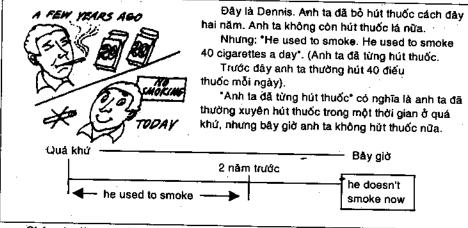
Why are you holding your month like that? ..... a toothache?

3 I ne 4 "It's 5 " 6	ed a stam tarted to r	enough time to answ p for this letterain when I was walkin the time, plea a beard before	g home ise?" "Y you joi	an ". "Did it' es, it's te ined the	y? ?an u en past seven' army?	ımbrella?"
		sentences using the ect form where necess		uitable e.	xpressions from	m the box. Put th
have a	baby	have a swim	have	a nice ti	ime	have a bath
have a	-	have a chat	have	a good	flight	have a rest
have a	cigarette	have a look	have	a nice r	<del>neat</del>	
4 "Ho 5 Suz 6 Exc 7 You Hel 8 "W! 9 I m 10 I ha	w often zanne gav- cuse me, c u meet Tor llo, Tom! here's Jim et Ann in t	e up her job six month an I	.?" "Not is ago v as just a ? Ve stop back fr	often, I when she at your mived. Y n his roo ped and orn holid	newspaper, pour say:  m. He is very	hing. please? tired"
KEY					Did base	<u> </u>
24.1 1		got ladder / I don't dder / I haven't ladder		2 3		// Do you have /
2		't have enough time.		Ū	Have you	
3		have a map		4	Did you have	ļ
4		't got any money / S	he	5 -	Have you got	t / Do you have /
	doesn't	have any money / S	he		Have you	
		ny money.		. 6	Did you have	ı
5		ave any eggs.		24 2 2	had a party	
6	I haven'	t got my key / I do	n't	4	do you have	a hath
		y key / I haven't my ke	∌y.	5	had a baby	u 044.
		n't my key.		. 6	have a look	
7		n't have my key.		7	Did you have	a good flight?
8.	we didu.	t have an umbrella.		8	-	
24.2 1	Have yo	ou got / Do you have	ə /	9		
	ave you				Did you have	
				11.	. had a cigaret	ti <del>e</del>

### B.ÀI 25:

## USED TO (I used to do)

a) Hāy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau:



Chúng ta dùng used to với infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu) (used to đo/used to smoke) để nói rằng một việc nào đó thường xuyên diễn ra trong quá khứ nhưng hiện thời không còn diễn ra nữa:

- l used to play tennis a lot, but now I'm too lazy. (Trước đây tôi thường chơi quần vợt luôn, nhưng bây giờ lười quá).
- "Do you go to the cinema very often?" "Not now, but I used to" ("Ban đi xem phim có thường xuyên lắm không?" "Bây giờ thì không, nhưng trước đây thì rất thường xuyên")
- Tom used to travel a lot. These days he doesn't go away very often.
   (Trước đây Tom rất hay đi du lịch. Dạo này anh ta không thường đi xa).

Chúng ta cũng dùng used to để nói về các tình huống trong quá khứ (past situation) (mà hiện thời không còn tồn tại nữa).

- We used to live in a small village but now we live in London.
   (Chúng tôi đã từng sống trong một ngôi làng nhỏ nhưng hiện nay chúng tôi sống ở Luân Đôn).
- This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
   (Tòa nhà này bây giờ là một cửa hàng bán đổ nội thất. Trước đây nó đã từng là một rạp chiếu bóng).
- Do you see that hill over there? There used to be a castle on that hill.
   (Ban có nhìn thấy ngọn đổi đẳng kia không? Trước đây đã từng có một tòa lâu đài trên đó).
- I've started drinking coffee recently. I never used to like it before.
   (Gần đây tôi mởi bất đầu uống cà phê. Trước đây tôi không hể thích cả phé).

- Ann used to have long hair but she cut it sometime ago. (Trước đây Ann thường để tóc dài, nhưng có ta đã cắt tóc cách đây lì lâu).
- b) Used to + infinitive luôn luôn được dùng để nói về quá khứ. Không có hình thức hiện tai. Ban không thể nói "I use to do"

Ở hiện tại, hãy dùng thì simple present (I do). Hãy so sánh hiện tại và quá khứ:

guá khứ: he used to smoke — we used to live

there used to be

hiện tại: he smokes

we live

there is

- c) Hình thức câu hỏi (interrogative) thường là did... use tó...?
  - Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child? (Ban thường ăn nhiều keo khi bạn còn bé không?)

Hình thức phủ định (negative) là didn't use to... (hoặc used not to):

- Jack didn't use to go out very often until he met Jill. (Jack đã không thường đi chơi cho đến khi anh ta gặp Jill).
- d) Hãy cần thận đừng nhằm lẫn giữa I used to do và i am used to doing (xem bài 62). Các cấu trúc và ý nghĩa đều khác nhau.
  - ! used to live alone. (= I lived alone but I no longer live alone). (Trước đây tôi thường sống một mình). (= Tôi đã từng sống một mình nhưng bảy giờ tôi không còn sống một mình nữa).
  - I am used to living alone. (= I live alone and don't find it strange or new because I've been living alone for sometime). (Tôi quen sống một mình). (= Tôi sống một mình và không thấy điều đó có gì mới lạ cả vì tôi đã sống một mình được một thời gian rồi).

### **UNIT 25: Exercises**

25.1 In this exercise you have to complete the sentence with used to...

Example: Dennis doesn't smoke any more but he used to smoke 40 cigarettes a day.

- The baby doesn't cry so much now but she ...... every night. 1
- She ..... my best friend but we aren't friends any longer.
- 3 We live in Nottingham now but we ...... in Leeds.
- Now there's only one shop in the village but there ...... three.
- 5 When I was a child I .....ice-cream, but I don't like it now.
- Now Tom has got a car. He ...... a motor-cycle.
- 25.2 This time you have to write some sentences about a man who changed his life-style. Ron stopped doing some things and started doing other things:

studying hard going out every evening He stopped going to bed early He started spending a lot of money running three miles every morning

Make sentences like these:

Examples: He used to study hard.

He never used to smoke; or: He didn't use to smoke.

		•	
· 1			
2			
3		D-D-+	
4			
		u have to write some sentences about the present. Remember that	there is n
pre	sent te	ense of used to.	
Exa	mples	s: Ron used to study hard but now <u>he doesn't study very hard.</u> Ron didn't use to smoke but now <u>he smokes.</u>	:
1	Tom is	used to play tennis a lot but now	
ż	Ann n	never used to drink coffee but now	
3	Jill did	dn't use to be fat but now	
4	Jack o	didn't use to go out much but now	
25.4 No wha	w you at he u	u have to ask questions, Mr. Ford is an old man now. You are askin used to do when he was younger.	g someon
Exa	mple:	I know he doesn't smoke now but did he use to smoke?	
1	Iknow	w he doesn't play the piano now but	
2	1 know	w he isn't very rich now but	?
		w he doesn't go out very often these days but	
		w he doesn't dance these days but	
5	know	w he hasn't got many friends now but	?
KEY	,		
KET			
25.1	1 10	used to cry 4 used to be	
	2 (	used to be 5 used to like	
	3 (	used to live 6 used to have/used to ride	
25.2	2 1-4	- He used to go to bed early.	
		<ul> <li>He used to run three miles every morning.</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>He never used to go out every evening.</li> </ul>	
		- He didn't used to go out every evening.	
		- He never used to spend a lot of money.	
		He didn't used to spend a lot of money.	
25.3	-	he doesn't play tennis very much/very often/a lot.	
	2	she drinks coffee/it.	
	3	she is (fat).	
	4	he goes out a lot/very often. (or he often goes out).	
25.4		did he use to play the piano?	
	2		
	.3		
	4	did he use to dance?	
	- 5	did he use to have many friends?	

### BÀI 26: CAN, COULD và BE ABLE TO

- a) Chúng ta dùng can (+ bare infinitive) để nói rằng một việc nào đó có thể xảy ra (a possibility) hoặc một người nào đó có khả năng (ability) làm một việc gì. Thể phủ định (negative) là can't (cannot):
  - You can see the sea from our bedroom window.
     (Em có thể nhìn thấy biển từ cửa số phòng ngủ của chúng ta).
  - Can you speak any foreign languages?
     (Ban có nói được ngoại ngữ nào không?)
  - I'm afraid I can't come to your party next Friday.
     (Tôi e không thể đến dự bữa tiệc của bạn vào thứ Sáu tuần tới).

Be able to cũng có thể được dùng thay cho can, nhưng can thường được dùng hơn.

Are you able to speak any foreign languages?
 (Ban có nói được ngoại ngữ nào không?)

Nhưng can chỉ có hai hình thức: can (hiện tại) và could (quá khứ). Vì vậy đôi khi bạn phải dùng be able to:

- I haven't been able to sleep recently. (can has no present perfect)
   (Gân đây tôi không thể ngủ được).
- Tom might not be able to came tomorrow. (can has no infinitive)
   (Ngày mai Tom có lẽ không thể đến được).

#### b) Could và was able to:

Đôi khi could là quá khứ (past form) của can. Chúng ta dùng could đặc biệt với những động từ sau đây: see, hear, smell, taste, feel, remember, understand.

- When we went into the house, we could smell burning.
   (Khi chúng tôi bước vào nhà, chúng tôi có thể ngửi thấy mùi cháy khét).
- She spoke in a low voice but I could understand what she was saying.
   (Cô ta nói nhỏ nhưng tôi vẫn có thể hiểu được cô ta đang nói gl).

Chúng ta cũng dùng could để nói rằng một người nào đó có khả năng tổng quát để làm một việc gì.

- My grandfather could speak five languages.
   (Ông ta có thể nói năm thứ tiếng).
- When Tom was 16, he could run 100 metres in 11 seconds.
   (Khi Tom 16 tuổi, anh ta có thể chạy 100 mét trong vòng 11 giây).

Nhưng nếu bạn muốn nói rằng một người nào đó đã xoày sở làm được một việc gì trong một tình huống cụ thể nào đó, bạn phải dùng was / were able to (không dùng could).

- The fire spread through the building very quickly but everyone was able (= managed) to escape. (not "could escape").
   (Ngon lửa đã lan khấp tòa nhà nhưng mọi người đã tìm cách thoát ra được).
- They didn't want to come with us at first but in the end we were able (= managed) to persuade them. (not \*could persuade\*)
  (Lúc đầu họ không muốn đến với chúng tôi, nhưng cuối cùng chúng tôi đã tìm cách thuyết phục được họ).

Hāy so sánh could và was able to trong thí dụ sau:

- Jack was an exellent tennis player. He could beat any body (= He had the ability to beat anybody).
  - (Jack là một vận động viên quần vợt tuyệt với. Anh ta có thể đánh bại bất cứ ai). But once he had a difficult game against Alfi Alf played very well but in the end
- Jack was able to beat him. (= He managed to beat him in this pacticular game).

  (Nhưng có một lần Jack thi đấu căng thẳng với Alf. Alf chơi rất hay nhưng cuối cùng Jack vẫn đánh bai được anh ta).

Thể phủ định couldn't dùng được trong mọi tình hướng:

- My grandfather couldn't swim.
  - (Ông tôi không biết bơi).

We tried hard but we couldn't persuade them to come with us.
 (Chúng tôi đã cố gắng hết sức nhưng chúng tôi vẫn không thể thuyết phục được họ đến với chúng tôi).

Đối với can, hãy xem thêm bài 31. Đối với could, hãy xem thêm bài 27 và 31.

### **UNIT 26: Exercises**

i.1 In this exercise you have to use can or be able to. Sometimes it is po	ossible tu	use
either: sometimes only be able to is possible.		
Examples: George has travelled a lot. He can (or is able to) speak four lan	iquages.	

- I haven't been able to sleep very well recently.
- 1 Tom ...... drive but he hasn't got a car.
- 2 I can't understand Martin. I've never ..... understand him.
- 3 I used to ...... stand on my head but I can't do it now.

### 26.2 In this exercise you have to complete the sentence with could ...

Example: I can't sing now but I could sing very well when I was a child.

- 1 He can't play tennis very well now but he ...... quite well when he was younger.
- 2 She can't run very fast now but when she was at school she ...... taster than anyone else.
- 3 I can't swim very far these days but ten years ago i ...... from one side of the lake to the other.

### 26.3 This time you have to answer the questions with was/were able to.

Example: Did you persuade them?

Yes. It was difficult but we were able to persuade them.

1 Did they find your house?
Yes, it took them a long time but they .....

2		ou win the match?				•	
	Yes.	It wasn't easy but I	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				•
3		he thief escape?					
	Yes.	The policeman chased th	e thief but he				
6.4 N	ow yo	u have to complete a sent	ence with could	i, was/were	able to or c	ouldn't.	
	ample		is very clever. H	le <i>could</i> (or	was able to)	speak fi	ve .
		l looked everywhe	re for the book b	out I couldn'	t find it.		-
		The fire spread qu					
1	He h	ad hurt his leg, so he					
2	She	wasn't at home when I ph	oned but I		contact her		fice.
3	Hool	ked very carefully and 1		see a figure	in this distar	nçe.	
4		didn't have any tomato	es in the first s	shop I wen	t to, but i		get
		e in the next shop.		-			- 11
5	My g	randmother loved music.	She		iay ine pian	o very w	8II:
6	The	boy fell into the river but f	ortunately we		rescu	IO MIIM.	
		·					
ΚE	,						
	T						
26	.1 1	can/is able to					
	2	been able to	'		•		
	3	be able to					
	4	be able to			•	-	
26	.2 1	could play (tennis)					
	2	could run					
	3	could swim			•	·	
26	i. <b>3</b> 1	were able to find it. was able to win (it).					
	3	was able to escape.					
	•	was able to escape.					
26	5.4 1	couldn't/wasn't able to					
	2						
	3	could/was able to					
	4	was able to	•				
	5	could/was able to were able to					
	6	MEIG WING (O					

## BÀI 27: COULD (could do và could have done)

- a) Chúng ta có một số cách dùng could (do). Đôi khi nó là quá khứ của can (do) (xem bài 26), nhưng đôi khi nó lại có nghĩa hiện tại (present) hoặc tương lai (future). Thí dụ như thính thoảng chúng ta dùng could để nói về những hành động có thể xảy ra trong tương lai, đặc biệt là khi chúng ta nêu những để nghị:
  - "What shall we do this evening?" "We could go to the cinema". ("Tối nay chúng ta làm gì đây?" "Chúng ta có thể đi xem phim")
  - When you go to New York, you could stay with Linda.
     (Khi bạn đến New York, bạn có thể ở chung với Linda).

Can cũng có thể được dùng trong các câu trên. ("We can go to the cinema"). Could không chắc chắn bằng can.

Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng could để nói về những sự việc có thể xảy ra trong tương lai:

There could be another rise in the price of petrol soon. (= It is possible that there will be).

(Chẳng bao lâu giá xăng có thể lại tăng một lần nữa).

Đôi khi could mang nghĩa would be able to (sẽ có thể):

- Why doesn't Tom apply for the job? He could get it.
  - (Tại sao Tom không xin làm việc đó? Anh ấy sẽ có thể được nhận vào làm mà).
- l don't know how she works 14 hours a day. I couldn't do lt. (Tôi không biết làm sao có ta lại có thể làm việc 14 tiếng một ngày. Tôi không thể làm như thế được).
- b) Quá khứ của could (do) là could have (done). Chúng ta dùng could have (done) để nói rằng chúng ta đã có khả năng hoặc cơ hội để làm một việc gì đó nhưng đã không làm.
  - We didn't go out last night. We could have gone to the cinema but we decided to stay at home. (We had the opportunity to go out but we didn't). (Tối hôm qua chúng tôi không ra khỏi nhà. Chúng tôi đã có thể đi xem phim nhưng rồi chúng tôi quyết định ở nhà).
  - Why did you stay at a hotel in New York? You could have stayed with Linda. (You had the opportunity to stay with her but you didn't).
    (Tai sao anh lại ở khách sạn ở New York? Anh đã có thể ở chung với Linda cơ mà).
    (Anh đã có cơ hội ở chung với Linda nhưng anh đã không ở).
  - Why didn't Tom apply for the job? He could have got it. (He had the ability to get it). (Tai sao Tom không xin làm công việc đó? Anh ta đã có thể nhận được nó cơ mà). (Anh ta đã có khả năng nhân được nó).

Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng could have (done) để nói rằng một việc nào đó đã có thể xảy ra, nhưng đã không xảy ra.

He was lucky when he fell off the ladder. He could have hurt himself.
 (Anh ta vẫn còn may khi té thang. Anh ta đã có thể bị thương).

- c) Bây giờ là một số thí dụ về couldn't have (done). "I couldn't have done something" có nghĩa "Tôi có thể đã không làm được việc đó (cho dù tôi muốn hay đã cổ gắng làm)".
  - When I went to New York last year. I decided not to stay with Linda. Later I found out that she was away while I was there, so I couldn't have stayed with her anyway. (Năm ngoái khi tôi đi New York, tôi đã quyết định không ở chung với Linda. Sau đó tôi biết được rằng cô ấy đã đi khỏi trong khi tôi ở đó, do đó đảng nào thì tôi cũng đầu có ở chung với cô ta được).
  - The football match was cancelled last week. Tom couldn't have played anyway because he was ill.

(Tuần trước trận bóng đá đã bị hủy bỏ. Nhưng dù sao thì Tom cũng không thể thi đầu được vì anh ta bị ốm).

Ann did really well to pass the examination. It was really difficult. I'm sure i couldn't
have passed it.

(Anna đã cố gắng hết sức để vượt qua kỳ thi đố. Kỳ thi quả là khó. Tôi chắc chắn rằng nếu là tôi thì có thể đã không vượt qua được).

Với could / couldn't, xem thêm các bài 26, 28b, 29c, 31.

Với could trong các câu điều kiện, xem các bài 36-38.

#### **UNIT 27: Exercises**

	n this exercise you have to make suggestions. Use could.
Ex	ample: Where shall we go for our holidays? (Scotland) We could go to Scotland.
1	What shall we have for dinner tonight? (fish)
, 2	When shall we go and see Tom? (on Friday)
3	What shall I give Ann for her birthday? (a book)
27.2 7	his time you have to use could have. Answer the questions in the way shown.
Ex	rample: "Did you go to the cinema?"
	"No. We could have gone to the cinema but we decided not to".
1	*Did you go to the concert last night?" "No, We"
2	*Did John take the examination?" *No, He
3	"Did you buy a new car?" "No, I
27.3 l	n this exercise you have to write sentences with could or could have.
	camples: She doesn't want to stay with Linda. But she could stay with Linda.
	She didn't want to stay with Linda. But she could have stayed with Linda.
1	He didn't want to help us. But he
2	He doesn't want to help us. But
3	They don't want to lend us any money. But
	She didn't want to have anything to eat

27.4	In this	exercise	first read	this	information	about Ken:

Ken doesn't know any Spanish.

Ken doesn't know anything about machines.

Ken is very rich and generous.

Ken can't drive.

Ken was ill on Friday night.

Ken was free on Monday afternoon.

A lot of people wanted Ken to do different things last week but they couldn't contact him. So he didn't do any of these things. You have to say whether he could have done or couldn't have done these things (if he had known).

Example: His aunt wanted him to drive her to the station.

He couldn't have driven her to the station (because he can't drive).

1	Ann wanted him to come to a party on Friday night.
2	Jim wanted him to play tennis on Monday afternoon.
3	Sue wanted him to translate a Spanish newspaper article into English.
4	Jack wanted Ken to lend him £20.
5	Ken's mother wanted him to repair her washing machine.

### **KEY**

- 27.1 1 We could have fish.
  - 2 We could go (and see him) on Friday.
  - You could give her a book (for her birthday).
- 27.2 1 We could have gone to the concert but we decided not to.
  - 2 He could have taken the examination but he decided not to.
  - 3 I could have bought a new car but I decided not to.
- 27.3 1 But he could have helped us.
  - 2 But he could help us.
  - 3 But they could lend us some (money).
  - 4 But she could have had something to eat.
- 27.4 1 He couldn't have come (to a party on Friday night) because he was ill.
  - 2 He could have played tennis on Monday afternoon.
  - 3 He couldn't have translated it because he doesn't know any Spanish.
  - 4 He could have lent Jack £20.
  - 5 He couldn't have repaired her washing machine because he doesn't know anything about machines.

### BÀI 28: MUST và CAN'T

#### a) Hāy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau:

Alf là một đấu thủ quần vợt rất xuất sắc và không có mấy đấu thủ đánh bại được anh ta: Nhưng hồm qua anh ta thị đấu với Bill và Bill đã thắng. Vi vậy:

Bill must be a very good player. (Otherwise he wouldn't have won).

(Bill ất hẫn là một đấu thủ rất xuất sắc). (Nếu không anh ta rất có thể đã không thắng).

Chúng ta dùng must để nói rằng chúng ta tin chắc một điều gi đó là đúng sự thật:

- You've been travelling all day. You must be tired. (= I am sure that you are tired).
   (Ban đã đi suốt ngày. Chắc hần là bạn rất mệt). (= Tôi chắc chắn rằng bạn rất mệt).
- I hear that your examinations are next week. You must be studying very hard at the moment. (= I am sure that you are studying).
  (Tôi nghe nói rằng bạn sẽ thi vào tuần tới. Vậy chắc hẳn lễ hiện thời bạn đạng học

vất và lầm). (= Tối chắc chắn rằng bạn đang học bài).
Carol knows a lot about films. She *must* go to the cinema a lot. (= I am sure she goes to the cinema a lot).

(Carol biết nhiều về phim. Chắc hẳn cô ta đi xem phim rất nhiều).

Chúng ta dùng can't để nói về điều mà chúng ta nghĩ rằng không thể xảy ra được (impossibility):

 You've only just had dinner. You can't be hungry already. (= It is impossible that you are hungry).

(Anh vừa mới ăn tối xong. Anh không thể nào lại đói nữa được). (= không thể nào anh lại đói được).

 Tom said that he would be here ten minutes ago and he is never late. He can't be coming.

(Tom nói rằng anh la sẽ đã có mặt ở đây mười phút trước và anh ta không bao giờ trễ hẹn. Vậy chắc chắn anh ta không thể đến được).

Hãy học cấu trúc sau:

l/you/he (etc.)

must
be tired/hungry, etc.
be studying/waiting/coming, etc.
go/do/play, etc.

can't
go/do/play, etc.

chắc hẳn
là mệt/đói v.v...
đang học/đang chở/đang đến v.v...
không thể đi/làm/chơi v.v...

b) Đối với thì quá khứ chúng ta dùng must have (done) (ất hẳn đã, chắc đã)/và can't have (done) (ất hẳn đã không thể). Xem thi dụ sau:

Tối hòm qua chúng tôi đến nhà Roy và bấm chuồng cửa. Không có ai trả lời cả. He *must have gone* out (otherwise he would have answered). (Chắc hàn là anh ta đã ra khỏi nhà) (nếu không anh ta đã trả lời).

- The phone rang but I didn't hear it. I must have been asleep.
   (Điện thoại reo nhưng thi đã không nghe gì cả. Chắc hản lúc đó tôi đang ngủ).
- I made a lot of noise when I came home. You must have heard me.
  (Tôi đã làm ổn dữ lắm khi tôi về đến nhà. Chắc hản anh đã nghe thấy tiếng tôi).
- She passed me in the street without speaking. She can't have seen me. (Cô ấy đi ngang qua tôi ở ngoài đường mà chẳng nói một lời nào. Chắc hẳn là cô ấy đã không nhìn thấy tôi).
- Tom walked straight into the wall. He can't have been looking where he was going. (Tom đâm sắm vào bức tưởng. Chắc hẳn là anh ta đã không để ý là mình đang đi đầu).

#### Hãy học cấu trúc sau:

l/you/he (etc.)	can't	have	been asleep/tired, etc. been looking/waiting, etc gone/done/seen/heard,	٠.	
	r chắc hẳn đã,	-	đang ngủ, một v.v	•	
Tôi/anh/anh ấy v.v.	không thể đã		đang nhìn, chờ v.v đi, làm, thấy, nghe v.v	·	·

ouldn't have (done) có thể được dùng thay cho can't have (done):

- She couldn't have seen me.
- (Chắc hản có ta đã không nhìn thấy tôi).
- He couldn't have been looking where he was going. (Chắc hẳn anh ta đã không để ý là mình đang đi đầu).

Để biết các ý nghĩa khác của must và can't, hãy xem các bài 26, 31 và 32.

### JNIT 28: Exercises

3.1 (	Complete these sentences using must (have) or can't (have)	
	camples: "Is he British?" "Yes, he must be British",	
	"Did she see you?" "No, she can't have seen me".	
1	"Are they married?" "Yes, they must	•
2	'Is he serious?' 'No, he can't	
3	"Were they in a hurry?" "Yes, they	•
4	*Does Ann know a lot of people?* "Yes, she	•
5	"Did Tom know about the plan?" "Yes, he	•
6	"Do they have much money?" "No, they	•
7	"Was he driving carefully?" "No, he"	•
8	"Are they waiting for somebody?" "Yes, they	•
2.0	Complete these sentences with must be small a suitable and	_

2 Complete these sentences with must or can't + a suitable verb.

2 3 4 5	C I J	(The doorbell rings). I wonder who that is. It					
.3	Νοι	w you have to read a situation and write a :	sen	tence with must have or can't have.			
		the words in brackets.					
Ε	xar	mple: The phone rang but I didn't hear it. (I	шп	st/be/asleep)			
1	1	<u>I must have been asleep.</u> That dress you bought is very good quality					
2	i	haven't seen Jim for ages. (he must/go/awa					
3		wonder where my umbrella is. (you must/le					
_							
4		Don passed the examination. He didn't can't/be/very difficult)		dy very much for it. (the exam			
5		She knew everything about our plans.	sRe	must/listen/to our conversation)			
6		Dennis did the opposite of what I asked him		•			
7		When I woke up this morning, the light	wa				
8	i	don't understand how the accident happen	ed.	(the driver can't / see/the red light)			
Ε	Y						
.1	1	they must be married.	7	he can't have been.			
	2	he can't be serious.	8	they must be.			
	3	they must have been in a hurry. 28.2	1	must have			
	4	she must know a lot of people.	2	can't be			

28

- 5 he must have known about it/the
- 6 they can't have much (money).
- he can't have been driving carefully.
- 8 they must be waiting for somebody.

Short answers are also possible in this exercise:

- 1 they must be.
- he can't be.
- 3 they must have been.
- 4 she must.
- he must have.
- they can't have.

- must read/must have read
- must be going
- 28.3 1 It must have been very expensive.
  - He must have gone away.
  - You must have left it on the train.
  - The exam can't have been very difficult.
  - She must have listened/must have been listening to our conversation.
  - He can't have understood what I said.
  - I must have forgotten to turn it off.
  - The driver can't have seen the red light.

### BÀI 29:

### MAY và MIGHT

a) Hāy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau:

Bạn đang tìm Jack. Không ai biết chắc anh ta đang ở đầu nhưng bạn nhận được một số gợi ý:

- He may be in his office. (= perhaps he is in his office).
   (Có thể anh ta dang ở trong văn phòng của anh ta).
- He might be having lunch. (= perhaps he is having lunch) (Có thể anh ta đang ăn trưa).
- Ask Ann. She might know. (= perhaps Ann knows)
   (Hỏi Ann xem. Có thể cô ấy biết đấy).

Chúng ta dùng may và might để nói rằng một việc nào đó có thể xảy ra (possibility). Không có sự khác biệt quan trọng nào giữa may và might.

#### Ban có thể nói:

 He may be in his office, or He might be in his office, (Có thể anh ta đạng ở trong văn phòng của anh ta).

Thể phủ định là may not và might not (hoặc mightn't):

- Jack might not be in his office. (= perhaps he isn't in his office)
   (Có thể Jack không có mặt trong văn phòng).
- I'm not sure whether I can lend you any money. I may not have enough. (= perhaps I don't have enough).
   (Τόι không chắc là có thể cho ban mươn tiến được không. Tôi có thể không đủ

Hãy học cấu trúc sau:

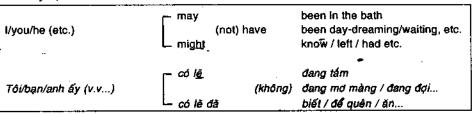
tiến).

l/you/he (etc.)	may (not) might	be in his office be having/waiting, etc. know/have/do, etc.		
Tôi/bạn/anh ấy (v.v)	có thể (khôn)	đang ở trong văn phòng g) đang ăn/đang chở hiệt/có/lèm		

- b) Để chỉ một việc có thể xảy ra trong quá khứ, chúng ta dùng may have (done) / mɨght have (done) (có lẽ đã):
  - A: I wonder why Ann didn't answer the doorbell.
     (Tôi thác mắc tại sao Ann không trả lời tiếng chuông cửa).
  - B: Well, I suppose she may have been in the bath. (= perhaps she was in the bath).
    - (À, tôi nghĩ có lẽ lúc đó có ấy đang tắm).
  - A: Why didn't he say hello when he passed us in the street? (Tal seo anh ay không chào khi đi ngang chúng ta ở ngoài đường?).

- B: He might have been day-dreaming. (= perhaps he was day-dreaming).
   (Có lễ lúc đó anh ta đang mơ màng chuyên gì đó).
- A: I can't find my bag anywhere.
   (Tôi không thể tìm thấy cái túi của tôi ở đầu cả).
- B: You might have left it in the shop. (= perhaps you left it) (Cô lẽ bà đã để quên ở cửa tiệm).
- A: I wonder why Ann didn't come to the meeting).
   (Tôi thắc mắc tại sao Ann không đến họp).
- B: She might not have known about it. (= perhaps she didn't know).
   (Có lẽ cô ấy đã không biết gì về buổi họp).

Hāy học cấu trúc sau:



- Bạn có thể dùng could thay cho may hoặc might. Nhưng với could thì khả năng xảy ra (possibility) sẽ nhỏ hơn.
  - "Where's Jack?" "I'm not sure. He could be in his office, I suppose, but he's not usually there at this time".
    ("Jack dâu rôi?" "Tôi không biết chác. Có thể anh ta đang ở trong văn phòng, tôi

Đối với may và might, xem thêm các bài 30 và 31.

nghĩ thể, nhưng thường th) giờ này anh ta không có ở đó").

### **UNIT 29: Exercises**

29.1 In this exercise you have to make sentences with may or might. The first four sentences are present.

Examples: "Do you know if Jack is in his office?" "I'm not sure. He may be in his office".

\*Do you know if Ann likes ice-cream?" "I'm not sure. She might like ice-cream".

- 1 \*Do you know if they are married?\* \*I'm not sure. They ......
- 2 \*Do you know if she wants to go?\* \*I'm not sure .....
- The next three sentences are past.

Examples: \*Do you know if he was serious?\* \*['m not sure. He might have been serious".

"Do you know if they were looking?" "I'm not sure. They may have been looking".

<ul> <li>Do you know if she told anybody?"</li> </ul>	t sure. She
And now you have to use may or might n Example: "Is Jack in his office?" "I'm not	ot. sure. He might not be in his office".
8 "Does she want to go?" "	
Example: I can't find George anywhere.  a) (he might / go / shopping) I b) (he could / play / tennis) H Look! Sue's going out. I wonder wher a) (she may / go / to the theatre) b) (she could / go / to a party)  Why didn't Tom answer the doorbell? a) (he may / go / to bed early) b) (he might not / hear / the bell) c) (he could / be / in the bath)  How do you think the fire started? a) (someone may / drop / a cigarette) b) (it could / be / an electrical fault)  I wonder where Tom was going when a) (he might / go / to work) b) (he may / go / shopping) George didn't come to the party. I wo a) (he might / have / to go somewhere b) (he may not / know / about it)	He might have gone shopping. a could be playing tennis. e she's going.  I'm sure he was in the house at the time.
KEY	•
<ul> <li>19.1 1 I'm not sure. They may/might be married.</li> <li>2 I'm not sure. She may/might want to go.</li> <li>3 I'm not sure. He may/might be telling the truth.</li> <li>4 I'm not sure. He may/might have a car.</li> <li>5 I'm not sure. She may/might have been ill.</li> <li>6 I'm not sure. She may/might have told somebody.</li> <li>7 I'm not sure. They may/might have been listening.</li> <li>8 I'm not sure. She may/might not want to go.</li> </ul>	9 I'm not sure. He may/might not be telling the truth. 10 I'm not sure. They may/might not be ready. 29.2 1 a) She may be going to the theatre. b) She could be going to a party. 2 a) He may have gone to bed early. b) He might not have heard the bell. c) He could have been in the bath. 3 a) Someone may have dropped a cigarette. b) It could have been an electrical fault. 4 a) He might have been going to work. b) He may have been going shopping. 5 a) He might have had to go somewhere else. b) He may not have known about it.

### BÀI 30: MAY và MIGHT (tương lai)

 a) Chúng ta dùng may hay might để nói về những sự việc hoặc những hành động có thể sẽ xảy ra trong tương lại (future possibility).

Hāy xem các thí dụ sau: .

- I'm not sure where to go for my holidays but I may go to Italy. (= perhaps I will go). (Tôi không chắc chắn là sẽ đi nghĩ ở đầu nhưng có thể tôi sẽ đi Ý. (= có lẽ tôi sẽ đi).
- The weather forecast is not very good. It might rain this afternoon. (= perhaps it will rain).

(Bản dự báo thời tiết không được khả quan lầm. Chiều nay trời có thể mưa). (= có lẻ trời sẽ mưa).

I can't help you. Why don't you ask Tom? He might be able to help you. (= perhaps he will be able to help).

(This labeled to help).

(Tôi không thể giúp bạn được đầu. Tại sao bạn không nhờ Tom? Anh tạ có thể sẽ giúp bạn). (= có lẽ ạnh tạ sẽ có thể giúp bạn).

Thể phủ định là may not hoặc might not (mightn't).

 Ann may not come to the party tonight. She isn't feeling well. (= perhaps she won't come).

(Tối nay có thể Ann không đến dự tiệc. Cô ấy cảm thấy không được khỏe). (= có lẽ có ấy sẽ không đến).

There might not be a meeting on Friday because the director is ill. (= perhaps there won't be a meeting).
(Có thể sẽ không có buổi họp vào thứ Sáu vì ông giám đốc bị bệnh). (= có lẽ sẽ không có buổi họp).

Không có gì khác biệt khi bạn dùng may hoặc might. Bạn có thể nói:

- I may go to Italy; hoặc: I might go to Italy.
   (Có thể tôi sẽ đồng ý).
- b) Ngoài ra cũng có thể tiếp diễn (continuous): may / might be doing. Hãy so sánh thể này với will be doing (xem bài 10 a,b):
  - Don't phone at 8.30. I'll be watching the football match on television.
     (Đừng gọi điện thoại vào lúc 8g30. Lúc đó có thể tôi đang xem trận bóng đá trên TV).

Don't phone at 8.30. 1 may (or might) be watching the football match on television (= perhaps I'll be in the middle of watching it).

(Đừng gọi điện thoại vào lúc 8giờ 30. Lúc đó có thể tôi sẽ đang xem trận bóng đá trên tivit. (= có lẽ tới sẽ đang xem dỡ trận bóng đá).

Bạn cũng có thể dùng thể tiếp diễn (may/might de doing) khi bạn đang nói về những dự định có thể được thực hiện.

Hãy so sánh:

I'm going to Italy in July. (for sure).
 (Tôi định đi Ý vào tháng Bảy). (chác chắn).

I may (or might) be going to Italy in July. (it's possible).
 (Có thể tối sẽ đi Ý vào tháng Bảy). (có thể xảy ra).

Nhưng bạn cũng có thể nói: í may / might go to Italy in July.

c) May as well, might as well (thôi thì ... ; cũng được thôi):

Hãy xem thí dụ sau:

A: What shall we do this evening? (Tối nay chúng ta sẽ làm gì đây?)

B: I don't know. Any ideas?

(Tôi không biết nữa. Bạn có ý kiến gì không?)

A: Well, there's a film on television. It sounds quite interesting. (À, có một bộ phim trên tivi. Nghe có vẻ hấp dẫn lắm đấy).

B: We might as well watch it then. There's nothing else to do.

(Thôi thì chúng ta xem phim đó vậy. Chẳng còn gì khác để làm cả).

Chúng ta dùng may / might as well để nói rằng chúng ta nễn làm một việc gì đó bởi vì không có lý do gì để không làm việc đó, và bởi vì không có việc gì tốt hơn để làm cả. "We might as well watch it", có nghĩa là "Tại sao không xem phim đó nhì? Không còn gì khác hay hơn để làm cơ mà".

- You'll have to wait an hour for the next bus, so you might as well walk.
   (Ban phải đợi một tiếng mới có chuyển xe buýt kế tiếp, thôi thì bạn đi bộ cho rồi).
- We may as well go to the party. We're nothing else to do.
   (Thôi thì chúng ta đi dự tiệc vậy. Chúng ta không còn việc gì khác để làm cả).
- "Shall we have dinner now?" "We might as well".
   (Chúng ta sẽ ăn tối bây giờ chứ?" "Cũng được thôi").

Đối với may và might, xem thêm các bài 29 và 36C.

Đối với may, xem bài 31.

### **UNIT 30: Exercises**

	<del></del>
0.2 T	his time you have to talk about possible happenings. Use the word (s) in brackets.
	amples: Do you think it will rain this afternoon? (may) It may rain this afternoon.
EA.	Do you think Ann will come to the party? (might not).
	She might not come to the party.
1	Do you think Tom will be late? (may) He
2	Do you think Ann will be able to find our house? (might not) She
3	Do you think there'll be an election this year? (might) There
4	Do you think Tony will pass the exam? (may not)
5	Do you think they'll be waiting for us when we arrive? (might)
6	Do you think it'll snow later? (may)
30.3 A	low you have to read these situation and make sentences with may/might as well.
	rample: A friend has invited you to a party. You're not very keen to go but there isn'
	anything else to do. So you think you should go.
	You say: I might as well go. There isn't anything else to do.
1	You're in a coffee with a friend. You're just finished your drinks. You're not in hurry, so you think you should both have another drink.
	You say: We
2	Someone has given you a free ticket for a concert. You're not very keen on the concert, but you think you should go because you have a free ticket.
	You say: I
4	You've invited some friends to dinner but they haven't come. The dinner has bee ready for half an hour and you think you should begin without them.
	You say: We
ΚE	<b>v</b>

- I may/might buy a Mercedes. 30.1 1
  - I may/might go to London.
  - I may/might hang it in the dining-room.
  - He may/might come tomorrow evening.
  - She may/might do a secretarial course. 5
- 30.2 1 He may be late.
  - She might not be able to find it / our house.
  - There might be an election this year.
  - 4 He may not pass it / the exam.
  - They might be waiting for us when we arrive. 5
  - 6 It may snow later.
- We may/might as well have another drink. 30.3 1
  - I may/might as well go (to the concert). 2
  - 3 We may/might as well begin/start.

## BÀI 31: CAN, COULD, MAY và WOULD: yêu cầu, cho phép, đề nghị và mời.

) Requests (lời thính cấu): yêu cầu người khác làm việc gi:



Chúng ta thường dùng can hoặc could khi chúng ta yêu cấu ai đó làm một việc gì.

- Can you wait a moment, please?
   (Anh làm ơn chở một lát được không?)
- Ann, can you do me a favour? (Ann, giúp tôi được không?)
- Excuse me. Could you tell me how to get to the station?
   (Xin lỗi, bạn có thể chỉ cho tôi đường đến nhà ga được không?)
- Do you think you could lend me some money?
   (Anh thấy có thể cho tôi mượn một ít tiền được không?)

l wonder if you could help me. (Tôi không biết là anh có thể giúp tôi được không?)

Để yêu cầu có được một điều gì, bạn có thể nói: Can I have .....? / Could I have .....? / flave .....? /

- (In a shop) Can I have these postcards, please?
   (Trong một cửa tiệm) Tôi có thể xem những tấm bưu thiếp này không?
- (At table) Could I have the salt, please?
   (Ở bàn ăn) Làm ơn đưa cho tôi lọ muối.
- Permission: xin phép và cho phép:
  - (On the telephone) Hello, can I speak to Tom, please?
  - (Trong điện thoại) Alô, làm ơn cho tôi nói chuyện với Tom được không?
  - \*Could I use your telephone?\* \*Yes, of course\*.
     (Tôi có thể dùng điện thoại của bạn được không?) (Được, tất nhiên rồi).
  - \*Do you think i could borrow your bicycle?" "Yes, help yourself". (Tôi có thể mươn xe đạp của bạn không?) (Được, cứ tự nhiên).
  - "May I come in?" "Yes, please do". (Tôi vào được chứ?) (Được, xin mời vào).

Để cho phép, chúng ta dùng can hoặc may (nhưng không dùng could):

You can (or may) smoke if you like.
 (Bạn có thể hút thuốc nếu bạn muốn).

Dùng can / can't để nói về điều đã được cho phép hoặc không được cho phép:

You can drive for a year in Britain with an international licence.
(Ban có thể lái xe trong vòng một năm ở nước Anh với một bằng lái quốc tế).

- If you're under 17, you can't drive a car in Britain. (Nếu bạn dưới 17 tuổi, bạn không thể lái xe hơi ở nước Anh).
- c) Offers (để nghị) đôi khi chúng ta dùng can để để xuất được làm điều gì:
  - \*Can I get you a cup of coffee?\* \*That's very nice of you.". (Tôi lấy cho bạn một tách cà phê nhé?) (Vâng, bạn tử tế quá).
  - (In a shop) "Can I help you, madam?" "No, thank you. I'm being served". (Trong một cửa tiệm) "Tôi có thể giúp gì cho bà, thưa bà?" "Không, cám ơn. Có người phục vụ tôi rối".
- d) Đối với offer (lời để nghị) và invitation (lời mời), chúng ta dùng would you like ... (không dùng "do you like").
  - Would you like a cup of coffee? (not "do you like") (Ban uống một tách cả phê nhé?)
  - Would you like to come to the cinema with us tomorrow evening? (not "do you like to come\*)

(Mởi bạn tối mai đi xem phim với chúng tôi).

I'd like (= I would like) là cách điển đạt lịch sự điều bạn muốn, boặc những gì bạn muốn làm.

- I'd like some information about hotel, please. (Xin cho tội biết một số thông tin về khách sạn).
- I'd like to try on this jacket, please.

1 /	Read the situation and write what you would say. Use the words given in brackets.
	xample: You've got a pound note but you need some change. You ask somebody to
1	help you. (Can you?) Can you change a pound?  You want to borrow your friend's camera. What do you say to him / her? (Could I?)
2	You have a car and you want to give somebody a lift. What do you say? (Can.t?)
3	You have to go to the airport but you don't know how to get there. You ask a passer-by. (Could you?)
4	
5	You are at an interview. You want to smoke a cigarette. What do you ask first?
6	You want to leave work early because you have some important things to do: What do you ask your boss? (Do you think I?)
7	You want to invite someone to come and stay with you for the weekend. (Would you like?)
8	

	This time you have to decide how to say what you want to say.  (ample: You have to carry some heavy boxes upstairs. Ask someone to help you.  Do you think you could give me a hand with these boxes?				
1	A friend has just come to see you in your flat. Offer him something to drink.				
2	You want your friend to show you how to change the film in your camera. What do you say to him / her?				
3					
4	You need a match to light your cigarette. You haven't got any but the man sitting next to you has some. What do you ask him?				
2,	There is a concert on tonight and you are going with some friend. You think Tom would enjoy it too. Invite him.				
6	You're in the post office. You want three stamps for Japan. What do you say?				
7	You are sitting in a crowded bus. There is an old lady standing. Offer her your seat.				
8	You're in a car with a friend, who is driving. He is going to park the car but there is a No Parking sign. You see the sign and say:				

### **KEY**

- 31.1 1 Could I borrow your camera?
  - 2 Can I give / offer you a lift?
  - 3 Could you tell me how to get to the airport? / Could you tell me the way to the airport?
  - 4 Do you think I could come and see it / the flat today?
  - 5 May I smoke?
  - 6 Do you think I could leave (work) early?
  - 7 Would you like to come and stay (with me) for the weekend?
  - 8 Do you think you could turn it / the music down?
- 31.2 1 Would you like a drink? / Would you like something to drink? / Would you like a ... / some ...? / Can I get you a drink / something to drink?
  - 2 Can / Could you show me how to change the film? / Do you think you could show me how ...?
  - 3 Can / Could / May I have a look at your newspaper? / Do you think I could have a look ... ?
  - 4 Can / Could you give me a light? / Can / Could / May I have a light?
  - 5 Would you like to come to a / the concert tonight?
  - 6 Can / Could / May I have three stamps for Japan?
  - 7 Would you like a seat? / Would you like to sit down? / Can I offer you a seat?
  - 8 You can't park here.

### BÀI 32: MUST và HAVE TO

- a) Chúng ta dùng must (do) và have to (do) để chỉ sự cần thiết (necessity) phải làm một việc gi đó. Thường thì chúng ta dùng từ nào cũng được:
  - Oh dear, it's later than I thought. I must / have to go now.
     (Ô trời, không ngờ đã trễ như thế. Bây giờ tôi phải đi đây).
  - You must / have to have a passport to visit most foreign countries. (Ban phải có hộ chiếu để đi thăm hầu hết các nước ngoài).

Đôi khi cũng có sự khác biệt giữa must và have to. Với must, người nói đang bày tổ cảm tưởng của chính mình, nói ra điều mà anh ta nghĩ là cần thiết.

- I must write to Ann. I haven't written to her for ages. (= The speaker personally feels that he must write to Ann).
  (Tôi phải viết thư cho Ann. Đã làu lầm tôi không viết thư cho cô ấy). (= Người nói tự cảm thấy rằng anh ta phải viết thư cho Ann).
- The government really must do something about unemployment. (= The speaker personally feels that the government must do something). (Chính phủ thực sự cần phải làm cái gì đó để giải quyết nạn thất nghiệp). (= Bản thân người nói tự cảm thấy rằng chính phủ phải làm một điều gì đó).

Với **have to,** người nói không bày tổ cẩm tưởng của mình, anh ta chỉ nêu ra các sự kiên. Thí dụ:

- Ann's eyes are not very good. She has to wear glasses for reading.
   (Mắt của Ann không được tốt lắm. Cô ta phải đeo kính để đọc sách).
- I can't meet you on Friday. I have to work.
   (Tôi không thể gặp bạn vào thứ Sáu được. Tôi phải làm việc).
- b) Bạn chỉ có thể dùng must để nói về hiện tại (present) và tương lại (future):
  - We must go now.
     (Bây giờ chúng tôi phải đi đây).
  - Must you leave tomorrow? (Ngày mai anh có phải đi không?)

Have to có thể được dùng trong tất cả các thể (forms). Ví dụ:

- I had to go to hospital. (past) (Tôi phải đi bệnh viện): (quá khử).
- I might have to go to hospital (infinitive)
   (Cô lẽ tôi phải đi bệnh viện) (nguyên mẫu)
- Have you ever had to go to hospital? (present perfect)
   (Ban có bao giờ phải đi bệnh viện chưa?) (Hiện tại hoàn thành)

Chú ý rằng chúng ta dùng do/does/did với have to trong các câu hỗi (questions) và các câu phủ định (negatives) ở hiện tại và quá khứ.

What do I have to do to get a driving licence? (not "have I to do").
 (Tôi sẽ phải làm gì để lấy được bằng lái?).

- Why did you have to go to hospital? (not "had you to go)
   (Tai sao anh phải đi bệnh viên thế?)
- Tom doesn't have to work on Saturdays, (not "hasn't to work")
   (Tom không phải làm việc vào những ngày thứ Bảy).
- c) Mustn't và don't have to thì khác nhau hoàn toàn. "You mustn't do something" ("Bạn không được làm điều đó) có nghĩa là "nhất định là bạn không được làm điều đó".
  - You mustn't tell anyone what I said. (= Don't tell anyone).
     (Ban không được kể cho ai nghe điều tôi đã nói). (= Đừng kể cho ai nghe).
  - i promised l'd be on time. I mustn't be late. (= I must be on time).
     (Tôi đã hứa là tôi sẽ đến đúng giờ. Tôi không được trễ). (= Tôi phải đúng giờ).

Xem thêm bài 33a.

"You don't have to do something" ("Bạn không cần phải làm cái gì đó") có nghĩa là "không cần thiết phải làm điều đó".

- I don't have to wear a suit to work but I usually do.
   (Tôi không cấn phải mặc complé đi làm nhưng tôi thường mặc thể).
- She stayed in bed this morning because she didn't have to go work.
   (Sáng nay có ấy ngủ kỹ bởi vì có ấy không phải đi làm).
- d) Bạn có thể dùng "have gọt to" thay cho have to. Vì vậy bạn có thể nói:
- t've got to work tomorrow. hoặc i have to work tomorrow.
   (Ngày mai tôi phải đi làm).
- When has Tom got to leave? hoặc When does Tom have to leave?
   (Khi nào thì Tom phải lên đường?)

### UNIT 32: Exercises

32.1 Complete those sentences with must or have to (in its correct form). Sometimes it is possible to use either; sometimes only have to is possible.

Examples: Well, it's 10 o'clock. I must (or have to) go now.

Ann was feeling ill last night. She had to leave the party early.

- 1 You really ..... work harder if you want to pass that examination.
  2 Many children in Britain ...... wear uniform when they go to school.
- 3 Last night Don suddenly became ill. We ...... call the doctor.
- 4 Ann has ..... wear glasses since she was eight years old.
- 6 I'm sorry I couldn't come yesterday. I ...... work late.
- 7 Tom may ...... go away next week.
- 8 We couldn't repair the car ourselves. We ...... take it to a garage.
- 9 When you come to London again, you ......come and see us.

32.2 Now make questions with have to.

Example: "Tom had to go to the police station"

"Why did he have to go to the police station?

1	"Ann	has to leave tomorrow*. "What time	e exa	actly
2		had to answer a lot of questions in		
	"Hov	v many questions		**************************************
3	'Ged	orge had to pay a parking fine". "Ho	w mu	ıch"
4	'l ha	ve to get up early tomorrow". "Why		
32.3 Th	nis tin	ne make negative sentences with ha	va to	
	mple	<del>-</del>		•
	,5	"No, it was a through train so the	ev dio	in't have to change (trains)
1	*Did	you pay to get into the concert?"		
		we had free tickets so we		
2		s Jack shave?" "No, he's got a bea		
3	"Did	you get up early this morning?"		
	No,	it's my day off so		
4	*Do	you work?" "No, I'm extremely rich:	so	
32.4 C	omole	ete these sentences with mustn't or o	don't	doesn't have to
				stn't tell anyone what I said. I don't
		have to wear a suit to work but I		•
1	Lean	stay in hed tomorrow morning hec	21100	1 work.
2				touch that switch. It's very dangerous
_				it what I told you. It's very important.
4	She	get up so early.	She	gets up early because she prefers to
5		leave		
		:	•	- , ,
KEY	•			
32.	• •	must / have to ("must" is better - ti	<u> </u>	
32.	່ 2	have to / must ("have to" is better		
	3	had to	uic	spounds is just giving a facty.
	4	had to (present perfect)		
	5	have to / must ("have to" is better	- the	speaker is just giving a fact).
	6	had to		
	7	have to		
	8	had to		
	9	must / have to ("must" is better - ti		
` 32.	<b>2</b> 1	does she have to leave? did you have to answer?	3 4	
	ح	und you have to answer?	4	do you have to get up early tomorrow?
32.	3 1	didn't have to pay (to get into	3	I didn't have to get up early.
		the concert).	_	
	2	he doesn't have to shave.	4	I don't have to work.
32.	4 1		3	mustn't
	2	mustn't	4	doesn't have to
	5	don't have to		

### BÀI 33: MUST, MUSTN'T, NEEDN'T và NEEDN'T HAVE

#### a) Must, mustn't và needn't:

(You) must (do) có nghĩa là bạn cắn thiết phải làm một việc gì đó:

- You haven't got much time. You must hurry.
   (Ban không có nhiều thời gian đầu. Ban phải nhanh lên mới được).
- You can tell Tom what I said but he must keep it a secret.
   (Ban có thể kể cho Tom nghe điều tôi đã nói nhưng anh ta phải giữ bí mật).

(You) mustn't (do) có nghĩa là bạn không được làm một việc gì đó.

- The baby is asleep. You mustn't shout. (= It is necessary that you do not shout). (Em bé dang ngủ. Con không được la hét).
- You can tell Tom what I said but he mustn't tell anybody else. (= It is secessary that
  he doesn't tell anybody else).
   (Ban có thể kể cho Tom điều tôi đã nói, nhưng anh ta không được kể lại với người
  khác).

(You) needn't (do) có nghĩa là không cần thiết phải làm một việc gì đó.

- You've got plenty of time. You needn't hurry. (= It is not necessary to hurry).
   (Ban có rất nhiều thời gian. Ban không cần phải vôi vã).
- I can hear you quite clearly. You needn't shout. (= It is not necessary to shout).
   (Tôi có thể nghe tiếng anh rất rõ. Anh không cần thiết phải hét lên).
- b) Thay vì dùng needn't, ban có thể dùng don't / doesn't need to:
  - You've got plenty of time. You don't need to hurry.
  - (Bạn có rất nhiều thời gian. Bạn không cần phải vội vã).

Hãy nhớ là chúng ta nói "don't need to hurry", nhưng "needn't hurry" (không có to).

c) Needn't have (done).

Hảy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau.

Tom đón xe tửa. Anh ta rời khỏi nhà trễ, do đó anh ta vội vã đi đến nhà ga. Nhưng xe lửa cũng khởi hành trễ, mãi hai mươi phút sau khi Tom đến nhà ga xe tửa mới khởi hành.

- Tom needn't have hurried (because the train was late).
   (Tom lê ra đã không cấn phải vội vâ) (bởi vì xe lửa khởi hành trễ).
- \*Tom needn't have hurried" có nghĩa là Tom đã vội vã, nhưng điều đó không cần thiết.

Chúng ta dùng meedn't have để nói rằng ai đó đã làm một điều gì, nhưng điều đó không cần thiết:

Ann bought some eggs but when she got home she found that she already had plenty of eggs. So she needn't have bought any eggs.
(Ann mua một ít trừng; nhưng khi về đến nhà, cô ấy mới thấy là còn rất nhiều trừng. Vì vậy cô ấy lẽ ra không cần phải mua thêm trừng nữa).

Thank you for doing the washing-up but you needn't have done it really. I was going to do it later.

(Cám ơn vì bạn đã rửa chén, nhưng thật ra bạn đã không cần phải làm điều đó. Tôi định lát sau sẽ rửa đấy chứ).

d) Didn't need to được dùng khác với needn't have.

Chúng ta dùng **didn't need to** (và **'didn't have to'**) để nói rằng một hành động nào đó là không cần thiết. Điều này được nhận biết <u>ngay</u> vào lúc làm hành động đó:

- I didn't need to go, so I didn't go.
   (Tôi không cần phải đi, vì thế tôi đã không đi).
- I didn't need to go but I decided to go anyway.
   (Tôi không cần phải đi nhưng dù sao tôi cũng đã quyết định đi rồi).

Khi chúng ta dùng needn't have, sự không cần thiết của hành động không được nhận biết vào lúc thực hiện hành động.

I needn't have gone. (= I went - this was unnecessary, but I didn't know at the time that it was unnecessary).
 (Lē ra tôi không cần phải đi). (= Tôi đã đi - điều này không cần thiết nhưng lúc đó tôi không biết là nó không cần thiết).

### UNIT 33: Exercises

<b>33.1</b> //	n this exercise you have to write a sentence with needn't.
Ex	ample: Shall I do the shopping now? (no / this afternoon).
	No, you needn't do it now. You can do it this afternoon.
1	Shall I clean the windows today? (no / tomorrow)
	No, you You tomorrow.
2	Shall I type these letters now? (no / later)
	No,
3	Shall I go to the bank this morning? (no / this afternoon)
	n this exercise you have to complete the sentences with must, mustn't or needn't.
	ramples: We haven't got much time. We <u>must</u> hurry.
	We've got plenty of time. We needn't hurry.
1	Do you want me to wait for you?" "No, it's okay. You wait".
2	Tom gave me a letter to post. I forget to post it.
3	You come if you don't want to but I hope you will.
4	"What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?" "Well, it be
	big - that's not important. But it have a nice garden - that's essentiat*.
5	We have enough food at home so wego shopping today.
.6	This book is very valuable. Youlook after it very carefully and youlose it.

<i>Exa</i> 1 2 3	<i>mple</i> I dor I dor I dor	ne you have to make a sentence with needn't have.  I don't know why we hurried. We needn't have hurried.  I't know why they left so early. They
33.4 No Exa	mple	ad these situations and make sentences with needn't have.  Ann bought some eggs. When she got home, she found that she already had plenty of eggs. She needn't have bought any eggs.
1	Tom rain.	went out and took an umbrella with him because he thought it was going to But it didn't rain.
2 .	Jack were	got very angry with Jill and threw a book at her. Later Jill said: "I know you very angry but
3 (	Briar	n had no money, so he sold his car. A few days later he won a lot of money in a petition
KEY		,
33.1	1 2. 3	No, you needn't clean them today. You can clean them tomorrow.  No, you needn't type them now. You can type them later.  No, you needn't go to the bank this morning. You can go this afternoon.
33.2	1 2 3 4 5 6	needn't mustn't needn't needn't must needn't must mustn't
33.3	1 2 3 4	They needn't have left so early.  She needn't have shouted at me like that.  He needn't have read the whole book.  She needn't have cancelled her holiday.
33.4	1 2 3	He needn't have taken an umbrella. You needn't have thrown a book at me. He needn't have sold his oor.

### BÀI 34:

### SHOULD (1)

#### a) Hāy xem xét thí dụ sau:

Tom · vừa đi xem phim vể:

Ann: Hello, Tom. Did you enjoy the film?

(Chào Tom. Anh có thích bộ phim này không?)

Tonf: Yes, it was great. You should go and see it.

(Có, phim hay tuyệt. Em nên đi xem nó).

"Tom đang khuyên Ann nên đi xem phim. "You should go" có nghĩa đó là một điều tốt nên làm. Chúng ta thường dùng **should (do)** khi chúng ta nói đến điều mà chúng ta cho là tốt hoặc đúng đẳn nên làm (=> advice, lời khuyên).

- The government should do something about the economy.
   (Chính phủ nên làm một điều gì đó đối với nền kinh tế).
- "Should we invite Sue to the party?" "Yes, I think we should".
   ("Chúng ta có nên mởi Sue đến dự tiệc không?" "Có, tối nghĩ là chúng ta nên mởi").

"You shouldn't do something" ("Bạn không nên làm điều gì đó") có nghĩa: đó không phải là điều tốt nên làm:

- You've been coughing a lot recently. You shouldn't smoke so much.
   (Gần đây bạn ho nhiều lắm đấy. Bạn không nên hút thuốc là nhiều như vậy).
- Tom shouldn't drive really. He too tired.
   (Thật ra Tom không nên lái xe. Anh ta quá mệt rồi).

#### Should không nhấn mạnh bằng must.

- You should stop smoking. (= It would be a good idea).
   (Ban nên ngừng hút thuốc lá). (= Đô là một ý kiến hay).
- You must stop smoking (= It is necessary that you stop).
   (Ban phải ngưng hút thuốc lá). (= Ban cấn phải ngưng hút thuốc).
- b) Chúng ta thường dùng should khi chúng ta hỗi hoặc nêu ý kiến về một việc gì đó. Chúng ta thường dùng kèm với I think / I don't think / do you think?:
  - I think the government should do something about the economy.
     (Tôi nghĩ chính phủ nên làm một điều gì đó đối với nên kinh tế).
  - I don't think you should work so hard.
     (Tôi không nghĩ là bạn nên làm việc vất vả như thế).
  - "Do you think I should apply for this job?" "Yes, I think you should".
     ("Anh nghĩ tôi có nên xin làm công việc này không?" "Có, tôi nghĩ anh nên đẩy").
- c) Chúng ta cũng dùng should để nói đến một điều gì đó không đúng hoặc không như chúng tá mọng đợi: = "lẽ ra; đáng lẽ; nên là"."
  - The price on this packet is wrong. It says 65 pence but it should be 50. (Giá ghi trên gói hàng này sai rồi. Nó ghi 65 xu nhưng nó chỉ nên là 50 xu thôi).
  - Those children shouldn't be playing. They should be at school.
     (Những đừa trẻ đó không nên chơi đùa. Lê ra chứng phải đang ở trường).

- That motor-cyclist should be wearing a crash helmet. (Người lái xe gắn máy đó lẽ ra phải đội nón an toàn).
- d) Đối với quá khứ, chúng ta dùng should ḥave (done) (lễ ra đã phải ; đáng lễ ra nên ...) để nói rằng ai đó đã làm một điều gì sai:
  - Hello, Ann. The party last night was great. You should have come. Why didn't you? (Chảo Ann. Bữa tiệc tối hôm qua thật tuyệt với. Lẽ ra bạn đã phải đến. Tại sao bạn
  - không đến?).
  - I'm feeling sick, I shouldn't have eaten so much chocolate.
    - (Tôi cảm thấy khó chịu. Đáng lệ tôi đã không nên ăn nhiều sô-cô-la như thế). why were you at home yesterday? You should have been at work.
  - (Sao hôm qua bạn lại ở nhà? Lẽ ra bạn đã phải đi làm chứ).
  - She shouldn't have been listening to our conversation. It was private. (Lê ra cô ta không nên nghe cuộc nói chuyện của chúng tôi, đó là chuyện riêng).
- e) Bạn có thể dùng ought to thay cho should trong những câu thuộc bài này.
  - It's really a good film. You ought to go and see it. (Đó quả là một phim hay. Bạn nên đi xem đi).
  - Tom ought not to drive. He is too tired. (Tom không nên lái xe. Anh ta mệt quá rồi).
  - it was a great party. You ought to have come. (Đó là một bữa tiệc tuyệt vời. Lê ra anh nên đến dự).

Để biết thêm về should, hãy xem bài 35.

### UNIT 34: Exercises

34.1 You are giving advice to a triend. Use should or shouldn't.

Example: Your friend is always coughing because he smokes too much. Advise him to stop smoking. You should stop smoking.

- You friend has a bad toothache. Advise him to go to the dentist. You t
- Your friend rides his bicycle at night without lights. You think this is dangerous. Advise him not to do it .....
- 3 Your friend is going to visit Greece. Advise him to learn a few words of Greek before he goes .....
- 34.2 This time you give your opinion about something. Use I think / I don't think ....

Example: Tom has just been offered a job. You think it would be a good idea for him to accept it. Lthink Tom should accept the job.

- You think it would be a good idea for all motorists to wear seat-belts. I think
- You don't think it would be a good idea for Jill and Sam to get married. I

- Your friend has a bad cold. Tell him that you think it would be a good idea for him to stay at home this evening.
- 34.3 Now you have to read the situations and write sentences with should (have) and shouldn't (have): Sometimes you have to use the present, sometimes the past.

Examples: The speed limit is 30 miles an hour but Tom is driving at 50.

he shouldn't be driving so fast.

When we got to the restaurant there were no free tables. We hadn't reserved one.

We should have reserved a table.

- 1 It's very cold. Mr. Taylor, who has been ill recently, is walking along the road without a coat. He ......
- 2 We went for a walk. While we were walking, we got hungry but we hadn't brought anything with us to eat. We said: We ......
- When I saw him later, he said: You .......
- 4 The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is now 9 o'clock but the shop isn't open ......
- 5 The driver in front stopped suddenly without warning and I drove into the back of his car, it wasn't my fault.
- The children normally go to bed at 9 o'clock. It is now 9.30. They are not in bed; they are watching television. (two sentences)
- 7 The accident happened because Tom was driving on the wrong side of the road.

### KEY

In all of the exercises in Unit 34 "ought to / ought not to" is possible instead of "should / shouldn"t"

- 34.1 1 You should go to the dentist.
  - 2 You shouldn't ride your bicycle at night without lights.
  - 3 You should learn a few words of Greek before you go.
- 34.2 1 I think all motorists should wear seat-belts.
  - 2 I don't think Jill and Sam should get married.
  - I think you should stay at home this evening.
- 34.3 1 He should be wearing a coat. / He should wear a coat. / He should have put a coat on.
  - 2 We should have brought something to eat.
  - 3 You should have come to see me (when you were in Paris).
  - 4 It / The shop should be open.
  - 5 He shouldn't have stopped (so) suddenly (without warning). / He should have given warning that he was going to stop.
  - 6 They should be in bed.
    - They shouldn't be watching television.
  - 8 To shouldn't have been driving on the wrong side of the road.

## BÀI 35:

### SHOULD (2)

- a) Dùng should để nói rằng một điều gì đó rất có thể sẽ xảy ra (=> a probability):
  - A: Do you think you'll be late home tonight? (Anh có nghĩ rằng tối nay anh sẽ về nhà trễ không?)
  - B: I don't think so. I should be home at the usual time. (Tôi không nghĩ thế, có thể tôi sẽ về nhà vào giờ thường lẽ).

Ở đây, "I should be home" có nghĩa là "có thể tôi sẽ về nhà". Bạn có thể được dùng should để nói về điều có thể sẽ xảy ra. Ought to cũng có thể được dùng với nghĩa này.

She's been studying very hard, so she should pass her examination. (or \*she ought to pass her examination\*) (Có ấy đã học hành rất chăm chỉ, vì vậy có thể cô ấy sẽ thi đậu thôi).

b) If... should

If you should see Tom this evening, can you tell him to phone me? (Nếu tối nay bạn gặp Tom, bạn có thể bảo anh ta gọi điện thoại cho tôi được không?).

Câu này cũng tương tự như câu "If you see Tom" (Nếu bạn gặp Tom) (không có should). Với should người nói ít chắc chắn (less certain) hơn:

- If it should rain, can you bring in the washing from the garden? (Nếu trởi mưa, đem đổ đang phơi ngoài vườn vào nhé?)
- Don't worry, if I should be late home tonight. (Đừng lo lắng nếu như tôi có về nhà trễ tối nay).

Bạn cũng có thể bắt đầu câu với should (trước chủ từ):

- Should you see Torn this evening, can you tell him to phone me? (Nếu tối nay bạn gặp Tom, bạn bảo anh ta gọi điện thoại cho tôi được không?).
- c) Bạn có thể dùng should sau các động từ dưới đây (tất nhiên chúng cũng dùng được với các cấu trúc khác):

suggest propose recommend insist demand (để nahi) (để nghi) (giới thiệu) (nài nì) (yêu cấu)

- They insisted that we should have dinner with them. (Họ nài nỉ chúng tôi ăn cơm tối với ho).
- She demanded that I apologised to her. (Cô ta vêu cầu tôi xin lỗi cô ta).

Hãy cấn thận với động từ suggest. Bạn không được dùng to-infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu) (to do / to play v.v...) sau suggest:

What do you suggest we should do?

(but not "What do you suggest us to do?"). hoặc: What do you suggest we do? (Theo anh chúng tôi nên làm gì?).

Jim suggested (that) I should buy a car. (but not "Jim suggested me to buy"). hoặc: Jim suggested (that) I bought a car.

(Jim để nghị tôi nên mua một chiếc xe hợi).

Đối với suggest+ing, hãy xem bài 53.

d) Bar	có thể đùng should sau	u các tính từ (adjectives) o	dưới đây:
im		strange (kỳ lạ)	
		odd (kỳ quặc)	
	itural (tự nhiên)	surprised (ngạc nhiềi	
In	teresting (thú vị)	surprising (đáng kinh	•
•	_	ild be late. He's usually or	
_	• • •	in trễ. Anh ta thường đúng should say sụch a thing.	ggio).
	•	snoulo say such a uling. ta lại nói một điều như vậ	iy).
UN	IT 35: <b>Exercis</b>	es	
	n this exercise you have to kample: Do you think Ma		you think something will happen.
			She has studied yery hard.
1		et the job he applied for? He's go	ot all the necessary qualifications.
2	Do you think Jim will wi	in his tennis match agains	st Tom?
			a much better player than Tom.
. 3	•	e enough to do all the sh	
35.2 1	n this exercise you have t	to use if should	
E.	xample: I don't suppose you ask him to		ing but <u>if you should see him,</u> can
1	I don't think Ann will an until I come?	rive before I get home bu	tcan you look after her
2	I don't think there will be can you send them on	•	le I'm away but
3		eed any help but	just let me know.
S	ame as the first sentence. xample: "I think it would The doctor reco "You really must sta	I be a good idea to see a commended that <u>I should say</u> a little longer", she	said to me. She insisted that
2			I said to them. I suggested that
3	"You must pay the ren	it by Friday at the latest*	, he said to us. He demanded that

5.4 Thi	is tir	me you have to put should in the	se sentences with	one of these verbs	);
		orry listen	leave	say	be
Exal	mple	e: It's strange that he <u>should be</u> I	late. He's usually o	n time.	
2 lt's 3 isr	onl t ty	Iny that you  Iy natural that parents  Iy pical of him that he  Iy important that everyone		about their chi vithout saying goo	ildren. dbye?
35.1	1	he should get the job.	<del></del>	-	
••••	2	he should win (the match).			
	3	it should be enough.			
		"Ought to" is possible instead	of "should" in this e	exercise.	
35.2	1	if she should arrive.			
J.J.Z	-	if there should be any (letters)			
33.2	2	in more enterior of drift (letters)			
33.2	3	if you should need any (help).			
35.2	3				
	3	if you should need any (help) I should stay a little longer they should visit the museu	(or I stayed). m after lunch. (or t	,	
	3 1	if you should need any (help) I should stay a little longer.	(or I stayed). m after lunch. (or t	,	

- 2 should worry.
- 3 should leave.
- 4 should listen.

# BÀI 36: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Câu điều kiện) (hiện tại ; tương lai)

a) Hāy so sánh các thí dụ sau:

Tom: I think I left my lighter in your house. Have you seen it?

(Tôi nghĩ là tôi đã để quên cái bật lửa ở nhà bạn. Bạn có thấy nó không?)

Ann: No, but I'll have a look. If I find it, I'll give it to you.

(Khẳng, nhưng tôi sẽ xem lại. Nếu tôi tìm thấy nó, tôi sẽ đưa lại cho bạn).

Trong thí dụ này, có một khả năng hiện thực (a real possibility) là Ann sẽ tim thấy bật lửa. Vì vậy cô ấy nói "lí l find... l'll..." (xem thêm bài 9c).

Ann: If I found £100 in the street, I would keep it.

(Giả sử tôi tìm thấy 100 bảng trên đường, tôi sẽ giữ nó).

Đây là một loại tính huống khác. Ann không đang nghĩ về một khả năng hiện thực ; cò ấy tưởng tượng ra tình huống đó (an imagined situation). Vì vậy cò ấy nói: "If I found... I would..." (không nói: "If I find... I will...").

Khi bạn tưởng tượng ra một sự việc trong tương lai như trên, bạn dùng hình thức past (quá khứ) (did/was/found v.v...) sau if. Nhưng ý nghĩa không phải ở quá khứ.

- What would you do if you won a million pounds?
   (Bạn sẽ làm gì nếu như bạn thắng được một triệu bằng?)
- If we didn't go to their party next week, they would be very angry.
   (Nếu như tuần tới chúng ta không đến dự bữa tiệc của họ, họ sẽ rất tức giận).
- Ann wouldn't lend me any money if I asked her.
   (Ann sē không cho tôi mượn tiền đầu nếu tôi hỏi cô ta).
- b) Thường thi chúng ta không dùng would trong IF clause (mệnh để if) của câu.
  - I'd be very frightened if someone pointed a gun at me. (not "if someone would point")

(Tôi sẽ rất hoảng sợ nếu ai đó chĩa súng vào tôi).

If we didn't go to their party next week, they would be angry. (not "if we wouldn't go")

(Nếu tuần tởi chúng ta không đi dự bữa tiệc của họ, họ sẽ rất tức giận).

Đôi khi chúng ta cũng có thể nói if... would, đặc biệt là khi chúng ta nhớ ai làm một việc nào đó một cách trịnh trọng:

- I would be very grateful if you would send me your brochure and price list as soon as possible. (from a formal letter) (Tôi sẽ rất biết ơn nếu ông gởi cho tôi quyển sách hướng dẫn và bằng giá trong
  - thời hạn ngắn nhất). (từ một là thư đúng nghi thức) "Shall I close the door?" "Yes, please, if you would".

("Tôi đóng cửa lại nhé?" "Vâng, xin cử đóng nếu anh muốn").

c) Ở phần còn lại của câu (main clause - mệnh để chính) (không phải if clause) chúng ta dùng would / wouldn't. Would thường được rút gọn thành 'd, đặc biệt là trong văn nói tiếng Anh (spoken English).

- If you stopped smoking, you'd probably feel healthier.
   (Néu bạn ngưng hút thuốc, bạn sẽ cảm thấy khỏe hơn).
- They wouldn't come to the party if you invited them.
   (Ho không đến dự tiệc nếu bạn có mởi họ đi nữa).

### Bạn có thể dùng could hoặc might:

- They might be angry if I didn't visit them.
   (Có lẽ họ sẽ nổi giận nếu tôi không đến thăm họ).
- If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out) (Néu trởi tạnh mưa, chúng ta có thể ra ngoài).
- đ) Đừng dùng when trong những câu giống như của bài này:
  - Tom would be angry if I didn't visit him. (not "when I didn't visit")
     (Tom sẽ nổi giận nếu như tôi không đến thăm anh ta).
  - What would you do if you were bitten by a snake?-(not "when you were")
     (Bạn sẽ làm gì nếu như bạn bị rằn cắn?)

Xem bài 9c.

Đổi với conditional sentences, xem thêm các bài 37, và 38.

### **UNIT 36: Exercises**

	amples: If I found £100 in the street, I <u>would keep</u> (keep) it.  They'd be rather angry if you <u>didn't visit</u> (not/visit) them.
1	If I was offered the job, I think I (take) it.
2	I'm sure Tom will lend you some money. I would be very surprised if he
3	Many people would be out of work if that factory (close) down.
4	If she sold her car, she (not/get) much money for it.
5	They're expecting us. They would be disappointed if we (not/come).
6	Would George be angry if I (take) his bicycle without asking?
7	Ann gave me this ring. She (be) terribly upset if I lost it.
8	If someone (walk) in here with a gun, I'd be very frightened.
9	What would happen if you (not/go) to work tomorrow?
10	I'm sure she (understand) if you explained the situation to her.
	his time you have to make questions. ample: Perhaps one day somebody will give you a lot of money.

What would you do if somebody gave you a lot of money?

What would you do if .....

Perhaps one day a millionaire will ask you to marry him/her.

2	Perhaps one day you will lose your passport in a foreign country.  What
3	Perhaps one day somebody will throw an egg at you.  What
4	Perhaps one day your car will be stolen.  What
5	Perhaps one day somebody will park his car on your foot.  What
	Now answer these questions in the way shown.
E	xample: Are you going to catch the 10.30 train? (we/arrive too early) No, if we caught the 10.30 train, we would arrive too early.
1	
	No, if we caught the 10.30 train, we would arrive too early.  Is he going to take the examination? (he / fail it)  No, If he
1	No, if we caught the 10.30 train, we would arrive too early.  Is he going to take the examination? (he / fail it)  No, If hehe

36.1	1	would take	6	took
	2	refused	7	would be
	3	closed	.8	walked
	4	wouldn't get	9	ರidn't go
	5	didn't come	10	would understand
36.2	1	What would you do	if a millionai	re asked you to marry him / her?
	2	What would you do	if you lost yo	our passport in a foreign country?
	3	What would you do	if somebody	threw an egg at you?
	4	What would you do	if your car w	vas / were stolen?
	5	What would you do	if somebody	y parked his car on your foot?
36.3	1	If he took the exami	nation, he w	vould fail it.
	2	If I invited Bill to the	party, I wou	uld have to invite Linda too.
	3	If I went to bed now	, 1 wouldn't	sleep.
	5	If she applied for the	e job, she w	ouldn't get it.

## BÀI 37: Câu với IF và WISH (hiện tại)

a) Hãy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau:

Tom muốn gọi điện thoại cho Sue, nhưng anh ta không thể làm được điều này vì anh ta không biết số điện thoại của cô ta. Anh ta nói:

- If I knew her number, I would telephone her.

(Nếu tôi biết số điện thoại của cô ta, tôi sẽ gọi diện thoại cho cô ta).

Tom nói "If I knew her number ...". Điều này cho thấy anh ta không biết số điện thoại của cô ta. Anh ta dang tưởng tượng ra tình huống đó. Tình huống thật (real situation) là anh ta không biết số điện thoại của cô ta.

Khi bạn tưởng tượng ra một tình huống tương tự, bạn dùng hình thức past (quá khứ) (I did/l was/l knew v.v...) sau if.

Nhưng ý nghĩa của câu là ở hiện tại, chứ không phải ở quá khứ.

- Tom would travel if he had more money. (but he doesn't have much money).
   (Tom sẽ đi du lịch nếu anh ta có nhiều tiền hơn) (nhưng anh ta không có nhiều tiền).
- If I didn't want to go, I wouldn't. (but I want to go).
   (Meu tôi không muốn đi, tôi sẽ không đi) (nhưng tôi muốn đi).
- We wouldn't have any money if we didn't work. (but we work)
   (Chúng ta sẽ không có tiến nếu chúng ta không làm việc).
- b) Chúng ta cũng dùng hình thức past (quá khứ) cho một tình huống hiện tại (present situation) đứng sau wish. Chúng ta dùng wish để nói rằng chúng ta lấy làm tiếc về một điều gì, điều đó không được như chúng ta mong muốn:
  - I wish I knew Sue's telephone number. (I don't know it).
     (Uớc gì tôi biết số điện thoại Sue). (Tôi không biết).
  - Do you ever wish you could fly? (You can't fly).
     (Ban có bao giờ ước ao là mình biết bay không?) (Ban không biết bay).
  - I wish it didn't rain so much in England. (It rains a lot).
     (Tôi mong ước là trời đừng mưa nhiều như thế ở nước Anh) (Trời mưa rất nhiều).
  - It's crowded here. I wish there weren't so many people (There are a lot of people).
     (Ở đây đông người quá. Tôi ước gì đừng có nhiều người quá như vậy). (Có rất nhiều người).
  - I wish I didn't have to work. (I have to work).
     (Uớc gì tôi không phải làm việc). (Tôi phải làm việc).
- c) Trong các câu lf và sau wish bạn có thể dùng were thay cho was:
  - if I were you, I wouldn't buy that coat. (hoặc là "If I was you") (Nếu tôi là bạn, tôi sẽ không mua cái áo khoác đó).
  - I'd go out if it weren't raining. (hoặc "If it wasn't raining")
     (Tôi sẽ đi ra ngoài nếu trời không đang mưa).

- I wish my room were larger. (hoặc "I wish my room was larger").
   (Ước gì căn phòng của tôi lớn hơn).
- d) Đứng dùng would trong mệnh để if của câu hoặc sau wish:
  - If I were rich, I would buy a castle.

(Nếu tôi giàu có, tôi sẽ mua một tòa lâu đài).

I wish I were taller.

(Ước gì tới cao hơn).

Nhưng đối khi ta cũng có thể dùng I wish ... would ... Hây xem bài 39.

Could đôi khi có nghĩa là "rất có thể" và đôi khi lại có nghĩa là "đã có thể làm được":

 She could (= would be able to) get a job more easily if she could (= was able to) type.

(Cô ta rất có thể kiểm được việc làm dễ dàng hơn nếu cô ta biết đánh máy).

Đối với các câu if và wish, xem thêm các bài 36, 38 và 39.

### UNIT 37: Exercises

<u>-</u> 2	samples: If I knew (know) her number, I would telephone her.
	I wouldn't buy (not/buy) that coat if I were you.
1	(give) you a cigarette if I had one but I'm afraid I haven't.
2	This soup would taste better if it
3	If you(not/go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn't be so tire all the time.
4	I wouldn't mind living in England if the weather (be) better.
5	I'd help you if I(can) but I'm afraid I can't.
6	If I were you, I (not/marry) him.
7	We would happily buy that house if it (not/be) so small.
	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.
	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.
	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  cample: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.  But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.  People don't understand him because he doesn't speak very clearly.
E)	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  cample: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.  But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.
E)	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  cample: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.  But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.  People don't understand him because he doesn't speak very clearly.  But if he
<i>E</i> )	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  cample: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.  But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.  People don't understand him because he doesn't speak very clearly.  But if he
1 2	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  sample: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.  But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.  People don't understand him because he doesn't speak very clearly.  But if he
1 2	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  tample: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.  But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.  People don't understand him because he doesn't speak very clearly.  But if he
1 2 3	This time you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  cample: We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.  But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.  People don't understand him because he doesn't speak very clearly.  But if he

### 37.3 Now you have to write sentences with I wish ...

Example: I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). Lwish I knew more people.

1	I can't give up smoking (but I'd like to). I wish I
	I haven't any cigarettes (and I need one). I wish
	George isn't here (and I need him). I wish George
	It's cold (and I hate cold weather). I wish
	I live in London (and I hate London). I
	Tina can't come to the party (she's your best friend). I

9 I'm not lying on a beautiful sunny beach (and that's a pity).

- **37.1** 1 would give
  - 2 had
  - 3 didn't go
  - 4 were/was
  - 5 could
  - 6 wouldn't marry
  - 7 weren't/wasn't
- 37.2 1 But if he spoke (more) clearly, people would understand him.
  - 2 But if that book weren't/wasn't so expensive, I would buy it.
  - 3 But if she could walk without help, she would go out more often.
  - 4 But if he took some/more exercise, he wouldn't be (so) fat.
  - 5 But if it weren't/wasn't raining, we could (or would be able to) have lunch in the garden.
  - 6 But if I didn't have to work, I could (or would be able to) meet you tomorrow evening.
- 37.3 1 I wish I could give up smoking.
  - 2 I wish I had a cigarette/some cigarettes.
  - 3 I wish George were/was here.
  - 4 Pt wish it weren't/wasn't so cold.
  - 5 I wish I didn't live in London
  - 6 I wish Tina could come to the party.
  - 7 I wish I didn't have to work tomorrow.
  - 8 I wish I knew something about cars.
  - 9 I wish I were/was lying on a beautiful sunny beach.

## BÀI 38: Câu với IF và WISH (quá khứ)

a) Hāy xem xét tinh huổng mẫu sau:

Tháng trước Ann bị bệnh. Tom không biết điều này, vì thế anh ta đã không đến thăm cô ta. Họ gặp lại nhau sau khi Ann đã khỏe hơn. Tom nói:

If I had know that you were ill, I would have gone to see you.
 (Néu tôi biết bạn bị bệnh, tôi đã đi thăm bạn).

Tình huống thật là Tom đã không biết rằng Ann đã bị bệnh. Vì vậy anh ta nói "lí I had known...". Khi bạn đang nói về quá khứ, bạn dùng thi Past Perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành) (I had done / I had been / I had known v.v...) sau lí.

- If I had seen you when you passed me in the street, I would have said hello.
   (Néu tôi nhìn thấy bạn lúc bạn đi ngang qua tôi đã chào bạn rồi). (Nhưng tôi đã không nhìn thấy bạn).
- I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired.
   (Tôi đã đi chơi nếu như tôi không mệt mỏi như thế). (Nhưng tội quá mệt mỏi).
- If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn't have walked into the wall. (Néu như anh ta để ý xem mình dang đi đâu, anh ta đã không đảm sắm vào tường như thế). (Nhưng anh ta đã không để ý).

### Đứng dùng would (have) trong mệnh để if của câu:

If I had seen you, I would have said hello. (Không nói "If I would have seen")
 (Nếu tôi nhìn thấy bạn thì tôi đã chào bạn rồi).

#### Cả would và had đều có thể rút gọn thành 'd:

- If I'd seen you, I'd said hello.
   (Néu tôi nhìn thấy bạn thì tôi đã chảo bạn rỗi.).
- b) Bạn cũng phải dùng thì Past Perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành) (I had done) sau wish khí bạn nói rằng bạn lấy làm tiếc về một việc nào đó đã xảy ra hoặc đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ:
  - I wish I had known that Ann was ill. I would have gone to see her.
     (Ước gi tôi đã biết rằng Ann bị bệnh. Tôi sẽ đã đi thăm cô ấy). (Tôi đã không biết rằng có ấy bị bệnh)
  - I feel sick. I wish I hadn't eaten so much.
     (Tôi cầm thấy khó chịu. Giả mà tôi đừng ăn nhiều như thế): (Tôi đã ăn quá nhiều)
  - Do you wish you had studied science instead of languages?
     (Ban có ước rằng bạn đã học khoa học thay vì học ngôn ngữ không?) (Bạn đã không học khoa học)
  - The weather was awful. I wish it had been warmer.
     (Thời tiết thật khủng khiếp. Tôi ước gì trời đã ấm hơn). (Trời đã không ấm)
     Bạn không thể dùng would (have) sau wish:
  - I wish, it had been warmer. (không dùng "would have been")
     (Tôi ước gì trời đã ấm hơn).
- c) Would have (done) là thể quá khứ của would (do):

- If I had gone to the party last night, I would be tired now.
   (Nếu như tối hôm qua tôi đi dự tiệc thì bây giờ tôi sẽ mệt mỗi lắm). (Bây giờ tôi không mệt mỗi hiện tại)
- If I had gone to the party last night, I would have seen Ann.
   (Nếu như tối hôm qua tôi dự tiệc thì tôi sẽ đã gặp Ann). (Tôi đã không gặp Ann quá khứ)

Might have và could have cũng có thể được dùng thay cho would have:

- If we'd played better, we might have won. (= perhaps we would have won)
   (Néu chúng ta chơi hay hơn, có lệ chúng ta đã thắng).
- We could have gone out if the weather hadn't been so bad. (= we would have been able to go out)

(Chúng ta đã có thể đi ra ngoài nếu thời tiết không xấu như thế).

Đối với câu if và wish, xem thêm các bài 36, 37 và 39.

### UNIT 38: Exercises

OIVI	1 30. Exercises
	n this exercise you have to put the verb into the correct form.  amples: If I had known (know) that you were ill last week, I'd have gone to see you.  Tom wouldn't have entered (not/enter) for the examination if he had known that it would be so difficult.
1	Tom got to the station in time. If he (miss) the train, he would have been late for his interview.
2	It's good that Ann reminded me about Tom's birthday. 1 (forget) if she hadn't reminded me.
3	We might not have stayed at this hotel if George (not/recommend it to us.
. 4	I'd have sent you a postcard while I was on holiday if i
	low you have to read a situation and write a sentence with if.  sample: She didn't eat anything because she wasn't hungry.  If she had been hungry, she would have eaten something.
1	The accident happened because the driver in front stopped so suddenly. If the driver in front
2	i didn't wake George because I didn't know he wanted to get up early. If
3	I was able to buy the car because Jim lent me the money. I
4	She wasn't injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat-bett.
5	You're hungry now because you didn't have breakfast.

6	She didn't buy the coat because she didn't have enough money on her.
	IF .
	II
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

38.3 This time you have to imagine that you are in a situation. For each situation, make a sentence with I wish ...

Example: You've eaten too much and now you feel sick. You say: 1 wish I hadn't eaten so much.

- 1 You've just painted the door red. Now you decide that it doesn't look very nice. You say: I wish ! .....
- 2 You are walking in the country. You would like to take some photographs but you didn't bring your camera. You say: 1
- 3 A good friend of yours visited your town but unfortunately you were away when he came. So you didn't see him. You say:
- 4 You've just come back from your holiday. Everything was fine except for the hotel, which wasn't very good. You say:

- 38.1 1 had missed
  - 2 would have forgotten
  - 3 hadn't recommended
  - 4 had had ('d had)
- 38.2 1 If the driver in front hadn't stopped (so) suddenly, the accident wouldn't have happened.
  - 2 If I had known George wanted (or had wanted) to get up early, I would have woken him.
  - 3 If Jim hadn't lent me the money, I wouldn't have been able to buy the car.
  - 4 If she hadn't been wearing (or hadn't worn) a seat-belt, she would have been injured in the crash.
  - 5 If you'd had (= had had) breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.
  - 6 If she'd had (= had had) enough money on her, she would have bought the coat.
- 38.3 1 I wish I hadn't painted the door red / I wish I had painted it another colour.
  - 2 I wish I had brought my camera. / I wish I had my camera with me.
  - 3 I wish I had seen him. / I wish I had been here when he came.
  - 4 I wish the hotel had been better. / I wish we had stayed at another hotel.

## BÀI 39:

### WOULD

Đối với would và would have trong IF-clause (câu điều kiện, xem các bài 36,37 và 38).

Đối với **would** trong offers (lời đề nghị) invitations (lời mời) v.v... xem bài 31. Bài này giải thích một số cách dùng khác của **would**.

a) Đôi khi chúng ta dùng would sau I wish ... Xem thí dụ sau:



Trời đang mưa. Tom muốn đi ra ngoài, nhưng không phải đi dưới mưa. Anh ta nói:

I wish it would stop raining.
(Tôi ước gì trời tạnh mưa).

Điều này có nghĩa là Tom đang phàn nàn về cơn mưa và muốn mưa tạnh. Chúng ta dùng / wish... would... khi chúng ta muốn một điều gì đó xảy ra hoặc muốn một người nào đó làm một việc gì. Người nói đang phàn nàn (complaining) về tình huống hiện tai.

- I wish someone would answer that telephone. It's been ringing for about five minutes.
- (Giá mà có ai đó trả lời điện thoại. Điện thoại đã reo được khoảng 5 phút rồi).
- The music next door is very loud. I wish they would turn it down.

  (Nhà bên cạnh mở nhạc quá lớn. Tôi ước gì họ vặn máy nhỏ bớt).

Chúng ta thường dùng I wish... wouldn't để phản nàn về cách thức người khác làm một việc gì.

I wish you wouldn't drive so fast. It makes me nervous.
 (Úớc gì anh đừng lái xe nhanh như thế. Nó làm tôi hồi hộp quá).

Chúng ta dùng I wish... would khi chúng ta muốn một điều gì đó phải thay đổi hoặc muốn người khác làm một điều gì đó. Vì vậy bạn không thể nói "I wish I would...".

Để biết thêm về wish, hãy xem bài 37 và 38.

b) Would / wouldn't đôi khi là hình thức quá khứ của will / won't:

Hiện tại - Tom: I'll lend you some money, Ann.

(Tom: Tôi sẽ cho bạn mượn một ít tiền, Ann a).

Quá khứ - Tom said that he would lend Ann some money.

(Tom nói rằng anh ta sẽ cho Ann mượn một ít tiền)

Hiện tại - Ann: I promise I won't be late.

(Ann: Tôi hứa sẽ không đi trễ).

Quá khứ - Ann promised that she wouldn't be late.

(Ann đã hứa là cô ta sẽ không trễ).

- Hiện tại Tom: Damn! The car won't start.
  (Tom: Khỉ thật! Xe hơi không chịu nổ máy).
- Quá khứ Tom was angry because the car wouldn't start.
  (Tom giân dữ vì chiếc xe không chịu nổ máy).
- c) Bạn cũng có thể dùng would khi bạn nhin lại quá khứ và nhớ lại những điều đã thường xảy ra (repeated actions in the past):
  - When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we would all get up early and go for a swim.
    (Khi chúng tôi còn bé, chúng tôi sống gắn biển. Vào mùa hè, nếu thời tiết tốt, chúng tôi thường dây sớm và đi bởi).
  - Whenever Arthur was angry, he would just walk out of the room.

(Mỗi khi Arthur giân dữ, anh tạ thường chỉ đi ra khỏi phòng).

Used to cũng có thể được dùng trong những câu trên:

- ... We all used to get up early and go...
  - (... Chúng tôi thường dậy sớm và đi...)

Valused to, xem bài 25.

### **UNIT 39: Exercises**

39.1 In this exercise you have to read a situation and then write a sentence with I wish... would...

Example: It's raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain. So you want it to stop raining. What do you say? I wish it would stop raining.

- 1 You're waiting for Tom. He's late and you're getting impatient. You want him to come, What do you say? I wish ......
- 2 A baby is crying and you're trying to sleep. You want the baby to stop crying. What do you say? I
- 3 You're looking for a job so far without success. You want somebody to give you a job. What do you say? I wish somebody ......
- 4 Brian has been wearing the same old clothes for years. You think he needs some new clothes and you want him to buy some. What do you say to him?

39.2 Now you have to use I wish ... wouldn't ...

Example: Tom drives very fast. You don't like this. What do you say to him?
I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.

You are telling your friend about the man in the next flat. He often plays the piano in the middle of the night and you don't like this. What do you say to your friend? 1

	2	A lo	it of people drop litter in the street. You don't like this. What do you say? I wish
	3	Jac	ple
39	.3 In		exercise you have to write a sentence with promised.
			e: I wonder why she's late. She promised she wouldn't be late.
ر	1 2 3	l wo	ander why Tom hasn't written to me. He promised ander why Ann told Tom what I said. She promised ander why they haven't come. They
39	.4 77 wou	ies6	sentences are about things that often happened in the past. You have to put in ith one of these verbs: be walk take shake
	Exa	mple	Whenever Arthur was angry, he would walk out of the room.
	1	We hous	used to live next to a railway line. Every time a train went past, the whole
	3	Thai Whe	t cinema is nearly always empty now. I remember a few years ago it
K	ΕY	•	
	39.1		I wish Tom would come, / I wish Tom would hurry (up).
		2	I wish that baby would stop crying.
		3	I wish somebody would give me a job.
		4	i wish you would buy some new clothes.
	39.2	1	I wish the man in the next flat wouldn't play the piano in the middle of the night.
		2	wish people wouldn't drop litter in the street.
		3	wish you wouldn't always leave the door open.
	39.3	1 2	He promised (me) he would write to me.  She promised (me) she wouldn't tell Torp what I said

3 They promised (me) they would come.

39.4 1 would shake 2 would be

2 would always take .

## BÀI 40: IN CASE (phòng khi)

a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Geoff là một trọng tài bóng đá. Anh luôn luôn đeo hai đồng hồ trong một trận đấu, bởi vì có thể một chiếc đồng hồ sẽ ngừng chạy.

 He wears two watches in case one of them stops.

(Anh ta đeo hai chiếc đồng hồ phòng khi một trong hai chiếc ngừng chạy).

In case one of them stops (Phòng khi một trong hai chiếc ngừng chạy) = "bởi vì có thể một trong hai chiếc sẽ ngừng chạy".

Sau đây là một số thí dụ về in case:

- John might phone tonight. I don't want to go out in case he phones. (= because it is
  possible that he will phone).
  - (Tối nay John có thể sẽ gọi điện thoại tới. Tôi không muốn ra ngoài phòng khi anh ta gọi điện thoại tới). (= bởi vì có thể anh ta sẽ gọi điện thoại tới).
- I'll draw a map for you in case you can't find our house. (= because it is possible that you won't be able to find it).
  - (Tôi sẽ vẽ một bản đổ cho bạn phòng khi bạn không tìm ra nhà của chúng tôi). (= bởi vì có thể bạn sẽ không tìm ra nó).
- b) Đừng dùng will sau in case. Dùng một thì hiện tại (present tense) khi bạn đang nói về tương lai:
  - I don't want to go out tonight in case John phones. (không nói \*in case John will phone\*).
- c) In case không có cùng ý nghĩa với if. Hãy so sánh các câu sau:
  - We'll buy some more food if Tom comes. (= Perhaps Tom will come; if he comes, we'll buy some more food; if he doesn't come, we won't buy any more food). (Chúng ta sẽ mua thêm một ít thức ăn nếu Tom đến). (= Có lẽ Tom sẽ đến; bây giờ chúng ta sẽ mua thêm một ít thức ăn, dù anh ta có đến hay không; như thế chúng ta sẽ có sẵn thức ăn nếu anh ta đến).
  - We'll buy some more food in case Tom comes. (= Perhaps Tom will come; we'll buy some more food now, whether he comes or not; then we'll already have the food if he comes.
    - (Chúng ta sẽ mua thêm một ít thức ăn phòng khi Tom đến). (= Có lẽ Tom sẽ đến ; bây giờ chúng ta sẽ mua thêm một ít thức ăn, dù anh ta có đến hay không ; như thế chúng ta sẽ có sẵn thức ăn nếu anh ta đến).

Hãy so sánh:

- This letter is for Ann. Can you give it to her if you see her? (Lá thư này gởi cho Ann. Bạn có thể đưa cho cô ta nếu bạn gặp cô ta không?)

- This letter is for Ann. Can you take it with you in case you see her?
   (Lá thư này gỗi cho Ann. Bạn có thể mang nó theo phòng khi bạn gặp cổ ta không?)
- đ) Bạn có thể dùng in case (phòng khí) để nói vì sao một người nào đã làm điều gì đó trong quá khứ:
  - We bought some more food in case Tom came. (= because it was possible that Tom would come).

(Chúng tôi đã mua thêm một ít thức ăn phòng khi Tom đến).

- I drew a map for her in case she couldn't find our house.
   (Tôi đã vẽ một bản đổ cho cô ta phòng khi cô ta không tìm ra nhà của chúng tôi).
- We rang the bell again in case they hadn't heard the first time.
   (Chúng tôi đã bấm chuông lần nữa phòng khi họ không nghe được lần đầu).
- e) In case of khác với in case. In case of fire có nghĩa là "if there is a fire" (nếu có hỏa hoạn, trong trường hợp hỏa hoạn):
  - In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible.
     (Trong trưởng hợp xảy ra hỏa hoạn, hãy rời khỏi tòa nhà ngay lập tức).
  - In case of emergency, telephone this number. (= if there is an emergency)
     (Trong trưởng hợp khẩn cấp, hãy gọi số điện thoại này). (= nếu có chuyện khẩn cấp).

### **UNIT 40: Exercises**

		· 
hi	Tom is going for a long walk in the country. m: his camera, some chocolate, an umbrella, taking these things because:	He has decided to take these things with a towel, a map and some lemonade. He
pe pe	erhaps he'll need a drink erhaps he'll want to have a swim erhaps he'll want to take some photographs	perhaps he'll lose his way perhaps it will rain perhaps he'll get hungry
N	ow write sentences with In case saying why 1	Гот has decided to take these things.
1 2 3 4 5	xample. He is going to take his camera in case He's going to take some chocolate in case He's going to take	**************************************
40.2	In this exercise you have to write sentences to	with in case.
E	xample: It was possible that John would pho	one. So I didn't go out.
1	I didn't go out in case John phoned It was possible that he would come to Lon	

- it was possible that I wouldn't see her again. So I said goodbye. I said
  it was possible that her parents were worried about her. So she phoned them. She
  it was possible that I would forget the name of the street. So I wrote it down.
  it was possible that they hadn't reqeived my first letter. So I wrote them a second letter.
- 40.3 This time you have to put in case or if in these sentences.

Examples: John might phone tonight. I don't want to go out in case he phones.

Could you give this book to Tom if you see him?

- 1 I hope you'll come to London sometime. ..... you come, you must visit us.
- 2 I've just painted the door. I'll put a Wet Paint notice next to it ......someone doesn't realise the paint is still wet.
  - 3 We have fitted a burgiar alarm to the house ...... somebody tries to break in.
- 4 The alarm will ring ...... somebody tries to break into the house.
- 5 Write your name and address on your bag ...... you lose it.
- 7 I was advised to arrange insurance \_\_\_\_\_\_I needed medical treatment while I was on holiday abroad.

- 40.1 1 He's going to take some chocolate in case her gets hungry.
  - 2-5
    - He's going to take an umbrella in case it rains.
    - He's going to take a towel in case he wants to have a swim.
    - He's going to take a map in case he loses his way.
    - He's going to take some lemonade in case he needs a drink.
- 40.2 1 i gave him my address in case he came to London one day.
  - I said goodbye iπ case I didn't see her again.
  - 3 She phoned her parents in case they were worried about her.
  - 4 I wrote down the name of the street in case I forgot it.
  - 5 I wrote them a second letter in case they hadn't received my first one.
- 40.3 1 If
  - 2 in case
  - 3 in case
  - 4 if
  - 5 in case
  - 6 if
  - 7 in case

# BÀI 41: UNLESS, AS LONG AS và PROVIDED / PROVIDING (THAT)

#### a) Unless (trừ phi ; nếu ... không);



Hāy xem xét tinh huống mẫu sau: Joe bị lãng tại. Nếu bạn nói binh thường với anh tạ, anh ta sẽ không thể nghe thấy bạn nói gì. Nếu bạn muốn anh ta nghe bạn, bạn phải la lớn.

Joe can't hear unless you shout.
 (Joe không thể nghe được trừ phi bạn la lớn).
 Điều này có nghĩa là: ≜Joe can hear only if you shout". Unless có nghĩa là except if (trừ phi).

Chúng ta dùng unless để thiết lập một ngoại tệ (an exception) cho điều chúng ta nói.

Sau đây là một số thí dụ khác về unless:

- Don't tell Ann what I said unless she asks you. (= except if she asks you) (Đừng kể cho Ann điều tôi đã nói trừ phi cô ta hỏi bạn).
- I'll come tomorrow unless I have to work. (= except if I have to work)
   (Ngày mai tôi sẽ đến trừ phi tôi phải làm việc).
- I wouldn't eat fish unless I was extremely hungry. (= except if I was extremely hungry)

(Tôi sẽ không ăn cá trừ phi tôi quá đói).

Chúng ta thường dùng unless trong các lời cảnh báo (warnings):

- We'll be late unless we hurry. (= except if we hurry)
   (Chúng ta sẽ trễ giờ trừ phi chúng ta khẩn trương lên).
- Unless you work harder, you're not going to pass the examination. (= except if you work harder)

(Nếu bạn không học hành chăm chỉ hơn, bạn sẽ không thi đậu đầu).

The man said he would hit me unless I told him where the money was. (= except if I told him)

(Người đàn ông nói là hắn sẽ đánh tôi trừ phi tôi nói cho hấn biết tiền ở đâu).

Thay vì dùng unless, chúng ta cũng có thể dùng if... not:

- Don't tell Ann what I said if she doesn't ask you.
   (Đừng kể cho Ann điều tôi đã nói nếu cô ta không hỏi bạn).
- We'll be late if we don't hurry.
   (Chùng ta sẽ trễ giờ nếu chúng ta không khẩn trương lên).
- b) As long as, provided (that), providing (that) (mien la):

Các nhóm từ này có nghĩa à but only lf (miễn là):

- You can use my car as long as (hoặc "so long as"), you drive carefully. (= but only if you drive carefully).
  - (Bạn có thể sử dụng xe hơi của tôi miễn là bạn lái cẩn thận).
- Travelling by car is convenient provided (that) you have somewhere to park. (= but only if you have somewhere to park).
  - (Đi bằng xe hơi thì tiện lợi đấy miễn là bạn tìm được chỗ đậu xe).
- Providing (that) she studies hard, she should pass the examination. (= but only if she studies hard).
  - (Miễn là cô ấy học hành chặm chỉ, cô ấy sẽ thi đậu).
- c) Khi bạn đang nói về tương lai, đừng dùng will với unless, as long as, provided hoặc providing.

Hāy dùng một thì hiện tại (a present tense):

- We'll be late unless we hurry. (Chúng ta sẽ bị trễ giờ trừ phi chúng ta khẩn trương lên)... (không dùng "unless we will hurry")
- Providing she studies hard... (Miễn là cô ấy học hành chăm chì... (không dùng "providing she will study").

Xem bài 9 để biết thêm về qui tắc này.

		xercise you have to read a sentence and then write a new sentence with the aning. Use unless in your sentences.
Ex	cample:	You must study more or you won't pass the examination.
		You won't pass the examination unless you study more.
1		nust listen carefully or you won't know what to do.
2	We'll .	ust hurry or we'll miss the train.
3		nust speak very slowly or he won't be able to understand you.
4	My sa	lary must be increased or I'll look for another job
5	She n	nust apologise to me or I won't forgive her

Example: Joe can hear only if you shout. Joe can't hear unless you shout.

I'm not going to the party .....

I'm going to the party only if you go too.

128

unless.

2	You are allowed into the club only if you are a member.
	You're not
3	The dog will attack you only if you move.
	The dog
4	He'll speak to you only if you ask him a question.
	He

41.3 This time you have to choose the correct word or expression for each sentence.

Example: You can use my car unless/as long as you drive carefully. ('as long as' is correct).

- 1 I'm playing tennis tomorrow unless/providing it's raining.
- 2 We're going to start painting the house tomorrow unless/provided it's not raining.
- 3 You can smoke in here unless/as long as you leave a window open to let the smoke out.
- 4 George doesn't trust anyone. He won't lend you any money unless/as long as you promise in writing to pay him back.
- 5 The children can stay here unless/providing they don't make too much noise.
- 6 I'm going now unless/provided you want me to stay.
- 7 I can't understand why he's late unless/as long as he didn't get our message.

- 41.1 1 You won't know what to do unless you listen carefully.
  - 2 We'll miss the train unless we hurry.
  - 3 He won't be able to understand you unless you speak very slowly.
  - 4 I'll look for another job unless my salary is increased.
  - 5 I won't forgive her unless she apologises to me.
- 41.2 1 I'm not going to the party unless you go too.
  - 2 You're not allowed into the club unless you're a member.
  - 3 The dog won't attack you unless you move.
  - 4 He won't speak to you unless you ask him a question.
- 41.3 1 unless
  - 2 provided
  - 3 as long as
  - 4 unless
  - 5 providing
  - 6 unless
  - 7 unless

# BÀI 42: PASSIVE VOICE (Thể bị động) (be

done / have been done) (1)

a) Active (chủ động) và passive (bị động) - Hãy xem thí dụ sau:



- This house was built in 1895 (Căn nhà này đã được xây vào năm 1895). Đây là câu bị động (a passive sentence) Hãy so sánh:
  - Somebody built **this house** in 1895. (active) (Người ta xây căn nhà này vào năm 1895).
  - This house was built in 1895. (passive) (Căn nhà này được xây vào năm 1895).

Chúng ta thường hay dùng passive voice (thể bị động) khi ai hay cái gì đã gây ra hành động là điều không quan trọng lắm.

Trong thí dụ này, việc ai đã xây căn nhà không quan trọng lắm.

Trong câu passive, nếu bạn muốn nói ai hay cái gì đã gây ra hành động, hãy dùng by:

- This house was built by my grandfather. (= my grandfather built it) (Căn nhà này đã được ông tôi xây). (= ông tôi đã xây nó)
- Have you ever been bitten by a dog? (= Has a dog ever bitten you?)
  (Bạn có baọ giờ bị chó cắn chưa?) (= Có bao giờ chó cắn bạn chưa?)
- b) Trong câu passive chúng ta dùng hình thức đúng của be (is / are / was / were / has been v.v...) + past participle (phân từ quá khứ):

(be) done (be) cleaned (được làm) (được lau)

(be) damaged (bi tàn phá)

(be) built (được xây) (be) seen (được thấy)

Đối với các past participles bất qui tắc (done / seen / written v.v...), xem Phụ lục 2'. Đối với passive voice của các thì hiện tại và quá khứ, xem bài 43.

c) Passive infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu bị động) là be done / be cleaned / be built v.v... Chúng ta dùng infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu) sau các modals (động từ đặc biệt) (will, can, must v.v...) và một số động từ khác (thí dụ: have to, be going to, want to). Hãy so sánh:

Active: We can solve

This problem

Passive:

this problem.

can be solved.

Chủ động: (Chúng ta có thể giải quyết vấn đề này).

Bị động: (Vấn đề này có thể được giải quyết).

130

- The new hotel will be opened next year.
   (Khách sạn mới sẽ được khai trương vào năm tới).
- George might be sent to America by his company in August.
   (Có thể George sẽ được công ty của anh ta gởi đi Mỹ vào tháng Tám).
- The music at the party was very loud and could be heard from far away. (Tiếng nhạc ở bữa tiệc rất lớn và có thể được nghe thấy từ đàng xa).
- This room is going to be painted next week.
   (Căn phòng này sẽ được sơn vào tuần tởi).
- Go away! I want to be left alone. (Cút đi! Tôi muốn được để mặc một mình).

Cũng có hình thức past passive infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu bị động quá khứ): have been done / have been cleaned / have been built v.v...

Active:	Somebody should have	Chủ động: (Đáng lẽ phải có ai
	cleaned the windows	đó lau chùi những cánh cửa
	yesterday.	số ngày hôm qua).
Passive:	The windows should	Bị động: (Nhữn⊕ cánh của số
	have been cleaned yesterday.	đảng lễ phải được lau chùi
		vào ngày hôm qua).

- My bicycle has disappeared. It must have been stolen.
   (Xe đạp của tôi đã biến mất. Ất hản là nó đã bị đánh cấp).
- She wouldn't have been injured if she had been wearing a seat-belt.
   (Cô ta rất có thể đã không bị thương nếu như cô ta có đeo thất lưng an toàn).
- The weather was awful. The football match <u>ought to have been cancelled</u>. (Thời tiết thật khủng khiếp. Trận bóng đá lẽ ra đã phải bị hủy bỏ).

### **UNIT 42: Exercises**

42.1 Complete these sentences with one of the following verbs (in the correct form): arrest, wake, knock, check, translate, find, drive, make, spend, carry, hear. Example: The music at the party was very loud and could be heard from far away. A decision will not ..... until the next meeting. That building is dangerous. It ought to ......down before it falls down. When you go through Customs, your luggage may ...... by a customs officer. 4 I told the hotel receptionist that I wanted to ...... up at 6.30. Her new book will probably ......into a number of foreign languages. 5 If you kicked a policeman, you'd ..... Police are looking for the missing boy. He can't ...... anywhere. 7 Do you think that less money should ..... on arms? The injured man couldn't walk and had to ..... 9 10 I don't mind driving but I prefer to ...... by other people.

			gain you have to complete a : t, might, would, should.	sen	tence. This time use these verbs: must,		
	Exa	mple	Did anyone clean the windows No. They should have been cl		ed but they weren't.		
			d anyone invite Ann to the party!		I'm not sure.		
	2	A: Di	d anyone see you?				
			o, but I		if it hadn't been so dark.		
i			as someone repaired this machin				
			d someone throw those old letter				
					**************************************		
	mes	aning.	Example: We can solve the prob	lem.			
			le should send their complaints				
			had to postpone the meeting be		sea of illnoce		
,							
			ebody might have stolen your ca				
			ectrical fault could have caused				
					ose in San Ezandisoa		
	5 They are going to hold next year's congress in San Francisco. Next year's congress						
	6	They	shouldn't have played the footb	all n	natch in such bad weather.		
		The	ootball match				
KE	ΞY	,					
	42.1	1 1	be made	_	be knocked		
		3	be checked		be woken		
		5 7	be translated be found	8	be arrested		
		9	be carried	_	be spent be driven		
	49 5	21	might have been invited	10	De dilven		
	C	_ 2	would have been seen ("should	l hav	ve heen seen" is also nossible)		
		3	must have been repaired		TO DOON DOON TO GIVE POUR DOO		
		4	shouldn't have been thrown aw	ay			
	42.	3 1	Complaints should be sent to the	ie h	ead office.		
		2	The meeting had to be postpon				
		3	Your car might have been stole				
		4	The fire could have been cause				
		5	Next year's congress is going to				
		6	i ne tootball match shouldn't ha	ve t	been played in such bad weather.		

# BÀI 43: PASSIVE VOICE (Thể bị động) (2) (Các thì hiện tại và quá khứ)

Sau đây là hình thức passive ở các thì hiện tại và quá khứ;
Simple present (Hiện tại đơn): am/is/are + done/cleaned v.v
Active: Somebody cleans this room every day.
Passive: This room is cleaned every day.
<ul> <li>Many accidents are caused by dangerous driving. (Nhiều tại nạn bị gây ra do sự lài xe nguy hiểm).</li> <li>I'm not often invited to parties. (Tôi không thường được mởi đi dự tiệc).</li> <li>How many people are injured in road accidents every day? (Cổ bao nhiều người bị thương tích trong các tại nạn trên đường phố hàng ngày?)</li> </ul>
Simple past (Quá khứ đơn): was/were + done / cleaned v.v
Active: Somebody cleaned this room yesterday.
Passive: This room was cleaned yesterday.
<ul> <li>During the night we were all woken up by a loud explosion. (Trong dêm tất cả chúng tôi bị đánh thức bởi một tiếng nổ lớn).</li> <li>When was that castle built? (Lâu đài đó được xây dựng năm nào?)</li> <li>The house wasn't damaged in the storm but a tree was blown down. (Căn nhà không bị hư hại gì trong trận bão nhưng một cây to đã bị thổi ngã).</li> </ul>
Present continuous (Hiện tại tiếp diễn): am/is/are being + done/cleaned v.v
Active: Somebody is cleaning the room at the moment.  Passive: The room is being cleaned at the moment.
- Look at those old house! They are being knocked down.
(Nhìn những căn nhà cũ kỹ kia kìa! Chúng đang bị phá đổ) Are you being served, madam? (Người bán hàng với khách hàng) (Có ai phục vụ bà không, thưa bà?).
Past continuous (Quá khứ tiếp diễn): was/were being + done/cleaned v.v
Active: Somebody was cleaning the room when I arrived.
Passive: The room was being cleaned when I arrived.

Suddenly I heard footsteps behind me. We were being followed. Đột nhiên tội nghe thấy tiếng bước chân sau lưng. Chúng tội đang bị theo đội).

Present perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành); have/has been + done/cleaned v.v...

Active: The room looks nice. Somebody has cleaned lit.

Passive: The room looks nice. It has been cleaned.

- Have you heard the news? The president has been shot. (Bạn đã nghe tin g) chưa? Tổng thống vừa bị bắn đấy).
- I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (Tôi sẽ không đi dự tiệc. Tôi không được mởi).

Past perfect (Quá khữ hoàn thành); had been + done/cleaned v.v...

Active: The room looked much better. Somebody had cleaned it.

Passive: The room looked much better. It had been cleaned.

Jim didn't know about the change of plans. He hadn't been told. (Jim không hể biết về sự thay đổi kế hoạch. Anh tạ đã không được thông báo).

### UNIT 43: Exercises

43.1 In this exercise you have	to read a	sentence	and t	then write	another	sentence	with	the
same meaning. Begin each	sentence	as shown	١.					

Examples:

Somebody stole my bag in the shop. My bag was stolen in the shop.

The police have arrested three men. Three men have been arrested by the police,

The bill includes service. Service .....in the bill.

People don't use this road very often. This road ......

They cancelled all flights because of fog. All flights..... 3 4

Somebody accused me of stealing the money. I .....

5 They are building a new ring-road round the city.

Α new ring-road .....

I didn't realise that someone was recording our conversation. t didn't realise that our conversation

They have changed the date of the meeting. The date of the meeting......

Brian told me that somebody had attacked and robbed him in the street. Brian told me that he

43.2 This time you have to make a passive sentence from the words in brackets.

Examples:

That church looks very old. (when/it/build?) When was it built?

A: is Margaret popular?

B: Yes. (she/like/by everybody) She is liked by everybody.

1.	This is a very popular television programmer. (every week it/watch/by millions of people) Every week it
2.	What happens to the cars produced in this factory? (most of them/export?'
3	A: Was there any trouble at the demonstration?
•	B: Yes. (about 20 people/arrest)
4	A: There is no longer military service in Britain.
	B: Really? (when/it/abolish?)
5	A: Did anybody call an ambulance to the scene of the accident?
	B: Yes. (but nobody/injure/so it/not/need)
6	A: Last night someone broke into our house.
-	B: Oh dear. (anything/take?)
7	Mr. Kelly can't use his office at the moment. (it/redecorate)
. 8	George didn't have his car yesterday. (it/service/at the garage)
9	Where's my bicycle? It's gone! (it/stea!!)
10	
11	,
12	A tree was lying across the road. (it/blow/down in the storm)
	The state of the s
	·

- 43.1 1 Service is included in the bill.
  - 2 This road isn't used very often. .
  - 3 All flights were cancelled because of fog.
  - 4 I was accused of stealing the money.
  - 5 A new ring-road is being built round the city.
  - 6 I didn't realise that our conversation was being recorded.
  - 7 The date of the meeting has been changed.
  - 8 Brian told me that he had been attacked and robbed in the street.
- 43.2 1 Every week it is watched by millions of people.
  - 2 Are most of them exported?
  - 3 About 20 people were arrested.
  - 4 When was it abolished?
  - 5 But nobody was injured so it wasn't needed.
  - 6 Was anything taken?
  - 7 It is being redecorated.
  - 3 It was being serviced at the garage.
  - 9 It has been stolen!
  - 10 They haven't been seen since then.
  - 11 Has it been painted since I was last here?
  - 12 It had been blown down in the storm.

## BÀI 44: PASSIVE VOICE (THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG) (3)

- a) Một số động từ có thể có hai objects (túc từ). Thí dụ như động từ offer:
  - They didn't offer Ann the job.

(Họ đã không trao cho Ann công việc đó). (hai túc từ là Ann và the job)

Vì vậy chúng ta có thể tạo ra hai câu bị động khác nhau:

- Ann wasn't offered the job.
  - (Ann đã không được trao cộng việc đó).
- The job wasn't offered to Ann.

(Công việc đó đã không được trao cho Ann).

Thông thường câu passive hay bắt đầu bằng túc từ chỉ người (personal object). Những động từ khác tương tự offer có hai túc từ là:

ask (yêu câu)

teli (bão)

give (cho)

send *(gði)* 

show (chi)

teach (day)

pay (trả tiền)

Sau đây là một số thí dụ về các câu bị động với những động từ trên:

- I was given two hours to make my decision. (= they gave me two hours).
   (Tôi được cho hai tiếng để quyết định) (= họ cho tôi hai tiếng để quyết định).
- The men were paid £800 to do the job. (= someone paid the men £800)
   (Những người đó được trả 800 bảng để làm công việc ấy). (= người ta trả cho những người đó 800 bảng)
- Have you been shown the new machine? (= has anyone shown you the new machine?)

(Bạn đã được chỉ cho xem cái máy mới chưa?) (= Đã có ai chỉ cho bạn xem cái máy mới chưa?)

- Born: hãy nhớ rằng be born (được sinh ra) là một động từ bị động (passive) và thường được dùng ở thì quá khứ (past);
  - When were you born? (----> simple past)
     (Ban sinh ô đầu?)
  - 1 was born in Chicago. ( ----> simple past) (Tôi sinh ở Chicago).
  - How many babies are born in this hospital every day? (-> simple present)
     (Hàng ngày có bao nhiều đứa trẻ được sinh ra ở bệnh viện này?)
- c) Hình thức bị động của -ing là being done / being cleaned v.v...

Active:

I don't like people telling me what to do.

(Tôi không thích người ta bảo cho biết tội phải tàm gì).

Passive

I don't like being told what to do.

(Tôi không thích được bảo phải làm gì).

 ! remember being given a toy drum on my fifth birthday. (= I remember someone giving me...).

(Tôi nhớ tôi đã được tặng một cái trống đồ chơi vào ngày sinh nhật lần thứ 5 của tói).

 Hurry up! you know Mr. Miller hates being kept waiting. (= he hates people keeping him waiting)

(Nhanh lên! Bạn biết là ông Miller rất ghét bị bắt phải chờ đợi).

- He climbed over the wall without being seen. (= without anyone seeing him) (Anh ta đã leo qua bức tưởng mà không bị phát hiện).
- d) Đôi khi bạn có thể dùng get thay cho be trong thể bị động:
  - There was a fight at the party but nobody got hurt. (= nobody was hurt) (Có một cuộc ấu đã ở bữa tiệc nhưng không có ai bị thương cả).
  - Did Ann get offered the job? (= was Ann offered the job?)
    (Ann có được trao cho công việc đó không?)

Bạn có thể dùng **get** trong thể bị động để diễn tả một việc nào đó xảy ra cho ai hay cho cái gì. Thường thì hành động đó không được dự tính trước; nó xảy ra một cách tinh cờ.

The dog got run over by a car. (= the dog was run over)
 (Con chó bị xe cán).

Trong những loại tình hướng khác, get thường không dùng được.

 George is liked by everyone. (not \*get liked\*) (George dugc moi nguời ưa thích).

Get chủ yếu được dùng trong văn nói tiếng Anh thường ngày (informal spoken English). Bạn có thể dùng be trong tất cả mọi tình huống.

### **UNIT 44: Exercises**

44.1	In this exercise you have to read a sentence and then write a new sentence with the
	ame meaning. Begin in the way shown each time.
E.	xample: They didn't offer Ann the job. Ann wasn't offered the job.
1	They don't pay Jim very much. Jim
2	They will ask you a lot of questions at the interview. You
3	Nobody told me that George was ill. I
4	His colleagues gave him a present when he retired. He
5	We will send you your examination results as soon as they are ready.
	You
6	They didn't ask me my name. I
7	I think they should have offered Tom the job. I think Tom
44.2	When were these famous people born? You have to choose the right year for each
	erson: 1889 1770 1452 😿 1564
1	Lenin was born in 1870 4 Charlie Chaplin
2	Shakespeare 5 Beethoven
	Leonardo da Vinci

опе	of the	e you have to complete tesse verbs:	pay a	ttack give		ise being wit use asi	
3 4	She v I don Few <sub>I</sub> Mr. K	ame to the party without . won't go out alone after d 't like people are prepared to w elly doesn't like his phon people like	ark. She is a ork without e	afraid of stupid qu	estions.		
get	and o	o you have to complete the one of these verbs: break There was a fight at the	catch s	ting use	damage ber		th
1 2 3 4 5 6	How Did a Thes If you I use	did that window	nake sure th	in the often. No	storm last nigh of many people	t? want to play.	•
44.	1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Jim isn't paid very much You will be asked a lot of I wasn't told that George He was given a present You will be sent your ex I wasn't asked my name I think Tom should have	of questions was ill. by his colle camination re be been offere	agues when esults as so	he retired.	eady.	
44.	.2 2 3 4 5 6	Shakespeare was born Leonardo da Vinci was Charlie Chaplin was bo Beethoven was born in I was born in	born in 1452 rn in 1889.	2.			
- 44	. <b>3</b> 1 2 3	being invited being attacked being asked	4 5 6	being paid being used being giver			
44	.4 1 2 3	got stung get broken get damaged	4 5 6	get used get caught got stolen			

# BÀI 45: IT IS SAID THAT... / HE IS SAID TO..., v.v... và SUPPOSED TO

### a) Hãy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau:



- Đây là Henry. Ông ta rất giả nhưng không ai biết chính xác ông ta bao nhiều tuổi. Nhưng:
  - It is said that he is 108 years old.
  - He is said to be 108 years old.

Cả hai câu này đều có nghĩa là "People say that he is 108 years old" (Người ta nói rằng ông ta đã 108 tuổi rồi").

Bạn cũng có thể dùng hai cấu trúc này với:

thought known believed expected

reported alleged

understood considered

- It is said that Henry eats ten eggs a day.
  - = Henry is said to eat ten eggs a day.

(Người ta nói rằng mỗi ngày Henry ăn mười quả trừng).

- It is believed that the wanted man is living in New York.
  - = The wanted man is believed to be living in New York. (Người ta tin rằng kể bị truy nã đang sống ở New York).
- It is expected that the strike will begin tomorrow.
  - = The strike is expected to begin tomorrow. (Người ta cho rằng cuộc đình công sẽ bắt đầu vào ngày mại).
- It is alleged that he stole £60.
  - = He is alleged to have stolen £60.

(Người ta cho rằng anh ta đã lấy cắp 60 bảng).

- It was alleged that he stolen £60.
  - = He was alleged to have stolen £60.

(Người ta đã cho rằng anh ta đã lấy cấp 60 bảng).

Các cấu trúc trên thường được dùng trong các bảng tưởng thuật tin tức (news reports):

 It is reported that two people were killed in the explosion. (= Two people are reported to have been killed in the explosion).

(Tin cho biết có hai người bị thiệt mạng trong vụ nổ).

### b) Supposed to

Đôi khi (be) supposed to có nghĩa "said to" (được nói là; được cho là):

Let go and see that film. It's supposed to be very good.
 (= It is said to be very good; people say that it's very good).
 (Chúng ta hây đi xem bộ phim đó đi. Người ta nói phim hay lẫm).

 He is supposed to have stolen £60. (= He is said to have stolen £60) (Người ta nói rằng hắn đã lấy cấp 60 bảng).

Nhưng đôi khỉ supposed to lại mang nghĩa khác. Bạn có thể dùng supposed to để nói về một việc đã được dự tính hoặc sắp đặt trước (và điều này thường khác với thực tế xảy ra):

- I'd better hurry. It's nearly 8 o'clock. I'm supposed to be meeting Tom at 8.15. (= } arranged to meet Tom, I said ! would meet Tom). (Tốt hơn là tôi phải khẩn trương lên. Gần 8 giờ rối. Tôi định sẽ gặp Tom lúc 8 giờ 15). (= Tôi đã thu xếp để gặp Tom. Tôi đã nói rằng tôi sẽ gặp Tom).
- The train was supposed to arrive at 11.30 but it was 40 minutes late. (= The train should have arrived at 11.30 according to the timetable). (Theo đúng lịch thì xe lửa phải tới lúc 11gið 30, nhưng nó đã trễ đến 40 phút).
- You were supposed to clean the windows. Why didn't you do it?
   (Ban đã được phân công lau các cửa sổ. Tại sao bạn không làm việc đó?)

Chúng ta dùng not supposed to để nói về điều không được cho phép (not allowed to) hoặc không nên làm (not advisable):

- You're not supposed to park here. (= You aren't allowed to park here).
   (Ông không được phép đầu xe ở đây).
- Mr. Collins is much better after his illness but he's still not supposed to do any heavy work.

45.1 In this exercise you have to read a sentence and then write another sentence with the

(Ông Collins đã khỏe hơn nhiều sau cơn bệnh nhưng ông ta vẫn không nên làm việc nặng).

### UNIT 45: Exercises

	• •
sai	me meaning.
Ex	ample: It is believed that the wanted man is living in New York.
	The wanted man is believed to be living in New York.
1	It is said that many people are homeless after the floods.  Many people are said
2	It is known that the Prime Minister is in favour of the new law.  The Prime Minister
3	It is expected that the government will lose the election.  The government
4	It is thought that the prisoner escaped by climbing over the wall.  The prisoner
5	It is believed that the thieves got in through the kitchen window.  The thieves
6	It is alleged that he drove through the town at 90 miles an hour.  He
7	It is reported that two people were seriously injured in the accident. Two people
8	It is said that three men were arrested after the explosion.

_		
45	sent	ere are lot of stories about Arthur but nobody knows whether they are true. Make ences with supposed to. nple: People say that Arthur eats spiders. Arthur is supposed to eat spiders.
	1 F 2 F 3 F 4 F	People say that Arthur is very rich. Arthur People say that he has 22 children. He People say that he sleeps on a bed of nails. He People say that he won a lot of money gambling. He People say that he writes poetry. He
45	парр опе	w you have to use supposed to with its other meaning. In each example what sens is not what is supposed to happen. Use supposed to or not supposed to with of these verbs: clean come be smoke phone study take nples: Tom, you're smoking! But you know you are not supposed to smoke in this room.  Why are the windows still dirty? You were supposed to clean them.
	3 (	Vhat are the children doing at home? They
<b>&lt;</b>	EΥ	
	45.1	The Prime Minister is known to be in favour of the new law. The government is expected to lose the election. The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over the wall. The thieves are believed to have got in through the kitchen window. He is alleged to have driven through the town at 90 miles an hour. Two people are reported to have been seriously injured in the accident. Three men are said to have been arrested after the explosion.
	46.0	M. Arthur in accompany of the Control of the Contro

- 45.2 1 Arthur is supposed to be very rich.
  - 2 He is supposed to have 22 children.
  - 3 He is supposed to sleep on a bed of nails.
  - 4 He is supposed to have won a lot of money gambling.
  - 5 He is supposed to write poetry.
- 45.3 1 are supposed to be.
  - 2 is supposed to study.
  - 3 aren't supposed to take.
  - 4 was supposed to phone.
  - 5 weren't supposed to come.

## BÀI 46: CAUSATIVE FORM (Thể truyền khiến)

(have something done)

a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Mái nhà của Jill bị hư hại trong một trận bão, vì thế cô ta đã thu xếp cho một người thợ đến sửa nó. Ngày hôm qua người thợ đến và đã làm công việc đó.

 Jill had the roof repaired yesterday.
 (Ngày hôm qua Jill đã cho người sửa lại mái nhà).

Điều này có nghĩa là: "Jill không tự mình sửa mái nhà. Cô ta đã thu xếp cho một người nào khác đến làm việc đó cho cô ta".

#### Hãy so sánh:

- Jill repaired the roof. (= she did it herself).

  (Jill đã sửa lại mái nhà). (Cô ta tự mình làm việc đó)
- Jill had the roof repaired. (= she arranged for someone else to do it)
   (Jill đã cho người sửa lại mái nhà). (Cô ta đã thu xếp để một người khác làm việc đó).

Bây giờ hãy xem câu sau:

- Did Ann make that dress herself or did she have it made?

(Ann đã tự mình may cái áo đó hay cô ta nhờ người khác may nó?)

Để nói rằng chúng ta thu xếp cho người khác làm một việc gì đó cho chúng ta, chúng ta dùng cấu trúc have something done.

Trât tư từ rất quan trọng: past participle (done/repaired v.v...) đứng sau object (the roof).

	have +	object +	past participle	
Jill	had	the roof	repaired	yesterday.
Where did you	have	your hair	done?	B BH S
We are	having	the house	painted	at the moment
Tom has just	had	a telephone	installed	in his flat.
How often do you	have	your car	serviced?	
Why don't you	have	that coat	cleaned	45.3 1 818 5
I want to	have	my photograph	taken	uis at S

- b) Get something done có thể dùng thay cho have something done (chủ yếu là trong văn nói thường ngày - informal spoken English):
  - I think you should get your hair cut. (= have your hair cut) (Tôi nghĩ anh nên đi hớt tóc).

- c) Have something done đôi khi có nghĩa khác. Ví dụ:
  - He had all his money stolen while he was on hotiday.
     (Anh ta đã bị mất hết tiến trong lúc đi nghĩ mát).

Điều này không có nghĩa là anh ta sắp xếp cho một người nào đó ăn cấp tiền của minh.

"He had all his money stolen" chỉ có nghĩa: "All his money was stolen".

Với ý nghĩa này, chúng ta sử dụng have something done để nói rằng điều gi đó (thường là một điều không tốt đẹp) đã xảy ra cho ai.

George had his nose broken in a fight, (= his nose was broken). (George bị gây mũi trong một cuộc đánh nhau).

### **UNIT 46: Exercises**

	xample: "Did Ann make that dress herself?" "No. she had it made".
1	*Did you cut your hair yourself?* *No, I
2	*Did they paint the house themselves?* *No, they
3 4	*Did Jim cut down that tree himself?* *No, *Did Sue repair the car herself?* *No,
	This time you have to complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets.  xamples: We are having the house painted (the house / paint) at the moment.
	Did you have your hair cut (you / your hair / cut) last week?
1	Your hair is too long. I think you should
2	How often (you / your car / service)?
3	The engine in Tom's car couldn't be repaired, so he had to
4	(you / your newspaper / deliver) or do you go to the shop yourself to buy it?
5	A: What are those workmen doing in your garden?
	B: Oh, I (a swimming pool / build).
6	A: Can I see those holiday photographs you took?
	B: I'm afraid not. I (not/the film/develop) yet.
7	Is it true that many years ago he (his portrait / paint) by a famous artist?
	Now you have to read a situation and then write a sentence with have something
	one.
E:	xample: Jill's coat was dirty so she took it to the cleaners. Now it is clean. What has Jill done? She has had her coat cleaned.
1	Fom thinks his eyesight is getting worse, so he's going to the optician.  What is Tom going to do there? He is

- Sue is at the hairdresser's at the moment. A hairdresser is cutting her hair.
  What is Sue doing?
  Ann's watch was broken, so she took it to a jeweller's. Now it's working again.
  What has Ann done?
- 46.4 Now you have to use have something done with its second meaning (see section c).

  Example: George's nose was broken in a fight. What happened to George?

  He had his nose broken in a fight.
  - John's money was stolen on a train. What happened to John?

    He
  - 2 Fred's hat was blown off in the wind. What happened to Fred?
  - 3 George's papers were taken from him at the police station. What happened to George?

- 46.1 1 I had it cut.
  - 2 they had it painted.
  - 3 he had it cut down.
  - 4 she had it repaired.
- 46.2 1 have it cut
  - 2 do you have your car serviced?
  - 3 have a new engine fitted
  - 4 Do you have your newspaper delivered
  - 5 am having a swimming pool built
  - 6 haven't had the film developed yet
  - 7 had his portrait painted
- 46.3 1 He is going to have his eyes tested.
  - 2 She is having her hair cut.
  - 3 She has had her watch repaired.
- 46.4 1 He had his money stolen on a train.
  - 2 He had his hat blown off in the wind.
  - 3 He had his papers taken from him at the police station.

# BÀI 47: REPORTED SPEECH (Lời nói gián tiếp (1)

a) Hāy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Bạn muốn kể cho người khác nghe những gì Tom đã nói. Có hai cách làm điều này:

Bạn có thể nhắc lại Tom nói (direct speech - câu trực tiếp):

- Tom said "I'm feeling ill".

(Tom đã nói "Tôi đang cảm thấy khó chịu"). Hoặc bạn có thể dùng lời nói gián tiếp:

Tom said (Reported speech) (that) he was feeling ill.

(Tom đã nói rằng anh ta đang cảm thấy khó chịu).

Hãy so sánh hai câu sau đây:

TRUC TIÉP: Tom said

GIÁN TIẾP: Tom said (that)



feeling ill"

feeling ill.

Bạn dùng dấu " "để chỉ rằng đây là lời nói trực tiếp.

 Khi chúng ta dùng reported speech (lời nói gián tiếp; câu tường thuật) chúng ta thường đang nói về quá khứ. Vì vậy trong câu gián tiếp, các động từ thường được đổi sang quá khứ. Ví dụ:

am/is -> was

are -> were

have/has -> had

will —> would do / want / know v.v...

can -> could

-> did / wanted / knew v.v...

Hãy xem xét các thí dụ sau. Bạn đã gặp Tom. Dưới đây là mấy ý mà anh ta đã nói với bạn.

My parents are very well.

Ann has bought a new car.

(Cha me tôi rất khỏe manh).

(Ann đã mua một xe hơi mới).'

I'm going to give up my job. I can't come to the party on Friday.

(Tôi sắp bỏ việc). (Tôi không thể đến dự tiệc vào thứ sáu). I want to go on holiday but I don't know where to go.

(Tôi muốn đi nghỉ mát nhưng tôi không biết đi đầu cả).

I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you when I get back.

(Tôi sắp vắng nhà một vài ngày. Tôi sẽ gọi điện thoại cho bạn khi tôi trở về). Bây giờ bạn kể lại cho người khác những gì Tom đã nói (bằng reported speech):

Tom said (that) his parents were very well. (Tom đã nói rằng cha mẹ anh ta rất khỏe mạnh).

Tom said (that) he was going to give up his job. (Tom nói rằng anh ta sắp bỏ việc).

 Tom said (that) Ann had bought a new car. (Tom nói rằng Ann đã mua một chiếc xe hơi mởi).

Tom said (that) he couldn't come to the party on Friday. (Tom nói rằng anh ta không thể đến dự tiệc vào thứ Sáu được).

Tom said (that) he wanted to go on holiday but he didn't know where to go. (Tom nói rằng anh tạ muốn đi nghỉ mát nhưng không biết đi đầu cả).

Tom said (that) he was going away for a few days and would phone me when he got back. (Tom nói rằng anh ta sẽ vắng nhà một vài ngày và sẽ gọi điện thoại cho tôi khí anh ta trở về).

c) Thì simple past (I did) thường vẫn có thể được giữ nguyên trong lời nói gián tiếp, hoặc ban có thể đổi sang thì past perfect (I had done): did --> did/had done.

TRƯC TIẾP: Tom said "I woke up feeling ill and so I stayed in bed". (Tom đã nói: "Tôi tỉnh dậy cảm thấy khó chịu và tôi đã nằm nán lại").

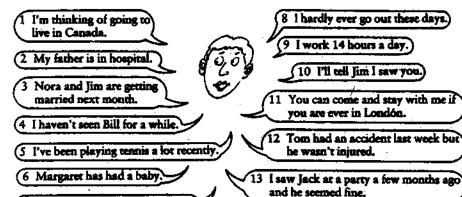
GIÁN TIẾP: - Tom said (that) he woke (or had woken) up feeling ill and so he stayed (or had stayed) in bed. (Tom đã nói rằng anh ta tỉnh dậy cảm thấy khó chịu và vì thể anh ta đã nằm nán lại).

Về reported speech, xem thêm bài 48 và 50b.

#### UNIT 47: Exercises

7 I don't know what Fred is doing

47.1 Yesterday you met a friend of yours, Charlie. Charlie told you a lot of things. Here are some of the things he said to you:



146

La	ter that day you tell another friend what Charlie said. Use reported speech.
1	Charlie said that he was thinking of going to live in Canada.
2	Charlie said that
3	)
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	
47.2 Ir	this exercise someone says something to you which is the opposite of what they said
	fore. You have to answer I thought you said
Ex	ample: "That restaurant is expensive". "I thought you said it wasn't expensive".
1	"Ann is coming to the party", "I thought you said she"
2	"Bill passed his examination". "I thought you said"
3	
_	"Ann likes Bill" "I thought"
4	"I've got many friends". "I thought you said you"
5	"Jack and Jill are going to get married". "
6	"Tom works very hard". " "
7	"I want to be rich and famous"."
8	"I'll be here next week". ""
9	"I can afford a holiday this year". "
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
•	
KE)	/
171-	
47.	1 2 Charlie said that his father was in hospital.
	3 He said (that) Nora and Jim were getting married next month.
	4 He said (that) he hadn't seen Bill for a while.
	5 He said (that) he had been playing tennis a lot recently.
	6 He said (that) Margaret had had a baby.
	7 He said (that) he didn't know what Fred was doing.
	8 He said (that) he hardly ever went out these days.
	9 He said (that) he worked 14 hours a day.
	He said (that) he would tell Jim he had seen me. / he saw me.
	11 He said (that) I could come and stay with him if I was ever in London,
	He said (that) Tom had an accident last week but he hadn't been injured /
	Tom had an accident last week but he wasn't injured.
	the same (wond the title season at a party a ton thought ago and he night
	seemed fine. / he saw Jack and he seemed fine.

- 47.2 1 I thought you said she wasn't coming to the party.
  - 2 I thought you said (that) he hadn't passed his examination. / ... he didn't pass his examination.
  - 3 I thought you said (that) Ann didn't like Bill.
  - 4 1-thought you said (that) you hadn't got many friends. / ... you didn't have many friends.
  - 5 I thought you said (that) they weren't going to get married.
  - 6 I thought you said (that) he didn't work very hard.
  - 7 I thought you said (that) you didn't want to be rich and famous.
  - 8 I thought you said (that) you wouldn't be here next week.
  - I thought you said (that) you couldn't afford a holiday this year.

## BÀI 48: REPORTED SPEECH (lời nói gián tiếp) (2)

a) Không phải lúc nào cũng nhất thiết phải đổi động từ khi bạn dùng lời nói gián tiếp. Nếu bạn đang tưởng thuật lại một điều gì đó và bạn cảm thấy điều đó vẫn còn đúng, bạn không cấn phải đổi thì (tense) của động từ:

Trực tiếp:

- Tom said "New York is bigger than London"

(Tom nói "New York lớn hơn Luân Đôn").

Gián tiếp:

- Tom said (that) New York is (or was) bigger than London.

(Tom nói rằng New York lớn hơn London).

Trực tiếp:

- Ann said "I want to go to New York next year"

(Ann nói "Tôi muốn đi New York vào năm tôi").

Gián tiếp:

- Ann said (that) she wants (or wanted) to go to New York next year.

(Ann nói rằng cô ta muốn đi New York vào năm tới).

Chú ý rằng: Khi ta đổi động từ sang quá khứ thì cũng đúng. Nhưng bạn phải dùng một thì quá khứ (a past tense) khi có sự khác biệt giữa điều đã được nói và điều thực sự đúng.

Hāy xem xét tình hướng sau:

Ban gặp Ann. Cô ấy nói "Jim is ill" (câu trực tiếp).

Sau đó cùng trong ngày bạn gặp Jim đang chơi quần vợt và trông vẫn khỏe mạnh. Bạn nói: "I'm surprised to see you playing tennis, Jim. Ann said that you were ill. (Tôi thật ngạc nhiên khi gặp anh đang chơi quần vợt, Jim a. Ann đã nói rằng anh bị bệnh). (Không dùng "that you are ill", bởi vì anh ta hiện giờ không bị bệnh).

Must, might, would, should, và ought vẫn được giữ nguyên trong lời nói gián tiếp.

May trong câu trực tiếp thường được đổi thành might trong lời nói gián tiếp.

#### b) Say và tell

Nếu bạn để cập người mà các bạn đang nói tới, bạn dùng tell.

Tom told me (that) he didn't like Brian. (not "Tom said me"...)
(Tom nói với tôi rằng anh ta không thích Brian).

Trong trường hợp khác bạn dùng say:

Tom said (that) he didn't like Brian. (not "Tom told (that) me...")
(Tom nói rằng anh ta không thích Brian).

Ngoài ra bạn không được nói: "Tom told about his trip to America". Bạn phải nói:

Tom told us (me/them/Ann etc...) about his trip to America.
 (Tom đã kể cho chúng tôi (tôi/họ/Ann v.v...) nghe về chuyển đi Mỹ của anh ta).

Nếu bạn không để cập đến người mà anh ta kể cho nghe, ban phải nói:

Tom talked (spoke) about his trip to America. (but not "said about")
 (Tom đã nói về chuyển đi Mỹ của anh ta).

c) Chúng ta cũng dùng động từ nguyên mẫu (to-infinitive) (to do/to say v.v...) trong lời nói gián tiếp, nhất là với tell và ask (đối với các mệnh lệnh và yêu cầu).

Trực tiếp: "Stay in bed for a few days", the doctor said to me.

("Hãy nằm nghĩ vài ngày", bác sĩ nói với tôi).

Gián tiếp: The doctor told me to stay in bed for a few days.

(Bác sĩ đã bảo tôi nằm nghỉ vài ngày).

Trực tiếp: "Don't shout", I said to Jim.

("Đừng la hét", tôi nói với Jim).

Gián tiếp: I told Jim not to shout.

(Tôi bảo Jim đừng la hét).

Truc tiep: "Please don't tell anyone what happened", Ann said to me.

("Làm ơn đừng kể cho ai nghe chuyện gì đó đã xảy ra", Ann nói với tôi).

Gián tiếp: Ann asked me not to tell anyone what (had) happened:

(Ann đã yêu cấu tôi đừng kể cho ai nghe chuyện g) đã xảy ra).

Trực tiếp: "Can you open the door for me, Tom?" Ann asked.

("Ban có thể mở cửa giùm tôi không, Tom?" Ann hỏi).

Gián tiếp: Ann asked Tom to open the door for her.

(Ann đã nhờ Tom mở cửa ra giùm có ấy).

Said cũng có thể được dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu:

The doctor said to stay in bed for a few days (but not "said me")
 (Bác sĩ nói hãy nằm nghĩ vài ngày).

#### **UNIT 48: Exercises**

48.1 In this exercise you have to write what you would say in these situations.

Example: Ann says "I'm tired". Five minutes later she says "Let's play tennis". What do you say? You said you were tired.

- 1 Your friend says "I'm hungry" so you go to a restaurant. When you get there he says "I don't want to eat". What do you say? You said ......
- 2 Tom tells you "Ann has gone away". Later than day you meet her. What do you say? Tom told ......

	4	You arranged to meet Jack. He said "I won't be late". At last he arrives - 20 minutes late. What do you say? You
	5	Sue said "I can't come to the party tonight". That night you see her at the party.
	6	What do you say to her?  Ann says "I'm working tomorrow evening". Later that day she says "Let's go out tomorrow evening". What do you say?
48.		low you have to complete these sentences with said, told or talked. ample: Tom said that he didn't like Brian.
•	1	Jack me that he was enjoying his new job.
	2	Tom it was a nice restaurant but I didn't like a week.
	3	The doctor that I would have to rest for at least a week.
	4	Mrs Taylor us she wouldn't be able to come to the next meeting.
	5	Ann Tom that she was going away.
	6	George couldn't help me. He to ask Jack.
	7 8.	At the meeting the chairman about the problems facing the company.  fill
48.		low you have to read a sentence and write a new sentence with the same meaning. amples: "Listen carefully", he said to us. He told <u>us to listen carefully.</u> Don't wait for me if I'm late", Ann said.  Ann said <u>not to wait for her if she was late.</u>
	1	"Eat more fruit and vegetables", the doctor said. The doctor said
	2	"Read the instructions before you switch on the machine", he said to me. He told
	3	"Shut the door but don't lock it", she said to us.
	4	"Can you speak more slowly? I can't understand", he said to me.
		He asked because
	5	"Don't come before 6 o'clock", I said to him. I told
K	E,	Y

- 48.1 1 You said (that) you were hungry.
  - 2 Tom told me (that) you had gone away.
  - 3 You said (that) you didn't smoke.

- 4 You said (that) you wouldn't be late. / You told me (that) you...
- 5 You said (that) you couldn't come to the party tonight. / You told me (that) you...
- 6 You said (that) you were working tomorrow evening. / You told me (that) you...
- 48.2 1 told
  - 2 said
  - 3 said
  - 4 told
  - 5 told
  - 6 said
  - 7 talked
  - 8 told
- 48.3 1 The doctor said to eat more fruit and vegetables.
  - 2 He told me to read the instructions before I switched en the machine.
  - 3 She told us to shut the door but not to lock it.
  - 4 He asked me to speak more slowly because he couldn't understand.
  - 4 I told him not to come before 6 o'clock.

### BÀI 49: QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi) (1)

a) Chúng ta thường đặt questions (câu hỏi) bằng cách thay đổi trật tự từ trong câu.
 Chúng ta đặt auxiliary verb (trợ động từ) trước subject (chủ từ).

- Is it raining? (Trời đang mưa phải không?)
- When can you come and see us? (Khi nào thì bạn có thể đến gặp chúng tôi?)
- Where has Tom gone? (Tom đã đi đầu?)
   Chúng ta cũng thành lập các câu hỏi với be theo cách tương tự:

They were ⇒ Were they?-

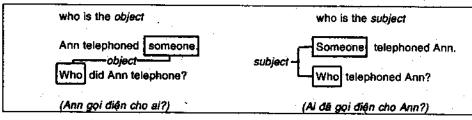
- Were they surprised? (Ho có ngạc nhiên không?)
- b) Trong các câu hỏi ở thì simple present, ta dùng do / does
  - Do you like music? (not "like you") (Ban có thích âm nhạc không?)
  - Where does Jack live? (not "where lives Jack") (Jack song & dau?)

Trong các câu hỏi ở thì simple past, ta dùng did:

- When did they get married? (not "when got they") (Ho lấy nhau khi nào?)
- Why did Ann sell her car? (not "why sold Ann") (Tai sao Ann lai bán xe hdí của cổ ấy đi?)

Nhưng hãy thận trọng với các câu hỏi với who / what / which.

Nếu who / what / which là chủ từ của câu, đừng dùng do / does / did. Hãy so sánh:



Trong các thí dụ dưới đây, who / what / which là subject:

- Who wants something to eat? (not "who does want") (Ai muon an nao?)
- Who invented the steam engine? (not "who did invent")
  (Ai đã phát mính ra động cơ hơi nước?)
- What happend to you last night? (not "What did happen")
   (Chuyện gì đã xảy ra với bạn tối hôm qua vậy?)
- Which switch operates this machine? (not "which switch does operate")
   (Công tác nào dùng để vận hành máy này?)

#### c) Negative questions (Câu hỏi phủ định):

Negative questions đặc biệt được dùng:

để bày tổ sự ngạc nhiên (surprise):
 Didn't you hear the bell? I rang it four times.

(Ban không nghe tiếng chưởng sao? Tôi đã nhấn bốn lẫn).

trong câu câm thán (exclamations):

Doesn't that dress look nice! (= that dress looks nice)

(Chiếc áo đó đẹp làm sao!)

- khi chúng ta mong đợi người nghe đồng ý với chúng ta:

"Haven't we met somewhere before?" "Yes, I think we have".

(Chẳng phải chúng ta đã gặp nhau ở đâu rồi sao?) (Phải, tôi nghĩ là chúng ta đã gặp nhau).

Hãy lưu ý đến ý nghĩa của yes và no trong các câu trả lời cho negative questions:

Yes. (= yes, he went.)-

Didn't Dave go to Canada? (Dave không đi Canada sao?) (Có chứ, anh ấy đã đi).

No. (= No, he didn't go).
 (Không, anh ấy không đi).

Hãy lưu ý đến trật tự từ trong các câu hỏi phủ định với why ...?

- Why didn't you lock the door? (not "why you didn't lock")
   (Tal sao ban không khóa cửa?)
- Why don't we go out for a meal? (not "why we don't go) (Tai sao chúng ta không đi ăn?)

#### **UNIT 49: Exercises**

49.1 In this exercise you have to ask questions about Ed and Liz.

Examples: (Ed and Liz / be / married?) Are Ed and Liz married? "Yes, they are". (they / have / any children?) Have they got any children? "Yes, three".

1	(where / Ed and Liz-live?)	""In Nottingham".
2	(how long / they / be / married?)	"15 years"
3	(they / go out very often?)	"No, not very often".
4	(what / Ed do for a living?)	"He's a policeman".
5	(he / enjoy his job?)	"Yes, very much".
6	(he / arrest anyone yesterday?)	
7	(they / have / a car?)	"Yes".
8	(when / they / buy it?)	"А year ago".
9	(how much / it cost?)	
10	) (they / go / on holiday next summer?)	"Yes".
	(where / they / go?)	

49.2 This time you have to make questions with who or what.	
Examples: "Somebody hit me". "Who hit you?" "I hit somebody". "Who did you hit?"	
1 "Something happened". "What 2 "Someone lives in that house". "Who 3 "Somebody gave me this key". "Who 4 "Henry gave me something". "What 5 "Tom meets someone every day". "Who 6 "I fell over something". "What 7 "Something fell on the floor". "What 8 "This word means something". "What	?" ?" ?" ?"
49.3 Now you have to make negative questions. Each time you are surprised.  Example: "We won't see Ann this evening". "Oh! (she / not / come / to the p tonight?)"  Isn't she coming to the party tonight?  1 "I hope we don't meet Brian tonight". "Why? (you / not / like him?)"  2 "I'll have to borrow some money". "Why? (you / not / have / any?)"  3 "Don't go and see that film". "Why? (it / not / be / good?)"	
49.4 In this exercise you have to make exclamations (!).	
Example: You think that dress looks nice. Doesn't that dress look nice!      You think it's a lovely day.     You think it was a good film.     You think everything is expensive these days.     You think Tom looked well.	!

- 49.1 1 Where do Ed and Liz live?
  - 2 How long have they been married?
  - 3 Do they go out very often?
  - 4 What does Ed do for a living?
  - 5 Does he enjoy his job?
  - 6 Did he arrest anyone yesterday?
  - 7 Have they got a car? / Do they have a car? / Have they a car?
  - 8 When did they buy it?
  - 9 How much did it cost?
  - 10 Are they going on holiday next summer? / Are they going to go on holiday next summer?
  - 11 Where are they going? / Where are they going to go?

#### 49.2 1 What happened?

- 2 Who lives in that house?
- 3 Who gave you this/that key?
- 4 What did Henry give you?
- 5 Who does Tom meet every day?
- 6 What did you fall over?
- 7 What fell on the floor?
- 8 What does this word mean?

#### 49.3 1 Don't you like him?

- 2 Haven't you got any? / Don't you have any?
- 3 isn't it good?

#### 49.4 1 Isn't it a lovely day!

- 2 Wasn't it a good film!
- 3 Isn't everything expensive these days!
- 4 Didn't Tom look well!

# BÀI 50: QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi) (2) (Do you know where...? / He asked me where...)

a) Khi chúng ta hỏi người khác để biết tin tức, đôi khi chúng ta bắt đầu câu hỏi với Do you know...? hoặc Could you tell me...?

Nếu bạn bắt đầu một câu hỏi như thế thì trật tự tử trong câu sẽ khác với trật tự từ của một câu hỏi đơn giản (a simple question).

Hāy so sánh:

Where has Tom gone? (Tom đi đầu vậy?) ==> (câu hỏi đơn giản)

Do you know where Tom has gone?

(Anh có biết Tom đi đầu không?)

Khi câu hỏi (Where has Tom gone?) là thành phần của một câu lớn hơn (Do you know...), nó sẽ mất đi trật tự từ của một câu hỏi thông thường. Hằy so sánh:

When will *Ann arrive?* (Khi nào Ann sẽ đến?)

· What time is it? (Mấy giờ rối?)

Why are you laughing? (Tại sao ban lại cười?) Have you any idea when Ann will arrive? (Ban có biết khi nào Ann sẽ đến không?)

(Could you tell me what time it is?)

(Anh có thể cho tôi biết mấy giờ rối không?)

Tell us why you are laughing?.

(Hāy nói cho chúng tôi biết tại sao anh lại cười?).

Hãy cấn thận với các câu hỏi do/does/did:

When does the film begin?

(Khi nào bộ phim sẽ bắt đầu?)

Why did Ann leave early? (Sao Ann di sôm thể?) Do you know when the film begin?

(Ban có biết khi nào th) bộ phim sẽ bắt đầu?)

I wonder why Ann left early. (Tôi không biết tại sao Ann lại đi sôm thể).

Hāy dùng lí hoặc whether khi không có từ nghi vấn (question word) nào khác:

Did he see you? Do you know if (or whether) he saw you?
 (Anh ta có thấy bạn không?) (Bạn có biết là anh ta có thấy bạn không?)

 Trật tự từ cũng thay đổi tương tự trong reported questions (câu hỏi gián tiếp; câu hỏi được thuật lại);

Trực tiếp:

The policeman said to us. "Where are you going?"

(Người cảnh sát nói với chúng tôi, "Các anh đang đi đầu vậy?")

Gián tiếp:

The policeman asked us where we were going.

(Người cảnh sát hỏi chúng tôi rằng chúng tôi đang đi đầu).

Trực tiếp:

Tom said, "What time do the banks close?"

(Tom nói, "Ngân hàng đóng cửa vào lúc mấy giờ?")

Gián tiếp:

Tom wanted to know what time the banks closed.

(Tom muốn biểt ngân hàng đóng cửa vào lúc mấy giờ),

Trong các câu hỏi gián tiếp, động từ thường được đổi sang hình thức quá khứ (past) (were, closed). Để biết thêm về điều này, hãy xem bài 49.

Bây giờ hãy xem xét các thí dụ sau. Đây là một số câu hỏi bạn được hỏi trong một buổi phỏng vấn tìm việc:

- How old are you? (Ban bao nhiêu tuổi?)
- What do you do in your space time?
   (Ban làm gì lúc rảnh rỗl?)
- How long have you been working in your present job?
   (Ban đã làm công việc hiện tại của bạn được bao lâu rối?)
- Can you type?
   (Ban biết đánh máy không?)
- Why did you apply for the job?
   (Tai sao ban lai xin làm công việc này?)
- Have you got a driving licence?
   (Ban có bằng lái xe chưa?)

Bây giờ bạn kể lại cho một người bạn (bằng reported speech) những gì người phỏng vấn đã hỏi ban:

- She asked (me) how old I was.
   (Cô ấy hỏi tôi bao nhiều tuổi).
- She enquired whether (or if) I had a driving licence. (or had got)
   (Cô ấy hội tôi có bằng lái xe chưa?)
- She wanted to know whether (or it) I could type.
   (Cô ấy muốn biết tôi có thể đánh máy được không).
- She asked (me) what I did in my spare time.
   (Cô ấy hỏi tôi làm gì trong lúc rảnh rỗi).
- She wanted to know how long I had been working in my present job.
   (Cô ấy muốn biết tôi đã làm công việc hiện tại của tôi được bao lâu rồi).
- She asked (me) why I had applied for the job. (or "why I applied")
   (Cô ấy hỗi tôi tại sao tôi lại xin làm công việc đó).

#### UNIT 50: Exercises

9	What qualifications do I need? I want to know
10	D Why didn't Tome come to the party? I don't know
1.	How much does it cost to park here? Do you know?
el	You are making a phone call. You want to speak to Sue but she isn't there. Someone ise answers the phone. You want to know three things: (1) where has she gone? (2) then will she be back? and (3) did she go out alone? Complete the conversation:
1 2 3	"Do you know?" "Sorry. I've got no idea".  "Never mind. I don't suppose you know" "No, I'm afraid I don't".  "One more thing. Do you happen to know?"
J	"I'm afraid didn't see her go out".
50.3 m	You have been away for a while and have just come back to your home town. You eet Gerry, a friend of yours. He ask you lots of questions:
. (1	How are you? 5 Are you glad to be back?) 6 Are you going away again?
2	How long have you been back? 7 Why did you come back?
(3	What are you doing now? ( 0/0 ) 8 Do you still smoke?)
=	Where are you living?  9 Can you come to dinner on Friday?
4	Where are you living? 9 Can you come to dinner on Friday?
	ou tell another friend what Gerry asked you. Use reported speech.
1	He asked me how I was
2	He asked me
3	He asked
4	Не ,,,,,
5	
6	***************************************
7	1. 1. ( + ( + ( + ( + ( + ( + ( + ( + ( + (
8	
9	
VC)	,
r = 1	f · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

- 50.1 Could you tell me where the post office is?
  - Do you know what this word means?
  - I wonder what the time is.
  - Can't you remember where you parked your car?
  - I don't know whether (or if) Ann is coming to the meeting.
  - Have you any idea where Jack lives?

- 7 Do you know what time he left?
- 8 Could you tell me where I can change some money?
- 9 I want to know what qualifications I need.
- 10 I don't know why Tom didn't come to the party.
- 11 Do you know how much it costs to park here?
- 50.2 1 where she has gone
  - 2 when she will be back
    - 3 whether (or if) she went out alone
- 50.3 1 He asked me how long I had been back.
  - 2 He asked (me) what I was doing now.
    - 3 He asked (me) where I was living.
    - 4 He asked (me) whether (or if) I was glad to be back.
    - 5 He asked (me) whether (or if) I was going away again.
    - 6 He asked (me) why I had come back. / ... why I came back.
    - 7 He asked (me) whether (or if) I still smoked.
    - 8 He asked (me) whether (or if) I could come to dinner on Friday.

### BÀI 51: AUXILIARY VERBS (Trợ động từ) trong câu trả lời / hỏi ngắn: So am I / Neither am I / I think so / I hope so v.v...

a) Can yoʻır swim? t have lost my key. He might not come. (Ban có biết bơi không?) (Tôi đã đánh mất chìa khóa (Có thể anh ta không đến). của tôi).

Trong những câu trên, can, have và might là auxiliary verbs (trợ động từ). Chúng ta thường dùng trợ động từ khi chúng ta không muốn lập lại một điểu nào đó.

- "Are you working tomorrow?" "Yes, I am" (= I am working tomorrow)
   (Ngày mai bạn có làm việc không?" "Có" (= Ngày mai tôi có làm việc)
- He could lend us the money but he won't (= he won't lend us the money)
   (Anh ta có thể cho chúng ta mượn tiền, nhưng anh ta sẽ không làm thế đâu) (= Anh ta sẽ không cho chúng ta mượn tiền).
- b) Chúng ta dùng trợ động từ trong các short questions (câu hỏi ngắn):
- "It rained every day during our holiday" "Did it?"
   ("Ngày nào trời cũng mưa trong suốt kỳ nghỉ của chúng tôi") ("Vậy à?")
- "Ann isn't very well today" "Oh, isn't she?".
  - ("Hôm nay Ann không được khỏe lắm" "Ổ, vậy à?".
- "I've just seen Tom" "Oh, have you? How is he?"
   ("Tôi vừa môi gặp Tom" "Ô, thật à? Anh ấy có khỏe không?")

Những **câu hỏi ngắn** ở trên (*Did it?, isn't she?, have you?)* không phải là những câu hỏi thực sự. Chúng ta dùng chúng để bày tỏ sự quan tâm một cách lịch sự đến những gì mà ai đó đã nói, và chúng giữ cho cuộc nói chuyện được liên tục.

Đôi khi chúng ta dùng câu hỏi ngắn để biểu lộ sự ngạc nhiên:

- "Jim and Nora are getting married". "Are they? Realy?" ("Jim và Nora sẽ lấy nhau" "Vậy sao? Thật không?")
- c) Chúng ta cũng dùng trợ động từ với so và nelther:
- "I'm feeling tired". "So am I' (= I am feeling tired too)
   ("Tôi cảm thấy mệt mỏi". "Tôi cũng vậy". (= Tôi cũng cảm thấy mệt mỏi).
- "I never read newspapers" "Neither do I". (= I never read them either) ("Tôi không bao giờ đọc báo". "Tôi cũng vậy"). (= Tôi cũng không bao giờ đọc báo cã).

Hãy chú ý đến trật tự từ sau so và neither (động từ đứng trước chủ từ).

I passed the exam and so did Tom. (not "so Tom did")
 (Tôi đã thi đậu và Tom cũng vậy)

Nor có thể được dùng thay cho neither.

"I can't remember his name". "Nor can l/Neither can l". ("Tôi không thể nhớ tên anh ta". "Tôi cũng vậy").

Not ... either có thể được dùng thay cho neither và nor:

"I haven't got any money". "Neither have I" or "I haven't either".
 ("Tôi chẳng có đồng nào cả". "Tôi cũng vậy").

d) I think so / hope so v.v...

Chúng ta dùng so theo cách này sau một số động từ, đặc biệt là sau think, hope, expect, suppose và I'm afraid.

- "Is she English?" "I think so".
  - ("Cô ấy là người Anh phải không?" "Tôi nghĩ thế").
- "Will Tom come?". "I expect so". ("Tom sẽ đến chứ?" "Tôi mong thế").
- "Has Ann been invited to the party?" "I suppose so".

("Ann đã được mời đến dự tiệc chứ?" "Tôi cho là thế").

Thể phủ định sẽ tùy thuộc vào động từ

- I think so / I expect so
- I don't think so / I don't expect so
- I hope so / I'm áfraid so
- I hope not / I'm afraid not

I suppose so

- I don't suppose so hoặc I suppose not.
- "Is she American?" "I don't think so".
- ("Cô ấy là người Mỹ phải không?" "Tôi không nghĩ.thế").
   "Is it going to rain?" "I hope not". (not "I don't hope so")
- ("Trời sắp mưa phải không?" "Tôi hy vọng là không").

#### UNIT 51: Exercises

51,1 In this exercise you are talking to someone. Answer him in the way shown. Examples: I'm hungry. Are you? I'm not. I'm not tired. Aren't vou? 1 am. l like Brian 2 can't ride a horse. I've got plenty of friends. 4 1 didn't enjoy the film much. I'd get married if I were in Tom's position. 5 I don't like living in the country ..... 6 I'm not going to have anything to eat. ..... 7 I've never been to America. I thought the exam was quite easy. ..... 51.2 Here too you are talking to someone. You have the same ideas, taste etc. as your friend. Use So ... or Neither ... each time. I don't like eggs. Neither do I. Examples: I'm feeling tired. So am I. 1 I need a holiday. 2 I don't like milk. 3 | couldn't get up this morning. 4 I'd love a cup of tea. 5 I've never been to Africa. I was ill yesterday. ....

7 8 9	1 spent th	e whole evening watc	hing telev	ision.	
, c	Now you honversation.	ave to answer with I	think so	n, I hope not etc. You an	· · · · ·
, =	xampie: (10	u nate rain) A: is it go	ing to rair	? B: (hope) <u>I hope not.</u>	
	A: E 2 (You A: I 3 (You A: I 4 (You A: C 5 (You A: I 6 (Anu Web	u think Tom will proba wonder if Tom will ge u're not sure whether s Jill married? B: (thin u haven't got any mon can you lend me some ur friend's sister has b is she badly injured? I n normally works e finesday).	a pay incibly get the the job. Jill is mark) ey). e money? een badly 3: (afraid) very day	rease soon? B: (hope)e job which he applied for). B: (expect)	omorrow is
•	7 (Yo - A: E 8 (Yo	ou're in a hurry to catc Oo you think we're goin u're not sure but the c	h your tra ng to miss oncert pro	in - it's important that you d the train? B: (hope) bably begins at 7.30). B: (think)	on't miss it).
KE	Υ				
51.1	1 Do vo	u? I don't.	2	Can't you? I can.	
		you? I haven't.	4	Didn't you? I did.	
		you? I wouldn't.	6	Don't you? I do.	
• .	7 Aren't	you? I am. ou? I didn't	8.		
	4 6. 4.		ے تحر		
51.2	1 So do		2	Neither do I.	•
		er could I.	4	So would I.	
		er have I. ould I.	6	So was I.	
		ould 1. er did 1.	8	So did i.	
		er qid i. Ossible instead of "nei	ther" in th	is exercise.	
51.3	1 I hope	? so.	2	l expect so.	
		t think so.	4	I'm afraid not.	
		raid so.	6.	suppose so.	~
	7 Ihone	the state of the s	•	I think an	

### Bài 52: QUESTION TAGS (Câu hỏi đuôi)

(are you?, doesn't he? v.v...)

a)

You haven't got a car, have you? (Ban chưa có xe hơi, phải không?) It was a good film, wasn't it? (Đó là một bộ phim hay, phải không?)

Have you? và wasn't it? là các question tags (câu hội đười) (= cắc câu hội nhỏ mà chúng ta đặt ở cuối câu). Trong các câu hội đười, chúng ta dùng trợ động từ (xem bài 51a). Đối với thì simple present và simple past, dùng do / does / did:

- They came by car, didn't they?
   (Họ đến bằng xe hơi, phải không?)
- b) Chúng ta thường dùng câu hỏi đuôi xác định (a pôsitive question tag) cho câu phủ định (negative):

negative sentence	+	positive tag	. ]
Tom won't be late,		will he?	
(Tom sẽ không đến trễ,		phải không?)	
They don't like us,		do they?	
(Ho không thích chúng ta,		phải không?)	ļ
That isn't George over there,		is it?	
(Người đẳng kia không phải là George,		đúng không?)	

Và chúng ta thường dùng câu hỗi đuôi phủ định (a negative question tag) cho câu xác định (affirmative):

affirmative sentence	+	negative tag
Ann will be here soon,		won't she?
(Ann sẽ có mặt ở đây ngay bây giờ,	•	phải không?)
Tom should pass his exam,		shouldn't he?
(Tom sẽ thi đậu,		phải không?)
They were very angry,		weren't they?
(Họ đã rất giận dữ,		phải không?)

Hãy lưu ý đến các ý nghĩa của yes và no trong các câu trả lời cho question tags:

- You're not going to work today, are you? (Hôm nay ban sẽ không làm việc, phải không?)
- Yes (= l am going) (Có chứ. Tôi sẽ đi làm). No. (= l'm not going) (Không. Tôi sẽ không đi làm).
- c) Ý nghĩa của một câu hỏi đuôi sẽ tùy thuộc vào cách mà bạn nói nó. Nếu bạn xuống giọng thì không phải bạn thực sự đang hỏi, bạn chỉ mong người khác đồng ý với bạn:
  - "Tom doesn't look very well today, does he?". "No, he looks awful". (Hôm nay Tom trông không được khỏe lầm; phải không?) (Không, anh ta trông tệ quá).

She's very attractive. She's got beautiful eyes, hasn't she?
 (Cô ấy rất quyến rũ. Cô ấy có đôi mắt đẹp, phải không?)

Nhưng nếu bạn lên giọng, thì đó là một câu hỏi thực sự.

 "You haven't seen Ann today, have you?" (= Have you seen Ann today?) "No, I'm afraid not".

(Hồm nay bạn đã không gặp Ann, phải không?) (= Hôm nay bạn có gặp Ann không?) Không, tôi e rằng không.

Chúng ta thường dùng *negative sentence* + *positive tag* (cầu phủ định + câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định) để hỏi về sự việc hay tin tức hoặc để yêu cầu ai làm điều gì đó. Ta lên giọng ở cuối câu hỏi đuôi trong các thí dụ sau:

- "You haven't got a cigarette, have you?" "Yes, here you are".
  (Ban không còn điểu thuốc nào, phải không?) (Còn chứ, đây mởi ban).
- "You couldn't do me a favour, could you?" "It depends what it is".
  (Ban không thể giúp tôi được, phải không?) (Côn tùy vào đó là việc gì).
- "You don't know where Ann is, do you?" "Sorry, I've no idea".
  (Ban không biết Ann đang ở đầu, phải không?) (Xin lỗi, tôi không biết).
- d) Sau Let's... câu hỏi đuôi sẽ là shall we?
  - Let's go out for a walk, shall we?
     (Chúng ta hāy ra ngoài đị dạo, chịu không?)

Sau mệnh lệnh cách (imperative mood) (do / don't do something) câu hội đười sẽ là will you?

- Open the door, will you?
   (Hây mở cửa ra, được không?)
- Don't be late, will you?
   (Đừng đến trễ, được chứ?)

Hāy lưu ý rằng chúng tạ πόι aren't !? (= am l not):

I'm late, aren't !?
 (Tôi tới trễ, phải không?)

#### **UNIT 52: Exercises**

52.1 In this exercise you have to put a question tag on the end of each sentence. Examples: Tom won't be late; will he? They were very angry, weren't they?

1	Ann's on holiday,?	10 Let's have dinner,?
2	You weren't listening,?	11 This isn't very interesting,?
3	Sue doesn't like onions,?	12 I'm too fat,?
4	Jack's applied for the job,?	13 You wouldn't tell anyone,?
5	You've got a camera,?	14 Listen,?
6	You can type,?	15 I shouldn't have got angry,?
7	He won't mind if I go early,?	16 Don't drop it,?
8	Tom could help you,?	17 They had to go home,?
9	There are a lot of people here,?	18 He'd never seen you before,?

52.2 This time you have to read a situation and	
tag. In each example you are asking your list Example: You are with a friend outside a re It's very expensive: What do you	tener to agree with you. estaurant. You are looking at the prices. say? It's very expensive, isn't it?
1 You look out of the window. It's a beauti	ful day. What do you say to your friend?
2 You've just come out of the cinema wi the film. You thought it was great. What	th your friend. You both really enjoyed
3 Tom's hair is much shorter. Clearly he him? You	has had his hair cut. What do you say to
4 You are shopping. You are trying on a look very nice. What do you say to your	jacket. You look in the mirror: it doesn't
5 You are talking about Bill. You know the this. What do you say about Bill? Bill	at <i>Bill works very hard.</i> Everyone knows 🚬
52.3 In these situations you are asking people to etc. Make sentences like those in section c. Example: You want a cigarette. Pernaps Tom. you haven't got a cigarette.	om has got one. Ask him.
1 Jack is just going out. You want him to g	get some stamps. Ask him.
2 You're looking for Ann. Perhaps Tom kr	nows where she is. Ask him.
3 You need a bicycle pump. Perhaps Ton	n has got one. Ask him.
4 Ann has a car and you don't want to wa	alk home. You want her to give you a lift.
5 You're looking for your purse. Perhaps	Tom has seen it. Ask him.
KEY	***************************************
52.1 1 isn't she	11 is it
2 were you	12 aren't l
3 does she	13 would you
4 hasn't he ("Jack's" = Jack has)	14 will you
5 haven't you	15 should l
6 can't you	16 will you
7 will he	17 didn't they (not "hadn't they"
<ul> <li>8 couldn't he - see Unit 32b)</li> </ul>	18 had he ("He'd" = He had)

aren't there

shall we

9

10

- 52.2 1 It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
  - 2 The film was great, wasn't it?
  - 3 You've had your hair cut, haven't you? / You've had a haircut, haven't you?
  - 4 It doesn't look very nice, does it?
  - 5- Bill works very hard, doesn't he?
- 52.3 1 Jack, you couldn't get me some stamps, could you?
  - 2 Tom, you don't know where Ann is, do you? / Tom, you haven't seen Ann, have you?
  - 3 Tom, you haven't got a bicycle pump, have you?
    / Tom, you couldn't lend me a bicycle pump, could you?
  - 4 Ann, you couldn't give me a lift, could you?
  - 5 Tom, you haven't seen my purse, have you? / Tom, you don't know where my purse is, do you?

## BÀI 53: VERB + -ING (Động từ đi với động từ ở hình thức -ING)

a)

stop	enjoy	fancy	admit	consider	miss
finish	mind	imagine	deny	involve	postpone
delay	suggest	regret	avold	practise	risk

Nếu các động từ trên được theo sau bởi động từ khác, động từ đứng sau sẽ ở hình thức -ING theo công thức: verb + -ING

- Stop talking! (Im di!)
- I'll do the shopping when I've finished cleaning the flat.
   (Tôi sẽ đi mua sắm khi nào tôi lau xong căn phòng này).
- I don't fancy going out this evening.
   (Tôi nay tôi không thích đi chơi).
- Have you ever considered going to live in another country?
   (Có bao giờ bạn nghĩ đến việc sang sống ở một nước khác không?)
- I can't imagine George riding a motor-bike.
   (Tôi không thể tưởng tượng nổi George lại lái xe máy).
- When I'm on holiday, I enjoy not having to get up early.
   (Khi tôi đi nghĩ, tôi thích thủ vì không phải dây sớm).

Các nhóm từ sau đây cũng đòi hỏi động từ theo sau phải ở hình thức -ing:

give up ≍ <i>từ bỏ</i>	put off = hoān lại	keep, (keep on)
go on = tiếp tục	carry on = tiếp tục	= cử tiếp tục

- Are you going to give up smoking? (Ban sê bô thuốc chứ?)
- She kept (on) interrupting me while I was speaking.
   (Cô ta vẫn cứ ngắt lời tôi trong khi tôi đang nói).

Hảy kưu ý đến dạng bị động (passive form) (being done / being seen / being told v.v...):

I don't mind being told what to do.
 (Tôi không thấy phiên về việc bị người khác bảo phải làm gì).

Thông thường bạn không thể dùng to-infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu) (to do / to dance v.v...) sau các động từ và các nhóm từ nêu trên.

- I enjoy dancing. (not "to dance") (Tôi thích khiều vũ).
- Would you mind closing the door? (Phiền bạn đóng giùm cửa được không?)
- Tom suggested going to the cinema. (Tom da de nghị di xem phim).
- b) Khi bạn đang nói về các hành động đã được hoàn thành (finished actions), bạn cũng có thể dùng having done/having stolen v.v... Nhưng không nhất thiết phải dùng hình thức này. Bạn cũng có thể dùng dạng -ing thông thường cho các hành động đó:
  - He admitted stealing (hoặc having stolen) the money.
     (Anh ta thủ nhận là đã ăn cấp món tiến đó).

- They now regret getting (hoặc having got) married.
   (Bây giờ họ lấy làm tiếc là đã lấy nhau).
- c) Với một số động từ trong bài này (đặc biệt là admit, deny, regret và suggest), bạn cũng có thể dùng một câu trúc đi với that (that... structure):
  - He denied that he had stolen the money. (hoặc denied stealing) (Anh ta không nhận là anh ta đã ăn cấp món tiến đó).
  - Tom suggested that we went to the cinema. (hoặc suggested going).
     (Tom để nghị rằng chúng tôi nên đi xem phim).

Vể suggest, xem them bài 35C.

Vế động từ + -ing, xem thêm các bài 56 và 57.

#### **UNIT 53: Exercises**

53.1 In this exercise you have to complete the sentences with these verbs:

try wa		steal play	meet eat	look splash	write go	make drive	be knocked take
Ęx	<i>ample:</i> D	o you fa	ncy <u>playing</u>	tennis after	поол?		
1	Could y	ou pleas	se stop			so much	noise?
2	l don't e	эпјоу			letters.	•	
3	Does yo	our job ir	nvolve	*******	a	lot of people	?
4	I consid	lered	+ 1 +	the	job but in	the end I dec	ided against it.
5	ii you u	se the si	hower, try a	nd avoid		wate	r on the floor.
6	Jack ga	ve up		to find a	a job in Brit	tain and decid	ded to emigrate.
7	Have y	ou finish	ed		your h	air yet?	_
8	The pho	one rang	while Ann	was having	her dinner.	She didn't a	nswer it; she just
9	Carried He ad	on					
9	danger			the	car but	denied	it
10	•		an on				
11	They ha	id to nos	spon		الله سبب	me like that?	their son was ill.
12	If you w	alk into	the road wit	hout lookind		way because	down by a car.
me Exa 1	<i>aning, B</i> amples: I don't v Are you	egin you Do you h He is no He now vant to go sorry yo	r sentence in nave to travi w sorry that regrets not o out this ev	n the way shell in your job the didn't st studying har vening, I don	nown. o? Does yo udy harder rder when i n't fancy	ur job involve when he wa he was at col	s at college.
-2	TTION GO	m+		orrow instea	- J - J - J - J - J - J - J - J		

	4	It's not a good idea to travel during the rush-hour.
	5	Could you turn the radio down, please?
		Would you mind
	6.	The driver of the car said it was true that he didn't have a licence.
		The driver of the car admitted
	7	Tom said "Let's have fish for dinner".
		Tom suggested
 53		low make your own sentences. Complete each sentence using -ing.
 53		low make your own sentences. Complete each sentence using -ing. cample: I really enjoy going for long walks in the country.
<u>-</u>	<i>Ex</i> 1	flow make your own sentences. Complete each sentence using -ing.  ample: I really enjoy going for long walks in the country.  At weekends I enjoy
 53		flow make your own sentences. Complete each sentence using -ing.  sample: I really enjoy going for long walks in the country.  At weekends I enjoy
 53	<i>Ex</i> 1 2	flow make your own sentences. Complete each sentence using -ing.  sample: I really enjoy going for long walks in the country.  At weekends I enjoy
<u>-</u> 53	1 2 3	flow make your own sentences. Complete each sentence using -ing.  sample: I really enjoy going for long walks in the country.  At weekends I enjoy
	1 2 3 4	flow make your own sentences. Complete each sentence using -ing.  ample: I really enjoy going for long walks in the country.  At weekends I enjoy

- 53.1 1 making
  - writing 2
  - 3 smeeting
  - taking
  - splashing
  - trying

  - washing
  - eating
  - stealing... driving
  - 10 looking -
  - 11 going
  - 12 being knocked (passive)
- I don't fancy going out this 53.2 1 evening.
  - Do you regret not taking the job? (or... that you didn't take...)
  - 3 Why don't you put off going away until tomorrow?
  - It's better to avoid travelling during the rush-hour.
  - 5. Would you mind turning the radio down, please?

- The driver of the car admitted not having a licence. (or... that he didn't have a licence).
  - Tom suggested having fish for dinner. (or... suggested that we had fish / suggested that we should have
- 53.3 If possible check your sentence with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

fish...)

- 1 At weekends I enjoy sitting in the garden (if it's warm).
- 2 This evening I fancy going out to eat in a nice restaurant.
- 3 t often regret not travelling more when I was younger.
- 4 Learning English involves speaking as much as you can.
- 5 I think people should stop watching television so much.

## BÀI 54: VERB + INFINITIVE (Động từ đi với động từ nguyên mẫu)

a)

agree refuse promise	offer attempt manage	decide plan	appear seem pretend	forget learn (how) dare
promise	manage	arrange	pretena	care .
threaten	fail	hope	afford	tend

Nếu các động từ trên được theo sau bởi một động từ khác, động từ theo sau sẽ ở hình-thức to-infinitive (nguyên mẫu có to) theo công thức: verb + to-infinitive

- As it was late, we decided to take a taxi home.
   (Vì đã trễ, chúng tôi quyết định đón taxi về nhà).
- I like George but I think he tends to talk too much.
   (Tôi thích George nhưng tôi nghĩ anh ta có khuynh hưởng nói quá nhiều).
- How old were you when you learnt to drive? (or "learnt how to drive") (Ban bao nhiều tuổi khi ban học lái xe?)
- They agreed to lend me some money when I told them the position I was in.
   (Ho đã đồng ý cho tôi mươn một ít tiền khi tôi kể cho họ nghe về hoàn cảnh mà tôi gặp phải).

Hãy lưu ý đến những thí dụ sau đây với thể phủ định (negative) not to...:

We decided not to go out because of the weather. (Chung tôi đã quyết định không ra ngoài vì thời tiết xấu).

He pretended not to see me as he passed me in the street.

(Anh ta làm bộ không thấy tôi khi anh ta đi ngang qua tôi ngoài phố).

Với những động từ quan trọng khác, bạn không thể dùng động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive). Thí dụ như thìnk và suggest.

- Are you thinking of buying a car? (not "thinking to-buy")
   (Ban có nghĩ đến việc mua xe hơi không?)
- Tom suggested going to the cinema. (not "suggested to do").
   (Tom dā dê nghị di xem phim).
- b) Có hình thức continuous Infinitive (nguyên mẫu tiếp diễn) (to be doing) và hình thức perfect Infinitive (nguyên mẫu hoàn thành) (to have done). Chúng ta đặc biệt dùng các hình thức này sau seem, appear và pretend.
  - I pretended to be reading. (= I pretended that I was reading). (Tôi làm bố như đang đọc). (\* Tôi làm bố rằng tôi đang đọc).
  - You seem to have lost weight. (= it seems that you have lost weight).

(Bạn đường như bị sụt cân). (= đường như là bạn bị sụt cân).

- c) Sau dare ban có thể dùng to-infinitive (nguyên mẫu có to) hoặc bare infinitive (nguyên mẫu không có to):
  - I wouldn't dare to ask him; or: I wouldn't dare ask him.
     (Tôi không dám hỏi ông ta).

Nhưng sau daren't bạn phải dùng bare infinitive (nguyên mẫu không có to):

- I daren't tell him what happened. (not "daren't to tell")
  (Tôi không dám kể cho anh ta nghe chuyện gì đã xảy ra).
- d) Sau những động từ đười đây, bạn có thể dùng từ nghi văn (question word) theo công thức

(What/where/how) + to	-infinitive.

ask decide know remember forget explain understand (hỏi) (quyết định) (biết) (nhở) (quên) (giải thích) (hiểu)

- We asked how to get to the station.
   (Chung tôi hỏi cách để đi đến nhà ga).
- Have you decided where to go for your holidays?
   (Ban đã quyết định đi nghỉ ở đâu chưa?)
- Tom explained (to me) how to change the wheel of the car.
   (Tom giải thích (cho tôi) cách thay bánh xe hơi).
- I don't know whether to go to the party or not?
   (Tôi không biết có nên đi dự tiệc hay không?)

Ngoài ra cũng có thể đùng:

show/tell/ask someone what/how/where to

do...

- Can someone show me how to change the film in this camera?
   (Có ai chỉ dùm tôi cách thay phim trong máy ảnh này không?)
- Ask Jack. He'll tell you what to do. (Hây hỗi Jack. Anh ta sẽ nói cho anh biết phải làm gì).

Đối với verb + to-infinitive, xem thêm các bài 55 - 7.

#### **UNIT 54: Exercises**

	this exercise you have to complete each sentence with a suitable verb.  mple: Don't forget to post the letter I gave you.	
	Tom refused	•
54.2 T	is time you have to make sentences with seem and appear.  Imples: Is he waiting for someone? He appears to be waiting for someone.  Has she lost weight? She seems to have lost weight.  Is Tom worried about something?  He seems	

3 Is that man looking for something?	He appears
what or how with one of the following wide say use ri Example: Do you know how to get to with the same says.	de cook jet John's house?
1 Have you decided what	the washing machine? s a fire in the building? cle once you have learned.
2 I would like to learn	to go to the theatre.
KEY	
54. 1 1 to lend/to give 2 to buy/to hire 3 to shut/to close/to fasten/to lock 4 to get ("arrive" is not possible because we say "arrive at the airport") 5 to play 6 (how) to fly/to pilot (not "to drive") 7 to hear/to understand/to see 8 to be/to come/to arrive 9 to call/to telephone/to phone/to ring/to fetch/to get 10 to look 11 (to) talk (to) speak/(to) laugh/(to) play (After "dare" you can use the infinitive with or without "to" — see section c.)	54.3 1 what to cook  '2 how to use  3 what to do  4 how to ride  5 what to say ("what to do" is also possible)  54.4 If possible check your answers with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:  1 Not many people can afford to buy a Rolls Royce.  2 I would like to learn (how) to ride a horse.  3 One day I hope to have enough money to travel round the world.  4 I wouldn't dare (to) wear clothes
<ul> <li>54.2 1 He seems to be worried about something.</li> <li>2 She appears to like Jack.</li> <li>3 He appears to be looking for something.</li> <li>4 It seems to have broken down.</li> <li>5 They appear to have gone out.</li> </ul>	tike that. I would took stupid. 5 Sometimes I tend to be a bit lazy.

### BÀI 55: VERB + OBJECT + INFINITIVE (Động từ + túc từ + nguyên mẫu)

a)

want (muốn); ask (hỏi, yêu cầu); expect (nghĩ rằng, tin rằng); help (giúp đợ); mean (= intend) (có ý); would like (muốn); would prefer (thích hơn).

Có hai cấu trúc có thể được dùng sau các động từ trên:

- \* Đông từ + to + động từ nguyên mẫu:
- I asked to see the manager. (Tôi đã yêu cầu gặp Giám đốc).
- We expected to be late. (Chúng tôi nghĩ là chẳng tôi đến trễ).
- He would like to come. (Anh ta muốn đến).
- \* Động từ + túc từ + to + động từ nguyên mẫu:
- I asked Tom to help me. (Tôi đã yêu cầu Tom giúp đỡ tôi).
- We expected him to be late. (Chúng tôi nghĩ là anh ta đi trễ).
- He would like me to come. (Anh ta muốn tôi đến).

Sau help, ban có thể dùng động từ nguyên mẫu có hoặc không có to:

Can somebody help me (to) move this table.
 (Cô ai có thể giúp tôi dời cái bàn này đi không?)

Hãy đặc biệt cẩn thận với want: dừng nói "want thát..." (muốn rằng...)

- Everyone wanted him to win the race.
   (Moi người đều muốn anh ta thắng cuộc đua).
- Do you want me to come early?
   (Ban co muốn tôi đến sớm không?)

b)

tell	remind	force	enable	persuadė
(bảo) -	(nhắc)	(bắt buộc)	(cho phép)	(thuyết phục)
order	warn	invite	teach (how)	get (= persuade)
(ra lênh)	(khuyến cáo)	(mởi)	(day)	(thuyết phục)
	(bảo) order	(bảo) (nhắc) order warn	(bảo) (nhác) (bái buộc) order warn invite	(bảo) (nhác) (bát buộc) (cho phép) order warn invite teach (how)

Những động từ trên được dùng theo cấu trúc: Động từ + túc từ + to + động từ nguyên mẫu:

- Remind me to phone Ann tomorrow. (Hãy nhắc tôi gọi điện cho Ann vào ngày mai).
- He warned me not to touch anything. (Anh ta lưu ý tôi dừng sở vào bất cứ cái gl).
- Who taught you (how) to drive? (Ai đã dạy bạn lái xe thế?)
- I got Jack to repair my car. (Tôi thuyết phục Jack sửa xe cho tôi).

Sau đây là một thí dự, về thể bị động (passive):

I was warned not to touch anything.
 (Tôi đã được khuyển cáo là đừng sở vào bất cử cái gì).

Ban không thể dùng suggest với cấu trúc này (xem thêm bài 35c):

Tom suggested that I bought a car. (Tom đã để nghị rằng tôi nên mua một chiếc xe hơi).

advise recommend encourage allow permit (khuyên) (để nghị) (khuyến khích) (cho phép) (cho phép)

Có hai cấu trúc có thể được dùng sau các động từ trên: Hãy so sánh:

yerb <b>¥-ing</b> (không có object	verb + object + to-infinitive
<ul> <li>He doesn't allow smoking in his house (Ông ấy không cho phép hút thuốc trong nhà minh)</li> <li>I wouldn't recommend staying at that hotel.</li> <li>(Tôi không để nghị nên nghỉ tại khách sạn đó).</li> </ul>	He doesn't allow anyone to smoke in his house.  (Ông ấy không cho ai hút thuốc trong nhà mình).  I wouldn't recommend you to stay alithe hotel.  (Tôi không để nghị anh nghì lại ở khách sạn đó).

#### d) Make và Let:

c)

Hai động từ này được dùng theo cấu trúc: động từ + nguyên mẫu không có to:

- Hot weather makes me feel uncomfortable. (= causes me to feel)
   Thời tiết nóng nực làm tôi cảm thấy khó chịu).
- I only did it because they made me do it. (= forced me to do it)
   (Tôi chỉ làm điều đó bởi vì họ đã ép buộc tới phải làm).
- She wouldn't let me read the letter. (= allow me to read)
   (Cô ta sẽ không để cho tôi đọc lá thư đó đầu).

Hãy nhớ rằng make và let được dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu không có to

- They made me do it. (Họ đã ép buộc tôi làm điều đó).
- Tom let me drive his car yesterday.
   (Hôm qua Tom đã để tôi lái xe của anh ấy).

Nhưng ở thể bị cộng, make lại được dùng gợi động từ nguyên mẫu có to:

I only did it because I was made to do it.
 (Tôi chỉ làm điều đó bởi vì tôi đã bị ép buộc phải làm mà thôi).

### **UNIT 55: Exercises**

55.1 Read each sentence and write a second sentence from the words given.

- \* Example: Jill didn't have any money.
  - she / want / Ann / lend her some. She wanted Ann to lend her some.

3		There's a football match next Saturday between England and Scotland.					
	4	Unfortunately someone had told Sue that I was going to visit her.  I / want / it / be a surprise.					
55.	2	Now you have to read a sentence and then write a second sentence with the same meaning. Each time begin in the way shown.					
_	Ex	ramples: "Don't touch anything", the man said to me.  The man told me not to touch anything.					
		My father said I could use his car. My father allowed me to use his car.					
	1	*Don't forget to post the letter*, Jack said to me.  Jack reminded					
	2	She told me that it would be best if I told the police about the accident. She advised					
	3	I told you that you shouldn't tell him anything.					
	4	I was surprised that it rained. I didn't expect					
	5	"Would you like to have dinner with me?" Tom said to Ann. Tom invited					
	6	At first I didn't want to play tennis but John persuaded me.  John persuaded					
	7	The sudden noise caused me to jump. The sudden noise made					
	8	If you've got a car, you are able to travel around more easily.  Having a car enables					
	9	She wouldn't allow me to read the letter. She wouldn't let					
55		low put the verb in the right form: -ing, to + infinitive, or infinitive without to. rample: Mr. Thomas doesn't allow <u>smoking</u> (smoke) in his office.					
	1	Mr. Thomas doesn't let anyone (smoke) in his office.					
	2	I don't know Jack but I'd like(meet) him.					
	3	Where would you recommend me (go) for my holidays?					
	4	I don't recommend (eat) in that restaurant. The food's awful.					
	5	The film was very sad. It made me (cry).					
	6	Jack's parents have always encouraged him(study) hard.					
	7	We were kept at the police station for an hour and then allowed (go).					
		•					

### KEY

- 55.1 1 They wanted Tom to stay with them.
  - 2 I don't want anyone to know.
  - 3 Do you want Scotland to win?
  - 4 I wanted it to be a surprise.

- 55.2 1 Jack reminded me to post the letter.
  - 2 She advised me to tell the police about the accident.
  - 3 I warned you not to tell him anything.
  - 4 I didn't expect it to rain. (or... expect that it would rain).
  - 5 Tom invited Ann to have dinner with him. (or Tom invited Ann to dinner with him).
  - 6 John persuaded me to play tennis.
  - 7 The sudden noise made me jump.
  - 8 Having a car enables you to travel around more easily.
  - 9 She wouldn't let me read the letter.
- 55.3 1 smoke
  - 2 to meet
  - 3 to go
  - 4 eating
  - 5 cry
  - 6 to study
  - 7 to go (= we were allowed to go -passive)

### BÀI 56: INFINITIVE or -ING? (Động từ nguyên mẫu hay -ING?) (1) với like, would like

V.V...

a)

like (thich) hate (ghét) enjoy (thich) can't bear (không chịu được)
dielike (không thích) love (thích) mind (để ý) can't stand (không chịu được)

Các động từ và các nhóm từ trên thường được theo sau bởi -ing:

- I enjoy being alone. (Tôi thích ở một mình).
- Why do you dislike living here?
   (Tai sao anh không thích sống ở đây?)
- I don't like people shouting at me.
   (Tôi không thích người ta la hét tôi).
- Ann hates flying. (Ann ghét di máy bay).
- Tom doesn't mind working at night.
   (Tom không ngại phải làm việc ban đêm).

Sau iove và can't bear, ban có thể dùng -ing hoặc to-infinitive:

- I love meeting people; hoặc: 1 love to meet people.
   (Tôi thích gặp gỡ người khác).
- She can't bear being alone; hoặc: She can't bear to be alone.
   (Cô ta không chịu nổi sự cô đơn).

#### b) Like

Thường thì không có gì khác biệt khi bạn nói "l like doing" hoặc "l like to đo". Thí dụ, bạn có thể nói:

I like getting up early, hoặc: I like to get up early. (Tôi thích dây sớm).

Chúng ta thường nói "I like doing" khi like có nghĩa là "enjoy" (thích):

- Do you like cooking? (= do you enjoy it?) (Ban có thích nấu ăn không?)
- I don't like driving. (= I don't enjoy it). (Tôi không thích lái xe).

Khi like không có nghĩa là "thích", chúng ta dùng "I like to do". I like to do something = I find it is good or right to do something. (Tôi thấy điều gì đó đáng / nên làm).

- I like to wash my hair twice a week. (This doesn't mean that I enjoy it; it means that I think it is a good thing to do).

  (Tôi muốn gội đầu hai lần một tuần). (Điều này không có nghĩa là tôi thích việc đó;
  - nó có nghĩa là tôi cho đó là việc nên làm).
- Tom likes to do the washing-up immediately after the meal. (Tom muốn rửa chén dĩa ngay sau bữa ăn).
- c) Would like được theo sau bởi to-infinitive:
  - I would like to be rich. (Tôi muốn được giàu có).
  - Would you like to come to a party? (Ban có muốn đến dự tiệc không?)

Hãy lưu ý đến sự khác nhau về ý nghĩa giữa I like và I would like, I would like là một cách nói lịch sự của I want (Tôi muốn). Hãy so sánh:

- I like playing tennis. (= I enjoy it in general) (Tôi thích chơi quần vợt).
- I would like to play tennis today. (= I want to play)
   (Hôm nay tôi muốn chơi quân vợt).
- Xem thêm bài 31d.

Chúng tá cũng có thể dùng to-infinitiv sau would love / hate / prefer:

- Would you prefer to have dinner now or later?
   (Ban muốn ăn tối ngay bây giờ hay để lát nữa?)
- I'd love to be able to travel round the world.
   (Tôi muốn được đi vòng quanh thế giới):
- d) Bạn cũng có thể nói "I would like to have done something" (= Tôi tiếc rằng tôi đã không hoặc đã không thể làm điều gi đó);
  - it's a pity we didn't visit Tom. I would like to have seen him again. (Thật tiếc là chúng ta đã không đến thăm Tom. Tôi rất muốn gắp lại anh ấy).
  - We'd like to have gone on holiday but we didn't have enough money. (Chung tôi đã rất muốn đi nghỉ mát nhưng chúng tôi lại không đủ tiến).

Ban cũng có thể dùng một cấu trúc như trên sau would love / hate / prefer:

- Poor old Tom! I would hate to have been in his position."
  (Tội nghiệp ông giả Tom! Tôi cũng chẳng hể muốn lâm vào hoàn cảnh như ông ấy).
- I'd love to have gone to the party but it was impossible.
   (Tôi đã rất muốn dự tiệc nhưng không thể đi được).

#### UNIT 56: Exercises

6.1 A	Inswer these questions using the verbs given.
	amples: Why do you never fly? (hate) I hate flying.
	Why does Tom go to the cinema so often? (like) He likes going to the cinema.
1	Why do you always wear a hat? (like) I
2	Why does Ann watch television so often? (enjoy) She
3	Why do you never go to the cinema? (not/like)
4	Why does Jack take so many photographs? (like)
5	Why don't you work in the evenings? (hate)
56.2 7 1 2 3 4	his time put the verb into the correct Form, -ing or to + infinitive.  Examples: I enjoy being (be) alone.  Would you like to come (come) to a party?  Do you mind

6 When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried about missing it. So I like  (get) to the station in plenty of time.  7 I very much enjoy		5	Do you like			(drive	<del>:</del> )?		
7   very much enjoy		6							sing it. So I like
8   would love		7							
9 Sometime I'd like			•	- •					sn't possible.
56.3 Now you have to make your own sentences. Say whether you like or don't like the things in brackets (). Choose one of these verbs for each of your sentences:  (don't) like love hate enjoy don't mind can't stand  Example: (reading) Llike reading very much.  1 (playing cards)   2 (learning languages) 3 (visiting museums) 4 (lying on the beach in the sun) 5 (shopping)  5 (shopping)  1 (t's a pity   couldn't go to the wedding. (like)		-					-	-	
(don't) like love hate enjoy don't mind can't stand  Example: (reading)   Like reading very much.  1 (playing cards)	56.							-	
Example: (reading) Llike reading very much.  1 (playing cards) I 2 (learning languages) 3 (visiting museums) 4 (lying on the beach in the sun) 5 (shopping) 5 (shopping) 6 (shopping) 1 It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like) 1 would like to have gone to the wedding.  1 It's a pity I didn't meet Ann. (love) I would love 2 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) I 3 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not/like) 4 It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer) 5 It's a pity I didn't see the film. (like)  KEY  56.1 1 I like wearing a hat. / like to wear a hat. 2 She enjoys watching television. 3 I don't like going to the cinema. 4 He likes taking photographs. 5 I hate working in the evenings.		thu	_					-	
1 (playing cards)   2 (learning languages) 3 (visiting museums) 4 (lying on the beach in the sun) 5 (shopping) 56.4 Now you have to write sentences like those in section d.  Example: It's a pity   couldn't go to the wedding. (like)			(don't)	like	love	hate	enjoy	don't mind	çan't stand
2 (learning languages) 3 (visiting museums) 4 (lying on the beach in the sun) 5 (shopping) 56.4 Now you have to write sentences like those in section d.  Example: It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like)  Lwould like to have gone to the wedding.  1 It's a pity I didn't meet Ann. (love) I would love 2 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) I 3 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not/like) 4 It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer) 5 It's a pity I didn't see the film. (like)  KEY  56.1 1 I like wearing a hat. / like to wear a hat. 2 She enjoys watching television. 3 I don't like going to the cinema. 4 He likes taking photographs. 5 I hate working in the evenings.	-	Ex	ample: (read	ing) Llike	reading	very muc	h.		
3 (visiting museums) 4 (lying on the beach in the sun) 5 (shopping)  56.4 Now you have to write sentences like those in section d.  Example: It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like)  Lwould like to have gone to the wedding.  1 It's a pity I didn't meet Ann. (love) I would love 2 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) I 3 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not/like) 4 It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer) 5 It's a pity I didn't see the film. (like)  KEY   56.1 1 I like wearing a hat. / like to wear a hat. 2 She enjoys watching television. 3 I don't like going to the cinema. 4 He likes taking photographs. 5 I hate working in the evenings.		1							
3 (visiting museums) 4 (lying on the beach in the sun) 5 (shopping)  56.4 Now you have to write sentences like those in section d.  Example: It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like)  Lwould like to have gone to the wedding.  1 It's a pity I didn't meet Ann. (love) I would love 2 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) I 3 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not/like) 4 It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer) 5 It's a pity I didn't see the film. (like)  KEY   56.1 1 I like wearing a hat. / like to wear a hat. 2 She enjoys watching television. 3 I don't like going to the cinema. 4 He likes taking photographs. 5 I hate working in the evenings.	-	2	(learning la	nguages	i)			4	
56.4 Now you have to write sentences like those in section d.  Example: It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like)  Lwould like to have gone to the wedding.  1 It's a pity I didn't meet Ann. (love) I would love  2 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) I  3 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not/like)  4 It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer)  5 It's a pity I didn't see the film. (like)  KEY  56.1 1 I like wearing a hat. / like to wear a hat.  2 She enjoys watching television.  3 I don't like going to the cinema. *  4 He likes taking photographs. *  5 I hate working in the evenings.		3	(visiting mu	seums)			Nı		
56.4 Now you have to write sentences like those in section d.  Example: It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like)  Lwould like to have gone to the wedding.  1 It's a pity I didn't meet Ann. (love) I would love  2 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) I  3 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not/like)  4 It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer)  5 It's a pity I didn't see the film. (like)  KEY  56.1 1 I like wearing a hat. / like to wear a hat.  2 She enjoys watching television.  3 I don't like going to the cinema. *  4 He likes taking photographs. *  5 I hate working in the evenings.		4	(lying on the	e beach	in the su	n)	«n. «n. m. n. n. n		
Example: It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like)  Lwould like to have gone to the wedding.  1 It's a pity I didn't meet Ann. (love) I would love  2 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) I  3 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not/like)  4 It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer)  5 It's a pity I didn't see the film. (like)  KEY  56.1 1 I like wearing a hat. / like to wear a hat.  2 She enjoys watching television.  3 I don't like going to the cinema. *  4 He likes taking photographs. *  5 I hate working in the evenings.		5							
<ul> <li>2 She enjoys watching television.</li> <li>3 I don't like going to the cinema. *</li> <li>4 He likes taking photographs. *</li> <li>5 I hate working in the evenings.</li> </ul>		1 2 3 4 5	It's Lwc It's a pity It's I'm glad I d I'm glad I w It's a pity It's a pity It's	a pity I o puid like didn't me idn't lose rasn't alc couldn't	to have one to have one to have one to have one to the total one to the total one to the total one total o	o to the woone to the cone to the cone to the cone cone cone cone cone cone cone con	edding. (like wedding. buld love I	(e)	
<ul> <li>2 She enjoys watching television.</li> <li>3 I don't like going to the cinema. *</li> <li>4 He likes taking photographs. *</li> <li>5 I hate working in the evenings.</li> </ul>	_						•		
<ul> <li>2 She enjoys watching television.</li> <li>3 I don't like going to the cinema. *</li> <li>4 He likes taking photographs. *</li> <li>5 I hate working in the evenings.</li> </ul>		56	i.1 11like w	earing a	hat. / like	to wear	a hat.		
3 I don't like going to the cinema. * 4 He likes taking photographs. * 5 I hate working in the evenings.									
4 He likes taking photographs. * 5 I hate working in the evenings.									
5 I hate working in the evenings.				_	-			•	
		*					e" are also	nossible " -in	o" is more usual in

- 56.2 1 travelling
  - 2 cooking / to cook... washing

these sentences because the meaning is "enjoy" (see section b).

- 3 telling
- 4 to live

- 5 driving (see section b)
- 6. to get (see section b)
- 7 listening
- 8 to come
- 9 to learn
- 56.3 If possible check your sentences with someone who speaks English.
  - Here are some example answers?
  - 1 I don't like playing cards very much.
  - 2 I enjoy learning languages.
  - 3 I can't stand visiting museums.
  - 4 I love lying on the beach in the sun. (or I love to lie...)
  - 5 I hate shopping.
- 56.4 1 I would love to have met Ann.
  - 2 I would hate to have lost my watch.
  - 3 I wouldn't like to have been alone.
  - 4 I would prefer to have travelled by train.
  - 5 I would like to have seen the film.

In this exercise it is also possible to use another structure:

- 1 I would have loved to meet Ann.
- 2 I would have hated to lose my watch.
- 3 I wouldn't have liked to be alone.
- 4 I would have preferred to travel by train.
- 5 I would have liked to see the film.

# BÀI 57: INFINITIVE or -ING (Động từ nguyên mẫu hay -ING?) (2) với begin, start, intend, continue, remember, try

begin start intend continue (bắt đầu) (bắt đầu) (dự định) (tiếp tục)

Các động từ trên thường có thể được theo sau bởi -ing hoặc **to-infinitive**. Vì vậy bạn có thể nói:

- The baby began crying or: The baby began to cry. (Đứa trẻ bắt đầu khóc).
- It has started raining, or: It has started to rain. (Tròi đã bắt đầu mưa).
- John intends buying a house. or: John intends to buy a-house.
   (John định mua một căn nhà).
- He continued working after his illness, or: He continued to work after his illness. (Anh ta đã tiếp tục làm việc sau khi bị bệnh).

## b) Remember to do và remember doing:

Remember to do: ban nhớ sẽ làm điểu gì *trước khi* làm nó. "Remember to do something" mang nghĩa trái ngược với "forget to do something" (quên làm điều gì).

- I remembered to lock the door before I left but I forgot to shut the windows. (= 1 remembered to lock the door and then I locked it)
  (Tôi đã nhớ khóa cửa trước khi ra khỏi nhà nhưng tôi lại quên đóng các cánh cửa số) (= Tôi đã nhớ phải khóa cửa và sau đó tôi đã khóa).
- Please remember to post the letter. (= don't forget to post il).
   (Làm ơn nhớ bỏ thư đấy). (= đứng quên bỏ thư).

Remember doing: bạn nhớ lại là đã làm điểu gì. "I remember doing something" = tôi đã làm điểu gì đó và bây giờ tội vẫn còn nhớ điều đó

- I clearly remember locking the door before I left. (= I locked it and now I clearly remember this).
  - (Tôi nhớ rõ ràng là đã khóa cửa trước khi tôi đi). (= tôi đã khóa cửa và bây giờ tôi vẫn còn nhờ rõ điều đó).
- He could remember driving along the road just before the accident happened but he couldn't remember the accident itself.
  (Anh ta van còn nhỏ là đã lài xe dọc theo con đường đó ngay trước lúc tại nạn xảy ra, nhưng anh ta lại không thể nhỏ được chính tại nạn đó).

# c) Try to do và try doing:

Try to do = cổ gắng làm, nỗ lực làm:

- I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open but I couldn't.
   (Tôi rất mệt. Tôi đã cố giữ cho đôi mắt đừng nhắm lại nhưng không thể được).
- Please try to be quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.
   (Làm ơn cố gắng giữ yên lặng khi bạn về nhà. Lúc đó mọi người sẽ đang ngủ).

## Try doing

Try còn có nghĩa "làm điều gì để kiểm tra hay thủ nghiệm"

- Try some of this juice perhaps you'll like it. (= drink some of it to see if you like it)
   (Thử một ft nước trái cây này xem có lễ bạn sẽ thích đấy). (= uống một ft để xem bạn có thích nó không).
- We tried every hotel in the town but they were all full. (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room).
  - (Chúng tôi đã thử đến từng khách sạn trong thị xã nhưng tất cả đều hết chỗ). (= chúng tôi đến từng khách sạn để xem chúng còn phòng trống hay không).

Nếu try (với nghĩa này) được theo sau bởi một động từ, chúng ta dùng try + -ing:

- "I can't find anywhere to live". "Why don't you try putting an advertisement in the newspaper?" (= do this to see if it helps you to find a place to live). ("Tôi không thể tìm được nơi nào để ở cả". "Tại sao bạn không thủ đặng quảng cáo trên báo xem?") (= Hãy làm điều này để xem nó có giúp bạn tìm được một chỗ ở không?)
- l've got a terrible headache. I tried taking an aspirin but it dign't help. (= I took an aspirin to see if it would stop my headache).
  (Tôi nhức đầu kinh khủng. Tôi đã thủ uống một viên aspirin nhưng chẳng đỡ tí nào cầ). (= Tôi đã uống một viên aspirin để xem nó có làm tôi hết nhức đầu hay không).

# **UNIT 57: Exercises**

	11 07. Exercises	_	
57.1 /	Here is some information about Tom when I	he wa	s a child.
1	He was in hospital when he was four.	4	He cried on his first day at school.
2			
3			He was bitten by a dog.
He c	an still remember 1,2 and 4. But he car	n't rer	nember 3,5 and 6. Make sentence:
	ning He can remember or He can't reme		
1	He can remember being in hospital.	. 4.	
2	7 7 7 .	` 3.	······································
5			***************************************
•	ion with try. ixample: I can't find anywhere to live. (put Have you tried putting an adverti		
1	My electric shaver is not working. (change Have you tried	ge the	batteries)
2	I can't contact Fred. He's not at home. (p	hone	him at work)
3	I'm having difficulty sleeping at night. (ta Have		
4	The television picture isn't very good. (m		

57.3 In this exercise you have to put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to + infinitive. ... (Sometimes either form is possible). Examples: Please remember to post (post) this letter. John intends to buy (or buying) (buy) a house. A: You lent me some money a few months ago. B; Did I? That's strange. I don't remember ..... (lend) you any money. 2 We tried ...... (put) the fire out but we were unsuccessful. We had to call the fire-brigade. 3 When you see Tom, remember ...... (give) him my regards, won't you? 4 What do you intend ...... (do) about this problem? 5 Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember ........ (leave) it by the window and now it has gone. > 7 Sue needed some money. She tried ....................... (ask) Gerry but he couldn't help her. 8 He tried ...... (reach) the shelf but he wasn't tall enough. 9 "Did you remember ...... (phone) Ann?" "Oh no, I completely forgot". 10. I asked them to be quite but they continued ................. (make) a lot of noise. **KEY** 2 He can remember going to Paris when he was eight. 57.1 3 He can't remember falling into the river. 4 He can remember crying on his first day at school. 5 He can't remember saying he wanted to be a doctor. (or He can't remember wanting to be a doctor). 6 He can't remember being bitten by a dog. 57.2 1 Have you tried changing the batteries? 2 Have you tried phoning him at work? 3 Have you tried taking sleeping tablets? (or Have you tried sleeping tablets?) 4 Have you tried moving the aerial? 57.3 lending 1 2 to put 3 to give to do (or doing) leaving to laugh (or laughing)

7

askina 8 to reach to phone 10 to make (or making)

# BÀI 58: INFINITIVE or -ING? (Động từ nguyên mẫu hay -ING?) (3) với be afraid, need, help

# a) Be afraid to do và be afraid or -ing:

I am afraid to do something (tôi ngại/sợ phải làm điều gì) = Tôi không muốn làm điều gì đó bởi vì điều đó nguy hiểm hoặc kết quả có thể không được tốt đẹp:

The streets in this city are not safe at night. Many people are afraid to go out alone. (= they don't want to go out alone because it is dangerous). (Các đường phố trong thành phố này không được an toàn vào ban đêm. Nhiều người sợ ra ngoài một mình). (= họ không muốn ra ngoài một mình bởi vì điều đó

nguy hiểm).

She was afraid to tell her parents that she had broken the neighbour's window (= She didn't want to tell her parents because she know they would be angry). (Cô ấy sợ phải nói cho cha mẹ mình biết rằng cô ấy đã làm vỡ của sổ của nhà thàng xóm). (= Cô ấy không muốn nói chỗ cha mẹ biết vì cô ấy hiểu rằng họ sẽ nổi giân).

i am afraid of something happening (tôi e/sợ điều gì đó sẽ xảy ra) ⇒ có khả năng một điều gì đó không hay sẽ xảy ra.

 We walked along the path very carefully because it was icy and we were afraid of falling. (not \*afraid to fall\*)
 (Chúng tôi đi dọc theo lối đi đó rất thân trong vì đường đã đóng bằng và chúng tôi

sơ bị ngã).

1 don't like dogs. I'm/always afraid of being bitten. (not "afraid to be bitten")

(Tôi không thích chó. Tôi luôn luôn sơ bi cấn).

Vì vậy, bạn ngại phải làm điều gì (afraid to do something) vì bạn sợ sẽ có cái gì đó xảy ra (afraid of something happening) như là hậu quả tất yếu. Hãy so sánh:

The boys were afraid to play football in the garden because they were afraid of breaking a window.

(Các cậu bé ngại chơi bóng trong vườn bởi vì chúng sợ có thể làm vỡ kính của sổ).

I was afraid to stay in the sun because I was afraid of getting burnt.
 (Tôi sợ ở ngoài năng vì tôi sợ bị phỏng da).

# b) Need to do và need + -ing:

I need to do something = tôi cấn phải làm điều gì đó.

- I need to take more exercise. (Tôi cần phải tập thể dục nhiều hơn).
- He needs to work harder: (Anh cấn phải làm việc chặm chỉ hơn).
- I don't need to come to the meeting, do I?
   (Tôi không cần phải đến dự buổi họp, phải không?)

Need + -Ing: need to be done (cần được làm): mang ý nghĩa bị động (passive)

The batteries in this radio need changing. (= need to be changed)
 (Pîn trong radio này cần phải được thay).

- This jacket is rather dirty. It needs cleaning. (= needs to be cleaned).
   (Cái ảo vét này khả bắn: Nó cắn được giặt).
- Do you think the grass needs cutting? (= needs to be cut)
  (Anh có nghĩ là cổ cần được cắt không?)

## c) Help:

Help được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu có hoặc không có to:

- Everybody helped (to) clean up after the party.
   (Moi người phụ giúp dọn dep sau bữa tiệc).
- Can somebody help me (to) move this table?
   (Có ai đó giúp tôi dời cái bàn này đi được không?)

Nhưng ngoài ra còn có một thành ngữ: can't help doing. "I can't help doing something" = tôi không thể không làm điều gì đó, tôi không thể tránh khỏi việc phải làm điều gì đó.

- I tried to be serious but I couldn't help laughing.
  (Tôi đã cố gắng nghiệm túc nhưng tôi không thể nào nhịn cười được).
- I'm sorry I broke the glass. Someone pushed me and I couldn't help dropping it.
   (Tôi xin lỗi vì đã làm vở cái ly. Ai đó đã đẩy tôi và tôi không thể giữ cái ly lại được).
- He is stupid. It's not his fault. He can't help being stupid.
   (Nó ngu đần nhưng đó khổng phải là lỗi của nó. Nó không thể thoát khỏi tính cách đó được).

# UNIT 58: Exercises

58.1 In this exercise you have to make sentences with atraid. Read each situation and then use the words in brackets to write your sentence.
Examples: The streets are unsafe at night.

(I / afraid / go out / alone) I'm afraid to go out alone. We walked very carefully along the icy path. (we / afraid / fall) We were afraid of falling.

	·
1	I don't usually carry my passport with me.
	(I / afraid / lose / it)
2	The sea was very rough
	(we / afraid / go / swimming)
3	We rushed to the station.
	(we / afraid / miss / our train)
4	I didn't tell Tom that I thought he had behaved foolishly.
	(I / afraid / hurt / his feelings)
5	In the middle of the film there was a particularly horrifying scene.
	(we / afraid / look)
6	The glasses were very full, so Ann carried them very carefully.
	(she / afraid / spill / the drinks)
7	I didn't like the look of the food on my plate.
	a) (I / afraid / eat / it)
	b) (I / afraid / make / myself ill)

58.2	Nou	you have to make sentences with nee	d-in	g. Use the verb in brackets.
	Exam	nple: This coat is rather dirty. (clean) It.	nee	ds.cleaning.
		his room hasn't been painted for years		
2	2 Y	our hair is too long. (cut) It	. (p:	2007 16
3	3 T	hose shoes are rather dirty. (polish) Ti	ev.	
. 4	1 T	his plant hasn't been watered for some	time	e. (water)
5	i T	hose screws are loose. (tighten)		
. 6	Y	our jeans are too long. (take up)		
58.3	Put	the verb into the correct form, -ing or to	0 + <i>i</i>	infinitive.
	Exam	ples: If you want to pass your exams,	vou	need to study (study) more
		I'm sorry I broke the glass. I cou	ldn't	help dropping (drop) it.
. 1	l D	oes this job need(c	io) n	iow or caπ 1-leave it until later?
2	? <i>!\</i>	e got an extra bed, so when you co	me	to stay, you won't need
	(b	ring) your sleeping bag.		•
3	3 To	om helped his mother (get) th	e dii	nner ready.
4	W	hen he told me that everybody had	mad	de fun of him, I couldn't help
_	. (M	eel) sorry for him.		
5	11	nose shirts need (iron)	out y	ou don't need(do) it now
6	) M	e looks so funny. When I see him, I ca	n't h	elp (smile).
7	11	ne fine weather helped	(ma	ike) it a very enjoyable holiday.
				•
KE	Υ			
				· ·
58. 1	1	I'm afraid of losing it.		·
	2	We were afraid to go swimming.		
	3	We were afraid of missing our train.		
	4	I was afraid of hurting his feetings.		
	5	We were afraid to look.		
	6	She was afraid of spilling the drinks.		
	7	a) I was afraid to eat it.		
		b) I was afraid of making myself ill.		· ·
8.2	1	It needs painting. 58.3	3 1	doing (or to be done)
	2		2	
	3	They need polishing.	3	get (or to get)
	4		4	feeling
	5	They need tightening.	5	ironing (or to be ironed) to do
	6	They need taking up.	6	smiling
	In th	nis exercise the passive would	7	make (or to make)
	also	be possible: "It needs to be painted";		
	"The	evineed to be tightened" etc.		

# BÀI 59: PREPOSITON + -ING (Giới từ + -ing)

 Khi một động từ theo sau một giới từ (In, at, with, about, v.v...), động từ đó phải tận cùng bằng -ing. Hãy xem các ví dụ sau:

8.	l bought a new bicycle (Tôi đã mua một chiếc			away on holiday.
7.	John went to work (John đi làm m		*	111.
6.	This knife is only (Con dao này c	for chỉ dùng cất bá	cutting inh mì thôi).	bread.
5.	What are the advantages (Có một chiếc xe họ	of Ji sẽ mang lại l	having những lợi ích p	a car? i?)
4.	The children are excited (Mấy đứa trẻ rất h		goi <b>ng</b> ậc đi nghỉ mát)	on holiday.
3.	l'm fed up (Tôi chán n	with gấy chuyện họ	studying. oc hành).	
2.		at bại ngữ không	learning giỏi lầm).	languages.
1.	Are you interested (Anh có thích làm	l <b>n</b> n việc cho chúi	worki <b>ng</b> ng tôi không?)	for us?

- b) Bạn có thể dùng -ing với before và after.
  - Before going out I phoned Ann.
     (Trước khi đi ra ngoài tôi đã gọi điện cho Ann).

Bạn có thể nói: "Before! went out!..." (Trước khi tôi ra ngoài...)

- What did you do after leaving school?
   (Ban đã làm gì sau khí ra trường?)
   Bạn cũng có thể nói "... after you left school?" (... sau khí ban ra trưởng).
- c) Bạn có thể dùng by + -ing để nói một việc nào đó đã xảy ra như thế nào.
  - They got into the house by breaking a kitchen window and climbing in.
     (Chúng đã đột nhập vào nhà bằng cách đập vỡ một của sổ nhà bếp và leo vào).
- d) Bạn có thể dùng -ing sau without (không có, mà không):
  - Tom let without finishing his dinner.
     (Tom ra di mà chưa ăn tối xong).
  - She ran five miles without stopping.
     (Cô ấy chạy nằm dặm mà không ngững chỗ nào).
  - He climbed through the window without anybody seeing him.
     (or "... without being seen.")
     (Hån leo qua cửa sổ mà không ai thấy).

- She needs to work without people disturbing her. (or "... without being disturbed").
   (Cô ta cần làm việc mà không bị ai quấy rấy).
- It's nice to go on holiday without having to worry about money.
   (Thật là hay nếu đi nghỉ mà không phải lo láng về chuyện tiền bạc).
- e) To thường để chỉ động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitive). Thí dụ:
  - They decided to go out. (Ho quyết định đi chơi).
  - I want to play tennis. (Tôi muốn chơi quân vợt).

Nhưng to cũng còn là giới từ (preposition). Thí dụ:

- Tom went to London. (Tom đã đi Luân Đôn).
- He gave the book to Ann. (Anh ta dua quyển sách cho Ann).
- I prefer cities to the countryside. (Tôi thích thành thị hơn nông thôn).
- I'm looking forward to the week-end. (Tôi đang trông đợi kỳ nghỉ cuối tuần).

Nếu có động từ đi sau giới từ, động từ phải ở hình thức -ing (xem lại phần a). Vì thế, nếu to là giới từ và có động từ theo sau, bạn phải dùng to + -ing. Thí dụ:

- I prefer cycling to driving. (not "to drive") (Tôi thích đạp xe hơn lái xe hơi).
- I'm looking forward to seeing Ann again. (not "to see") .
   (Tôi đang trông được gặp lại Ann).

Vế be / get used to -ing, xem bài 62.

# **UNIT 59: Exercises**

59.1	this exercise you have to read a sentence and then write a second sentence with the meaning. Each time begin in the way shown.
E	ample: I phoned Ann and then I went out. After phoning Ann I went out.
. 1	Tom went to bed but first he had a hot drink. Before
2	The plane took off and soon afterwards it crashed.  Soon after
. 3	We didn't eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.  Instead of
- 4	You put people's lives in danger if you drive dangerously. You put people's lives in danger by
- 5	He hurt his leg but he managed to win the race. In spite of
6	Bill is a very good cook. Bill is very good at
7	I don't intend to lend her any money. I have no intention of
8	George took more exercise and so lost weight.  By
9	He was angry with me because I was late. He was angry with me for.
1	Tom thinks that doing nothing is better than working.

59.3 This time read each situation and write a sentence with look forward to.

Examples: You are going on holiday next week. How do you feel about this?

I'm looking forward to going on holiday.

Sue is doing an examination next week. She's not very happy about it. How does she feel about it? She is not looking forward to doing the examination.

- 1 A good friend is coming to visit you soon, so you will see him/her again. How do you feel about this? I'm
- 2 You are going to the dentist. You don't like visits to the dentist.

  How do you feel about it?
- 3 Carol is a schoolgirf. She hates school but she is leaving school next summer. How does she feel about this? She

# **KEY**

- 59.1 1 Before going to bed Tom had a hot drink, (or Before he went...)
  - 2 Soon after taking off the plane crashed. (or Soon after it took.../ Soon after it had taken...)
  - 3 Instead of eating at home we went to a restaurant.
  - 4 You put people's lives in danger by driving dangerously.
  - 5 In spite of hurting his leg, he managed to win the race.
  - 6 Bill is very good at cooking.
  - 7 I have no intention of lending her any money.
  - 8 By taking more exercise George lost weight.
  - 9 He was angry with me for being late.
  - 10 Tom prefers doing nothing to working.
- 59.2 1 He translated the article without using a dictionary.
  - 2 Don't cross the road without looking right and left (first).
  - 3 She got married without anybody knowing about it.
- 59.3 1 I'm looking forward to seeing him/her again. (or I'm looking forward to him/his \*/her coming).
  - 2 I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist.
  - 3 She is looking forward to leaving school.
  - You can say "I'm looking forward to his ... -ing ..." or "I'm looking forward to him ... -ing ..."

# BÀI 60: VERB + PREPOSITION + -ING (Động từ + giới từ + -ing)

- a) Nhiều động từ có cấu trúc: động từ (V) + giới từ (P) + túc từ (object). Thí dụ như talk about:
  - We talked about the problem. (the problem là một túc từ)
     (Chúng tối đã nói về vấn để đó),

Nếu túc từ là một động từ khác, động từ đó phải tận cùng bằng -ing:

We talked about going to America. (V + P + -lng)
 (Chúng tôi đã nói về chuyện đi Mỹ).

Sau đây là vài động từ khác dùng theo cấu trúc V + P + -Ing:

succeed in (thành công trong việc...)

Has Tom succeed in finding a job yet?
 (Tom đã thành công khi tìm một việc làm chưa?)

feel like (cảm thấy thích / muốn)

I don't feel like going out tonight.
 (Tôi không muốn đi chơi tối nay).

think about / of (nghī vē)

Are you thinking of / about buying a house?
 (Ban dang nghĩ đến việc mua một căn nhà phải không?)

dream of (mơ ước về)

I've always dreamed of being rich.
 (Tôi luôn mơ ước được giàu có).

approve / disapprove of (tán thành / không tán thành)

She doesn't approve of gambling.
 (Cô ta không tán thành chuyện đánh bạc).

look forward to (mong đợi)

I'm looking forward to meeting her.
 (Tôi đang mong đợi được gặp cô ấy).

insist on (kháng kháng, cố nài)

He insisted on buying me a drink.
 (Anh ta khăng khăng đôi mua cho tôi một ly rượu).

decide against (quyết định chống lại)

We decided against moving to London.
 (Chúng tôi đã quyết định chống lại việc dời đến Luân Đôn).

apologise for (xin lỗi về)

He apologised for keeping me waiting.
 (Anh ta xin lỗi vì đã bắt tôi chở đợi).

Chúng ta nói "apologise to someone for something" (xin lỗi ai về việc gi):

<sup>\* /</sup> feel like doing = tôi thích làm, tôi thấy hứng thủ làm

- He apologised to me for keeping me waiting. (không nói "he apologised me")
- (Anh ấy xin lỗi tôi vì đã bắt tôi chờ).

Với vài động từ ở trên, bạn cũng có thể dùng cấu trúc: V + P + someone + -ing.

#### Thí du:

- We are all looking forward to Peter coming home.
   (Tất cả chúng tôi đều đang mong đợi Peter trở về nhà).
- She doesn't approve of her son staying out late at night.
   (Cô ta không tán thành việc con trai cô ta đi chơi quá khuya).
- They insisted on me (hoặc my) staying with them. (Ho nài nī tôi ở lại với họ). (Xem thêm bài 35c.)
- b) Những động từ sau đây có cấu trúc: V + object + P + -ing:

#### accuse (tổ cáo)

They accused me of telling lies.
 (Ho tố cáo tôi đã nói láo).

## suspect (nghi ngở)

Did they suspect the man of being a spy?
 (Họ có nghi ngở người đàn ông đó là điệp viên không?)

# congratulate (chúc mừng)

I congratulated Ann on passing the exam.
 (Tôi chúc mừng Ann về việc cô ấy đã thi đậu).

## prevent (ngăn cản)

What prevented him from coming to the wedding?
 (Diều gi đã ngăn cản anh ta đến dự lễ cưởi?)

# stop (ngặn cản)

We stopped everyone from leaving the building.
 (Chúng tôi ngắn cần không cho mọi người rồi tòa nhà).

#### thank (cám ơn)

I thanked her for being so helpful.
 (Tôi cảm ơn bà ta vì đã sốt sắng giúp tôi).

#### forgive (tha thứ)

Please forgive me for not writing to you.
 (Xin tha thứ cho tôi vì đã không viết thư cho bạn).

#### warn (khuyến cáo. lưu ý)

They warned us against buying the car.
 (Ho lưu ý chúng tôi không nên mua chiếc xe hơi đó).

# Sau stop, bạn có thể bỏ giới từ from đi. Vì vậy bạn có thể nói:

We stopped everyone (from) leaving the building.
 (Chúng tối ngăn cản không cho mọi người rời khỏi tòa nhà).

# Một vài động từ ở trên thường được dùng ở dạng passive (bị động):

I was accused of telling lies.
 (Tôi bị tổ cáo là đã nói láo).

- Was the man suspected of being a spy?
   (Người đàn ông đó có bị nghi ngô là một điệp viên không?)
- We were warned against buying it. (Chúng tối được khuyển cáo không nên mua thứ đó).

# **UNIT 60: Exercises**

60.1	In this exercise you have to write the correct preposition and to put the verb into the correct form. Use the verb in brackets at the end of each sentence.
	Example: Jack insisted on going out by himself. (go)
1	After a long time we eventually succeeded a flat. (find)
. 2	I've been thinkingfor a new job. (look)
. 3	His parents didn't approve him out so late. (stay)
4	I wonder what prevented him to the party. (come)
5	I'm getting hungry. I'm looking forward dinner. (have)
6	I don't feel today. (study)
7	Forgive me you but I must ask you a question. (interrupt)
8	The arrested man was suspectedinto a house. (break)
9	Have you ever thought married? (get)
	I've always dreamed on a small island in the Pacific. (live)
	The cold water didn't stop her a swim. (have)
	Have you ever been accuseda crime? (commit)
	She apologised
	The have decided a new car. (buy)
60.2	Now you have to change direct speech into reported speech. Begin each of your
	sentences in the way shown.
	Example: "It was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much". (George said to you) George thanked me for helping him.
1	"I'll drive you to the station. I insist". (Tom said to Ann) Tom insisted
2	"I hear you passed your examinations. Congratulations!" (Jim said to you) Jim congratulated
. 3	"It was nice of you to visit me. Thank you" (Mrs. Dent said to Sue) Mrs. Dent thanked
4	"Don't stay at the hotel near the airport". (I said to Jack) I warned
5	"I'm sorry I didn't phone you earlier". (Margaret said to you) Margaret apologised
6	"You didn't pay attention to what I said". (The teacher said to the boy) The teacher

CEY  io.1 1 in finding 2 of / about looking 3 of him staying 4 from coming 5 to having 6 like studying 7 for interrupting 8 of breaking 9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	
2 of / about looking 3 of him staying 4 from coming 5 to having 6 like studying 7 for interrupting 8 of breaking 9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	•
2 of / about looking 3 of him staying 4 from coming 5 to having 6 like studying 7 for interrupting 8 of breaking 9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	•
from coming to having like studying for interrupting for preaking of breaking of / about getting for fiving from) having for committing for being	
5 to having 6 like studying 7 for interrupting 8 of breaking 9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	
6 like studying 7 for interrupting 8 of breaking 9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	•
7 for interrupting 8 of breaking 9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	*
8 of breaking 9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	
9 of / about getting 10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	
10 of living 11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	
11 (from) having 12 of committing 13 for being	
12 of committing 13 for being	
13 for being	*
14 against buying (or decided not to buy)	
50.2 1 Tom insisted on driving Ann to the station.	
2 Jim congratulated me on passing my examination:	<b>S</b> .
3 Mrs. Dent thanked Sue for visiting her.	
4 I warned Jack against staying at the hotel near th "I warned Jack not to stay" -see Unit 55b.)	e airport. (You can also sa
5 Margaret apologised (to me) for not phoning (me)	earlier.
6 The teacher accused the boy of not paying attentions and.	on to what he/she (had)
60.3 If possible check your sentences with someone who spe- example answers:	aks English. Here are some
This evening I feel like going to the cinema.	•
2 I'm looking forward to seeing Ann next week.	÷

I'm thinking of buying a new camera.
I would never dream of leaving without saying goodbye.

# BÀI 61: EXPRESSIONS + -ING (Thành ngữ + -ing)

Khi các thành ngữ này được theo sau bởi rhột động từ, động từ đó phải tận cùng bằng ing...

- \* It's no use/it's no good... (thát vô ích):
- It's no use worrying about it. There's nothing you can do.
   (Thật vô ích khi lo lắng về điều đó. Bạn không làm được gì đầu).
- It's no good trying to persuade me. You won't succeed.
   (Cổ thuyết phục tôi cũng vô ích thôi. Bạn sẽ không thành công đầu).
- \* There's no point in... (chẳng ích lợi gì, vô ích)
- There's no point in buying a car if you don't want to drive it. (Néu ban không muốn lái xe thì mua xe cũng vô ích thôi).
- There was no point in waiting, so we went.
   (Chò đợi cũng chẳng ích lợi gì, vì thế chúng tôi đã bỏ đi).
- \* it's (not) worth... (thật (không) đẳng)
- My house is only a short walk from here. It's not worth taking a taxi.
   (Nhà tôi chỉ cách đây mấy bước thôi. Chẳng đáng phải đi taxi).
- It's was so late when we got home, it wasn't worth going to bed.
   (Khi chúng tôi về nhà thì đã quá khuya rối, chẳng đáng phải đi ngủ nữa).

Ban có thể nói: "a book is worth reading / a film is worth seeing, v.v...":

- Do you think this book is worth reading?
   (Ban có cho rằng quyển sách này đáng đọc không?)
- You should go and see the film. It's really worth seeing.
   (Ben nên di xem bộ phim đó. Nó thật sự đáng xem đấy).
- \* (Have) difficulty... (gặp khó khăn...)
- l had difficulty finding a place to live. (Τόι đã gặp khó khăn trong việc tìm một nơi để δ).
- Did you have any difficulty getting a visa?
   (Ban có khố khắn gì khi xin chiếu khán không?)
- People often have great difficulty reading my writing.
   (Người ta thượng cảm thấy khó khán khi đọc chữ viết của tôi).

Nên nhố trong thành ngữ trên, chúng ta phải nói là "difficulty", không nói "difficulties".

I'm sure you'll have no difficulty passing the examination.
 (Tôi tin chắc rằng bạn sẽ vượt qua kỳ thị không khó khăn gì).

Ban cũng có thể nói "(have) difficulty in -ing";

He's shy. He has difficulty in talking to people he doesn't know well.
 (Anh ta hay ngượng ngùng. Anh ta thường gặp khó khăn khi nói chuyện với những người mà anh ta không biết rõ).

- \* A waste of money/time... (tốn tiến/mất th) giờ... vô ích)
- It's a waste of time reading that book. It's rubbish.

  (Đọc quyển sách đó mất thì giờ vô ích. Nó thật nhằm nhí).
- It's a waste of money buying things you don't need.
   (Mua sắm những thứ bạn không cắn thì thật là phí tiến).
- \* Spend/waste (time)... (dành, bỏ ra/lãng phí (thời gian)):
- I spent hours trying to repair the clock.
   (Tôi đã bỏ ra mấy giờ liên cố sửa cái đồng hồ này).
- I waste a lot of time day dreaming.
   (Tôi thường lãng phí thời gian để mơ mộng).
- \* Go -ing

Chúng ta dùng gọ -ing cho một số các hoạt động (đặc biệt là thể thao):

go shopping (đi mua sắm) go swimming (đi bdi) go skiing (đi trượt tuyết) go fishing (đi cầu cá) go climbing : (đi leo núi) go sailing (di bơi thuyến) go riding (cười ngựa) go sight seeing (đi ngắm cảnh)

- How often do you go swimming?
   (Ban di bdi có thường không?)
- I'm going skiing next year.
  (Năm tới tôi sẽ đi trượt tuyết).
- I have to go shopping this morning. (Sáng nay tôi phải đi mua sắm).
- I've never been sailing.
   (Tôi chưa bao giờ đi bơi thuyến).

Về "l've been / l've gone", xem bài 13d.

# **UNIT 61: Exercises**

61.1 In this exercise you have to join two sentences to make one sentence.

Examples: Don't worry about it. It's no use. It's no use worrying about it.

Don't get a taxi. It's not worth it. It's not worth getting a taxi.

1	Don't try to escape. It's no use. It's no use
2	Don't smoke. It's a waste of money. It's a waste
3	Don't ask Tom to help you. It's no good. It's no good
	Don't hurry. It's not worth it. It's not worth
5	Don't study if you're feeling tired. There's no pointThere's no point
6	Don't read newspapers. It's a waste of time. It's a
7	Don't get angry. It's not worth it. It's not
8	Don't work if you don't need the money. There's no pointThere's no

61.2 E	Now y	ou have to make sentences with worth. es: I'd read this book if I were you. This book is worth reading. I wouldn't read this book if I were you. This book isn't worth reading.
1 2 3 4	l wo	risit the museum if-I were you. The museum
61.3 <i>E</i>	Read i xemple	these sentences and each time write a new sentence using difficulty.  I found a place to live but it was difficult.  I had difficulty finding a place to live.
1 2 3 4	He f It wo You I find	n finds it difficult to meet people. Tom has
61.4	the	nplete these sentences with one of the following expressions. Put the verb into correct form.
1 2 3 4 5	Thei it wa Mar	re's plenty of snow in the mountains so we'll be able to
KE	Υ	
51.1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	It's no use trying to escape. It's a waste of money smoking. It's no good asking Tom to help you. It's not worth hurrying. There's no point in studying if you're feeling tired. It's a waste of time reading newspapers. It's not worth getting angry. There's no point in working if you don't need the money.
51.2	1 2 3 4	The museum is worth visiting. Those shoes aren't worth repairing. These old clothes aren't worth keeping. The plan is worth considering.

- 61.3 1 Tom has difficulty meeting people.
  - 2 He had no difficulty finding a job.
  - 3 You won't have any difficulty getting a ticket for the concert.
  - 4 I have difficulty understanding him when he speaks quickly.
- -61.4 1 go skilng
  - 2 went swimming
  - 3 goes riding
  - 4 go shopping

# BÀI 62: BE / GET USED TO (Quen với...)

a) Hảy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau:



Jane là người Mỹ nhưng có ta đã sống ở Anh được ba năm. Khi có ta lần đầu tiên lái xe ở Anh, có thấy rất khó khăn vì có phải lái xe bên trái thay vì bên phải. Việc lái xe bên trái thì lạ lẫm và khó khăn đối với có vi:

- She wasn't used to it.
   (Cô ta không quen với việc đó).
- She wasn't used to driving on the left. \*
   (Cô ta không quen lái xe bên trái).

Nhưng sau nhiều lần thực tập, việc lài xe bèn trái trở nên bớt lạ lẫm hơn.

She got used to driving on the left.
 (Cô ấy đã làm quen / bắt đầu quen với việc lái xe bên trái).

Và bây giờ ba năm lái xe bên trái không còn là vấn để đối với cô nữa.

She is used to driving on the left.
 (Cô ấy quen với việc lái xe bên trái).

I'm used to something = điều đó không còn mới hay lạ lẫm đối với tôi nữa:

- Frank lives alone. He doesn't mind this because he has lived alone for 15 years. So he is used to it. He is used to living alone. (Frank sống một minh. Anh ta không bận tâm về điều đó vì anh ta đã sống một minh 15 năm rối. Vì vậy anh ta đã quen với điều đó. Anh ta đã quen sống một minh).
- My new shoes felt a bit strange at first because I wasn't used to them.
   (Đôi giày mới của tôi lúc đầu hơi khó chịu vì tôi mang chưa quen chân).
- Our new shoes felt a bit strange at first because ! wasn't used to the noise but at the moment we find it very disturing.

(Căn hộ mới của tôi nằm trên một con đường rất nhận nhịp. Tôi mong rằng chúng tôi sẽ quen dẫn với tiếng ổn nhưng hiện thời chúng tôi cảm thấy rất khó chịu).

- Fred has a new job. He has to get up much earlier at 6.30. He finds this difficult at present because he isn't used to getting up so early.
  (Fred có việc làm mới. Anh ta phải thức dây sớm hơn nhiều vào lúc 6 giờ 30. Hiện thời anh ta cảm thấy khó khăn vì anh ta không quen dây sớm như vậy).
- b) Lưu ý rằng chúng ta nói "She is used to driving on the left". (không nói "She is used to drive"). To trong be/get used to là một preposition (giới từ), chứ không phải là một phần của infinitive (đổng từ nguyên mẫu) (xem thêm bài 59c). Vì vậy chúng ta nói:
  - Frank is used to living alone. (không nói "is used to live")
     (Frank đã quen sống một mình).
  - Jane had to get used to driving on the left. (không nói "get used to drive")
     (Jane đã phải làm quen với việc lái xe bên trái).

c) Đừng nhằm lẫn giữa I am used to doing (be/get used to) với I used to. Chúng hoàn toàn khác nhau về cấu trúc và ý nghĩa:

I am used to (doing) something = một việc gì đó không còn xa lạ đối với tôi nữa:

- I am used to driving on the left because I've lived in Britain a long time
   (Tôi quen lái xe bên trái vì tôi đã sống ở Anh lâu rồi).
- I am used to the weather in this country.
   (Tôi quen với thời tiết ở quốc gia này).

l used to do something chỉ có nghĩa là tôi thường xuyên làm một việc gì đó trong *quả* khứ (xem bài 25). Bạn không thể dùng cấu trúc này cho thì *hiện tại.* Cấu trúc này là "l used to do" (chứ "không phải" *l am used to doing"*).

These days I usually stay in bed until late. But when I had a job, I used to get up early.

(Những ngày gần đây tôi thường thức dậy rất muộn. Nhưng trước đây khi có việc làm, tôi thường thức dậy sởm).

# **UNIT 62: Exercises**

62.1 Read the:	se situations and write three sentences with used to as in the example.
	Jane is American. She came to Britain and found driving on the left difficult

- a) At first she wasn't used to driving on the left.
- b) But soon she got used to driving on the left.

	c) Now she has no problem. She is used to driving on the left.
1	Juan came to England from Spain. In Spain he always had dinner late in the evening. But in England dinner was at 6 o'clock. Juan found this strange at first.  a) At first he wasn't
	b) But after some time he got
	c) Now he finds it quite normal. He
2.	Diana is a nurse. She started working nights two years ago. At first she found it strange and didn't like it.
	a) At first she
	b) But after a while
	c) Now she doesn't mind it at all
62.2 /	low read these situations and write a sentence with be/get used to.
	cample: Frank lives alone. He doesn't mind this, He has always lived alone (he/used/live/alone) He is used to living alone.
1.	Ron sleeps on the floor. He doesn't mind this. He has always slept on the floor. (he/used/sleep/on the floor) He
2	Sue moved from a big house to a much smaller one. What did she have to get used to? (she had/used/live/in a smaller house) She had
. 3	Jack once went to the Middle East. It was too hot for him. (he/not/used/the heat)

- 4 Bill doesn't have any money. He doesn't find this unusual because he has never had any money. (he/used/have/no money)
- 5 Tom is going to live in your country. What will he have to get used to? (Write your own answer!) He'll have to
- 62.3 Now you have to put the verb into the correct form, -ing or infinitive (I am used to doing or I used to do). If necessary, study Unit 25 first.

Examples: Jane had to get used to driving on the left. (drive)

Bill used to be very fit, Now he's in terrible condition. (be)

- 1 When I was a child, I used to ...... swimming every day. (go) .
- 2 It took me a long time to get used to ............ glasses. (wear)
- 3 There used to ...... a cinema on this corner but it was knocked down. (be)
- 4 I'm the boss. I'm not used to ..... told what to do. (be)
- 5 You'll have to get used to ......less if you want to lose weight. (eat)
- 6 I used to ...... Ann but now she gets on my nerves. (like)
- 7 Ron got tired very quickly. He wasn't used to ...... so fast, (run)
- 8 Tom used to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of coffee when he was a student. (drink)

# **KEY**

- 62.1 1 a) At first he wasn't used to having dinner at 6 o'clock.
  - b) But after sometime he got used to having dinner at 6 o'clock.
  - c) He is used to having dinner at 6 o'clock.
  - 2 a) At first she wasn't used to working nights.
    - b) But after a while she got used to working nights.
    - c) She is used to working nights.
- 62.2 1 He is used to sleeping on the floor.
  - 2 She had to get used to living in a smaller house.
  - 3 He wasn't used to the heat. (There is no verb after "used to" in this example).
  - 4 He is used to having no money.
  - 5 (example answer) He'll have to get used to driving on the right.
- **62.3** 1 go
  - 2 wearing
  - 3 be
  - 4 being
  - 5 eating
  - 6 like
  - 7 running
  - 8 drink

# BÀI 63:

# - INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE (Động từ nguyên mẫu chỉ mục đích) - SO THAT (Mệnh đề với so that)

- a) Chúng ta dùng to Infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu có to) để nói về mục đích của hành động (= vì sao một người nào đó làm một việc gi đó):
  - I went out to post a letter. (= because I wanted to post a letter).
     (Tôi ra ngoài để bỏ một lá thư). (= v) tôi muốn bỏ một lá thư).
  - She telephoned me to invite me to a party.
    (Cô ấy đã gọi điện thoại cho tôi để mởi tôi đến dự tiệc).
  - We shouted to warn everyone of the danger.
     (Chúng tôi đã la lên để báo cho mọi người biết sự nguy hiểm).

Chúng tạ cũng dùng to - infinitive để nói về mục đích của việc nào đó, hoặc vì sao một người nào đó dùng/muốn/cần một thứ gì đó.

- This wall is to keep people out of the garden.
   (Bức tường này là dễ ngặn không cho người khác vào vườn).
- The minister has two bodyguards to protect him.
   (Ông bộ trưởng có hai cận vệ để bảo vệ ông ta).
- I need a bottle-opener to open this bottle.
   (Tôi cần một đổ khủi để mở nút cái chai này).

Ban cũng có thể dùng in order to + infinitive:

- We shouted in order to warn everyone of the danger. (Chúng tôi la lên để báo cho mọi người biết sự nguy hiểm). Đừng dùng for trong các câu này.
  - I'm going to Spain to learn Spanish.
     (Tôi sẽ đi Tây Ban Nha để học tiếng Tây Ban Nha).
- b) Chúng ta còn dùng to infinitive để nói về điều có thể được làm hoặc phải được làm:
  - It's usually difficult to find a place to park in the city centre. (= a place where you can park).
    - (Tìm được một chỗ để đậu xe trong trung tâm thành phố thường là rất khó khăn).
  - Have you got a lot of work to do this evening? (= work that you must do). (Tối nay ban có nhiều việc để làm không?)
  - Would you like something to eat?
    (Ban có muốn ăn một chút qì đó không?)
  - There were no chairs to sit on, so we all had to sit on the floor.
     (Không còn ghế để ngôi, vì vậy tất cả chúng tôi phải ngôi trên sàn nhà).
  - She is a bit lonely. She's got nobody to talk to.
  - (Cô ta hơi cô đơn. Cô ta không có ai để chuyện trò).

# Chúng ta cũng nói time / money / energy to do something:

- They gave me some money to buy some food.
   (Ho đã cho tôi chút ít tiến để mua một ít thức ăn).
- Did you have time to answer all the questions in the examination?
   (Ban có đủ thời gian để trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi trong bài thi không?)

 Đôi khi ban phải dùng mệnh để với so that (chứ không dùng to - infinitive) để nói về mục đích của hành động. Chúng ta dùng so that: i) khi mục đích là negative (phủ định) (so that... won't / wouldn't...): I hurried so that I wouldn't be late. (= because I didn't want to be late). (Tôi khẩn trương để khỏi bị trễ giờ). (= vì tôi không muốn bị trễ giờ). Leave early so that you won't (hoặc don't) miss the bus. (Ban hāy đi sớm để khỏi bị lở chuyến xe buyt). ii) với can và could (so that... can/could...): He's learning English so that he can study in the United States. (Anh ta đang học tiếng Anh để có thể đi học ở Mỹ). We moved to London so that we could visit our friends more often. (Chúng tôi đời đến Luân Đôn để cỡ thể thăm viếng bạn bè thường xuyên hơn). iii) khi một người làm việc này để một người khác làm được việc kia. I gave him my address so that he could contact me. (Tôi đã cho anh ta địa chỉ cha ôi để anh ta có thể liên lạc với tôi). He wore glasses and a false beard so that nobody would recognize him. (Anh ta đeo kính và mang rấu giả để không ai có thể nhận ra anh ta)... UNIT 63: Exercises 63.1 Use the words in brackets to answer these questions. Example: Why did you go out? (buy some bread) I went out to buy some bread. Why do you have to go to the bank? (change some money) I have to go \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Why did she knock on your door? (wake me up) She ..... Why are you saving money? (go to Canada) I Why is Ron going into hospital? (have an operation) 4 5 Why are you wearing two pullovers? (keep warm) ..... Why did you go to the police station? (report that my car had been stolen) 63.2 Now you have to complete these sentences with a suitable verb. Examples. The minister has a bodyguard to protect him. There were no chairs to sit on, so we all had to sit on the floor. 1 We are having a party ...... Ann's birthday. I didn't have enough time ...... the newspaper today. We've got no furniture - not even a bed .....in. 4 I think I need some new clothes ..... 5 Tom didn't have enough energy ...... the mountain. There will be a meeting next week ..... the problem. I need a box ..... these books in.

It's a pity we haven't got any pictures ....... on the wall. I wish I had enough money ...... a new car.

		s exercise you have to write sentences with so that.  oles: I hurried. I didn't want to be late. Lhurried so that I wouldn't be late.  I'll give you my number. I want you to be able to phone me.  I'll give you my number so that you can (or will be able to) phone me.
. 1	W	e wore warm clothes. We didn't want to get cold.
2	is	poke very slowly. I wanted the man to understand what I said.
3	- I w	hispered. I didn't want anyone to hear our conversation.
4	Ple	ease arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time. Please arrive
. 5	Sh	e locked the door. She didn't want to be disturbed.
6	۱s	lowed down. I wanted the car behind to be able to overtake.
	****	·
KE	Y	
63.2	2	have to go to the bank to change some money.  She knocked on my door to wake me up.  'm saving money to go to Canada.  Ron is going into hospital to have an operation. (or Ron is going into hospital for an operation).  'm wearing two pullovers to keep warm.  went to the police station to report that my car had been stolen.  to celebrate to read/to buy to sleep to wear to climb/to go up to discuss/to consider/to talk about to put/to pack/to keep/to store
	9 1	to hang/to put/to stick to buy/to get/to afford
63.3	2 i 3 i	We wore warm clothes so that we wouldn't get cold.  I spoke very slowly so that the man would understand what I said/ could understand what I said/ could understand what I said.  I whispered so that no-one would hear our conversation./ could hear/ would be able to hear

- 5 She locked the door so that she wouldn't be disturbed.
- 6 I slowed down so that the car behind could overtake./... would be able to overtake.

4 Please arrive early so that we can start the meeting on time J... so that we will be

able to start...

# BÀI 64: PREFER và WOULD RATHER (thích hơn)

# a) Prefer to do và prefer doing

Bạn có thể dùng "prefer to do" hoặc "prefer doing" để nói đến điều mà nói chung bạn thích hơn. "Prefer to do" thường được dùng hơn:

I don't like cities. I prefer to live (hoặc prefer living) in the country. (Tôi không thích thành thị. Tôi thích sống ở miễn quê hơn).

Hãy xem sự khác biệt về cấu trúc:

I prefer (doing) something to (doing) something else

Nhưng: I prefer to do something rather than (do) something else

- I prefer that coat to the coat you were wearing yesterday.

  (Tôi thích cái áo khoác đó hơn cái áo khoác mà bạn mặc hôm qua).
- Tom prefers driving to travelling by train; nhưng: Tom prefers-to drive rather than travel by train. (Tom thích lái xe hơn là đi xe lửa).
- I prefer to live in the country rather than (live) in a city.

  (Tôi thích sống ở miền quê hơn là ở thành thị).

# b) Would prefer (to do)

Dùng "would prefer to do" để nói đến điều mà ta muốn làm trong một tính huống đặc biệt nào đó (không phải chung chung):

- "Would you prefer tea or coffee?" "Coffee, please". ("Ban thich uống trả hay cả phê?" "Cả phê").
- "Shall we go by train?" "Well, I'd prefer to go by car". ("Chúng ta đi xe lửa chứ?" "Ô, tôi thích đi bằng xe hơi hơn").

Hãy lưu ý đển cấu trúc:

l'd prefer to do something rather than (do) something else. (Tôi thích làm việc này hơn việc kia).

I'd prefer to stay at home tonight rather than go to the cinema.
 (Tôi nay tôi thích ở nhà hơn là đi xem phim).

# c) Would rather do = would prefer to do (thich hon)

Sau would rather, chúng ta dùng động từ nguyên mẫu không có to (= bare infinitive). Hãy so sánh:

Shall we go by train? (Chúng ta sẽ đi bằng xe lửa chứ?) Well, I'd rather to go by car. (ổ, tôi thích đi bằng xe hơi hơn). Well, I'd prefer go by car. (không dùng "to go")

"Would you rather have tea or coffee?" "Coffee, please". ("Ban thich uống trà hay cả phê?" "Xin cho cả phê").

- I'm tired. I'd rather not go out this evening, if you don't mind.
   (Tôi mệt quá. Nếu bạn không phiền thì tôi không đi chơi tối nay được đầu).
- "Do you want to go out this evening?" "I'd rather not."
   ("Tối nay bạn có thích đi chơi không?" "Tôi không thích đầủ").

Hãy lưu ý đến cấu trúc:

I'd rather do something than (do) something else. (Tôi thích làm việc này hơn (làm) việc kia).

- t'd rather stay at home than go to the cinema.
   (Tôi thích ở nhà hơn là đi xem phim).
- d) Would rather someone did something (muốn ai làm điều gì).

Khi bạn muốn ai khác làm một điều gi đó, bạn có thể nói: I'd rather you did.../ i'd rather he did..., v.v... Chúng ta dùng thi quá khứ (past) trong cấu trúc này nhưng ý nghĩa là hiện tại hoặc tương lại, không phải quá khứ. Hảy so sánh:

l'd rather cook the dinner now. (Tôi thích nấu bữa tối bây giờ hơn). I'd rather you cooked the dinner now. (Tôi muốn bạn nấu bữa tối bây giờ).

- "Shall I stay here?" "Well, I'd rather you came with us".
   ("Tôi sẽ ở lại đây à?" "Ô, tôi muốn bạn đi với chúng tôi").
- "I'd rather you didn't tell anyone what I said".
   ("Tôi mong-muốn bạn đừng kể cho bất cử ai nghe điều tôi đã nói").
- "Do you mind if I smoke?" "I'd rather you didn't". ("Néu tôi hút thuốc anh có phiên gì không?" "Tôi muốn anh đừng hút").

# **UNIT 64: Exercises**

64.		Make sentences using "I prefer (something) to (something else)".  Example: (driving / travelling by train)   prefer driving to travelling by train.
	1	(Paris / London)   prefer Paris
	2	(phoning people / writing letters) I prefer
	3	(going to the cinema / watching films on television)
<i>2</i> *		The state of the s
	N	ow rewrite sentences 2 and 3 using the structure "t prefer to do (something)".
	E	xample: I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.
	4	(2) I prefer to phone
	5	(3) 1

64.2	Answer these questions using I'd prefer or I'd rather Use the words in brackets for your answers.
	Examples: Shall we walk? (prefer / go by car) I'd prefer to go by car. Shall we eat now? (rather / eat a bit later) I'd rather eat a bit later.
1	Shall we play tennis? (prefer / go for a swim)
2	Shall we watch television? (rather / read a book)
3	
. 4	
5	Shall we decide now? (rather / think about it for a while)
٨	low you have to make sentences using I'd prefer rather than or I'd rather than
(see .	sections b and c).
	Examples: (walk / go by car) I'd rather waik than go by car.  (stay at home / go to the cinema) I'd prefer to stay at home rather than go to the cinema.
6	(go for a swim / play tennis) I'd rather
7	(read a book / watch television) I'd prefer
8	(wait for a few minutes / leave now) I'd prefer
8	(eat at home / go to a restaurant) I'd rather
10	) (think about it for a while / decide now) I'd prefer
34.3	Now you have to use 't'd rather you (did something)". You are talking to a friend. You say you'll do something but really you want your friend to do it.
£	Example: I'll cook the dinner if you really want me to but I'd rather you cooked it.
1	I'll phone Tom if you really want me to but I'd rather
2	I'll do the washing-up if you really want me to but
3	I'll go to the bank if you really want me to but
4	I'll tell Ann what happened if you really want me to but
KE'	Υ
4.1	1 I prefer Paris to London.
	2 I prefer phoning people to writing letters.
	3 I prefer going to the cinema to watching films on television.
	4 I prefer to phone people rather than write letters.

 $5\,\mathrm{I}$  prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch films on television.

- 64.2 1 I'd prefer to go for a swim.
  - 2 I'd rather read a book.
  - 3 I'd rather wait for a few minutes.
  - .4 I'd prefer to eat at home.
  - 5 I'd rather think about it for a while.
  - 6 I'd rather go for a swim than play tennis.
  - 7 I'd prefer to read a book rather than watch television.
  - 8 I'd prefer to wait for a few minutes rather than leave now.
  - 9 I'd rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.
  - 10 I'd prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.
- 64.3 1 I'd rather you phoned him.
  - 2 I'd rather you did it.
  - 3 I'd rather you went.
  - 4 I'd rather you told her.

# BÀI 65: HAD BETTER DO SOMETHING IT'S TIME SOMEONE DID SOMETHING

## à) Had better do something (nên làm điểu gì đó).

Ý nghĩa của had better (l'd better) cũng tương tự như should (nên). "l'd better do something" = tòi nên làm điều gì đó; nếu tôi không làm điều này thì một chuyện không hay có thể sẽ xây ra.

- I have to meet Tom in ten minutes, I'd better go now or I'll be late.
   (Tôi phải gặp Tom trong mười phút nữa, tốt hơn là tôi nên đi liền bây giờ, nếu không tôi sẽ bị trễ).
- "Shall I take an umbrella?" "Yes, you'd better. It might rain".
   (Tôi có nên mang dù theo không nhì?" "Có, bạn nên mang. Trời có thể mưa lám").
- We've almost run out of petrol. We'd better stop at the next petrol station to fill up.
   (Chúng ta sắp hết xăng rồi. Chúng ta nên dừng lại ở trạm xăng sắp tới để đổ xăng).

Thể phủ định của had better là had better not ('d better not):

- You don't look very well. You'd better not go to work today.
   (Ban trông không được khỏe. Hôm nay bạn không nên đi làm).
- "Are you going out tonight?" "I'd better not. I've got a lot of work to do". ("Tối nay bạn có đi chơi không?" "Tốt hơn là tôi không nên đi. Tôi có nhiều việc phải làm").

Hình thức này luôn luôn là "had better" (thường là 'd better trong văn nói tiếng Anh). Chúng ta dùng had nhưng ý nghĩa là hiện tại hoặc tương lại, không phải quá khứ.

I'd better go to the bank this afternoon.
 '(Tốt hơn là chiếu nay tôi nên đến ngân hàng).

Hãy nhớ rằng had better được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu không có to (infinitive without to):

It might rain, We'd better take an umbrella.
 (Trời có thể mưa. Chúng ta nên mang dù theo).

# b) It's time... (Đặ đến lúc...)

Bạn có thể nói "It's time (for someone) to do something" (Đã đến lúc (ai đó) phải làm điều gi).

- It's time to go home. (Đà đến lúc phải về nhà).
- It's time for us to go home. (Đã đến lúc chúng ta phải về nhà).

Còn một cấu trúc khác nữa: **it's time someone did something** (Đã đến lúc (aì đó) phải làm điều gi).

It's nearly midnight. It's time we went home.
 (Gần nửa đêm rối. Đã đến lúc chúng tạ phải về nhà).

Chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ (went) sau "It's time someone..." nhưng ý nghĩa là ở hiện tại hoặc tương lại, không phải ở quá khứ:

Why are you still in bed? It's time you got up. A (Tại sao còn nằm lì trên giường thế? Đã đến giờ con phải dậy rồi đấy) Chúng ta dùng cấu trúc lử á time someone đid something đặc biệt khi chúng ta phản nàn hay phê bình, hoặc khi chúng ta nghĩ rằng ai đó đẳng lễ phải làm một việc gì đó rỗi:

- it's time the children were in bed. It's long after their bed time.

  (Đã đến giờ mấy đứa trẻ phải đi ngủ. Quá giờ đi ngủ của chúng lậu rồi)...
- You've been wearing the same clothes for ages. Isn't it time you bought some new ones?
  - (Bạn đã mặc bộ đổ độ lậu quá rồi. Chẳng lệ chưa đến lúc bạn mua bộ khác sao?)
- I thìnk it's time the government did something about pollution.
   (Tôi nghĩ đã đến lúc chính phủ phải làm một điều qì đó đối với sự ô nhiễm).

Chúng ta cũng có thể nói:

"It's high time someone did something".

Cấu trúc này làm cho lời phản năn hoặc lời phê bình mạnh hơn:

 You're very selfish. It's high time you realised that you're not the most important person in the world.

(Bạn lới kỷ quá. Đã đến lúc bạn phải nhận ra rằng bạn không phải là người quan trọng nhất trên thế giới đầu).

It's about time Jack old some work for his examination.

(Đã đến lúc Jack phải học hành để chuẩn bị cho kỳ thi của anh ta).

# **UNIT 65: Exercises**

65.1 Read each situation and write a sentence with had better.

Examples: You're going out for a walk with Tom. You think you should take an umbrella because it might rain. What do you say to Tom? We'd better take an umbrella. Tom doesn't look very well. You don't think he should go to work today. What do you say to Tom? You'd better not go to work today.

- 1 Ann suddenly begins to feel ill. You think she should sit down. What do you say to her? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Ann wants to play the plane late at night. You know that she'll wake up the people next door. What do you say to Ann?
- 4 You and Ann are going to a restaurant for a meal. You think you should reserve a table because the restaurant might be crowded. What do you say to Ann?
- 5 Tom has just cut himself. You think he should put a plaster on the cut. What do you say to him?

. 1.	Y	ou don't think you should do this because the river looks very dirty. What do you
5.2	Now	you have to write sentences with it's time someone did something.
	Exa	mples: You think the children should be in bed. It's already 11 o'clock. It's time
		the children were in bed (or went to bed).
		You think something should be done about the traffic problem in the city centre. It's (about) time something was done about the traffic problem in the city centre.
1	tir	ou think you should have a holiday because you haven't had one for a very long
2	tir	ou think Tom should write to his parents. He hasn't written to them for ages. It's
3	lt'	nis room should be redecorated. It looks awful
4		ou're waiting for Ann. She is late. She should be here by now.
5	Y.	pu're sitting in a train waiting for it to leave. It's already five minutes late.
6	Y si	ou feel very strongly that governments should stop spending money on arms and nould concentrate on raising the standard of living.
7	Y	ou think you should start getting the dinner ready. It's nearly dinner-time now.
8	Y	ou haven't been to the dentist for nearly a year. You should go every six months
(E	Υ	
5.1		You'd better sit down.
		We'd better take a taxi.
		You'd better not play the piano (now / so late).
		We'd better reserve a table.
		You'd better put a plaster on it.
-	6 7	I'd better have the car serviced (before I go on holiday). We'd better not go for a swim. (The river looks very dirty).
5.2	1	It's time I had a holiday.
	2	It's time Tom wrote to his parents.
	3	It's time this room was redecorated.
	4	
	5	It's time the train left.
	6	It's time governments stopped spending money on arms and concentrated on raising the standard of living.
	7	It's time I got the dinner ready.

(In these sentences you could also say "It's high time / about time...").

8 It's time I went to the dentist.

# BÀI 66: SEE SOMEONE DO và SEE SOMEONE DOING (Cấu trúc câu với động từ SEE)

a) Hāy xem xét tình hướng mẫu sau:

Tom lên xe và lái đi. Bạn thấy việc này. Bạn có thể nói:

I saw Tom get into his car and drive away.
 (Tôi thấy Tom lên xe và lái đi).

Trong cấu trúc này chúng ta dùng động từ nguyên mẫu không có to (get, drive v.v...):



Hāy nhớ rằng chúng ta dùng động từ nguyên mẫu không có to (infinitive without to):

I saw her go out. (không dùng "to go out")
 (Tôi thấy có ta đi ra ngoài).

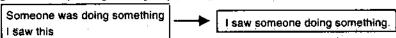
Nhưng sau thể bị động (passive) ("he was seen" v.v...), chúng ta dùng to - infinitive:

- She was seen to go out.
   (Cô ta bị trông thấy có đi ra ngoài).
- b) Bây giờ hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:

Hòm qua bạn gặp Ann. Cô ta dang chờ xe buýt. Bạn có thể nói:

1 saw Ann waiting for a bus.
 (Tôi thấy Ann đang chở xe buýt).

Trong cấu trúc này chúng ta dùng -ing (waiting):



c) Bây giờ hãy xem sự khác biệt về ý nghĩa giữa hai cấu trúc trên:

"I saw him do something" = anh ta đã làm điều gì đó (thì simple past) và tôi trông thấy việc đó. Tôi chứng kiến toàn bộ hành động (the complete action) từ đầu đến cuối:

- The accident happened. We saw this. We saw the accident happen. (Tai nan xảy ra. Chúng tôi thấy điều này). (Chúng tôi thấy tai nan xảy ra).

"I saw him doing something" = anh ta đang làm điều gì đó (thì *past continuous*) và tôi trông thấy việc đó. Tôi thấy anh ta khi anh ta đang làm điều đó nửa chừng (in the middle). Điều này không có nghĩa là tôi chứng kiến được toàn bộ hành động:

- He was walking along the street. I saw this when I drove pass in my car.
   I saw him walking along the street.
  - (Anh ta đạng đi dọc theo con đường. Tối trông thấy điều này khi tôi lái xe ngạng qua).
    - Tôi thấy anh ta đi dọc theo con đường).

Sự khác biệt không phải lúc nào cũng quan trọng. Đôi khi chúng ta có thể dùng cả hai cấu trúc:

- I've never seen Tom dance; hay: I've never seen Tom dancing.
   (Tôi chưa bao giờ thấy Tom khiệu vũ).
- d) Chúng ta dùng hai cấu trúc này đặc biệt với see và hear. Ngoài ra cũng có thể dùng chúng với watch, listen to, feel và notice:
  - I didn't hear you come in. (Tôi không nghe bạn bước vào).
  - I could hear it raining. (Tôi có thể nghe thấy trời mưa).
  - She suddenly felt someone touch her on the shoulder.
     (Đột nhiên cô ta cầm thấy có ai đó chạm vào vai mình).
  - The missing boys were last seen playing near the river.

    (Những cậu bé bị mất tích được thấy lần cuối lúc đang chơi gắn bờ sông).
  - Did you notice anyone go out?
     (Ban có để ý thấy ai đi ra ngoài không?)
  - Listen to the birds singing! (Hāy nghe lũ chim đang hót kìa!)

# Sau smell và find, bạn chỉ có thể dùng cấu trúc -ing mà thôi:

- Can you smell something burning?
   (Bạn có ngữi thấy cái gì đó cháy khét không?)
- She found him reading her letters.
   (Cô ấy phát hiện hắn đạng đọc thư của cô ấy).

# **UNIT 66: Exercises**

6.1	An	swer these questions beginning in the way shown.	
		amples: "Does Tom ever dance?" "I've never seen him dance (or dancing)".	
		"How do you know I came in late?" "I heard you come in late".	
	1	"Does Ann ever smoke?" "I've never seen	, "
	2	"How do you know the man took the money?" "I saw	. 79
	3	"Did Jack lock the door?" "Yes, I heard	. "
	4	"Did the bell ring?" "I'm not sure. I didn't hear	"
	5	"Does Tom ever swear (= use bad language)?" "I've never heard	"
	6	"How do you know Ann can play the plano?" "I've heard	
•	7	"Did Bill kick the dog?" "Yes, 1 saw	
	Ė	"Did the boy fall into the water?" "I didn't see	

66.2 In each of these situations you and a friend saw, heard or smelt something. This is what you said at the time:

- Look! There's Ann! She's waiting for a bus.
- Look! There's Sue! She's playing tennis.
- Look! There's Tome! He's having a meal in that restaurant.
  Listen! That's Bill. He's playing the guitar.
  I can smell something! The dinner's burning!

- Look! There's Dave! He's talking to Charles.

. 1	<u> </u>		·				``    کب	W	ł
	10	tor you toll come	and what you	ease toose				. , •	
		ter you tell some Ne saw Ann wal	•				, •		
		Ne saw Allii wal							
		rve saw							
	• •								
	6.						*****		
<b>36:3</b>	Compl	lete these senter		of the follow	ing	verbs in	The correct	i fon	m.
	run collida	explode e open	burn tell	slam crawl		er <b>y</b> elimb	hadee	n	<b>sit</b>
1	Can	you smell some	Holog humina	2					
2		w the accident by		•					
3		istened to the o			hie	etory fi	rom heninr	ina i	lo end
4		n! Can you hea					OW DOME	y ·	io 9110.
5		anybody see the							
6		watched the two				doo			a windo
0			· ·		_			·····	. a williuo
7		rybody heard the	•				. ماهم معمده		سما
•									
. 8		i can feel somet	_				_		
9		ard someone							
1	O We	couldn't find Ton	n at fifst, in th	e end we tou	nd	nım		ine g	arden.
ے ز				. :					
KE	<u> </u>	•	<u></u>			<del></del>		_:	
56.1	1 i've	never seen her	smoke/smok	ing. 66.2	2	We sa	w Sue pla	ying	tennis.
	2   sat	w him take the n	noney:		3	We sa	w Tom ha	ving	a meal in
						a rest	eurant.		
	3 Yes	, I heard him loc	k the door.				100		
		in't hear it ring.		1	.4		eard Bill pl		
		never heard him			5		nelt the dir		_
	6 l've	heard her play/r	laying the pia	ino. 🐰	6		aw Dave ta	iking	j to
			14.50			Charle	<b>8</b> 5.		
		, I saw him kick		66.3	3	tell		7.	explode
	8 I did	in't see him fall i	nto the water.		4	crying	F		crawling
					5	collide	}		slam
					6	run	open	10	sitting

climb

# BÀI 67: -ING CLAUSES (Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng - ING) (Feeling tired, I went to bed early)

- a) Mệnh để (clause) là thành phần của câu. Một số câu có hai mệnh để:
  - Feeling tired, I went to bed early.
    (Câm thấy một mội, tội đã đi ngũ sớm).

Trong câu này, "I went to bed sarly" là main clause (mênh để chính).

"Feeling tired" là -ing clause hay -ing phrese (mệnh để / cụm từ bắt đấu bằng -ing),

- Khi hai sự việc xảy ra cùng một lúc, bạn có thể dùng -ing cho một trong hai động từ.
   Mệnh để chính luôn lướn đứng trước:
  - She was sitting in an armchair reading a book.
     (= She was sitting and she was reading)
     (Cô ta dang ngôi trên ghế bành đọc sách).
     (= Cô ta đạng ngôi và cô ta đạng đọc sách).
  - I ran out of the house shouting. (= I was shouting when I ran out of the house).
     (Tôi vừa chạy ra khỏi nhà vừa la lên). (= Tôi la lên khi tôi chạy ra khỏi nhà).

Chúng ta cũng dùng -lng khi một hành động xây ra trong lúc hành động khác đạng diễn ra. Dùng -lng cho hành động kéo dài lâu hơn. Hành động kéo dài lâu hơn là phần thứ hai của câu.

- Jim hurt his arm playing tennis. (= while he was playing tennis)
   (Jim bi dau tay khi chơi quần vợt).
- I cut myself shaving. (= while I was shaving)
   (Tôi bị xước da trong khi đang cạo râu).

Bạn cũng có thể dùng ling sau while hoặc when:

- Jim hurt his arm while playing tennis. (Jim bi dau tay khi choi quan /ot).
- Be careful when crossing the road. (Hay can than khi bang qua ducing).
- c) Khi một hành động xây ra trước một hành động khắc, bạn có thể dùng having done cho hành động xây ra trước:
  - Having found a hotel, they looked for somewhere to have dinner. (Tim được khách sạn rỗi, họ đi kiếm nơi ăn tối).
  - Having finished our work, we went home. (Làm xong việc, chúng tôi về nhà).
     Bạn cũng có thể nói After -ing:
  - After finishing our work, we went home. (Sau khi làm xong việc, chúng tôi về nhà).

Nếu hành động thứ hai xây ra ngay sau hành động thứ nhất, bạn có thể dùng thể -ĩng đơn giản (doing thay vì having done):

- Taking a key out of his pocket, he opened the door.
(Lây chia khóa ra khỏi túi, anh ta mở cửa).

Các cấu trúc này được dùng chủ yếu trong căn viết (written English).

 d) Bạn cũng có thể dùng một mệnh để -lng để giải thích một điều gì đó hoặc để nêu lý do vì sao ai đó làm một điều gì. Mệnh để -lng thường đứng đầu câu;

- Feeling tired, I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired).
   (Câm thấy một mỏi, tôi đã đi ngủ sớm). (= vì tôi câm thấy một mỏi).
- Being unemployed, he hasn't got much money. (= because he is unemployed)
  (Bị thất nghiệp, anh ta không có nhiều tiền). (= vì anh ta bị thất nghiệp).
- Not having a car, she finds it difficult to get around. (= because she doesn't have a car).

(Không có xe hơi, cô ta cảm thấy khó khản khi đi lại). (\* vì cô ta không có xe hơi).

Having already seen the film twice, I didn't want to go to the cinema. (= because I had already seen it twice).

(Đã xem bộ phim đó hai lần rồi, tôi không muốn đi xem nữa). (= v) tôi đã xem bộ phim đó hai lần rồi).

Các cấu trúc này thường được dùng trong văn viết hơn là văn nói.

# **UNIT 67: Exercises**

67.1 <i>F</i>	rom eac	h pair of sentences make one sentence using an -ing claus	в.
Ex	cample:	She was sitting in an armchair. She was reading a book.	
	ŕ	She was sitting in an armchair reading a book.	
1	Jill was	lying on the bed. She was crying. Jill was	
2		ome. I was feeling very tired. I got	
. 3	The old	d man was walking along the street. He was talking to hims	eif.
In	these se	entences one thing happens during another.	
Ex	cample: s	im was playing tennis. He hurt his arm. Jim hurt his arm pl	aying tennis.
4	Ann wa	as watching television. She fell asleep: Ann	
5	The ma	an slipped. He was getting off the bus. The man	
6	The bo	y was crossing the road. He was knocked over. The boy	······
7	. The fin	eman was overcome by smoke. He was trying to put out the	e fire.
	The fir	eman	*****************
67 2 7	his time	make sentences beginning Having	
E	cample:	We finished our work. We went home.	
	• • • •	Having finished our work, we went home.	
1	We bo	ught our tickets. Then we went into the theatre.	
2	They h	ad dinner. Then they continued on their journey.	
3:	Sue di	d all her shopping. Then she went for a cup of coffee.	
	*******		

67.3 Now make sentences beginning -ing or Not -ing (as in section d).

Example: I felt tired. So I went to bed early. Feeling tired, I went to bed early.

1 I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.

Thinking

2 She is a foreigner. So she needs a visa to stay in this country.

3 I didn't know his address. So I couldn't contact him.

Not

4 The man wasn't able to understand English. So he didn't know what I said.

5 He has travelled a lot. So he knows a lot about other countries. Having

6 We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn't afford to stay in a hotel.

- 67.1 1 Jill was lying on the bed crying.
  - 2 I got home feeling very tired.
  - 3 The old man was walking along the street talking to himself.
  - 4 Ann fell asleep watching television.
  - 5 The man slipped getting off the bus.
  - 6 The boy was knocked over crossing the road.
  - 7 The fireman was overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.
- 67.2 1 Having bought our tickets, we went into the theatre.
  - 2 Having had dinner, they continued on their journey.
  - 3 Having done all her shopping. Sue went for a cup of coffee.
- 67.3 1 Thinking they might be hungry, I offered them something to eat.
  - 2 Being a foreigner, she needs a visa to stay in this country.
  - 3 Not knowing his address, I couldn't contact him.
    - 4 Not being able to understand English, the man didn't know what I said.
  - 5 Having travelled a lot, he knows a lot about other countries.
  - 6 Having spent nearly all our money, we couldn't afford to stay in a hotel.

# BÀI 68: CHANCE và OPPORTUNITY (dịp, cơ hội)

#### a) Chance of ling (khả năng có thể xảy ra):

Chúng ta nói "someone has a (good) chance of doing something" (ai đó có thể / khả năng (cao) để làm điều gi):

- Do you think I have a chance of passing the examination? (Theo ben tôi có thể thi đậu không?)
- We have a very good chance of winning the finatch.
   (Chùng ta có một khả năng rất tốt để tháng trận đấu).

#### Ban cũng có thể nói any / no / little / much chance:

- I don't think i have much chance of finding a job.
   (Tôi không nghĩ rằng tôi có nhiều khả năng tim được một việc làm).
- He has no chance of passing the examnination.

  (Anh ta không có cơ may thí đâu).

Ban cũng có thể nói "stand a chance of doing something".

He doesn't stand a chance of passing the examination.
 (Anh ta chẳng có chút cơ may nào để / chẳng thể nào thị đầu cả).

Ban cũng có thể nói "What are the chances of something (happening)?".

- What are the chances of success?
   (Có bao nhiều khả năng thành công?)
- What are my chances of passing the examination? (Tôi có bao nhiều hy vọng thi đậu?)

Ban cong có thể nói "there is a chance of something happening" hoặc "there is a chance that something will happen":

- Is there any chance of you lending me some money until tomorrow?
   (Liệu từ đây đến mai bạn có thể cho tôi mượn một ít tiến không?)
- There is a chance that I'll be late home this morning. (Có khả năng tối nay tôi sẽ về nhà trê).

### b) Chance to do something (địp, cơ hội làm điều gi)

Chúng ta dùng "chance to do something" khi chance = thời gian, dịp hay dịp để làm điều gi đó. ("chance of -ing" it được dùng với nghĩa này).

- "Have you read the book I lent you?" "No, I have had a chance to look at it yet" ("Ben đã đọc quyển sách tối cho bạn mượn chưa?" "Chừa, tối chưa có dịp đọc nó").
- We điơn't have much chance to talk to each other when we last meet.
   (Chúng tôi không có nhiều thì giờ để nói chuyện với nhau khi chúng tôi gặp nhau lần cuối).
- These days I don't get much chance to watch television. I'm too busy. (Gần đây tôi chẳng mấy khi xem tivi. Tôi bận quá).

#### c) Opportunity (dip, cd hội)

Chúng ta thường nói "opportunity to do something" (tuy nhiên, opportunity of -lng cũng có thể dùng được):

- I have the opportunity to study in the United States for a year. Do you think I should go? (= the chance to study)
  - (Tối có cơ hội được đi Mỹ học một năm. Anh nghĩ tôi có nên đi không?)
- After the lecture there will be an opportunity to ask questions: (Sau bài giảng mọi người sẽ có cơ hội đặt câu hỏi).

Ban công có thể nói any / no / little / much / plenty of / more opportunity:

- Bo you have much opportunity to speak English?
   (Ban có nhiều dip nói tiếng Anh không?)
- We live near the mountains, so we have plenty of opportunity to go skiing.
   (Chúng tối sống gần vùng núi, vì vậy chúng tối có nhiều dịp đi trượt tuyết).

Đứng nói "possibility to do something":

I had the opportunity to study in Canada. (không nói "possibility to study") (Tôi đã có cơ hội được đi học ở Canada).

## **UNIT 68: Exercises**

	Complete these sentences using chance of ling or chance to
	ramples: Do you think I have a chance of passing the examination? (pass) These days I don't get much chance to watch television. (watch)
1	I'd like to go to the concert but I've got no tickets now. They'l have sold out. (get)
2	He was badly injured in the crash but the doctors at the hospital say that he has a very good
3	"Have you written that letter to Jack?" "No, I didn't have a
4	There isn't mucha cheap apartment in the city centre. (find)
5	We're always very busy at work. We don't get much to each other. (talk)
6	A lot of people have applied for this job. If I apply, I don't think I stand a very good
7	I'm afraid I didn't have the you while I was in London. I was only there for three days and there wasn't enough time. (visit)
ĝ	If you work hard at your job, you have a good (be promoted)
8	I don't think there is much the rain The sky is very grey. (stop)
.2 /	Now you have to write sentences using much opportunity to do something.
E	rample: "Do you speak English very often?"
	"No, I don't have much opportunity to speak English".
1	"Do you see many foreign films?" "No, I don't have much
2	"Do you go fishing very often? "No, I don't

3		Do you travel much?" "No,
. 4 5		Do you use your English much?" "No
58.3	No	w use your own ideas to complete these sentences.
. E	xai	nples: I'd like to have the opportunity to go to the United States. I don't think there is much chance of my going to England in the near future.
1 2 3	?   }   F	d like to have the opportunity
5 6 7 8	) E	Where I live there is plenty of opportunity
KE	Y	
5 <b>8.</b> 1	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	chance of getting chance of recovering chance to do chance of finding chance to talk chance of getting chance to visit chance of being promoted chance of (the rain) stopping I don't have much opportunity to see foreign films. I don't have much opportunity to go fishing.
	3 4 5	
68.3		cossible check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here is some example answers:
	3 4 5 6 7 8	People today have much more opportunity to travel. (or of travelling) These days I don't get much chance to go out in the evenings. Where I live there is plenty of opportunity to go fishing. But there isn't much opportunity to go sailing. I think I have a good chance of getting a place at university. I've never had the opportunity to go to South America.

# BÀI 69: UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từ không đếm được) (gold, music, advice v.v...)

Danh từ (noun) có thể thuộc loại đếm được (countable) hoặc không đếm được (uncountable). Đối với danh từ đếm được, xin xem bài 70.

 Sau đây là một số danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns): gold (vàng), music (âm nhạc), blood (máu), excitement (sự hào hứng), v.v...

Danh từ không đếm được là những thứ mà ta không thể đếm được. Chúng không có hình thức số nhiều (no plural). Bạn không thể nói "musics", "bloods", hoặc "excitements".

b) Trước các danh từ không đếm được bạn có thể dùng the / some / any / mụch / thìs / his, v.v...: the music; some gold, much excitement; his blood.

Bạn cũng có thể dùng các danh từ không đếm được mà không cấn có article (mạo từ) đi kèm (xem bài 74):

- This ring is made of gold. (Chiéc nhắn này làm bằng vàng).
- Blood is red. (Máu có màu đô).
- c) Nhiều danh từ có thể vừa được dùng như danh từ đếm được vừa được dùng như danh từ không đếm được. Tất nhiên về ý nghĩa có khác nhau. Thị dụ:

paper: - I bought a paper. (= tô báo - đếm được)

(Tôi mua một tở báo).

I bought some paper. (= giấy viết - không đếm được)
 (Tôi mua một lì giấy).

hair: There's a hair in my soup! (= một sợi tốc - đếm được) (Có một sợi tốc trong bát súp của tôi).

She has beautiful hair. (= mái tóc - không đểm được).

(Cổ ấy có mái tóc đạp).

#### experience:

- We had many experiences during our holiday. (= sự kiện, việc xây ra
- dém dược)

(Chúng tôi đã trải qua nhiều việc lý thú trong suốt kỳ nghì).

- You need experience for this job. (= kinh nghiệm không đếm được).
   (Bạn cần phải có kinh nghiệm cho công việc này).
- d) Một số danh từ thường không đếm được (uncountable) trong tiếng Anh nhưng lại là danh từ đếm được (countable) trong các ngôn ngữ khác.

Thí du:

accomodation: chỗ ở furniture: đó đạo scenery: phong cảnh advice: lời khuyên information: thông tin traffic: sự giao thông baggage: hành lý luggage: hành lý travel: sự đi lại behaviour: hành vi news: tin tức trouble: sư rắc rối bread: bánh mì permission: sư cho phéo weather: thời tiết chaos: sư hỗn loạn progress: sự tiến bô work: công việc

Những danh từ trên là những danh từ không đếm được, vì vậy:

- (i) ban không thể dùng a / an trước chúng.
- (ii) chúng không có hình thức số nhiều (no plural).
- I'm looking for accommodation. (không dùng "a accommodation")
   (Tôi dạng tìm chỗ ở).
- I'm going to buy some bread (hoặc "a lot of bread", nhưng không dùng "a bread")
   (Tôi sẽ mua một th bánh mì).
- Tom gave me some good advice. (không dùng "some good advices").
   (Tom đã cho tôi một số lài khuyên bố ích).
- Where are you going to put all your furniture? (không dùng "furnitures") (Bạn định sẽ để tất cả đó đạc vào những chỗ nào?).

Hãy nhớ rằng news không phải là dạnh từ số nhiều:

The news is very depressing today. (không dùng "the news are ...)
 (Tin tức hôm nay rất đáng buồn).

Đừng dùng travel với nghĩa như journey / trip (chuyển đi).

We had a good journey. (không dùng "a good travel")
 (Chúng tôi đã có một chuyển đi thú vị).

Hãy lưu ý đến các cặp danh từ đểm được (C) và không đếm được (UNC) sau:

- I'm looking for a job. (C) nhưng: I'm looking for work. (UNC) (Tôi đang tìm việc làm).
- What a lovely view! (C) nhưng: What lovely scenery! (UNC).
   (Phong cảnh mới đáng yêu làm sao!).

# **UNIT 69: Exercises**

69.1 Which of the underlined parts of these sentences is right?

Example: Sue was very helpful.

She gave me some good advice / across ("advice" is right)

- 1 Margaret has got very long black hair / hairs.
- 2 We had a very good weather / very good weather when we were on holiday.
- 3 Sorry I'm late. I had trouble / troubles with the car this morning.
- 4 I want something to read. I'm going to buy a / some paper.
- 5' I want to write some letters. I need a / some writing paper.
- 6 It's very difficult to find a work / job at the moment.
- 7 Bad news don't / doesn't make people happy.
- 8 Our travel / journey from Loftdon to Istanbul by train was very interesting.
- 9 The flat in empty. We haven't got any furnitures / furniture yet.
- 10 When the fire alarm rang, there was a complete chaos / complete chaos.
- 11 I had to buy a / some bread because I wanted to make some sandwiches.
- 12 After spending most of his life travelling round the world, he is now writing a book about his experiences.

<b>69.2</b> :	Now you	have to comple	ite these sentences usin	g these word	ds.	
progr inform	ress mation	advice paper	accommodation permission	hair	work	experience
E.	xample:	We haven't go	ot anywhere to live. We'	re looking fo	r (some) a	ccommodation.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	They'll You'll Carta's I want If you to	tell you all you easily recognise English has in to write down y want to leave e e is unemploye	yet the job. She hasn't g want to know. They'il g a Alan. He's got green _ nproved. She has made your address. Have you arly, you have to ask for d at the moment. He is do. So I asked Jack for	got	ty of	?
69.3 l	n this ex	xercise you hav	ve to write what you wo	ould say in t	h <b>ese</b> situa	tions. Each time
1 2 3 4 5	You sa The we You a examin You we ask you You ar beautif	bags. You say: Have of into the touristy: I'd like	ave just arrived at the so you got any luggage? st office. You want to k ful. You say: Whatschool. You want your you say: Can you give news on television but time	teacher to me you don't kn	advice y	see in the town
ΚF	<b>Y</b>					
	<u> </u>	·				
;	2 very 3 troub	good weather				
. (	5 some 6 job					<del>.</del> .
	7 does 3 journ 9 fumit	еу				
	10 comp 11 some 12 expe					

- 69.2 1 experience / any experience / much experience / enough experience
  - 2 information
  - 3 hair
  - 4 progress / some progress / a lot of progress
  - 5 any paper / some paper / a piece of paper
  - 6 permission (not "the permission")
  - 7 work / some work (not "a work")
  - 8 \_advice / some advice / his advice
- 69.3: 1 I'd like some information about places to see in the town.
  - 2 What beautiful weather! / What a beautiful day!
  - 3 Can you give me some advice about which examinations to take?
    / ... about which examinations I should take?
  - 4 What time is the news on (television)?
  - 5 What a beautiful view! / What beautiful scenery!

# BÀI 70: COUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từ đếm được, đi với A/AN và SOME)

Danh từ có thể thuộc loại đếm được (countable) hoặc không đếm được (uncountable). Đối với danh từ không đếm được, xin xem bài 69.

a) Sau đây là một số danh từ đếm được (countable nouns):

dog (chó)

. umbrella (cái dù)

Job (việc làm)

suggestion (lời để nghi)

giri (cð gái)

Danh từ đếm được là những thứ mà ta có thể đếm được. Chúng ta có thể dùng chúng ở hình thức số nhiều (plural):

two

dogs six

jobs

some girls

many suggestions

- b) Trước các danh từ đếm được số ít (singular countable nouns), bạn có thể dùng a / an:
  - That's a good suggestion. (Đó là một để nghị hay).
  - Do you need an umbrella? (Ban có cần một cái dù không?)

Bạn không thể dùng các danh từ đếm được số ít một mình (không có a/an/the/my v.v... đi kèm):

- I'm looking for a job. (không dùng "t'm looking for job")
   (Tôi đang tìm việc làm).
- Be careful of the dog. (không dùng "Be careful of dog") (Hây coi chừng con chó).
- I've got a headache. (Tôi bị nhức đầu).
- Would you like a cigarette? (Anh có muốn hút thuốc không?)

Về a / an và the, xem bài 71.

- c) Chúng ta thường dùng a / an + danh từ khi chúng ta muốn nói vật gì / ai đó là gì, hay vật gì / ai đó như thể nào:
  - A dog is an animal. (Chó là một loài động vật).
  - This is a really beautiful house. (Đây quả thật là một ngôi nhà đẹp).
  - What a lovely dress! (Chiếc áo mới đẹp làm sao!)
  - Tom is a very nice person. (Tom là một người rất từ tế).
  - Jack has got a big nose. (Jack có cái mũi to).

Hãy nhớ dùng a / an với các danh từ chỉ nghế nghiệp:

- Tom's father is a doctor. (không dùng "Tom's father is doctor") (Cha của Tom là bác sĩ).
- I wouldn't like to be an English teacher.
   (Tôi không thích trở thành giáo viên tiếng Anh).

Trong các câu sau chúng ta chỉ dùng các danh từ đếm được số nhiều (plural countable nouns) một mình (không dùng với some):

- Tom's parents are very nice people. (Cha me Tom là những người rất tử tế).
- Ann has got blue eyes. (Anh có đôi mắt xanh).

- What awful shoes! (Thật là một đôi giày đáng ghét!)
- Dogs are animals. (Chó là súc vật).
- Are most of your triends students?
   (Hâu hết các bạn của anh đều là sinh viên phải không?)
- d) Chúng ta cũng dùng some với các danh từ đếm được số nhiều. Some = a number of (một số)/ a few of (một vài) (nhưng chúng ta không biết chính xác bao nhiều):
  - I've seen some good films recenty. (không dùng "i've seen good films")
     (Gần đây tôi đã xem một số phim rất hay).
  - Some friends of mine are coming to stay at the week-end.
     (Môt vài người bạn của tôi sẽ đến đây nghỉ vào cuối tuấn).

Đừng dùng some khi ban nói về sư vật một cách tổng quát / chung chung

- I love bananas. (không nói "some bananas") (Tối thích chuối).
   Đôi khi bạn có thể dùng some hoặc bỏ nó đi cũng được:
- There are (some) eggs in the fridge if you're hungry.
   (Néu bạn đói thì có trứng trong tủ lạnh đấy).

Về some và any, xem bài 84.

- e) Bạn phải dùng some khi bạn muốn hàm ý some but not all / not many, v.v... (một vài nhưng không nhiều / không phải tất cả...)
  - Some children learn very quickly.
     (Một số đừa trẻ (không phải tất cả) học rất nhanh).
  - Some policemen in Britain carry guns but most of them don't.
     (Một số cảnh sát ở Anh có mang súng nhưng phần lớn thì không mang).

# **UNIT 70: Exercises**

Ex	ample:	an ant? It's an insect.	ants? bees? They are insects.
1	a cauli	iflower? It's	
2	a pige	on? It	
3			
4	a skys	craper?	**************************************
5	_		y
6			i?
An	d who i	were these people?	
Ex	ample:	Beethoven? He was a composers.	oser. Beethoven? Bach? They were
7	Pele?	He was	
8	Shake	speare? He	

	9	Einsiein?
	10	Marilyn Monroe?
	11	Kennedy? Johnson? Nixon? They
	12	Elvis Presley? John Lennon?
<del></del>	2 N	ow you have to read about someone's job and then write what his or her job is.
	Exa	ample: Ron flies aeroplanes. <u>He's a pilot.</u>
	1	Vera types letters etc. in an office. She is
	2	Tim arranges people's holidays for them. He
	3	Stella looks after patients in hospital. She
	Mary teaches mathematics.	
	5	Martha directs films.
	6	John translates what people are saying from one language into another so that they can understand each other.
		can understand each other.
70.	3 N	ow you have to put in a l an or some or leave a space (without a word).
	EX	amples: I've seen some good films recently. Have you got a headache?
		Are most of your friendsv students?
	1	Have you got camera?
	2	Would you like to be actor.
	3	Bill's got big feet.
	4	Do you collect stamps?
	5	Tom always gives Ann flowers on her birthday.
	6	Those are really nice trousers. Where did you get them?
	7	What beautiful garden!
	8	What lovely children!
	9	birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
	10	Jack has got very long legs, so he's fast runner.
	11	You needvisa to visit foreign countries, but not all of them.
		I'm going shopping. I'm going to get new clothes.
		Jane is teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
		When we reached the city centre, shops were still open
		but most of them were already closed.
	15	Do you enjoy going to
		When I was child, I used to be very shy.
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

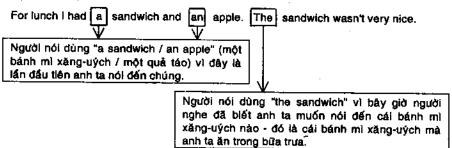
- 70. 1 1 It's a vegetable.
  - 2 It's a bird.
  - 3 It's a flower.

- 4 It's a (very) tall building.
- 5 They are planets.
- 6 They are rivers.
- 7 He was a footballer.
- 8 He was a playwright / a writer / a poet.
- 9 He was a scientist / a physicist.
- 10 She was a film-star / an actress.
- 11 They were American presidents.
- 12 They were singers / musicians.
- 70.2 1 She is a typist / a secretary.
  - 2 He is a travel agent.
  - 3 She is a nurse.
  - 4 She is a mathematics teacher.
  - 5 She is a film director.
  - 6 He is an interpreter.
- 70.3 1 a
  - 2 an
  - 3 -
  - 4 -
  - 5 some or -
  - 6 -
  - 7 a
  - 8 .
  - 9 Some
  - 10 -... a (fast runner)
  - 11 a... some
  - 12 some
  - 13 a... -
  - 14 some
  - 15 -
  - 16 a

# BÀI 71:

# A / AN VÀ THE

a) Hãy xem thí dụ sau:



#### Sau đây là một số thí dụ khác:

- There was a man talking to a woman outside my house. The man look English but I think the woman was foreign.
  - (Bên ngoài nhà tôi có một người đàn ông đang nói chuyện với một phụ nữ. Người đàn ông trông có vẻ là người Anh, nhưng tôi nghĩ bà kia là người ngoại quốc).
- When we were on holiday, we stayed at a hotel. In the evenings, sometimes we had dinner at the hotel and sometimes in a restaurant. (Khi chúng tôi đi nghỉ, chúng tôi ở tại một khách sạn. Vào buổi tối, thỉnh thoảng chúng tôi ăn tối ở khách sạn và thình thoảng đi ăn ở một nhà hàng).
- I saw a film last night. The film was about a soldier and a beautiful girl. The soldier was in love with the girl but the girl was in love with a teacher. So the soldier shot the teacher and married the girl.
  - (Tối hôm qua tôi xem một bộ phim. Bộ phim kể về một người lính và một cô gái xinh đẹp. Người lính yêu cô gái nhưng cô gái lại yêu một thấy giáo. Vì thế người lính đã bắn chết thấy giáo và cưới cô gái no).
- b) Chúng ta dùng a/an khi người nghe không biết đích xác chúng ta muốn nói đến cái nào. Chúng ta dùng the khi cái mà ta muốn nói đến đã rõ ràng ai cũng biết:
  - Tom sat down on a chair.
    - (Tom ngổi xuống một chiếc ghế). (Chúng ta không biết là chiếc ghế nào).
  - Tom sat down on the chair nearest the door.
     (Tom ngôi xuống chiếc ghế gần của nhất). (Chúng ta biết dịch xác đó tà chiếc ghế nào).
  - Ann is looking for a job.
     (Ann đang tìm một việc làm). (Chúng tạ không biết cụ thể đó là công việc gi).
  - Did Ann get the job she applied for?

    (Ann có nhận được công việc mà có ấy đã xin không?) (Một công việc cụ thể).
  - Have you got a car?
    (Anh có xe hơi không?) (Không nói đến chiếc xe cụ thể nào)
  - I cleaned the car yesterday.
     (Tôi đã lau xe ngày hôm qua). (Một chiếc xe cụ thể xe của tôi).

- c) Chúng ta dùng the khi tình huống đã rõ ràng là chúng ta muốn nói đến vật / người nào. Thí dụ, trong một căn phòng, chúng ta nói đến "the light/the floor/the ceiling/the door/the carpet" v.v... (đèn/sắn nhà/trắn nhà/cửa/tấm thảm v.v...). Hãy xem các thí dụ sau:
  - Can you turn off the light, please? (= the light in this room)
     (Ban làm do tắt đèn đi được không?) (đèn trong phòng này)
  - Where is the toilet, please? (= the toilet in this house)
     (Cho hỗi nhà vê sinh ở đầu?) (nhà vê sinh trong nhà này)
  - The postman was late this morning. (= our usual postman)
     (Sáng nay người đưa thư đến trễ). (người đưa thư thường khi của chúng tôi)
  - I took a taxi to the station (= the station of that town)
     (Tôi đã đi taxi đến nhà ga). (nhà ga của thành phố đó)
  - We got to the airport just time for our flight.
     (Chúng tôi đến sản bay vừa kịp giờ bay).

Cũng tương tự như vậy với: the police/the fire - brigade/the armfy.

Chúng ta cũng dùng: the bank, the post office.

I must go to the bank to change some money and then I'm going to the post office to buy some stamps. (Tôi phải đến ngân hàng để đổi một ít tiến rồi sau đó tôi sẽ ghé bưu điện để mua vài con tem). (người nói thường nghĩ đến một ngân hàng hoặc một bưu điện cụ thể nào đó)

Chúng ta cũng nói the doctor, the dentist.

John isn't very well. He has gone to the doctor. (= his doctor)
 (John không được khỏe lắm. Anh ta đã đi bác si). (bác sĩ riêng của anh ta).

Về mạo từ the, hãy xem các bài 72-77.

# **UNIT 71: Exercises**

.1	In this exercise you have to put in alan or the.
E	xample: There was a man and a woman in the room. The man was English but the woman looked foreign. She was wearing a fur coat.
1	This morning I bought newspaper and magazine newspaper is in my bag but I don't know where magazine is.
2	My parents have cat and dog dog never bites cat but cat often scratches dog.
3	I saw accident this morning car crashed into wall driver of car was not hurt but car was quite badly damaged.
4	When you turn into Lipson Road, you will see three houses red one, blue one and white one. I live in white one.
5	We live in old house in middle of the village. There is beautiful garden behind house roof of

71.2 H	ere again you have to put in alan or the.				
Ex	amples: I'm looking for a job. Did Ann get the job she applied for?				
1	Would you like apple?				
2					
3	We live in small flat near centre of the city.				
4 Have you finished with book I lent you last week?					
5	We went out for meal last night restaurant we went to was excellent.				
6	Did police findperson who stole your bicycle?				
7	This is a nice house. Has it got garden?				
8	It was warm and sunny, so we decided to sit in garden.				
9	This morning I had boiled egg and toast for breakfast.				
10 President of the United States is elected every four years.					
	As I was walking along the street, I saw 10 note on pavement.				
12 I went into the shop and asked to speak to manager.					
	"Have you got car?" "No, I've never had car in my life".				
14	There's no need to buy any milk milkman brings it every morning.				
71.3 A	low you have to complete these sentences using the + noun.				
Ex	ample: It was getting dark in the room, so I turned on the light.				
1	There were no chairs so we all had to sit on				
2	As soon as I saw the fire, I called				
3	We didn't have any stamps, so we had to go to				
4	I had a toothache, so I made an appointment with				
5	Ann had to catch a train, so I took her to				
6	When we found that someone had broken into our house, we called				
7	Bill wasn't feeling well, so he went to				
8	We didn't have any money, so we had to go to				
9	The plane was delayed, so we had to wait at for three hours.				
•	The provide trace acting at the fraction and acting acting and acting a				

- 71.1 1 This morning I bought a newspaper and a magazine. The newspaper is in my bag but I don't know where the magazine is.
  - 2 My parents have a cat and a dog. The dog never bites the cat but the cat often scratches the dog.
  - 3 I saw an accident this morning. A car crashed into a wall. The driver of the car was not hurt but the car was quite badly damaged.
  - 4 When you turn into Lipson Road, you will see three houses: a red one, a blue one and a white one. I live in the white one.
  - 5 We live in an old house in the middle of the village. There is a beautiful garden behind the house. The roof of the house is in very bad condition.

- 71.2 1 an
  - 2 the
  - 3 a... the
  - 4 the
  - 5 a... The
  - 6 the... the
  - 7 a
  - 8 the
  - 9 a
  - 10 The
  - 11 a... the
  - 12 the
  - 13 a... a
  - 14 The
- 71.3 1 the floor
  - 2 the fire-brigade
  - 3 the post office
  - 4 the dentist
  - 5 the station
  - 6 the police
  - 7 the doctor
  - 8 the bank
  - 9 the airport

# **BÀI 72:** Mạo từ THE (1)

Về sự khác biệt giữa the và a / an, xin xem bài 71.

- a) Chúng ta dùng the... khi số lượng của thữ gì đó chỉ là một;
  - What is the longest river in the world? (there is only longest river)
     (Con sông dài nhất trên thế giới là con sông nào?)
     (Chỉ có một con sông dài nhất trên thế giới).
  - We went to the most expensive restaurant in town.
     (Chúng tôi đã đi ăn tại nhà hàng sang trọng nhất trong thành phố).
  - The only television programme he watches is the news.
     (Chương trình truyền hình duy nhất mà anh ta xem là tin tức).
  - Paris is the capital of France.
    - (Paris là thủ độ của Pháp).
  - Everyone left at the end of the meeting. (Mọi người đều ra về vào cuối buổi họp).
  - The earth goes round the sun.
     (Trái đất quay chung quanh mặt trời).
     Chúng ta cũng nói: the moon / the world / the universe).
- b) Chúng ta nói: the sea / the sky / the ground / the country / the countryside:
  - Would you rather live in a town or in the country?
     (Anh thich sống ở thành thị hay ở miền quê hơn?)
  - Don't sit on the ground! It's wet.
     (Đừng ngôi xuống đất! Đất còn ướt).
  - We looked up at all the stars in the sky.
     (Chúng tôi nhìn lên các ngôi sao trên bầu trởi).

Chúng ta nói **go to sea / be at sea** (không có the) khi ý nghĩa là "đi biển / làm một cuộc hành trình trên biển".

Ken is a seaman. He spends most of his life at sea.
 (Ken là một thủy thủ. Anh ta sống phần lớn cuộc đời mình trên biển).

Nhưng: I would love to live near the sea (không nói "near sea")
(Tôi thích sống gắn vùng biển).

Chúng ta nói **space** (không nói "the space") khi chúng ta muốn nói đến không gian trong vũ trụ:

There are millions of stars in space. (không nói "in the space")
 (Có hàng triệu ngôi sao trong không gian).

Nhưng: He tried to park his car but the space wasn't big enough.

(Anh ta cổ gắng đậu xe nhưng chỗ trống không đủ để đầu).

c) Cinema / theatre / radio / television:

Chúng ta nói the cinema / the theatre:

- We went to the cinema last night.
   (Tối hôm qua chúng tôi đi xem phim).
- Do you often go to the theatre?
   (Ban có thường đi xem kịch không?)

Hãy lưu ý rằng khi chúng ta nói "the cinema / the theatre", thường không nhất thiết phải hiểu là một rạp chiếu bóng hay một rạp hát cụ thể nào:

Chúng ta thường nói the radio:

- We often listen to the radio. (Chung tôi thường nghe đài).
- I heard the news on the radio. (Tôi nghe tin đó trên đài).

Nhưng chúng ta thường nói television (không có the):

- We often watch television. (Chung tôi thường xem tí-vi).
- I watched the news on television. (Tôi xem tin tức trên ti-vi).

Nhung: Can you turn off the television, please? (= the television set)

(Ban làm ơn tắt giữm ti-vi được không?) (= cái ti vi mà bạn đang xem)

- d) Meals (các bữa ăn): Chúng ta thường không dùng the với tên bữa ăn.
  - What time is lunch? (Máy giờ thì ăn trưa?).
  - We had dinner in a restaurant. (Chúng tôi đã ăn tối tại một nhà hàng).
  - What did you have for breakfast? (Ban đã ăn g) trong bữa điểm tâm ?)
  - Ann invited me to (for) dinner. (Ann đã mời tôi đi ăn tối).

Nhưng chúng ta nói a meal:

We had a meal in restaurant.
 (Chúng tôi đã dùng bữa tại một nhà hàng).

Chúng ta cũng dùng a khi có tính từ (adjective) đứng trước lunch / breakfast v.v...

Thank you. That was a very nice lunch.
 (Xin cám ơn. Thật là một bữa ăn trưa rất thú vị).

Để biết thêm về the, xem các bài 71,73-7.

## **UNIT 72: Exercises**

1	xample: "Was it a good film?" "Yes, it was the best film I've ever seen".  "Is it a big hotel?" "Yes, it isin the city".
2	"Is he a rich man?" "Yes, he is
3	
4	"Is it a cheap restaurant?" "Well, it isyou will find".
5	
	In this exercise you have to put in a l an or the. Sometimes you don't need either word
	In this exercise you have to put in a I an or the. Sometimes you don't need either word you leave it blank. (If necessary see Unit 71 for a I an and the).
	In this exercise you have to put in a I an or the. Sometimes you don't need either word
	In this exercise you have to put in a I an or the. Sometimes you don't need either word you leave it blank. (If necessary see Unit 71 for a I an and the).  xamples: We went to the most expensive restaurant in town.  Do you want to watch I television this evening?

3	3	The Sovie	t Union was	first country to send	a man intospace.		
4	ļ				r atcinema ?		
5	5	After		unch, we went for a walk i	oy sea.		
$\epsilon$	3	I'm not ver	ry hungry. I had	big breakfas	t.		
7	7	John was	party.				
6		Tim fives in small village in country.					
٤				try in South America			
1				radio. In fact I haven't go			
					n shone brightly in sky.		
		day.					
				est mountain in	-		
1	14	We don't	go to the	atre very much these day	ys. In fact, in town		
				theatre.			
1	15	It was a lo	ng voyage. We w	ere at sea	for four weeks.		
1	6	l prefer sw	imming in	sea to swimming	in pools.		
1	17	Can you to	urn	television down, please?	ft's a bit loud.		
				<b>-""•</b> ""•			
72.3	He	ere are son	ne things Tom did	yesterday. Write a senten	ce for each.		
1	Moi	rning:	8.00 breakfast	8.30-9.00 radio	9.30 walk/country		
,	4fte	ernoon:	1.00 lunch	2.30 cinema			
ı	Eve	ning:	6.30 dinner	8.00-10.00 television			
1	ı	At 8 o'cloc	k he had breakfas	st.			
2	2	From 8.30	until 9.00 he liste	ned	······································		
3							
4							
5							
•	3	At 6.30	7 177 PE 177 107 NE 111 411 116 116 116 116 116 116				
7	7	From					
1/5		,			·		
KE	: Y	,					
72 1	1	the bigges	t hotel				
		the riches					
	_	the worst					
			est restaurant				
		the hottes		•	•		
72.2			. •.				
	2	The the					

3 ... the first country to send a man into space

- 4 on television or at the cinema
- 5 After lunch... by the sea.
- 6 a
- 7 the
- 8 a... the
- 9 a... The
- 10 the... a
- 11 a... The... the
- 12 to dinner
- 13 the... the
- 14 the... the... a
- 15 at sea
- 16 the
- 17 the (= the television set)
- 72.3 2 he listened to the radio.
  - 3 he went for a walk in the country.
  - 4 he had lunch.
  - 5 he went to the cinema.
  - 6 he had dinner.
  - 7 From 8.00 until 10.00 he watched television.

# BÀI 73: Mạo từ THE (2)

#### a) Hāy xem các câu sau:

- The rose is my favourite flower.
   (Hoa hông là loại hoa mà tôi yêu thích).
- The giraffe is the tallest of all animals.
  (Hươu cao cổ là loài cao nhất trong tắt cả thú vật).

Trong các ví dụ trên the... không ám chỉ một vật cụ thể nào. The rose = hoa hồng nói chung, the giraffe = hươu cao cổ nói chung. Chúng ta dùng the + a singular countable noun (danh từ đếm được số it) như trên để nói về một loài cây, một loài thứ v.v... Hãy lưu ý rằng bạn cũng có thể dùng một plural noun (danh từ số nhiều) không có the đi kèm.

Roses are my favourite flowers. (nhưng không nói "The roses..." - xem bài 74).
 (Hoa hông là loại hoa mà tôi yêu thích).

Chúng ta cũng dùng the + a singular countable noun (danh từ số ít) khị chúng tạ nói về một loại máy móc, một phát minh, v.v...

#### Thi du:

- When was the telephone invented?
   (Diện thoại được phát minh vào năm nào?)
- The bicycle is an excellent means of transport. (Xe đạp là một phương tiện đi lại tuyệt vài).

Chúng ta cũng dùng the trước tên các loại nhạc cụ:

- Can you play the guitar?
   (Ban biết chơi ghi-ta không?)
- The piano is my favourite instrument.
   (Dân piano là nhạc cụ mà tôi yêu thích).

#### b) The + adjective (tính từ)

Chúng ta dùng the với một số adjective (không có danh từ theo sau). Ý nghĩa luôn tuôn ở số nhiều (plural). Thí dụ the rich = người giàu có nói chung:

Do you think the rich should pay more taxes?
 (Anh có cho rằng người giàu phải động thuế nhiều hơn không?)

Chúng ta thường dùng the với các tính từ sau đây:

,			
the rich	the young	the sick	the unemployed
the poor	the blind	the dead	the injured
the old	the deaf	the disabled	

- That man over there is collecting for the blind.
   (Người đàn ông ở đẳng kia đạng quyên góp tiến giúp người mù).
- Why doesn't the government do more to help the unemployed?
   (Tại sao chính phủ không làm nhiều hơn nữa để giúp những người thất nghiệp?)

Các từ trong bảng liệt kê trên tuôn luôn ở số nhiều. Bạn không thể nói "a blind" hoặc "an unemployed", mà phải nói "a blind mạn", "an unemployed woman" y.y...

c) The + từ chỉ quốc tịch:

Bạn có thể dùng the với các tính từ chỉ quốc tịch (nationality adjectives) khi bạn muốn ám chỉ người dân (nói chung) của quốc gia đó.

Thí du:

- The French are famous for their food. (= the French people)
   (Người Pháp nổi tiếng về các món ăn của họ).
- Why do the English think they are so wonderful? (= the English people) (Tai sao người Anh lại cho rằng họ quá tuyệt với như vậy?)

Bạn có thể dùng the theo cách tương tự như trên với các từ chỉ quốc tịch sau:

the British	the Welsh	the Spanish	the Dutch
the English	the Irish	the French	the Swiss

Ngoài ra, ta cũng dùng the với các từ chỉ quốc tịch tận cùng bằng —ese (the Japanese / the Chinese v.v...)

Còn đối với các từ chỉ quốc tịch khác, bạn phải dùng một plural noun (danh từ số nhiều) tận cùng bằng -s:

(the) Russians (the) Ital

(the) Italians (the) Arabs

(the) Scots

(the) Turks

Xem các bài 71, 72, 74-77 để biết thêm về the.

## **UNIT 73: Exercises**

	inswer these questions about yourself and your favourite things. Use a dictionary if you n't know the English words you need.
Ex	rample: What is your favourite flower? the rose
1	What is your favourite tree?
2	Which bird do you like most?
3	What is your favourite car?
4	What is your favourite musical instrument?
1 2 3 4	low you have to make sentences from the words in brackets: (ample: (Mary / play / piano very well) Mary plays the piano very well.  (Jack / play / guitar very badly) Jack plays
73.3 E: 1 2 3	This time you have to complete these sentences about animals. Choose one of the words in brackets. Use a dictionary if you don't know these words.  xample: The giraffe is the tallest of all animals. (elephant/lion/giraffe)  is the fastest of all animals. (tiger/cheetah/elephant)  is a mammal but it lives in the sea. (octopus/elephant/whale)  is the largest living bird. (eagle/sparrow/ostrich)

1	rich sick blind po	sing the with these adjectives or injured unemp	loyed			
_		f reading and writing by touc				
1	Many people were killed i	n the plane crash. The bod vere take to hospital.	ies of were taken			
2						
3	Those people with jobs he	ve enough money but life is	***			
4	Acres bee been a little jobs tra	ive enough money but me is	not so easy for			
73 5 W	Vhat do you call the people of	all her life. She has spent he	rifie carring for			
- EX	amples: England? the Engl					
1	Britain?	2 Ireland?	3 Wales?			
4	Scotland?	5 Spain?				
7	Japan?	8 Germany?				
1.0	Switzerland?	11 America (the US)?				
	and your country?		12 die Hellellalius!			

73.1 If possible check your answers with	73.4	1	the dead The Injured
someone who speaks English.		2	the rich the poor
Here are some example answers:		3	the unemployed
1 the willow		4	the sick
2 the eagle			
3 the Volkswagen Polo	73.5	1	the British
4 the flute		2	the Irish
		3	the Welsh
73.2 1 Jack plays the guitar very badly.		4	the Scots
2 Jill plays the violon in an orchestra.		5	the Spanish (or the Spaniards)
3 I'd like to learn to play the piano.		6	the French
4 Do you play the guitar? / Can you		7	the Japanese
play the guitar?		8	the Germans
<b>70.0</b> 4 <b>71</b> 4		9	the Chinese
73.3 1 The cheetah		10	the Swiss
2 The whale		11	the Americans
3 The ostrich		12	the Dutch
			777

# BÀI 74: PLURAL AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được - có hoặc không có the)

- a) Chúng ta không dùng the trước một danh từ khi chúng ta muốn nói đến một cái gl đó một cách chung chung (tổng quát):
  - liove flowers. (không nói "the flowers").
     (Tôi thích hoa). (flowers = hoa nói chung, không phải một loài hoa đặc biệt nào).

- I'm afraid of dogs. (Tôi sợ chó).

- Doctors are paid more than teachers.
   (Bác sĩ được trả lượng cao hơn giáo viên).
- Crime is a problem in most big cities. (không nói "the crime")
   (Tội ác là một vấn để ở hầu hết các thành phố lớn).
- Life has changed a lot since I was a boy. (không nói "the life")
   (Cuộc sống đã thay đổi nhiều từ khi tôi còn bé).
- I prefer classical music to pop music. (không nói "the classical/pop music") (Tôi thích nhạc cổ điển hơn nhạc pop).
- Do you like English food / French cheese / Swiss chocolate?
   (Ban có thích mòn ăn Anh / phó mát Pháp / sô-cô-la Thụy Sĩ không?)
- My favourite subject at school was history / physics / English.
   (Môn học mà tôi ưa thích ở trường là lịch sử / vật lý / tiếng Anh).
- I like football / athletics / skiing / chess.
   (Tôi thích bóng đá / điển kinh / trượt tuyết / cỡ).
- Do you collect stamps?
   (Ban có sưu tập tem không?)

Chúng ta nói most people / most dogs v.v... (không nói "the most..."):

- Most people like George. (không nói "the most people" xem thêm bài 82)
   (Hấu hết mọi người đầu thích George).
- b) Chúng ta dùng the... khi chúng ta muốn nói đến một cái gì đó cụ thể / đặc thù (particular):
  - I like your garden. The flowers are beautiful. (không nói "Flowers are...")
     (Tôi thích khu vưởn của anh. Hoa ở đó rất đẹp).
     (the flowers = hoa trong khu vườn của anh, không phải hoa nói chung)
  - · Children learn a lot from playing. (Trẻ con học được nhiều thứ trong lúc chơi đùa).

(Trẻ con nói chung)

nhưng: - We took the children to the zoo. (Chúng tôi dẫn bọn trẻ đi sở thú).

(= một bọn trẻ cụ thể nào đó, có thể chính là con của người nói)

Salt is used to flavour food. (Muối được dùng để nêm thức ân).

nhưng: - Can you pass the salt, please?
(Làm ơn đưa cho tôi lọ muối). (= lọ muối trên bàn)

 I often listen to music. (Tôi thường nghe nhạc). nhưng: - The film wasn't very good but I liked the music. (Bộ phim không hay lắm nhưng tội thích phần nhạc nên). (= nhạc trong bộ phim). All cars have wheels. (Tất cả xe hơi đều có bánh). nhưng: - All the students in the class like their teacher. (Tất cả học sinh trong lớp đều thích giáo viên của họ). Are English people friend? (Naười Anh có thân thiên không?) (= người Anh nói chung) nhưng Are the English people you know friendly? (Những người Anh mà bạn quen biết có thân thiên không?) (Chỉ những người Anh mà bạn quen, không phải người Anh nói chung). c) Sự khác nhau giữa "cái nói chung (general)" và "cái cụ thể / đặc thủ (particular)" không phải lúc nào cũng rõ ràng. Hãy xem những câu sau: I like working with people. (Tối thích làm việc với con người). (= người nói chung). Hike working with people who are lively. (Tôi thích làm việc với những người hoạt bát). (= không phải với mọi người, nhưng những người hoạt bát vẫn được xem là một ý tưởng chung chung, chưa cụ thể). nhưng: - I like the people I work with. (Tôi thích shững người đang cùng làm việc với tôi). (= một nhóm người cụ thể). Do you like coffee? (Anh có thích cà phê không?) (= cà phê nói chung) Do you like strong black coffee? (Anh có thích cả phê đen đậm không?) (không phải bắt cứ loại cà phê nào, nhưng cả phê đen đậm vẫn là một ý tưởng chung chung, chưa cụ thể). nhưng: - Did you like the coffee we had with our meal last night? (Anh có thích loại cà phê chúng ta ướng trong bữa ăn tối hôm qua không?) (= một loai cà phê cu thể). **UNIT 74: Exercises** 74.1 In this exercise you have to write whether you like or dislike something. Begin your sentences with: I like .../I don't like .../I love .../I hate .../I don't mind .../I'm (not) Interested in .../I have no opinion about ... Example: (very hot weather) Ldon't like very hot weather. (football) 2 (small children) 3 (cats) \_\_\_\_\_ 4 (modern art)

5 (horror films)

74.2 What do you think about these things? Write a sentence about each one. Begin with: in my opinion .../I think .../I don't think .../I don't agree with .../I'm against .../I'm in favour of ...
Example: (divorce) Lthink divorce is something necessary.

Example: (divorce) Lthink divorce is something necessary.		
1	(terrorism)	
2	(smoking)	
	(examinations)	
	(capital punishment)	
	(nuclear power)	

74.3 In this exercise you have to choose the correct form, with or without the.

Examples: I'm afraid of dogs / the sogs. Can you pass soft / the salt, please?

- 1 Apples / The apples are good for you.
- 2 Look at apples / the apples on that tree! They're very large.
- 3 Women / The women are often better teachers than men / the men.
- 4 In Britain coffee / the coffee is more expensive than tea / the tea.
- We had a very nice meal in that restaurant. <u>Cheese / The cheese</u> was especially good.
- 6 Most people / The most people still believe that marriage / the marriage and family life / the family life are the basic of our society.
- 7 They got married but marriage/the marriage wasn't successful.
- 8 I know someone who wrote a book about life/the life of Gandhi.
- 9 Life / The life would be very difficult without electricity / the electricity.
- 10 Skiing / The skiing is my favourite sport but i also like swimming / the swimming.
- 11 Second World War / The Second World War ended in 1945.
- 12 Do you know people / the people who live next door?
- 13 Are you interested in art / the art or architecture / the architecture?
- 14 Ail books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
- 15 Don't stay in that hotel. Beds / The beds are very uncomfortable.
- 16 Two of the biggest problems facing our society are <u>crime / the crime</u> and <u>unemployment / the unemployment</u>.
- 17 I hate violence / the violence.

### **KEY**

74.1 If possible check your answers with someone who speaks English.

Here are some example answers:

- 1 | hate football.
- 2 like small children.
- 3 I don't mind cars.
- 4 I have no opinion about modern art.
- 4 I don't like horror films.

- 74.2 1 In my opinion terrorism is stupid.
  - 2 I think smoking is stupid too.
  - 3 I'm against examinations.
  - 4 I don't think capital punishment is effective.
  - 5 I'm in favour of nuclear power.

#### 74.3 1 Apples

- 2 the apples
- 3 Women ... men
- 4 coffee ... tea
- 5 The cheese
- 6 Most people ... marriage ... family life
- 7 the marriage
- 8 the life
- 9 Life ... electricity
- 10 Skiing ... swimming
- 11 The Second World War
- 12 the people
- 13 art... architecture
- 14 All the books
- 15 The beds
- 16 crime ... unemployment
- 17 violence

# BÀI 75: hospital / the hospital, school / the school v.v...

#### a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu với hospital sau:

- Jack had an accident a few days ago.
   (Cách đây vài ngày Jack gặp tai nạn).
- He had to go to hospital.
   (Anh ta phải vào bệnh viện).
- He is still in hospital now.
   (Hiện thời anh ta vẫn còn nằm viện).
- Jill went to the hospital to visit him. (Jill vào bệnh viện thăm anh ta).
- She is at the hospital now. (Bây giờ cô ấy đang ở bệnh viện).

Ai đó **goes to hospital** hoặc **is in hospital** (*vào bệnh viện*, *nằm viện*) nếu anh ta bị bệnh hoặc bị thương. Khi đó chúng ta không nhất thiết phải nghĩ đến một bệnh viện cụ thể nào; chúng ta nghĩ đến ý niệm về bệnh viện nói chung.

Nhưng Jill không bị bệnh hoặc bị thương gì cả. Cô ấy không nằm viện (in hospital). Cô ấy đến bệnh viện để thăm Jack (như một người khách). Chúng ta nói "Jill went to the hospital / Jill at the hospital" vì chúng ta muốn nói đến một bệnh viện cụ thể hẳn hoi, đó là bệnh viện mà Jack đang nằm điều tri.

#### b) Prison, school, university, college, church:

Chúng ta nói: "a criminal goes to prison" (một tên tội phạm vào tù); "a child go to school" (một đứa bé đi học); "a student go to university / college" (một sinh viên đi học). Chúng ta không dùng the khi chúng ta đã nghĩ đến những nơi này (prison, school, university, college, church...) một cách chung chung và đúng theo công dụng của chúng:

- After I leave school, I want to go to university. (as a pupil / student)
   (Sau khi tôi ra trường, tôi muốn vào đại học).
- Why aren't the children at school today? (as pupils)
   (Tai sao hôm nay mấy đứa trẻ không đi học?)
- Mrs. Kelly goes to church every Sunday. (for a religious service)
   (Bà Kelly đi nhà thờ vào mỗi ngày Chủ nhật). (để dự lễ)
- Ken's brother is in prison for robbery. (he is a prisoner)
   (Anh trai của Ken đang ngối tù vì tội ăn cướp).

Chúng ta nói "be **in** prison", nhưng phải nói "be at school / university / college". Tuy nhiên, "in church" và "at church" cả hai đều có thể dùng được.

Bây giờ hãy xem các thí dụ với the sau đây:

- Mr Kelly went to the school to meet his daughter's teacher.
   (Ông Kelly đến trường để gặp thầy giáo của con gái ông ta). (Ông ta không đến đó như một học sinh).
- Excuse me, where is the university, please?
   (Xin lỗi, cho hỏi trường đại học ở đâu?) (một ngôi trường cụ thể).

- The workmen went to the church to repair the roof.
   (Những người thợ đến nhà thờ để sửa mái nhà). (họ không phải đến để dự lễ)
- Kent went to the prison to visit his brother.
   (Ken vào nhà từ để thăm người anh trai). (Ken đến như một người khách, chứ không phải là tù nhăn; anh đến nhà từ nơi mà người anh trai đạng bị nhốt).

#### c) bed, work, home:

Chúng ta nói: "go to bed / be in bed" v.v... (không nói "the bed"):

- It's time to go to bed now.
   (Đã đến giờ đi ngủ rồi).
- Is Tom still in bed? (Tom van còn đạng năm trên giương à?)

"Go to work / be at work / start work / finish work" v.v... (không nói "the work"):

- Why isn't Ann at work today? (Tại sao hôm nay Ann không đi làm?)
- What time do you finish work? (Ban xong việc lúc mấy giớ?)

"Go home / come home / be at home / stay at home" v.v... (không nói "the home"):

- Come on! Let's go home. (Thôi nào! Chúng ta hãy về nhà). 🔔
- Will you be at home tomorrow? (Ngày mai bạn có ở nhà không?)

Không dùng giới từ đi kèm với: go / come / get / arrive home. (không nói "to home").

### **UNIT 75: Exercises**

75.1	C	omplete these sentences using the words in this unit.
	Exa	ample: Two people were injured in the accident and were taken to hospital.
	1	I was very tired and it was very late, so I went
;	2	Fred robbed a bank but was caught by the police. He was sent
	3	Tom doesn't often go out in the evenings. He usually stays
	4	Jill isn't a religious person. She never goes
1	5	In Britain, children from the age of five have to go
	6	Children sometimes get into trouble if they are late for
	7	There is a lot of traffic in the morning when everybody is going
1	8	Mrs. Grimes has just had an operation. She is still
-	9	When David leaves school, he wants to study economics
	10	Bill never gets up before 9 o'clock. It's 8.30 now, so he is still
75.2	2 W	rite short answers to these questions.
	Exa	ample: If you wanted to meet your children's teachers, where would you go?  To the school.
	1	A friend of yours is in hospital. Where would you go to visit him?
	2	A friend of yours is in prison. Where would you go to visit him?
	3	A friend of yours is at church. If you wanted to meet him immediately after the service, where would you go?

75.3 This time you have to choose the correct form, with or without the.

Example: Ken's brother is in prison / the prison for robbery. ("prison" is correct)

- 1 Some children hate school / the school.
- 2 What time do your children finish school / the school?
- 3 After leaving <u>school</u> / <u>the school</u>, Nora worked as a cleaner is hospital / at the hospital.
- 4 My brother is very ill in hospital / the hospital.
- 5 All over the world, people are in prison / the prison because of their political beliefs.
- 6 The other day the fire-brigade had to go to prison / the prison to put out a fire.
- 7 On the way to London we passed through a small village with an old church. We stopped to visit church / the church. It was a beautiful building.
- 8 John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to <u>church / the church</u> every Sunday. John himself doesn't go to <u>church / the church</u>.
- 9 Every term parents are invited to <u>school / the school</u> to meet the teachers.
- 10 After work / the work, Ann usually goes home / to home.
- 11 Tom left university / the university without doing his examinations.
- 12 When Ann was ill, we all went to hospital / the hospital to visit her.
- 13. Hike to read in bed / the bed before going to sleep.
- 14 What time do you have to start work / the work tomorrow morning?
- 15 How many people go to university / the university in your country?

1	to bed (or I went home).	75.3	1	school
2	to prison		2	school
3	at home		3	school at the hospital (*)
4	to church		4	hospital
5	to school		5	prison
6	school		6	the prison
7	to work		7	the church
8	in hospital		8	church church
9	at university		9	the school
10	in bed		10	work home
			11	university
1	,		12	the hospital
_	•		13	bed
3	To the church.		14	work
	•		15	university
		and fo	e usu r peo	ally say "at the hospital" for visitors ople who work there. But patients are
	3 4 5 6 7 8 9	2 to prison 3 at home 4 to church 5 to school 6 school 7 to work 8 in hospital 9 at university 10 in bed 1 To the hospital. 2 To the prison.	2 to prison 3 at home 4 to church 5 to school 6 school 7 to work 8 in hospital 9 at university 10 in bed 1 To the hospital. 2 To the prison. 3 To the church.  (*) We and fo	2 to prison 2 3 at home 3 4 to church 4 5 to school 5 6 school 6 7 to work 7 8 in hospital 8 9 at university 9 10 in bed 10 1 To the hospital. 12 2 To the prison. 13 3 To the church. 14 (*) We usu

# BÀI 76: GEOGFRAPHICAL NAMES with and without THE (Sử dụng mạo từ THE với địa danh)

a) Lục địa (continents): Chúng ta không dùng the với tên các lục địa: South America Africa (không nói "the Africa") Asia Europe (Nam Mỹ) (châu Á) (châu Âu) (châu Phi) b) Quốc gia (countries) và tiểu bang (states). Thường thì chúng ta không dùng the với tên quốc gia và tên tiểu bang: West German France (không nói "the France") Japan (Tây Đức) (Nhat) (Pháp Texas Nigeria (Tếc-xát) (Nigêria) Nhưng chúng ta dùng the với những tên đi với những chữ như: "republic", "union", "kingdom", "states": the Soviet Union the German Federal Republic (Liên Xô) (cũ) (Công Hòa Liện Bang Đức) the Republic of Ireland the United States (of America) (Cộng hòa Ireland) (Hiệp chủng quốc Hoa Kỳ) the United Arab Emirates the United Kingdom (Liên hiệp các Tiểu vương quốc Ả-rập Thống nhất) (Vươna quốc Anh) Chúng ta cũng dùng the với tên số nhiều (plural names): The Philippines The Netherlands (Phi-lip-pin) (Hà Lan) c) Thành phố (cities): Chúng ta không dùng the với tên các thành phố / thị trấn / làng mac. Madrid Cairo (không nói "the Cairo") New York Giasgow Ngoại le: The Hague (ở Hà Lan) đ) Đảo (islands): Các quần đảo thường có tên số nhiều đi với the: The Canariea / The Canary Islands The Bahamas The British Isles Các đảo riêng biệt thường có tên số ít không đi với the: Island Easter Bermuda Corfu Sicily e) Vùng, miền (regions): Chúng ta nói: the Far East the Middle East (vùng Viễn Đôna) (vùng Trung Đồng) the west of Canada the south of Spain the north of England (miễn bắc nước Anh) (miến nam Tây Ban Nha) (miển tây Canada) (Nhưng: northern England / southern Spain / western Canada - không dùng the)

f) Núi (mountains): Các rặng núi thường có tên số nhiều di với the:

the Rocky Mountains / the Rockies

the Aips.

the Andes

	Nhưng các ngọn núi riêng (Mount) Everest	<b>) lẻ kh</b> ông đi với <b>the</b> : Ben Nevis (ở Scotland)	(Mount) Etpa			
g)	Hổ (lakes): Tên hổ thường	không đi với the:	•			
		Lake Constance				
h)	Tên đại dương (oceans) / the:	biển <i>(seas) /</i> sông <i>(river</i>	s) / kênh <i>(camals)</i> the	ường đi kèm với		
	the Atlantic (Ocean) (Đại Tây Dương) the Mediterrannean (Địa Trung Hải) the English Channel (Eo biển nước Anh)	the Indian Ocean * (Ấn Độ Dương) the Red Sea (Hồng Hải)				
	the Nile (sông Nile) the Suez Canal (kênh Suez)	the Amazon (Sông Amazon) the Panama Canal (kênh Panama)	the Thames (sông-Thames)	the Rhine (sông Rhine)		
	Ghi chú: Trên bản đổ, cá	c địa danh thường không	có the.			
U	NIT 76: Exercis	es				
76.	1 Read these sentences of than once). Correct the s	arefully. Some are corrected to the correct sentences where necessary	ct, but some need the	(perhaps more		
	Examples: Everest was fir		RIGHT			
	Milan is in nort	•	WRONG - the north of Italy.			
		anada and United States	-			
	<ol> <li>Africa is much larger to</li> <li>South of England is well</li> </ol>					
	4 We went to Spain for o					
	5 Ton has visited most o	***				
		to work as a reporter in N		*** 104 800 400 700 000 0		
	7 Next year we are going					
	8 Malta has been a repu					
	9 Nile is longest river in .					
	10 United Kingdom consist	sts of Great Britain and N	lorthern ireland.			
76.2	<ol> <li>Here are some geograph you need the, sometimes</li> </ol>	ly questions. You have to a not. Try and find out the	choose the right answers if you don't	wer. Sometimes know them.		
	Example: What is the longon Where is Bolivia? (Africation of the longon) Where is Ethiopia? (Association of the longon) Of which country is Ma	ca / South America / Nor sia / South America / Afric nila the capital?	th America)	**************************************		

4	Of which country is Stockholm the capital?
	(Norway / Denmark / Sweden)
5	Which country lies between Mexico and Canada? .
	(Venezuela / El Salvador / United States)
6	Which is the largest country in the world?
	(United States / China / Soviet Union)
7	Which is the largest continent?
	(Africa / South America / Asia)
8.	
	Mountains / Andes / Alps)
9	What is the name of the ocean between America and Asia?
	(Atlantic / Pacific / Indian Ocean)
10	What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia?
	(Atlantic / Pacific / Indian Ocean)
11	What is the name of the sea between England and France?
	(Mediterranean Sea / English Channel / French Sea)
12	What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe?
	(Black Sea / Red Sea / Mediterranean Sea)
13	What is the name of the sea between Britain and Norway?
	(Norwegian Sea / English Channel / North Sea)
14	Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade?
	(Rhine / Danube / Volga)
15	What joins the Atlantic and Pacific oceans?
	(Suez Canal / Panama Canal)

- 76.1 1 wrong Last year we visited Canada and the United States.
  - 2 right
  - 3 wrong The south of England is warmer than the north.
  - 4 wrong We went to Spain for our holidays and swam in the Mediterranean.
  - 5 right
  - 6 wrong A friend of mine used to work as a reporter in the Middle East.
  - 7 wrong Next year we are going skiing in the Swiss Alps.
  - 8 right
  - 9 wrong The Nile is the longest river in Africa.
  - 10 wrong The United Kingdom consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

- 76.2 1 South America
  - 2 Africa
  - 3 the Philippines
  - 4 Sweden
  - 5 the United States
  - 6 the Soviet Union
  - 7 Asia
  - 8 the Rocky Mountains (the Rockies)
  - 9 the Pacific (Ocean)
  - 10 the Indian Ocean
  - 11 the (English) Channel
  - 12 the Mediterranean (Sea)
  - 13 the North Sea
  - 14 the Danube
  - 15 the Panama Canal

### **BAL77: OTHER PROPER NAMES** with and without THE (Sử dụng mạo từ THE với các tên riêng khác)

a) Chúng ta thường không dùng the với tên đường phố / quảng trường (streets, roads, squares...):

Regent Street (không nói "the Regent")

Fifth Avenue

(đường Regent)

(Đại lộ số Năm)

Piccadilly Circus

Cromwell Road

Red Square

(Bùng binh Piccadilly)

(Đường Cromwell)

(Quảng trường Đỏ)

Có một vài ngoại lê, ví dụ như: "The Mati" (ở Luân Đôn).

b) Nhiều tên như tên sản bay (airports), trường đại học (universities) - bao gồm hai chữ:

Kennedy Airport (Sân bay Kennedy) Cambridge University (Đại học Cambridge)

Chữ thứ nhất thường là tên người (Kennedy) hoặc địa danh (Cambridge). Chúng ta thường không dùng the với những tên như thể. Các thí dụ khác:

Victoria station (không dùng "the...")

Edinburgh Castle (Lâu đài Edinburgh)

(Ga Victoria) Hyde Park

Westminster Abbey

Buckingham. Palace

(Công viên Hyde)

(Tu viên Westminster) (Cung điện Buckingham)

London Zoo

Canterbury Cathedral 1

(Sở thủ London)

(Thánh đường Canterbury)

Nhưng chúng ta lại nói "the White House" (Nhà trắng), "the Royal Palace" (Cung điện Hoàng gia) vì "white" và "royal" không phải là tên riêng.

Đây chỉ là qui tắc tổng quát, vẫn có những ngoại lệ. Hãy xem phần c về khách sạn v.v... và phần e) về tên gọi dùng với of.

c) Chúng ta thường dùng the trước tên của những nơi sau đây:

Khách san:

the Hilton (Hotel), the Station Hotel

Nhà hàng / quán rượu:

the Bombay Restaurant, the Red Lion (pub).

Nhà hát:

the Palace Theatre, the National Theatre.

Rap chiếu bóng: Viện bảo tàng / phòng trưng bày: the ABC, the Odeon, the Classic. the British Museum, the Tate Gallery.

Tuy nhiên, cũng vẫn có những ngoại lệ. Xem thêm phần d của bài này.

 d) Nhiều cửa tiêm, nhà hàng, khách sạn, ngân hàng v.v... được mang tên người sáng lập ra chúng. Những tên này tận cùng bằng s hoặc s'. Chúng ta không dùng the trước những tên này:

Cửa tiêm:

Selfridges (không dùng "the Selfridges), Harrods.

Nhà hàng:

Maxim's, Macdonalds, Luigi's Italian Restaurant.

Khách san: Claridge's.

Ngân hàng: Barclays Bank, Lloyds Bank.

Các nhà thở thường được đặt tên theo tên các thánh (St = Saint: Thánh): St John's Church St Paul's Cathedral.

c) Chúng ta dùng the trước tên các nơi chốn, công trình kiến trúc (places, buildings...):

the Bank of England (Ngân hàng Anh quốc). the Houses of Parliament (Lưỡng viện Quốc hội Anh). tine Tower of London the Great Wall of China (Vạn lý trường thành Trung quốc). the Museum of Modern Art (Bảo tàng Nghệ thuật hiện đại).

f) Chúng ta dùng the với tên các tờ báo:

the Times

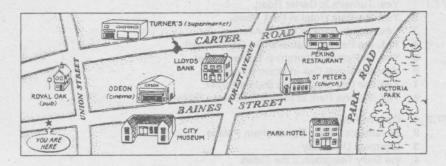
(Tháp Luân Đôn).

the Washington Post

the Evening Standard

# **UNIT 77: Exercises**

77.1 Use the map to answer the questions in the way shown. Write the name of the place and the street it is in. On maps we don't normally use the; in your sentences, use the if necessary.



Example: "Is there cinema near here?" "Yes, the Odeon in Baines Street".

 77.2 In this exercise you have to choose the correct form, with or without the.

Example: When we were in London, we visited the National Gallery / National Gallery.

- 1 The British Prime Minister lives in <u>Downing Street / the Downing Street.</u>
- One of the nicest parks in London is St James's Park / the St James's Park, which is very near Buckingham Palace / the Buckingham Palace.
- 3 Frank is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
- 4 Mr. Jenkins reads <u>Daily Telegraph</u> / the <u>Daily Telegraph</u> but his wife reads <u>Times</u> / the <u>Times</u>.
- 5 If you want to buy some new clothes, the shop I would recommend is <u>Harrison's</u> the Harrison's.
- 6 We flew from London to Orly Airport / the Orly Airport in Paris.
- 7 Tate Gallery / The Tate Gallery is the main modern art museum in London.
- 8 My local pub is called Prince of Wales / the Prince of Wales.
- 9 Have you ever visited Tower of London / the Tower of London?
- 10 "Which hotel are you staying at?" "At Sheraton / the Sheraton".
- 11 Diana and George got married in St Matthew's Church / the St Matthew's Church.
- 12 You must visit Science Museum / the Science Museum when you are in London.
- 13 Did you see the film at Classic / the Classic (cinema)?

- 77.1 1 Yes, Turner's in Carter Road.
  - 2 Yes, the Park Hotel in Park Road.
  - 3 Yes, Lloyds Bank in Forest Avenue.
  - 4 Yes, the Peking Restaurant in Carter Road.
  - 5 Yes, St Peter's (Church) in Baines Street.
  - 6 Yes, the Royal Oak in Union Street.
  - 7 Yes, the City Museum in Baines Street.
  - 8 Yes, Victoria Park at the end of Baines Street.
- 77.2 1 Downing Street
  - 2 St James's Park... Buckingham Palace
  - 3 Liverpool University
  - 4 the Daily Telegraph... the Times
  - 5 Harrison's
  - 6 Orly Airport
  - 7 The Tate Gallery
  - 8 the Prince of Wales
  - 9 the Tower of London
  - 10 the Sheraton
  - 11 St Matthew's Church
  - 12 the Science Museum
  - 13 the Classic

# BÀI 78: SINGULAR OR PLURAL? (Số ít hay số nhiều?)

a) Có những nouns (danh từ) chỉ được dùng ở số nhiều (plural). Thí dụ:

trousers (quần tây) jeans (quần gin) shorts (quần soác) pviamas (đổ ngủ) tiahts (vớ lót dài)

scissors

glasses / spectacles

(kéo) (kính đeo mắt)

Bạn cũng có thể dùng cụm từ a pair of... với những danh từ này:

- I need some new trousers, hay: I need a new pair of trousers. (Tôi cần một cái quần tây mới).
- b) Thường chúng ta không dùng từ person ở số nhiều ("persons"). Thay vào đó, ta thường dùng people:
- He is a nice person. (Anh ta là một người tử tế).
- They are nice people. (Ho là những người tử tế).
- c) Những danh từ sau đây tận cùng bằng -s nhưng thường không phải là danh từ số nhiều:

mathematics (toán)

physics (vật lý)

economics (kinh tế học) athletics (điển kinh)

avmnastics. (thể dục dụng cụ)

news

(tin tức)

- Athletics is my favourite sport. (Điển kinh là môn thể thao mà tôi ưa thích).
- What time is the news on television? (Chương trình tin tức trên tivi bắt đầu lúc mấy giờ?)

Những chữ sau đây tận cùng bằng -s và có thể là số ít (singular) hoặc số nhiều (plural):

means (phương tiện) = a means of transport (một phương tiện giao thông) many means of transport (nhiều phương tiện giao thông)

series (łoạt, chuỗi) = a television series

two television series

(1 phim truyền hình nhiều tập) (2 phim truyền hình nhiều tập) species = a species of bird

200 species of bird

(loài)

(một loài chim)

(200 loài chim)

d) Có một số danh từ số ít (singular nouns) lại thường được dùng với động từ số nhiều (plural verb). Thi du:

government (chính phủ)

staff team (nhân viên) (đội)

family (gia đình) audience (khán giả)

committee (ûv ban)

Chúng ta thường dùng những danh từ này để tượng trưng cho một số người ("they"). Vì vậy chúng ta thường dùng một động từ số nhiều.

The government (= they) want to reduce taxes. (Chính phủ muốn giảm thuế).:

The staff (= they) aren't happy with their new working conditions.
 (Nhân viên không hài lòng với những điều kiện làm việc mới của họ).

Tuy nhiên, ta cũng có thể dùng một động từ số ít ("the government wants...").

Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng ta thường dùng động từ số nhiều với tên các đội thể thao:

Scotland are playing France in football next week.
 (Đội Scotland sẽ thi đấu bóng đá với đội Pháp vào tuần tới).

Chúng ta luôn luôn dùng động từ số nhiều với the police:

- The police have arrested Tom. (Cánh sát đã bắt giữ Tom).
- Are the police well-paid? (Cảnh sát có được trả lương cao không?)
- e) Đội khi chúng ta dùng một danh từ số nhiều (plural noun) với một động từ số ít (singular verb). Chúng ta làm điều này khi chúng ta nói về một số tiền, một khoảng thời gian, một khoảng cách v.v...
  - Five thousand pounds (= it) was stolen in the robbery.
     (Năm ngàn bảng đã bị mất trong vụ đánh cướp).
  - Three years is a long time to be without a job.
     (Ba năm thất nghiệp là một khoảng thời gian dài).
- f) Chúng ta nói "a holiday of three weeks" nhưng phải nói "a three-week holiday" (một kỳ nghỉ ba tuần).
  - I've got a three-week holiday in July.
     (Tôi có một kỳ nghỉ ba tuần vào tháng Bảy).

Ở đây, three-week được dùng như một tính từ (adjective) trước danh từ "holiday". Khi chúng ta dùng "three weeks" như một tính từ, nó không còn -s nữa. Vì vậy chúng ta nói:

a ten-pound note.

two 14-year-old girl. (hai cô gái 14 tuổi).

(một tờ 10 bảng Anh).

a six-hour journey.

a four-week course. (môt khóa học 4 tuần).

(một cuộc hành trình 6 giờ).

Ban cũng có thể nói "I've got three weeks holiday". Xem bài 79d.

#### **UNIT 78: Exercises**

- 1 Footballers don't wear trousers when they play. They wear \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of transport.
- 3 The bicycle and the car are ...... of transport.
- 4 I want to cut this piece of material. I need ......
- 5 Ann is going to write ...... of articles for her local newspaper.
- 6 There are a lot of American television ...... on British television.
- 7 While we were out walking, we saw 25 different ...... of bird.
- 8 We need at least four ..... to play this game.

78.2 This time you have to choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural, Sometimes either a singular or a plural verb is possible. Example: Gymnastics is / e my favourite sport. ("is" is correct). The trousers you bought for me doesn't / don't fit me. 2 Physics was / were my best subject at school. 3 Fortunately the news wasn't / weren't as bad as we had expected. The police wants / want to interview Fred about a robbery. 5 Three days isn't / aren't long enough for a good holiday. Where does / do you family live? 7 England has / have lost all their football matches this season. Does / Do the police know about the stolen money? Can I borrow your scissors? Mine isn't / aren't sharp enough. 10 I'm going to take a taxi. Six miles is / are too far for me to walk. 78.3 In this exercise you have to use the structure in section f. Examples: Our holiday lasted three weeks. It was a three-week holiday. The girls were 14 years old. They were 14 year-old girls. The woman 27. She was a 1 The flight lasted three hours. It was a 2 The strike lasted four days. It was a The book has 200 pages. It is a 4 The boys were ten years old. They were 6 The television series has ten parts. It is The bottle holds two litres. It is \_\_\_\_\_\_ Each of the tickets cost ten pounds. They were The building has ten storeys (= floors). It is 10 This bag of potatoes weighs five kilos. It is 11 We walked for five miles. It was **KFY** 78.1 1 shorts 78.3 1 She was a 27 year-old woman. 2 a means It was a three-hour flight, 2 3 means 3 It was a four-day strike. 4 some scissors / a pair of scissors It is a 200-page book. 5 a series 5 It is a ten-year-old boys. 6 series It is a ten-part television series. 7 species 7 It is a two-litre bottle. 8 people They were ten-pound tickets. 78.2 1 don't 6 do (or does) It is a ten-storey building.

2 was

4 want

5 isn't

3 wasn't

7 have

9 aren't

8 Do

10 is

10 It is a five-kilo bag of potatoes.

11 It was a five-mile walk.

# BÀI 79: POSSESSIVE CASE OF NOUNS (Hình thức sở hữu của danh từ)

a) Chúng ta thường dùng 's (possessive case) khi cái làm chủ (the possessor) là người (people) hay động vật (animals): the manager's office (không nói "the office of the manager") (phòng giám đốc).

Mr. Avans's daughter

the horse's tail

a policeman's hat

(con gái của ông Evans)

(đười naưa)

(Chiếc nón cảnh sát).

Còn khi cái làm chủ là danh từ chỉ vật (things), ta thường dùng cấu trúc "... of...":

- the door of the room (không nói "the room's door"): (của phòng)
- the beginning of the story (không nói "the story's beginning")

(Phần mở đấu của câu chuyện)

Đôi khi chúng ta cũng có thể dùng 's khi cái làm chủ là một vật. Thí dụ chúng ta nói: the book's title; hoặc the title of the book ( tựa của quyển sách).

Nhưng trong trường hợp này, dùng ... of ... thì an toàn và thông dụng hơn. (Tuy nhiên, hãy xem thêm phần b).

- Thông thường bạn có thể dùng 's khi the posessor (cái làm chủ; sở hữu chủ) là một tổ chức (± một nhóm người). Vì vậy bạn có thể nói:
  - the government's decision; hoặc the decision of the government (quyết định của chính phủ).
  - the company's success; hoặc: the success of the company (sự thành công của công ty).

Bạn cũng có thể dùng 's với các danh từ chỉ nơi chốn. Ví dụ:

- the city's new theatre. (Nhà hát mới của thành phố)
- Britain's system of government. (Hệ thống chính quyển Anh)
- the world's population. (Dân số thế giới)
- Italy's largest city. (Thành phố lớn nhất của Ý)
- c) Sau một danh từ số ít (singular noun), ta dùng 's. Sau một danh từ số nhiều (plural noun) (tân cùng bằng -s), chúng ta chỉ dùng dấu lược ('):
  - my sister's room (phòng của chị tôi)
  - my sisters' room (phòng của các chị tôi)
  - Mr. Carter's house (nhà của ông Carter)
  - the Carters' house (nhà của ông bà Carter)

Nếu một danh từ số nhiều không tận cùng bằng -s, chúng ta dùng 's:

a children's book (một quyển sách cho trẻ em)

Lưu ý rằng bạn có thể dùng 's sau một nhóm có hai danh từ trở lên.

- Jack and Jill's wedding (đám cưới của Jack và Jill)
- Mr. and Mrs. Carter's house (nhà của ông bà Carter)

Nhưng chúng ta lại không dùng 's trong những câu tương tự như sau:

I met the wife of the man who lent us the money.
 (Tôi đã gặp vợ của người cho chúng ta mượn tiến).

(Vì "the man who lent us the money" quá dài, chúng ta không thể dùng 's)

Lưu ý rằng bạn có thể dùng 's mà không cần có danh từ theo sau nó:

- Tom's flat is much larger than Ann's. (= Ann's flat).
   (Căn hộ của Tom lớn hơn căn hộ của Ann nhiều).
- d) Bạn cũng có thể dùng 's với những từ chỉ thời gian (tomorrow v.v...)
  - Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled. (Cuộc họp ngày mai đã bị hủy bỏ.)
  - Have you still got last Saturday's newspaper?
     (Ban còn giữ tổ báo thứ Bảy tuần trước không?)

Bạn cũng có thể nói: yesterday's... today's... this evening's... next week's... Monday's... v.v... Chúng ta còn có thể dùng 's (hoặc chỉ dấu lược (') với danh từ số nhiều) với những khoảng thời gian:

- I've got a week's holiday.
   (Tôi được nghỉ một tuần).
- I've got three week's holiday.
   (Tôi được nghỉ ba tuần).
- I need eight hours' sleep at night.
   (Tôi cấn ngủ tám tiếng một đêm).
- My house is very near here only about five minutes' walk.
   (Nhà tôi rất gần đây chỉ đi bộ khoảng năm phút thôi).

Hāy so sánh cấu trúc này với "a three-week holiday" (Bài 78f).

#### UNIT 79: Exercises

79.	<ol> <li>In this exercise you have to join two nouns. Sometimes you have to use an apostrophe ('), with or withouts. Sometimes you have to use of</li> </ol>
	Examples: the door/the room the door of the room the mother/Ann Ann's mother
	1 the camera/Tom
	2 the eyes/the cat
	3 the top/the page
	4 the daughter/Charles
	5 the newspaper/today
	6 the toys/the children
	7 the name/your wife
	8 the name/this street
	9 the name/the man I saw you with yesterday
	10 the new manager/the company
	11 the result/the football match.
	12 the car/Mike's parents

	14 15 16 17 18 19	the birthday/my father
79.	2 R	ead each sentence and write a new sentence using's with the underlined words.
	Exa	ample: The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled. <u>Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled.</u>
	1	The storm last week caused a lot of damage.
	2	The only cinema in the town has been closed down.
	3	Exports from Britain to the United States have fallen recently.  B.
	4	There will be a big crowd at the football match this evening.  There will be a big crowd at this
	5	Tourism is the main industry in the region.  The factorism is the main industry in the region.
79	.3 N	low you have to use the information given to complete the sentences.
	Exa	ample: If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to London, I arrive at about 12 o'clock.  So it's about three hours' drive to London from my house.
	1	I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.  So I've got
	2	i went to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and woke up an hour later at 4 o'clock. So I only hadsleep.
	3	If leave my house at 8.50 and walk to work, I get to work at 9 o'clock. So it's only walk from my house to work.

# KEY

- 79.1 1 Tom's carnera
  - 2 the cat's eyes
  - 3 the top of the page
  - 4 Charles's daughter
  - 5 today's newspaper
  - 6 the children's toys

- 7 your wife's name
- 8 the name of this street
- 9 the name of the man I saw you with yesterday
- 10 the new manager of the company (or the company's new manager)
- 11 the result of the football match
- 12 Mike's parents' car
- 13 my father's birthday
- 14 the new headmaster of the school (or the school's new headmaster)
- 15 our neighbours' garden
- 16 the ground floor of the building
- 17 Don and Mary's children
- 18 the economic policy of the government (or the government's economic policy)
- 19 the husband of the woman talking to Tom
- 20 my aunt and uncle's house
- 79.2 1 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.
  - 2 The town's only cinema has been closed down.
  - 3 Britain's exports to the United States have fallen recently.
  - 4 There will be a big crowd at this evening's football match.
  - 5 The region's main industry is tourism.
- 79.3 1 ...two week's holiday/...a fortnight's holiday/...14 days' holiday
  - 2 an hour's sleep/one hour's sleep
  - 3 ten minutes' walk

# BÀI 80: POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (Đại từ và tính từ sở hữu)

- a) A friend of mine / a friend of Tom's (một người bạn của tôi / một người bạn của Tom): Chúng ta nói: "a friend of mine / yours / his / hers / ours / theirs" (không nói "a friend of me / you / him"v.v...)
  - A friend of mine is coming to stay with me next week. (không nói "a friend of me").
     (Môt người bạn của tôi sẽ đến ở với tôi vào tuấn tới).
  - We went on holiday with some friends of ours. (không nói "some friends of us").
     (Chúng tôi đã đi nghỉ với một vài người bạn của chúng tôi).
  - Tom had an argument with a neighbour of his.
     (Tom đã cãi nhau với một người hàng xóm của anh tạ).
  - It was a good suggestion of yours to go swimming this afternoon.
     (Löi để nghị chiếu nay đi bởi của bạn thú vị đấy).

Chúng ta cũng nói là "a friend of Tom's", "a friend of my brother's" v.v...

- That man over is a friend of my brother's.
   (Người đàn ông đẳng kia là bạn của anh trai tôi).
- It was a good idea of Tom's to go swimming.
   (Lời để nghi đi bơi của Tom thú vị đẩy).
- b) My own.../ your own...v.v... (của riêng tôi/ của riêng bạn)

Ban không thể nói "an own..." ("an own house", "an own car", v.v...).

Bạn phải dùng my / your / his / her / its / our / their trước own:

my own house

your own car

her own room

(nhà của riêng tôi)

(xe hợi của riêng bạn)

(Phòng riêng của cô ấy)

My own = cái gì đó của riêng tôi, không dùng chung hoặc mượn.

- Do many people in England have their own house?
   (Có nhiều người Anh có nhà riêng không?)
- I don't want to share with anyone. I want my own room.
   (Tôi không muốn ở chung với bất cứ ai. Tôi muốn một cặn phòng của riêng tôi).
- Unfortunately the flat hasn't got its own entrance.
   (Thật không may là căn hộ không có lối đi riêng.)
- It's my own fault that I've got no money. I spend it too quickly.
   (Việc tôi không có tiến là do lỗi của chính tôi. Tôi xài nhanh quá.)
- Why do want to borrow my car? Why can't you use your own (car)?
   (Tại sao anh lại muốn mượn xe tôi? Tại sao anh không thể dùng xe riêng của anh?)

Bạn cũng có thể đùng... own... để nói rằng bạn tự mình làm điều gì đó thay vì người khác làm cho bạn. Thí dụ:

Ann always cuts her own hair.
 (Ann luôn luôn tự cắt tóc lấy.) (Ann tự cắt tóc lấy; cô ta không đi tiệm).

Do you grow your own vegetable? (Bạn tự trống rau lấy phải không?)
 (= bạn tự trống rau lấy trong vườn thay vì mua ở tiệm phải không?)

#### c) On my own / by myself

Cả on my own và by myself đều có nghĩa là alone (một mình tôi, tự tôi). Chúng ta nói:

on	my myself	/your /yourself	/his /himself	/her /herself	/its own /itself	(số ít)
by-	ourselves	/yourselves	/themselves			(số nhiều)

- I like living on my own / by myself. (Tôi thích sống một mình.)
- Did you go on holiday on your own / by yourself?
   (Anh di nghỉ mát một mình phải không?)
- Jack was sitting on his own / by himself in a corner of the café.
   (Jack dang ngôi một mình trong góc quán ăn).
- Learner drivers are not allowed to drive on their own / by themselves.
   (Người đang học lái không được phép lái xe một mình).

80.1 Write new sentences using the structure in section a (a friend of mine etc.).

Vé myself / yourselves, v.v... xem thêm bài 81.

### **UNIT 80: EXERCISES**

	Example: I am writing to one of my friends. I'm writing to a friend of mine.					
	1.	We met one of your relations. We met a				
- 2	2.	Henry borrowed one of my books. Henry				
3. Tom invited some of his friends to his flat. Tom						
4. We had dinner with one of our neighbours.						
5. Ann is in love with one of her colleagues.						
- (	6.	They went on holiday with two of their friends.				
80.2	М	ake sentences from the words in brackets. Each time use my own / your own etc.				
	Exi	ample: I don't want to share a room. (want / have / room) I want to have my own room.				
	1	I don't watch television with the rest of the family. (have / television / in my bedroom) I havein my bedroom.				
:	2	Jack and Bill are fed up with working for other people. (want / start / business) They				
;	3	Henry is extremely rich. (have / private jet) He				
•	4	The Isle of Man is an island off the coast of Britain. It is not completely independent but (have / parliament and laws) it				

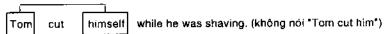
80.3 A	low you have to complete these sentences usin	ing my own / your own etc.
Ex	cample: Why do you want to borrow my car? Ann never goes to the hairdresser. S	
1 2 3 4 5 6	Don't blame me. It's not my fault. It's He's always smoking my cigarettes. Why do Why do you want my pen? Can't you use I don't often buy clothes. I usually make Nobody cooks Don's meals for him. He has t She doesn't buy ready-made cigarettes. She	to cook
80.4	Complete these sentences using on my own / b	by my self etc.
E	xample: Learner drivers are not allowed to drive	/e on their own.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I'm glad I live with other people. I wouldn't lik The box was too heavy for me to lift by I went over to talk to Tim at the party becaus Very young children should not be allowed to Hasn't she got any friends? When I see her, I don't like strawberries with cream. I like the Do you like working with other people or do We had no help decorating the flat. We did it	se he was by
KE	Υ	
	1 We met a relation of yours. 2 Henry borrowed a book of mine. 3 Tom invited some friends of his to his flat. 4 We had dinner with a neighbour of ours. 5 Ann is in love with a colleague of hers. 6 They went on holiday with two friends of theirs.	In these sentences it is not necessary to repeat the noun. So you can also say:  1 It's your own. 2 Why doesn't he buy his own? 3 Can't you use your own? 4 I usually make my own. 5 He has to cook his own. 6 She rolls her own.
80.2	1 I have my own television in my bedroom. 2 They want to start their own business. 3 He has / He's got his own private jet. 4it has its own parliament and laws.	80.4 1 on my own 2 by myself 3 by himself 4 by themselves 5 on her own
80.3	1 It's your own fault. 2 Why doesn't he buy his own cigarettes? 3 Can't you use your own pen? 4 I usually make my own clothes. 5 He has to cook his own meals. 6 She rolls her own cigarettes.	6 on their own 7 by yourself 8 on our own

# BÀI 81: REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (Đại từ phản thân)

a) Các reflexive pronouns (dại từ phản thân) bao gồm:

Số ít:	myself	yourself (một người)	himself/herself/itself
Số nhiều:	ourselves	yourselves (hai người trở lên)	themselves

Chúng ta dùng **reflexive pronoun** (đại từ phần thần) khí subject (chủ từ) và object (túc từ) cùng chỉ một:



(Tom bị sướt đã trong khi đang cạo râu).

- I don't want you to pay for me. fil pay for myself.
   (Tôi không muốn anh trả tiến giùm tôi. Tôi sẽ trả phần tôi.)
- The old lady sat in a corner talking to herself.
   (Người phụ nữ lớn tuổi ngối vào một gác nói chuyện một mình.)
- Don't get angry. Control yourself! (số it)
   (Đừng giận dữ. Hãy tự kiểm chế).
- If you want more to eat, help yourselves. (số nhiều)
   (Nếu các bạn muốn ăn thêm, xin cử tự nhiên).
- The party was great. We enjoyed ourselves very much. (Bữa tiệc thật là tuyệt. Chúng tôi thích lắm).

Nhưng chúng ta không dùng reflexive pronoun sau bring/take something with...:

- I went out and took an umbrella with me. (Không nói "with myself)
   (Tôi đi ra ngoài và mang theo một cây dù).
- b) Chúng ta không dùng "reflexive pronoun" v.v... sau feel/relax/concentrate:
  - I feel great after having a swim. (Không nói "I feel myself great")
     (Tôi cảm thấy tuyệt sau khi đi bơi về).
  - You must try and concentrate.
     (Ban phái cổ gắng và tập trung hơn).
  - It's good to relax. (Nghỉ ngơi sẽ tốt đấy).

Chúng ta thường không dùng reflexive pronoun sau wash/dress/shave:

1 got up, shaved, washed and dressed. (Không nói "shaved myself" v.v...
 Tôi thức dậy, cạo râu, rữa mặt và mặc quần áo.)

Nhưng chúng ta nói: - I dried myself.
(Tôi đã lau khô người.)

Hāy lưu ý đến cách dùng meet:

What time shall we meet? (Không nói "meet ourselves/meet us")
 (Chúng ta sẽ gặp nhau lúc mấy giớ?)

- c) Hãy xem xét sự khác biệt giữa -selves và each other:
  - Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at themselves. (Tom và Ann đứng trước gương và tự ngắm mình).

Nhưng: Tom looked at Ann and Ann looked at Tom. They looked at each other. (Tom nhìn Ann và Ann nhìn Tom. Họ nhìn nhau.)

Ban cũng có thể dùng one another thay cho each other:

- How long have you and Bill known each other (noặc one another)?
   (Bạn và Bill quen biết nhau được bao lâu rối?)
- Sue and Ann don't like each other (hoặc one another).
   (Sue và Ann không ưa nhau.)
- d) Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng myself v.v... theo cách khác. Ví dụ:
  - "Who repaired your bicycle for you?" "Nobody. I repaired myself."
     ("Ai đã sửa xe đạp giùm bạn thế?" "Không ai cả. Tôi tư sửa lấy.")

"I repaired it myself" = Tôi tự sửa nó, không phải ai khác sửa nó. Chúng ta dùng myself ở đây để nhấn mạnh cho I (tôi). Ở đây, *reflexive pronoun* được sử dụng như là emphasizing pronoun (đại từ nhấn mạnh). Các thí du khác:

- I'm not going to do it for you. You can do it yourself.
   (Tôi sẽ không làm điều đó giữm anh đâu. Anh có thể tư làm lấy cơ mà.)
- Let's paint the house ourselves. It will be much cheaper.
   (Chúng ta hây tự sơn lấy ngôi nhà. Như thế sẽ rẻ hơn nhiều).
- The film itself wasn't very good. But I liked the music.
   (Bản thân bộ phim thì không hay lắm nhưng tôi thích phần nhạc nên.)
- I don't thínk Tom will get the job. Tom himself doesn't think he'll get it.
   (hoặc "Tom doesn't think he'll get it himself.")
   (Tôi không nghỉ rằng Tom sẽ nhận được công việc đó) Chính Tom cũng không cho là anh ta sẽ nhận được.)

Về "by myself/by yourself" v.v..., xem bài 80c.

### **UNIT 81: EXERCISES**

81.	1 C	omplete these sentences using myself/yourself_etc. with these verbs:
	kiç	
	Exa	ample: Tom cut himself while he was shaving this morning.
	1	Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don't
	2	They couldn't get back into the house. They had out.
	3	It isn't her fault. She really shouldn't
	4	What a stupid fool I am! I could!
	5	The boy was lucky when he fell down the stairs. He didn't
	6	I'm trying to Spanish but I'm not making much progress.
	7	He spends most of his time alone, so it's not surprising that he
	8	Don't worry about us. We can

dr	y d	concentrate	feel	enjoy	relax	wash	meset					
Ex	ample:	Tom is growi	ing a beard b	ecause he d	doesn't like s	having	/ `					
1	l really		well today	/ - much bei	tter than yes	terday.						
2	He clin	nbed out of the	e pool, picke	d up a towe	l and							
3	I tried	to study but l j	just couldn't .									
4		nd I first					-					
5		always rushir	•				more?					
6		a lovely holida										
7	lovers	lept this morn	iing. I didn't h	ave time to		or I	nave breakfas					
81.3 /r	these :	sentences you	have to write	-selves or	each other.							
81.3 In these sentences you have to write -selves or each other.												
Ex	amoles	Tom and Ani	n stood in fro	nt of the mir	rror and look	ed at thems	Examples: Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at themselves.  How long have Tom and Ann known each other?					
Ex	amples:						seives.					
	ŕ	How long ha	ve Tom and	Ann known	each other?		eives.					
1	At Chr	How long hat istmas friends	ve Tom and a	Ann known	each other?	nt.						
1 2	At Chr	How long ha istmas friends children enjo	ve Tom and a s often give	Ann known	each other? prese nen they wer	nt. e ол holiday	17					
1 2 3	At Chr Did the Jack a	How long hat istmas friends a children enjo and Jill are ver	ve Tom and a s often give by happy toge	Ann knownwh	each other? presenen they wereove	nt. e oπ holiday very m	/? uch.					
1 2 3 4	At Chr Did the Jack a They b	How long hat istmas friends e children enjo and Jill are ver nad an argume	ove Tom and a s often give by happy toge ent last week	Ann knownwh ther. They l . They are s	each other? presenen they wereove	nt. e on holiday very m king to	/? uch.					
1 2 3	At Chr Did the Jack a They t	How long hat istmas friends a children enjo and Jill are ver	ve Tom and as often give	Ann known  when ther. They lead to the they are selected to the them.	each other?  prese nen they wen ove till not speal k of	nt. e on holiday very m king to	/? uch.					
1 2 3 4 5	At Chr Did the Jack a They t Some Nora a	How long hat istmas friends e children enjo ind Jill are ver nad an argume people are ve and I don't see	ove Tom and a soften give	Ann known  ther. They l  They are s	each other?  prese nen they were ove still not speak k of very of	nt. e on holiday very m king to	/? uch.					
1 2 3 4 5	At Chr Did the Jack a They t Some Nora a	How long hat istmas friends e children enjo and Jill are ver nad an argume people are ve	ove Tom and a soften give	Ann known  ther. They l  They are s	each other?  prese nen they were ove still not speak k of very of	nt. e on holiday very m king to	/? uch.					
1 2 3 4 5 6	At Chr Did the Jack a They t Some Nora a	How long hat istmas friends e children enjo ind Jill are ver nad an argume people are ve and I don't see	ove Tom and a soften give	Ann known wh ther. They le They are s ey only thin	each other?  prese nen they were ove still not speal k of very of	nt. e oπ holiday very m king to ften these d	uch.					
1 2 3 4 5 6 81.4 A	At Chr Did the Jack a They t Some Nora a Answer to	How long hat istmas friends a children enjoind Jill are vertinad an argume people are vertind I don't see these questions. "Who repaired	often give  y happy toge ent last week ery selfish. The s using myse the bicycle t	Ann known wh ther. They l They are s ley only thin clif/yourself	each other?  prese ten they were ove till not speak k of very of etc. obody. I repare	nt. e on holidayvery m king to ften these d aired it mys	uch. ays.					
1 2 3 4 5 6 81.4 A Ex	At Chr Did the Jack a They t Some Nora a Answer to cample:	How long hat istmas friends a children enjoind Jill are vertinad an arguma people are vertind if don't see these questions. "Who repaired out your hair for the seemed to	often give	Ann known wh ther. They l They are s ley only thin whitelf/yourself for you?" "N	each other?  prese nen they were ove till not speak k of very of etc. obody. I repare	nt. e on holiday wery m king to ften these d aired it mys	uch.					
1 2 3 4 5 6 81.4 A Ex	At Chr Did the Jack a They t Some Nora a Answer to cample:	How long hat istmas friends a children enjoind Jill are vertinad an arguma people are vertind if don't see these questions "Who repaired out your hair fetold you Linda	often give	Ann known wh ther. They li . They are s ley only thin elf/yourself for you?" "N body. I cut married?" "	each other?  prese nen they were ove till not speak k of very of etc. obody. I repair	nt. e on holiday wery m king to ften these d aired it mys	uch.					
1 2 3 4 5 6 81.4 A Ex	At Chr Did the Jack a They the Some Nora a Answer the cample: "Who "Who "Does	How long hat istrnas friends a children enjoy and Jill are vertiad an arguma people are vertind I don't see these questions. "Who repaired cut your hair fotold you Linda Mr. Thomas h	s often give by happy toge ent last week ery selfish. The s using myse I the bicycle to or you?" "Not was getting have a secret	Ann known ther. They let. They are seen only thin or you?" "N body. I cut married?" "I tary to type	each other?  prese nen they were ove still not speal k of very of etc. obody. I repair Linda his letters?*	nt. e on holiday wery m king to ften these d aired it mys	uch.					
1 2 3 4 5 6 81.4 A Ex	At Chr Did the Jack a They t Some Nora a Inswer to ample: "Who "Does "Do yo	How long hat istmas friends a children enjoind Jill are vertinad an arguma people are vertind if don't see these questions "Who repaired out your hair fetold you Linda	s often give by happy toge ent last week ery selfish. The s using myse I the bicycle to or you?" "Not a was getting have a secret post that lett	Ann known ther. They le They are s ey only thin or you?" "N body. I cut married?" "I tary to type er for you?"	each other?  present they were ove till not speak k of very of etc.  obody. I republished the letters?*	nt. e on holidaytvery m king to ften these d aired it mys	uch.					

- 81.1 1 Don't burn yourself.
  - 2 They had locked themselves out.
  - 3 She really shouldn't blame herself.
  - 4 I could kick myself!
  - 5 He didn't hurt himself.
  - 6 I'm trying to teach myself Spanish...
  - 7 ...that he talks to himself.
  - 7 We can look after ourselves.

- 81.2 1 I really feel well today.
  - 2 ... and dried himself.
  - 3 ... I just couldn't concentrate.
  - 4 Jack and I first met at a party...
  - 5 Why don't you relax more?
  - 6 We really enjoyed ourselves very much.
  - 7 I didn't have time to wash or...
- 81.3 1 each other (or one another)
  - 2 themselves
  - 3 each other (or one another)
  - 4 each other (or one another)
  - 5 themselves
  - 6 each other (or one another)
- 81.4 1 Nobody. I cut it myself.
  - 2 Linda told me herself, (or Linda herself told me.)
  - 3 No, he types them himself. (or No, he does it himself.)
  - 4 No, I'll post it myself. (or No, I'll do it myself.)
  - 5 Why don't you clean them yourself? (or Why don't you do it yourself?)

# BÀI 82: All / all of, no / none of, most / most of v.v...

a)

all (tất cả) each	no/none (không) haif	some/any (vài)	much/many (nhiều)	most (hấu hết)	little/few (it)
(mỗi)	(phân nửa)				

Bạn có thể dùng những chữ này (ngoại trừ none và haif) với một danh từ:

- Some people are very unfriendly.
   (Một số người rất không thân thiên).
- Did you put any salt in the soup?
   (Ban có bỏ chút muối nào vào món xúp không đây?)
- l've got no money.
   (Tôi không có tiến).
- All cars have wheels.
  - (Tất cả xe hơi đều có bánh xe.)
- Hurry! We have very little time. (Nhanh lên! Chúng ta còn rất ít thời gian.)
- Study each sentence carefully.
   (Häy xem xét từng câu một cách cẩn thân.)

#### Hãy cẩn thận với most:

- Most tourists do not visit this part of the town.
   (Không nói "most of tourists", "the most tourists")
   (Hấu hết du khách đều không đến thăm khu vực này của thành phố.)
- George is much richer than most people. (George giàu hơn hầu hết mọi người).
- b) Bạn cũng có thể dùng những chữ trên (ngoại trừ no) một minh, không cấn có danh từ đi kèm:
  - "I need some money. Have you got any?" "Yes, but not much."
     ("Tôi cần một ít tiền. Anh có không?" "Có, nhưng không nhiều lầm.")
  - "How many cigarettes have you got?" "None." ("Anh có bao nhiều điểu thuốc lá?" "Không có điểu nào cả."
  - Most people like Tom but some don't.
     (Hầu hết mọi người đều thích Tom nhưng một số thì không.)

Chúng ta thường nói each one thay vì chỉ nói each thôi:

- There were three boxes on the table. Each one was a different colour. (Có ba cái hộp trên bàn. Mỗi cái có một màu khác nhau.)

Về chữ all, xem bài 87a

c) Bạn cũng có thể dùng những chữ trên (ngoại trừ no) với of... Vì vậy bạn có thể nói some of the people (một số người), all of these cars (tất cả những chiếc xe hơi này), none of my money (không có đồng nào trong số tiến của tôi) v.v...

Khi bạn dùng những chữ trên với of, bạn cần phải dùng thêm the / this / that / these / thore / my / your / his v.v... Bạn không thể nói "some of people", "all of cars". Bạn phải nói: "some of the people", "all of these cars" v.v...

- Some of the people at the party were very friendly.
   (Môt số người ở bữa tiệc tổ ra rất thân thiện.)
- Most of my friends live in London.
   (Hầu hết các bạn của tôi đều sống ở Luân Đôn.)
- None of this money is mine.
   (Không có đồng nào trong số tiền này là của tôi.)
- Each of the rooms in the hotel has its own bathroom.
   (Mỗi một phòng trong khách sạn này đều có phòng tắm riêng.)
- I haven't read many of these books.
   (Tôi chưa đọc được nhiều cuốn trong số sách này.)

Với all và half, chúng ta thường bỏ of đi:

all my friends (= all of my friends): tất cả bạn bè của tôi. half the money (= half of the money): phân nửa số tiến.

- d) Sau all of / none of v.v... ban cũng có thể dùng it / us / you / them:
  - "How many of these people do you know?" "none of them."
     ("Ban quen biết bao nhiều người trong số những người này?" "Không ai cả.")
  - Do any of you want to come to the party tonight?
     (Có ai trong số các bạn muốn đi dự tiệc tối nay không?)
  - Do you like this music?" "Some of it. Not all of it."
     ("Ban có thích loại nhạc này không?" "Phần nào thôi. Không hoàn toàn thích.")

Ban phải dùng "all of" và "half of" trước it / us / you / them:

all of us (không nói "all us"): tất cả chúng tạ half of them (không nói "half them": phân nửa bọn họ

Về no và none, xem thêm bài 85c

Để biết thêm về những chữ đã được liệt kê trong bài này, xem các bài 83-7

#### UNIT 82: EXERCISES

82.1 Reach each situation and then make a sentence from the words in brackets.

Example: I need someone who can speak Spanish. (any/your friends/speak Spanish?)

Do any of your friends speak Spanish?

1	We went out and it started to rain. We all got wet because (none/us/have/anumbrella) none
2	
	friends)
	They
3	I don't want all this cake. (you/want/some/it?) Do
4	This is a very old town. (many/the buildings/over 800 years old)

;	5	Jim won a lot of money last year. (he/spend/halt/it on a new car)					
(	6	A lot of people were interested in the job. (the manager/interview/each/the people who applied)					
•	7	Not many people live in the north of the country. (most/the population/live/the south)					
:	8	The club is mainly for younger people. (few/the members/over 25)					
	9	When the post arrived, she looked through it hopefully but (none/the letters/for her)					
82.2	! (	Complete these sentences with most or most of.					
	Ex	ample: Most tourists do not visit this part of the town.					
	1	spendmy spare time gardening.					
	2	The public transport system is bad butpeople have a car.					
:	3	days I get up early.					
	4	We had a lazy holidaythe time we lay on the beach.					
:	5	The church is very oldit was built in the 12th century.					
	6	l expectyou are very tired after your long journey.					
82.3	I A	nswer these questions using the word(s) in brackets.					
	Ех	ample: Do you like this music? (some) Some of it.					
	1	Did you watch the film? (most)					
:	2	Did you take these photographs? (some)					
;	3	Have you read these books? (a few)					
	4	Are those people English? (most)					
ļ	5	How much of this luggage is yours? (all)					
	6	How many of these people do you know? (not many)					
	7	Does this furniture belong to you? (some)					
	8	Have you spent all the money I gave you? (not all)					
!	9	How much of this money is yours? (haif)					

### **KEY**

- 82.1 1 ... none of us had an umbrella / none of us had taken an umbrella.
  - 2 They didn't tell any of their friends.
  - 3 Do you want some of it?
  - 4 Many of the buildings are over 800 years old.
  - 5 He spent/ he has spent/ he is going to spend half of it on a new car.
- 6 The manager interviewed each of the people who applied.
- 7 Most of the population live in the south.
- 8 Few of the members are over 25.
- 9 None of the letters were (or was) for her.

- 82.2 1 most of
  - 2 most
  - 3 most
  - 4 most of
  - . 5 most of
    - 6 most of
- 82.3 1 Most of it.
  - 2 Some of them.
  - 3 A few of them.
  - 4 Most of them.
  - 5 Alt of it.
  - 6 Not many of them.
  - 7 Some of it
  - 8 Not all of it.
  - 9 Half of it.

# BÀI 83: Both / both of, neither / neither of, either / either of

- a) Chúng ta dùng both, neither và either khí chúng ta đang nói đến hai người hay hai vật nào đó. Bạn có thể dùng các từ này với một danh từ:
  - Both restaurants are very good.
     (Cå hai nhà hàng đều rất tốt). (Không nói "the both restaurants")

Neither restaurant is expensive.
 (Không có nhà hàng nào đắt tiền câ).

- We can go to either restaurant. I don't mind.
   (Chúng ta có thể đi ăn tại một trong hai nhà hàng. Tại đầu cũng được).
- I dìdn't like either restaurant.
   (Tôi không thích nhà hàng nào cả). (Không thích cả hai).
- b) Bạn cũng có thể dùng both / neither / either với of... Khi bạn-dùng các từ này với of, bạn luôn luôn cấn thêm the / these / those / my / your / his v.v... Bạn không thể nói "both of restaurants". Bạn phải nói "both of the restaurants", "both of these restaurants" v.v...
  - Both of these restaurants are very good.
     (Cả hai nhà hàng này đều rất tốt).
  - Neither of the restaurants we went was (were) expensive.
     (Không có nhà hàng nào trong hai nhà hàng mà chúng tôi đến án đất tiến cả).
  - We can go to either of those restaurant. I don't mind.
     (Chúng ta có thể đi ăn tại một trong hai nhà hàng đó. Tại đầu cũng được).

Với **both**, bạn có thể bỏ **of** di. Vì vậy bạn có thể nói: both my parents hoặc both of my parents.

- c) Sau both of / neither of / either of ban có thể dùng us / you / them:
  - Can either of you speak Spanish?
     (Có ai trong hai ban nói được tiếng Tây Ban Nha không?)
    - I wanted Tom and Ann to come but neither of them wanted to.
       (Tôi muốn Tom và Ann đến nhưng không ai muốn đến câ).

Ban phải nói "both of" trước us / you / them:

- Both of us were very tired. (không nói "Both us...")
   (Cả hai chúng tôi đều rất mệt).
- d) Sau neither of... bạn có thể dùng một động từ số ít hoặc số nhiều:
  - Neither of the children wants (hoặc want) to go to bed. (Không đứa nào trong hai đứa bé muốn đi ngủ cả).
  - Neither of us is (hoặc are) married.
     (Không ai trong chúng tôi có gia định cà).
- e) Bạn có thể nói both... and..., neither... và either... or Hāy xem các thí dụ sau:
  - Both Torn and Ann were late.
     (Cà Torn lẫn Ann đều đến trẻ)

- They were both tired and hungry.
   (Ho vừa mêt vừa đói).
- Neither Tom nor Ann came to the party.
   (Vå Tom lån Ann deu không đến dự tiệc).
- He said he would contact me but he neither wrote nor phone.
   (Anh ta nói là sẽ liên lạc với tôi, nhưng rối anh ta chẳng viết thư và cũng chẳng gọi điện thoại).
- I'm not sure where he is from. He's either Spanish or Italian.
   (Tôi không biết chắc anh ta từ đầu đến. Anh ta có thể là người Tây Ban Nha hoặc là người Ý).
- Either you apologise or l'Il never speak to you again.
   (Hoặc là anh xin lỗi hoặc là tôi sẽ không bao giờ nói chuyện với anh nữa).
- f) Bạn cũng có thể dùng both / neither / either một mình:
  - "Is the British or America?" "Neither. He's Autralian."
     ("Anh ta là người Anh hay người Mỹ?" "Không phải đâu. ANh ta là người Úc đấy.")
  - Do you want tea or coffee?" "Either. I don't mind."
     ("Bạn muốn dùng trà hay cà phê?" "Thứ nào cũng được. Tôi chẳng bận tâm.")
  - I couldn't decide which one to choose. I like both.
     (Tôi không thể quyết định phải chọn cái nào. Tôi thích cả hai).

Vê I don't either và neither do I, xem bài 51c.

### **UNIT 83: Exercises**

83.1 Complete these sentences with both / neither / either. Sometimes you need of.

Examples: There are two windows in my room. It was very warm so I had both of them open.

"Do you want tea or coffee?. "Either. I really don't mind".

- 1 After the accident...cars stopped...drivers got out and started shouting at each other...them were very aggressive.
- 2 It wasn't a very good football match. ... team played well.
- 3 A: Which of the two films did you prefer? The first one or the second one? B: Actually I didn't like ...them.
- 4 There are two ways to the city centre. You can go along the footpath by the river or you can go along the main road. You can go ...way.
- 5 ....these pullovers are very nice. I don't know which one to buy.
- 6 ...my parents is English. My father is Polish and my mother is Italian.
- 7 \*Do you mind which sandwich I take?\* \*No, take...\*
- 8 "Is today the 18th or the 19th?" "...it's the 20th".
- 9 Tom and I hadn't eaten for a long time, so ...us were very hungry.
- 10 When the boat started to sink, we were really frightened because ...us could swim.
- 11 A: Did you go to Scotland or Ireland for your holidays?
  - B: We went to ... A week in Scotland and a week in Ireland.

		ces with bothand, neithernor and					
	eltheror						
E	Examples: Tom was late. So was Ann. Both Tom and Ann were late.						
He didn't write. He didn't telephone. He neither wrote nor telephoned.							
1	The hotel wasn't clean. And it wasn't o						
The hotel was neither 2 It was a very boring film. It was very long too. ✓							
2	The film was						
3 Is that man's name Richard? Or is it Robert? It's one of the two.							
Ŭ	That man's name						
4							
	I've got						
5	We can leave today or we can leave to						
_							
6	- · ·	d a change. Also because the pay was low.					
7	He gave up his job both George doesn't smoke. And he doesn	* drink					
•	_						
8	The front of the house needs painting						
	are the are are an entering on the area of	erb with man off this fet wer tha this alth and war and whener has the test and we man this test and was the test was the west as we					
KE.	Υ						
83.1.1	both Both Both of (them)	2 The film was both very boring and very					
2	Neither	long.					
3	either of	3 That man's name is either Richard or					
4	either (You could also say: "You can	Robert.					
	go both ways.")	4 I've got neither the time nor the money to					
5	Both (or Both of)	go on holidays.					
6	Neither of	5 We can leave either today or tomorrow.					
7	either (or either of them)	6 He gave up his job both because he					
8	Neither	needed a change and because the pay					
9	both of	was low.					
10	neither of	7 George neither smokes nor drinks.					
1	both	8 Both the front and the back of the house					
83.2	The hotel was neither clean nor	need painting.					
	comfortable						

# BÀI 84: SOME và ANY Các kết hợp với SOME / ANY

- a) Một cách tổng quát, chúng ta dùng some trong câu xác định (affiermative) và any trong câu phủ định (negative) (nhưng hãy xem thêm phần b và d);
  - Ann has bought some new shoes.
     (Ann vừa mới mua mấy đôi giấy mới).
  - I've got something in my eyes.
     (Tôi bị cái gì đó lọt vào mắt).
  - They haven't got any children. (Ho không có con).
  - He's lazy. He never does any work.
     (Hán lười lắm. Hản chẳng bao giờ làm việc gì cả).

Chúng ta dùng any trong những câu sau đây vì ý nghĩa của những câu này là phủ định:

- He left home without any money. (He didn't have any money).
   (Anh ta bỏ nhà đi mà chẳng có đồng nào cả).
- She refused to say anything. (She didn't say anything).
   (Cô ấy từ chối không chịu nói gì cả).
- b) Chúng ta thường dùng any / anyone / anything v.v... sau if:
  - If any letters arrive for me, can you send them to this address?
     (Néu có lá thư nào gửi đến cho tôi, bạn có thể gửi chúng về địa chỉ này được không?)
  - If anyone has any questions, I'll be please to answer them.
     (Néu có ai muốn hỏi gì, tôi xin sắn lòng trả lời).
  - If you need anything, just ask. (Nếu bạn cần gì, xin cử nói).
  - Buy some pears if you see any.
     (Hây mua một it lê nếu bạn thấy có bán).

Các câu sau đây không có if, nhưng chúng mang ý nghĩa của câu lf:

- Anyone who wants to do the examination must give me their names before Friday
  (=if there is anyone who...)
   (Bắt cử ai muốn dư thị phải đàng ký tên với tôi trước thử Sau).
- I'll send on any letters that arrive for you (= if there are any ).
   (Tôi sẽ chuyển đi bất cứ lá thư nào gởi đến cho bạn).
- c) Trong câu hỏi (questions), chúng ta thường dùng any (không dùng "some"):
  - Have you got any money?
     (Ban có tiển không?)
  - Has anybody seen Tom? (Có ai trông thấy Tom không?)

Nhưng chúng ta thường dùng some trong *câu hỗi* khi chúng ta *mong đợi* câu tr**ả** lời "yes":

What's wrong with your eye? Have you got something in its? (= I think you have got something in your eye and i expect you to say "yes")
(Mắt bạn sao thế? Bạn bị cái gì đó lọt vào mắt phải không?) (= Tôi nghĩ rằng bạn bị cái gì đó lọt vào mắt và tôi mong bạn sẽ trả lời là "Phải")

Chúng ta thường dùng **some** trong các câu hỏi khi chúng ta *để nghị* hay yêu *cấu điều* gì:

- Would you like some tea?
   (Ban có muổn uống trà không?)
- Can I have some of those apples?
   (Tôi có thể lấy mấy trái táo đó không?)
- d) Any còn có một nghĩa khác. Any / anyone / anybody / ahywhere có thể mang nghĩa: bất cử, bất kỳ cái nào / ai / cái gì / ở đâu:
  - You can catch any of these buses. They all go to the center.
     (Ban có thể đón bất kỳ chuyển xe buýt nào cũng được. Tất cả chúng đều chạy vào trung tâm thành phố).
  - Come and see me any time you want.
     (Hāy đến gặp tôi bất cử lúc nào bạn muốn).
  - You can have anything you want for your birthday present.
     (Con có thể được bất cử thử gì con muốn để làm quả sinh nhật cho con).
  - We left the door unlocked. Anybody could have come in.
     (Chúng tôi không khóa cửa. Bất kỳ ai cũng có thể đi vào được).
  - I'd rather go anywhere than stay at home during my holiday.
     (Tôi thích đi bất cử đầu cũng được hơn là ở trong nhà ngày nghỉ).
  - "Sing a song," "Which song shall I sing?", "Any song I don't mind."
     ("Hāy hát một bài đi." "Muốn tội hát bài nào đây?" "Bài nào cũng được.")
- e) Someone / somebody / anybody là những từ số it (singular):
  - Someone wants to see you.
     (Có ai đó muốn gặp bạn anh đấy).
  - Is anybody there?
     (Cò ai ở đó không?)

Nhưng chúng ta thường dùng they / them / their sau những chữ này:

- If anyone wants to leave early, they can. (N\u00e9u ai mu\u00f6n v\u00e9 s\u00f6m, h\u00f6 c\u00f6 th\u00e9 v\u00e9).
- Somebody has spilt their (= his/her) coffee on the carpet.
   (Ai đó đã đánh đổ cá phê lên tấm thâm).

Về some of / any of, xem bài 82. Về not...any, xem bài 85.

### **UNIT 84: EXERCISES**

_						
84.	1 (	omplete	e these sentences with some / any / someone/anyone / somebody /			
	a	nybody	/ something / anything / somewhere / anywhere.			
			Ann has bought some new shoes.			
			The boy refused to tell us anything.			
			The poy released to tell as Bulyming.			
	1	Does	mind if I smoke?			
	2	Would	you liketo eat?			
	3		llive			
	4	The pri	soners refused to eat			
	5	There's	sat the door. Can you go and see who it is?			
	6		opt in the park because we didn't haveto stay. We didn't			
			we could stay with and we didn't havemoney for a hotel.			
	7		navemilk in my coffee, please?			
	8		very secretive. She never tell (two words).			
	9		re you looking under the bed? Have you lost?			
			n cash these travellers cheques atbank.			
			n't readof these books but Tom has readof them.			
			the house without sayingto			
		Would you likemore coffee?				
			n is really great. You can askwho has seen it.			
		5 This is No Parking areawho parks their car here will have to pay a fine.				
	10	Can yo	ou give meinformation about places to see in the town?			
	17	VVIII III	is special tourist bus ticket you can goyou like onbus you like.			
84.	2 <i>In</i>	this ex	ercise you have to write sentences with if.			
	Ex	ample:	Perhaps someone will need help. If so, they can ask me.			
			If anyone needs help, they can ask me.			
	1	perhan	os someone will ring the door bell. If so, don't let them in.			
	•		, don't let them in.			
	2		os someone will ask you some questions. If so, don't tell them anything.			
		If				
	3	Perhag	os someone saw the accident. If so, they should contact the police.			
		lf				
84	3.0	amalete	these sentences. Use any/anyone/anybody/anything/anywhere			
0-1	_	-				
	EX	•	I don't mind what you tell him. You can tell him anything you like.			
	1	I don't	mind what you wear to the party. You can wear			
	2		mind where you sit. You can			
	3		n't matter which day you come. You:			
	4		mind who you talk to. You			
	5		n't matter which flight you travel on. You			
	6		mind who you marry.			
	7	It does	in't matter what time you phone.			

#### **KEY**

#### 84.11 anyone/anybody

- 2 something
- 3 anywhere
- 4 anything
- 5 someone/somebody
- 6 anywhere...anyone/anybody...any
- 7 some
- 8 She never tells anyone anything, (or She never tells anybody anything).
- 9 something
- 10 any
- 11 any...some
- 12 anything to anyone/anybody
- 13 some
- 14 anyone/anybody
- 15 Anyone/Anybody
- 16 some
- 17 anywhere...any

#### 84.2 1 If anybody rings the doorbell, don't let them in

- 2 If anyone/anybody ask you any questions, don't tell them anything.
- 3 If anyone/anybody saw the accident they should contact the police.

#### 84.3 1 You can wear anything you like.

- 2 You can sit anywhere you like.
- 3 You can come any day you like.
- 4 You can talk to anyone/anybody you like.
- 5 You can travel on any flight you like.
- 6. You can marry anyone/anybody you like.
- 7 You can phone (at) any time you like.

## BÀI 85: NO, NONE và ANY Các kết hợp với NO và ANY

#### a) No, none, no-one, nobody, nothing, nowhere:

Chúng ta thường dùng những từ phủ định này ở đầu câu hoặc dùng một mình:

- No-one (Nobody) came to visit me when I was in hospital.
   (Chẳng có ai đến thăm tôi khi tôi nằm bênh viên cả.)
- No system of government is perfect.
  - (Chẳng có hệ thống chính quyển nào là hoàn hảo cả.)
- "Where are you going?" "Nowhere. I'm staying here."
   ("Bạn định đi đầu?" "Chẳng đi đầu cả. Tôi sê ở lại đây.")
- None of these books are mine.
   (Không có quyển sách nào trong số này là sách của tôi cả.)
- "What did you do?" "Nothing."
   ("Ban đà làm gì?" "Chẳng làm gì cả.")

Bạn cũng có thể dùng những từ này ở *giữa* hoặc *cuối* câu. Nhưng nhớ, đừng dùng "not" với những từ này vi bản thân chúng đã mang nghĩa phủ định *(negative):* 

I saw nothing. (Không nói "I didn't see nothing.")
 (Tôi chẳng thấy gì cả.)

Ở giữa hoặc ở *cuối* câu, chúng ta rất hay dùng not... any / anyone / anybody / anything / anywhere:

- I didn't see anything. (= I saw nothing)
   (Tôi chẳng thấy gì cả).
- We haven't got any money. (We've not no money) (Chúng tôi chẳng có đồng nào cả).
- The station isn't anywhere near here. (= ...is nowhere near here).
   (Gần đây chẳng có nhà ga nào cả.)
- She didn't tell anyone about her plans. (= she told no-one)
   (Cô ta không kể cho ai nghe về những kế hoạch của mình).

Khi đã có một từ phủ định khác thi bạn không cần phải dùng "not" nữa:

Nobody tells me anything. (= people don't tell me anything).
 (Chẳng có ai kể cho tôi nghe điều gi cả).

#### b) No và none:

Chúng ta dùng **no** với một danh từ (noun). **No** = *not a* hoặc *not any* (không / không chút nào):

- We had to walk because there was no bus. (= there wasn't a bus).
   (Chúng tôi phải đi bộ vì không có xe buýt).
- I can't talk to you now. I have no time. (= I haven't any time)
   (Tôi không thể nói chuyện với anh vào lúc này được. Tôi không có thời giờ).
- There was no shops open. (= there wasn't any shops)
   (Không còn cửa hàng nào mô cửa cả).

Chúng ta dùng none một minh (không dùng với một danh từ):

"How many money have you got?" "None." ("Bạn có bao nhiều tiến?" "Chẳng có đồng nào cả." Hoặc chúng ta cũng có thể dùng none of:

none of these shops.
 (không cửa tiệm nào trong số này.)

none of my money (không khoản nào trong số tiến của tôi).

- none of it / us / you / them (không cải nào, ai trong số đó / chúng tôi / các bạn / ho )

Sau **none of** + một từ *số nhiều* (none of the girls / none of them, v.v...), bạn có thể dùng một động từ *số lt* hoặc *số nhiều*. Thông thường người ta dùng *động từ số nhiều*:

- None of the people I met were English.
   (Không có người nào mà tôi đã gặp là người Anh cả).
- c) Sau no-one / nobody, chung ta thường dùng they / them / their:
  - Nobody phone, did they? (= did he or she?)
     (Không có ai gọi điện thoại đến, phải không?)
  - No-one in the class did their homework. (= his or her homework)
     (Không có ai trong lớp này đã làm bài tập về nhà.)
- d) Bạn có thể dùng any / no với các từ so sánh bậc hơn (comparative) (any better / no bigger v.v...):
  - Do you feel any better today? (= Do you feel better at ati?)
     (Hôm nay anh có cảm thấy khá hơn tí nào không?) (nói với một người hôm qua bị bệnh).
  - We've waited long enough. I'm not waiting any longer. (= not even a minute longer).
     (Chúng tôi đã đợi quá đủ rối. Tôi sẽ không đợi thêm một phút nào nữa).
  - I expected your house to be very big but it's no bigger than mine. ( = not even a tittle bigger)

(Tôi cử nghĩ rằng nhà anh lớn lắm, nhưng thật ra nó chẳng hơn nhà tôi chút nào.)

Về any, xem thêm bài 84.

#### **UNIT 85: EXERCISES**

85.	1 Answer these questions with none (of)/no-one/nobody/nothing/nowhere.  Example: What did you do? Nothing.	
	1 Where are you going? 2 How many children has he got? 3 What did you tell them? 4 Who were you talking to? 5 How much of this money is yours?	
	Now write answers to these questions with anylanyone/anybody/anything/anywhexample: "What did you do?" I didn't do anything.	ere.
	6 "Where are you going?"	•
	9 What did they dive you?	

85.2 C any	omplete these sente yone / anybody / an	nces with nolnone	e/no-one . re.	/ nobody / nothing / nowhere / any /
Example: There was no shops open. I don't want anything to eat.				
11	"Where did you go I couldn't make an a I didn't say The accident looke. The town was still t We took a few phot I can't find my watc "What did you We cancelled the p	for your holidays? omelette because d serious but fortu he same when I re tographs but h for break arty because	I had	was injured. ears laterhad changedof them were very good. ed all over the house. I don't usually have of the people we invited could come.
				n?" "The last one
	closed six months a	ago". led to go to a resta		t we couldn't becauseof us
1 2 3 4 5	I'm going as fast as What makes you th I'm sorry I've come This restaurant is a I must stop for a res	I can. I can't go ink Harry is old? I a bit late but I cou bit expensive. Is:	le is Ildn't com	. Do you feel <u>any better</u> today?  than you.  ee?
	· · · ·			
85.1 1 Nowhere. 2 None. 3 Nothing. 4 No-one/Nobody. 5 None of it. 6 I'm not going anywhere. 7 They haven't got any (children). 8 I didn't dance with anyone/anybody.			10 11 12 13 14	Nothing anything none No No-one/Nobodyanything None noneany I can't go any faster. He is no older than you./He isn't
9 They didn't give me anything.  85.2 1 anyone/anybody 2 Nowhere 3 no 4 anything 5 no-one/nobody 6 Nothing 7 none 8 anywhere			3 4 5	any older than youI couldn't come any earlier / any sooner. Is the other one any cheaper / any less expensive? I can't walk any further / any farther.

# BÀI 86: MUCH, MANY, LITTLE, FEW, A LOT và PLENTY

#### a) Much, many, few, little

Chúng ta thường dùng much và little với các *uncountable nouns* (danh từ không đếm được):

much time much luck little energy little money (nhiều thời gian) (nhiều may mắn) (it sức lực) (it tiền)

Chúng ta dùng many và few với các plural nouns (danh từ số nhiều):

many friends many people few cars few countries (nhiều bạn bè) (nhiều người) (it xe hơi) (it quốc gia)

#### b) A lot (of), lots (of), pienty (of)

Chúng ta thường dùng a lot of/lots of/plenty of với các uncountable và plural nouns:

a lot of luck lots of time plenty of money (nhiều may mắn) (nhiều thời gian) (nhiều tiến) a lot of people lots of books plenty of ideas (nhiều người) (nhiều sách) (nhiều ý kiến)

Ptenty = nhiều, (==> du):

- "Have some more to eat." "No, thank you, I've had plenty."
   ("Dùng thêm một ft nữa đi." "Không, cám ơn. Tôi dùng nhiều rồi.")
- There's no need to hurry. We've got plenty of time.
   (Không cần phải với vã. chúng ta có nhiều thời gian mà.)
- c) Chúng ta dùng much và many chủ yếu trong các câu phủ định (negative) và câu hỏi (question):
  - We didn't spend much money.
     (Chúng tôi đã không tiêu nhiều tiền.)
  - Have you got many friends? (Anh có nhiều bạn bè không?)

Trong các câu xác định (affirmative), chúng ta thường dùng a lot (of) hơn. Mụch rất ít khi được dùng trong câu xác định.

- We spent a lot of money. (Không nói "We spent much money")
   (Chúng tối đã tiêu nhiều tiến).
- There has been a lot of rain recently. (Không nói "much rain")
   (Gắn đây trời mưa rất nhiều).

Nhưng chúng ta lại thường dùng too much và so much trong các cầu xác định:

I can't drink this tea. There's too much sugar in it.
 (Tôi không ướng ly trà này được. Có quá nhiều đường trong đó).

#### d) Little/a little,few/a few:

Little và few (không có a) mang nghĩa phủ định:

- Hurry up! We've got little time. (= not much, not enough time)
   (Nhanh lên! Chúng ta còn ft thời gian lám).
- He's not popular. He has few friends. (= not many, not enough friends). (Anh ta không được ưa thích lắm. Anh ta có ít bạn bê.)

#### Chúng tả cũng dùng very little và very few:

- We've got very little time.
   (Chúng ta có rất lì thời gian).
- Ha has very few friends. (Anh ta có rất it bạn bè).
- "A little" và "a few" thường mang nghĩa xác định. A little/a few = một ít, một vài, một số lượng ít:
  - Let's go and have a drink. We've got a little time before the train leaves. (= some time, enough time to have a drink).
  - (Hây đi uống một ly đi. Chúng ta còn được chút thời gian trước khi tàu khởi hành).
     "Have you got any money?" "yes, a little. Do you want to borrow some?".
     ("Anh có tiền không?" "Có, có một ít. Anh có muốn mượn không?")
     (a little = không nhiều nhưng đủ cho anh mượn một ít).
  - I enjoy my life here. I have a few friends and we meet quite often,
     (Tôi thích cuộc sống ở đây. Tôi có được vài người bạn và chúng tôi gặp nhau rất thường xuyên).
     (a tew friends = không nhiều nhưng đủ để vui chơi).
  - "When did you last see Tom?" "A few days ago." (= some days ago"). ("Ban gặp Tom lần cuối khi nào?" "Cách đây vài ngày.")

Nhưng "only a little" và "only a few" lại mang nghĩa phủ định.

- Hurry up! We've only got a little time.
   (Nhanh lên! Chúng ta chỉ còn chút xíu thời gian thôi).
- The village was very small. There were only a few houses. (Ngôi làng rất nhỏ. Chỉ có một vài căn nhà).

#### UNIT 86: EXERCISES

86.1 Complete these sentences with much, many and a lot (of). Sometimes there are two possibilities.

Examples: There weren't <u>many</u> people at the party I had seen before. It cost me <u>a lot of</u> money to furnish this house.

1	We'll have to hurry. We haven't gottime.
2	Tom drinksmilk - one liter a day.
3	She is a very quiet person. She doesn't say
	putsalt in the soup. Perhaps too
5	people do not like flying.
6	The man was badly injured in the accident. He lost blood.
7	It's not a very lively town. There isn'tto do.
8	This car is expensive to run. It usespetrol.
9	Don't disturb me. I've gotwork to do.
10	He's got so money, he doesn't know what to do with it
	He always putssalt on his food.
	We didn't take photographs when we were on holidou

86.2 No	ow you have to make sentences with	plenty (of	). Use the word	in brackets.		
Exa	amples: We needn't hurry. (time) We's	e got pler	ity of time.			
1 H 2 V 3 C 4 V 5 V	le's got no financial problems. (mone) We don't need to go to a petrol station Come and sit at our table. (room) Ther We can make omelettes for lunch. (eg We'll easily find somewhere to stay. (h can't believe you've still hungry. (to e Why are you sitting there doing nothing	y) He's go (petroi) V e is gs) We otels) The at) You've	Ve			
86.3 C	omplete these sentences with little/a I	ittle/few/a	few.			
Exa	amples: Hurry! We've got little time.					
	i last saw Tom <u>a few</u> days ag	ю.				
1	We didn't have any money but Tom	had	-			
2	He doesn't speak much English. Onl					
3	Nora's father died					
4 "Would you like some more cake?" "Yes, ple						
5	This town isn't very well-known and there isn't much to see, so tourist come here.					
6	I don't think Jill would be a good with children.	teacher. S	she's got	patience		
7	This is not the first time the car has before.	s broken o	lown. It has ha	ppened time		
8	The cinema was almost empty. Their	re were ve	гу	people there.		
9	There is a shortage of water becaus	e there ha	s been very	rain recently.		
KEY	(					
86.1 1	much ("a lot of" is also possible)	86.2 1	He's got plenty			
2	a lot of	2	_	have plenty of petrol.		
3	much ("a lot" is also possible)	3	There is plenty			
4	a lot of, much	4	_	have plenty of eggs.		
5	A lot of ("many" is also possible)	5	There are pler	•		
6	a lot of	6	You've had ple			
7	much (*a lot* is also possible)	7	_	u have plenty of		
8	a lot of	00.04	things to do.			
9	a lot of much		a little a few	2 a few 4 a little		
11		3 5	a rew few	6 little		
	many ("a lot of" is also possible)	7	a few	8 few		
, _	/ m.m. m.m. hannand.	•				

8 few 9 little

### BÀI 87: ALL, EVERY và WHOLE

#### a) All, everyone, everybody, everything:

Chúng ta thường không dùng all với nghĩa everyone/everybody (mọi người):

- Everybody enjoyed the party. (Không nói "All enjoyed")
   (Mọi người đều thích bữa tiệc).
- Ann knows everyone in her street. (không nói \*...al in her street\*)
   (Ann quen biết mọi người trong khu phố của cô ta.)

Đôi khi bạn có thể dùng all với nghĩa everything (tất cả mọi thứ).

Nhưng dù sao dùng everything vẫn tốt hơn:

- He thinks he knows everything. (không nói "knows all").
   (Anh ta nghĩ rằng anh ta biết mọi thứ).
- It was an awful holiday. Everything went wrong. (không nói "All went wrong")
   (Đó là một kỳ nghĩ khủng khiếp. Mọi thứ đều fỗị tệ.)

Nhưng bạn có thể dùng all trong thành ngữ all about:

- They told us all about their holiday.

(Họ đã kể cho chúng tôi nghe tất cả về kỳ nghỉ của họ).

Chúng ta cũng dùng all với nghĩa "the only thíng (s)" (điều duy nhất, thứ duy nhất...):

All I've eaten today is a sandwich. (= the only thing I've eaten)
(Tất cả những gì tôi đã ăn trong ngày hóm nay chỉ là một bánh mì xăng-uých.)

(hoặc Thứ duy nhất mà tôi đã ăn trong ngày hôm nay là một bánh mì xăng-uých.)

#### b) Chúng ta dùng một động từ số ít (singular verb) sau every / everyone / everybody / everything:

- Every seat in the theatre was taken.
   (Mọi chỗ ngồi trong rạp hát đều đã có người).
- Everybody looks tired today.
   (Hôm nay mọi người đều có vẻ mệt mỏi).
- Everything he said was true.
   (Mọi điều mà anh ấy nói đều đùng cả).

Nhưng chúng ta thường dùng they/them/their sau everyone/everybody:

- Has everyone got their tickets? (= his or her ticket)
   (Mọi người đều đã có vẻ rồi chữ?)
- Everybody said they would come. (= he or she would come) (Mọi người đều nói là sẽ đến).

#### c) Ali và whole:

Chúng ta dùng whole chủ yếu với các danh từ số it (singular nouns):

- Have you read the whole books? (= all the book)
   (Ban đã đọc hết quyển sách đó chưa?)
- He was very quiet. He didn't say a word the whole evening.
   (Anh ta rất trầm tư. Anh ta chẳng nói một lời nào suốt cả buổi tới.)
- She has spent her whole life in India.
   (Cổ ấy đã sống hết cuộc đời ở Ấn Độ).

Chúng ta thường dùng the/my/her v.v... trước whole. Hãy so sánh:

the whole book/all the book (tron quyển sách)

her whole life/all her life (Cả cuộc đời cô ấy.)

Bạn cũng có thể nói \*a whole...\*

Jack ate a whole chocolate cake last night. (= a complete cake)
 (Jack đã ăn hết một cái bánh sô-cô-la tối qua).

Chúng ta thường không dùng whole với danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns): all the money (không nói "the whole money") (tất cả món tiến)

d) Every/all / whole với những từ chỉ thời gian:

Chúng ta dùng every để chỉ mức độ thường xuyên của sự việc. Vì vậy chúng ta nói every day/every Monday/every ten minutes/every three weeks v.v...:

We go out every Friday night.

(Chúng tôi đi chơi vào mỗi tối thứ Sáu hàng tuấn).

The buses run every ten minutes.
 (Các chuyển xe buýt chạy cách nhau mười phút).

- Ann goes to see her mother every three weeks.
(Ann di thâm mẹ có ta ba tuần một lần).

All day/the whole day = suốt cả ngày

 We spent all day/the whole day on the beach. (Chúng tôi chơi ở bãi biển suốt cả ngày).

I've been trying to find you all morning/the whole morning.
 (Tôi đã cổ tìm bạn suốt cả buổi sáng nay.)

Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng ta thường nói *all day/all week* v.v... (không nói "all the day/all the week")

Về all, xem thêm các bài 82 và 106.

### **UNIT 87: Exercises**

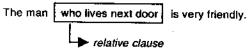
87.1 C	omplete these sentences with all, everything or everyone/everybody.
Ex	amples: Ann knows <u>everyone</u> in her street. All I've eaten today is a sandwich.
1 2 3	Tom is very popular
4 5 6	Margaret told me
7 8	I can't stand him. He disagrees with I say.  I didn't spend much money in the shops I bought was a pair of gloves.
9	Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't
	He didn't say where he was goinghe said was that he was going awayhas got their faults. Nobody is perfect.

87.2 Now you have to make sentences with the whole. Example: He read the book from beginning to end. He read the whole book. He opened a box of chocolate. When he finished eating, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate The police came to our house. They were looking for something. They searched 2 everywhere, every room. They searched..... She worked from early in the morning until late in the evening..... 4 Everyone in Tim and Carol's family plays tennis. Tim and Carol play, and so do all their children. The .....tennis. Jack and Jill went on holiday to the seaside for a week. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end. It..... 6 it was a terrible fire. Nothing was left of the building afterwards......destroyed 7 Everyone in the team played well..... now make sentences for 3 and 5 again. This time-use all instead of whole. (5)...... 87.3 Now you have to say how often something happens. Use every with these periods of five midutes four hours six months ten minutes time: four years Example: There's a good bus service to the center. The buses run every five minutes. Tom is ill in bed. He has to take it. The Olympic Games take place...... 3 Everyone should have a check-up with the dentist....... We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over the house...... **KEY** 87.2 1 He ate the whole box 87.1 1 Everyone/Everybody 2 They searched the whole house. 2 Everyone/Everybody...everything 3 She worked the whole day. 3 everything 4 The whole family play tennis. all("everything" is also possible) (or...plays tennis - see Unit 78d). everyone/everybody 5 It rained the whole week. 6 ΑII 6 The whole building was destroyed. 7 everything in the fire. ΑII 7 The whole team played well. everything 9 8 She worked all day. 10 All 9 It rained all week. 11 Everyone/Everybody 87.3 1 every four hours 2 every four years 3 every six months

4 'every ten minutes

# BÀI 88: RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mệnh đề quan hệ) (1): Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng who/ that /

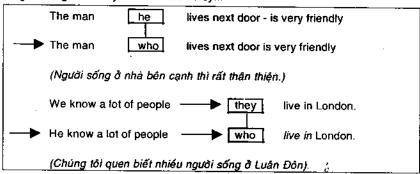
a) Xem thí dụ sau:



(Người sống ở nhà bên cạnh thì rất thân thiện).

Mệnh để là một phần của câu. Một mệnh để quan hệ (relative clause) cho chúng ta biết người hay vật nào (hoặc loại người hay vật nào) mà người ta muốn ám chỉ:

- The man who lives next door... (who lives next door cho chúng ta biết người đán ông nào).
- People who live in London... (who live in London cho chúng ta biết loại người nào). Chúng ta dùng who trong một mệnh để quan hệ khi chúng ta đang nói về người. Chúng ta dùng who thay cho he / she / they...



- Aπ architect is someone who designs buildings. (Kiến trúc sư là người thiết kế các tòa nhà).
- What was the name of the man who lent you the money?
   (Người dàn ông đã cho bạn mượn tiền tên gì?)
- The girl who was injured in the accident is now in the hospital.
   (Cô gái bị thương trong tai nạn hiện đang nằm bệnh viện).
- Anyone who wants to do the examination must enter before next Friday.

  (Ai muốn dự thi phải đàng ký trước thứ Sáu tuần tôi).

Ta có thể dùng that thay cho who:

 The man that lives next door is very friendly. (Người sống ở nhà bên cạnh rất thân thiện).

Nhưng đôi khi bạn phải dùng who cho người - xem bài 91,

b) Khi chúng ta đang nói về đổ vật, chúng ta dùng that (không dùng who) trong mệnh đề quan hệ. Chúng ta dùng that cho it/they:

They were in the fridge. Where are the eggs? Where are the eggs | that | were in the tridge? (Mấy quả trứng trong tủ lạnh đầu rối?)

- I don't like stories that have unhappy endings. (Tội không thích những câu chuyện có kết cục buồn).
- Gerry works for a company that make typewriters. (Gerry làm việc cho một công ty sản xuất máy đánh chữ)
- Everything that happened was my fault. (Mọi việc xảy ra đều do lỗi của tôi).
- The window that was broken has now been repaired. (Cánh cửa số bị với bây giờ đã được sữa lại rồi).

Bạn có thể dùng which để chỉ đổ vật (nhưng không dùng để chỉ người):

Where are the eggs which were in the fridge? (Mấy quả trứng trong tủ lạnh đầu rối?)

Trong bài này that được dùng nhiều hơn whích. Nhưng đôi khi bạn bắt buộc phải dùng which - xem bài 91.

- c) Hãy nhớ rằng chúng ta dùng who / that / which thay cho he / she / they / it:
  - Do you know the man who lives next door? (không nói "...who he lives..."). (Ban có quen người sống ở nhà bên cạnh không?) Hày xem bài kế tiếp để biết thêm về mệnh để quan hệ.

#### **UNIT 88: Exercises**

88.1 In this exercise you have to explain what some words mean. Choose the right meaning from the list and then write a sentence with who. Use a dictionary if necessary.

he/she breaks into a house and steals things

he/she steals from a shop he/she doesn't eat meat he/she designs buildings	he/she breaks into a house and steals things he/she doesn't drink alcohol he/she buys something from a shop
1 (an architect) 2 (a burglar) 3 (a vegetarian) 4 (a customer) 5 (a shoplifter)	An architect is someone who designs buildings A burglar is someone A vegetarian
6 (a teetotaller)	H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H H

88.2 Now you have to read two sentences and then write one sentence with the same meaning. Use a relative clause in your sentence.

A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital. The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.

		•				
	1	A man answered the phone. He told in	ne you w	ere out.		
		The man	-	PR NO 100 401 441 NO 100 461 461 461 461 461 461 461 461 461 461		
	2	A waitress served us. She was very in	npolite a	nd impatient.		
		The	*	•		
	3	Some boys were arrested. They have				
		The boys				
_						
88.	3	The sentences in this exercise are no	t comple	te. Choose the most suitable ending		
	fi	rom the list and make it into a relative o	lause.	-		
Г	he i	invented the telephone	lt m	akes typewrites		
		runs away from home		ves you the meaning of words		
		y are never on time	_	on the race		
		y stole my car		an support life		
		y used to hang on that wall		as found last week		
_	1110	y dood to righty on that wall	10.00	as locate test, week		
	1	Gerry works for a company that (or w	hich) ma	kes typewriters		
	2	The book is about a girl				
	3	What was the name of the horse		?		
	4	The police have caught the men		***		
	5	Alexander Bell was the man				
	6	Where are the pictures?				
	7	The police are still trying to identify the body				
	8	A dictionary is a book				
	9	I don't like people				
	_	It seems that Earth is the only planet				
		mooning that Editor is the only planet.		1 DO 107 W 401 W 107		
	-					
ΚI	ΕY	<i>(</i>				
		·				
88.	12	A burglar is someone who breaks	3	The boys who (or that) were		
		into a house and steals things.		arrested have now been released.		
	3	A vegetarian is someone who				
		doesn't eat meat.	88.3 2	who (or that) runs away from		
	4	A customer is someone who buys		home.		
		something from a shop.	3	that (or which) won the race?		
	5	A shoplifter is someone who steals	4	who (or that) stole my car.		
	_	from a shop.	5	who (or that) invented the		
	6	A teetotaller is someone who		telephone.		
	•	doesn't drink alcohol.	6	that (or which) used to hang on		
	• T#	nat" is possible instead of "who" in all	J	·		
		se sentences.	_	that wall?		
			7	that (or which) was found last week.		
88.	2 1	The man who (or that) answered	8	that (or which) gives you the		
		the phone told me you were out.		meanings of words,		
	2	The waitress who (or that) served	9	who (or that) are never on time.		
		us was very impolite and impatient.	_	that (or which) can support life		

## BÀI 89: RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mệnh đề quan hệ) (2): Mệnh đề có hoặc không có who / that

- a) Hãy xem lại các thí dụ thuộc bài 88 sau đây:
  - The man who lives next door is very friendly (hoặc "that lives...").
     (Người sống ở nhà bên cạnh rất thân thiện).
  - Where are the eggs that were in the firdge? (hoặc "which were...").
     (Mấy quả trừng trong tủ lạnh đâu rồi?).

Trong các câu trên, **who** và **that** là *chủ tử* (subject) của các động từ trong mệnh để quan hệ: "the man lives next door", "the eggs were in the fridge". Bạn *không thể* bỏ **who** hoặc that trong những câu này.

Đôi khi who và that còn là túc từ (object) của động từ:

the man - I wanted to see him - was away on holiday.

The man who (hoặc that) I wanted to see was away on holiday.

(Người mà tôi muốn gặp đã đi nghỉ rồi).

have you found the keys? - you lost them.

Have you found the keys that you lost?

(Bạn đã tìm thấy chùm chia khóa mà bạn đánh mất chưa?)

Khi who hoặc that là *túc từ* của động từ trong mệnh để quan hệ, bạn có thể lược bỏ chúng:

- The man I wanted to see was away on holiday. (nhưng không nói "the man I wanted to see him..."). (Người mà tôi muốn gặp đã đi nghỉ rồi).
- Have you found the keys you lost? (nhưng không nói \*Have you found the keys you lost them?\*).
  - (Bạn đã tìm thấy chùm chìa khóa mà bạn đã đánh mất chưa?).
- The dress Ann bought doesn't fit her very well. (= the dress that Ann bought)
   (Chiếc áo Ann mua không vừa với cô ta lắm).
- The girl Gerry is going to marry is American. (= the girl who / that Gerry is going to marry) (Cô gái Gerry sắp cưới là người Mỹ).
- Is there anything I can do? (= is there anything that I can do?)
   (Cô việc gì tôi có thể làm được không?).
- Giới từ (prepositions) thường được dùng trong các mệnh để liên hệ. Hãy xem xét vị trí của giới từ trong các câu sau:

do you know the girl? - Tom is talking to her?

Do you know the girl (who/that) Tom is talking to?

⇒ (Bạn có biết cô gái mà Tom đang nói chuyện cùng không?).

the bed - I slept in last night - wasn't very comfortable.

== the bed (that) I slept in last night wasn't very comfortable.

(Chiếc giường tôi nằm tối hôm qua không được thoải mái lắm).

- The man (who/that) i sat next to on the plane talked all the time.
   (Người đàn ông mà tôi ngổi kế bên trên máy bay nói chuyện liên tục).
- Are these the books (that) you have been looking for?
   (Đây có phải là những quyển sách mà bạn đang tìm không?).
- The girl (who/that) he fell in love with left him after a few weeks.
   (Cô gái anh ta yêu đã bổ rơi anh ta chỉ sau vài tuẩn).
- c) Bạn không thể dùng what thay cho that:
  - Everything (that) he said was true. (không nói "everything what he said")
     (Mọi điều anh ta nói đều đúng cầ).
  - I gave her all the money (that) I had. (không nói "all...what I had") (Tôi đã đưa cho cô ta tất cả số tiến tôi có).

## What = the things that:

- Did you hear what I said? (= the words that I said)
   (Ban có nghe những g) tôi nói không?).
- I won't tell anyone what happened. (= the thing that happened)
   (Tôi sẽ không nói cho ai biết chuyện gì đã xảy ra).

## **UNIT 89: Exercises**

we met her vesterdav

89.1 The sentences in this exercise are not complete. Complete each one with a relative clause. Use the sentences in the box to make your relative clauses.

Tom tells them.

we wanted to visit it

Ta	im recommended it	we had it for dinner	you lost them I invited them to the party	
Ar	nn is wearing it	the police arrested him		
1	Have you found the	kevs you lost?		
2	•		H bN on the far on the same of	
3		was shut when		
4	Most of the people couldn't come.			
5		an		
6	The fish	was really delicious.		
7	We stayed at a hote	l		
8		are usually very funny.		
9	The man	has now been released.		

89.2 This time you have to make a relative clause with a preposition.

you were with her last night	I am living in it	I slept in it
they were talking about them	she is married to him	I work with them
we wanted to travel on it	I applied for it	we went to it

1		
2	<b>3</b>	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3		
4	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
5		
6		
7	and the contract of the property of the proper	** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** ***
8	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
9	The houseis not in very	good condition.
89.3	Complete these sentences, where necessary, w write that or leave it out, write (that) in bracket	
Ε	Examples: Did you hear what I said? Everything	(that) he said was true.
1	She gives her children everything	they want.
2		
3	Why do you blame me for everything	
4		best
. 5	_ ·	
6		- '
7		
8		e just said.
9		
_		mail 100 GFGF GGGFF.
KE	Υ	•
89.1	2(that) Ann is wearing.	
••••		(that) I'm living in
	3(that) we wanted to visit	(that) I'm living in
	3(that) we wanted to visit 4(who/that) I invited to the party	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in
	4(who/that) I invited to the party	
	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday.	*Which* is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.
	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 89.3	*Which* is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that)
	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended.	*Which* is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what
	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells	*Which* is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9. 1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in
-,	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended.	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9. 1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the
	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject)
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which* is possible instead of "that" in 1.3, 6, 7 and 8.	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that)
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which" is possible instead of "that" in 1, 3, 6, 7 and 8. 2 (that) I applied for.	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that) 5 (that)
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which" is possible instead of "that" in 1, 3, 6, 7 and 8. 2 (that) I applied for. 3(who/that) she is married to	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that) 5 (that) 6 who/that (you cannot leave out
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which" is possible instead of "that" in 1, 3, 6, 7 and 8. 2 (that) I applied for. 3(who/that) she is married to 4(that) we went to.	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that) 5 (that) 6 who/that (you cannot leave out "who" or "that" because it is the
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which' is possible instead of "that" in 1, 3, 6, 7 and 8. 2 (that) I applied for. 3(who/that) she is married to 4(that) we went to. 5(who/that) you were with last	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that) 5 (that) 6 who/that (you cannot leave out "who" or "that" because it is the subject)
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which" is possible instead of "that" in 1, 3, 6, 7 and 8. 2 (that) I applied for. 3(who/that) she is married to 4(that) we went to. 5(who/that) you were with last night?	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that) 5 (that) 6 who/that (you cannot leave out "who" or "that" because it is the subject) 7 (that)
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which" is possible instead of "that" in 1, 3, 6, 7 and 8. 2 (that) I applied for. 3(who/that) she is married to 4(that) we went to. 5(who/that) you were with last night? 6(that) we wanted to travel on	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that) 5 (that) 6 who/that (you cannot leave out "who" or "that" because it is the subject) 7 (that) 8 what
2	4(who/that) I invited to the party 5(who/that) we met yesterday. 6(that) we had for dinner 7(that) Tom recommended. 8(that) Tom tells 9(who/that) the police arrested Which" is possible instead of "that" in 1, 3, 6, 7 and 8. 2 (that) I applied for. 3(who/that) she is married to 4(that) we went to. 5(who/that) you were with last night?	"Which" is possible instead of "that" in 2, 4, 6, 8 and 9.  1 (that) 2 what 3 that (you cannot leave out "that" in this sentence because it is the subject) 4 (that) 5 (that) 6 who/that (you cannot leave out "who" or "that" because it is the subject) 7 (that)

## BÀI 90: RELATIVE CLAUSE (Mệnh đề quan hệ)

(3): Mệnh đè với whose, whom và where

## a) Whose

Chúng ta dùng whose trong mệnh để quan hệ thay cho his/her/their:

We saw some people their car had broken down

→ We saw some people whose car had broken down

(Chúng tôi đã gặp mấy người có xe bị hư)

Chúng ta dùng whose chủ yếu để chỉ người:

- A widow is a woman whose husband is dead (her husband is dead).
   (Một quả phụ là một người đàn bà có chống bị chết).
- What the name of the girl whose car you borrowed? (you borrowed her car)
   (Cô gái bạn mượn xe hơi tên là gì?).
- The other day I met someone whose brother I went to school with (I went to school with his brother).
   (Hôm kia tôi gặp một người có em trai học chung với tôi)
- b) Whom có thể được dùng thay cho who (chỉ người) khi nó là túc từ (object) của động từ trong mênh để quan hệ (như những câu ở bài 89):
  - The man whom I wanted to see was away on holiday (I wanted to see him)
     (Người đàn ông mà tôi muốn gặp đã đi nghỉ rồi)

Bạn cũng có thể dùng whom với một giới từ (preposition) (to/from/with whom...)

- The girl with whom he fell in love left him after a few weeks ( he fell in love with her) (Cô gái mà anh ta yếu đã bỏ rơi anh ta chỉ sau vài tuần).

Nhưng chúng ta thường dùng whom. Trong văn nói tiếng Anh (spoken English), chúng ta thường dùng who hoặc that hơn (hoặc bạn có thể lược bỏ chúng xem bài 89):

- The man (who/whom) I wanted to see... (Người đàn ông mà tôi muốn gặp...)
- The girl (who/that) he fell in love with...
   (Cô gái mà anh ta yêu...)

Về whom, xem bài 91và 92

### c) Where

Ban có thể dùng where trong mệnh để quan hệ để chỉ <i>nơi chốn:</i>	
The hotel-we stayed there -wasn't very clean	
The hotel where we stayed wasn't very clean	
(Khách sạn nơi chúng tôi ở không được sạch sẽ lắm)	

- I recently went back to the town where I was born. (hoặc "the town (that) I was born in")
  - (Mới đây tôi có trở về thành phố nơi tôi được sinh ra)
- I would like to live in a country where there is plenty of sunshine.
   (Tôi thích sống ở một đất nước có nhiều ánh nằng mặt trời)
- d) Chúng ta dùng that (hoặc bỏ đi cũng được) khi muốn thay thế cho the day/the year/the time \_(ngày/năm/lúc mà \_):
  - Do you still remember the day (that) we first met?
     (Ban có biết ngày chúng ta gặp lần đầu không?)
  - The last time (that) I saw her, she looked very well (Lån cuối cùng khi tôi gặp cô ta, cô ta trông rất khỏe mạnh)
  - I haven't seen them since the year (that) they got married.
     (Tôi đã không gặp họ từ nằm họ lấy nhau.)
- e) Bạn có thể nói "the reson why something happens" hoặc "the reason that something happens" (lý do vì sao việc gì đó xảy ra). Bạn cũng có thể bỏ why hoặc that đi:
  - The reason (why/that) I'm phoning you is to invite you to a party.
     (Lý do tôi gọi điện thoại cho bạn là để mời bạn đến dự tiệc).

## UNIT 90: Exerciese :

- 90.1 You were on holiday with a friend of your. You met some people who had some bad experiences during their holiday. You met:
  - 1 some people / their car broke down
  - 2 a man / his wife became ill and was staken to hospital
  - 3 a woman / her husband was arrested by the police
  - 4 a girl / her passpost was stolen
  - 5 a couple / their luggage disappeared:

You can't remember the names of these people, so you ask your friend. Make sentences with whose.

- 1 What was the name of the people whose car broke down?
  2 What was the name of the man......?
  3 What ......??
  4 ....??
- 90.2 The sentences in the exercise are not complete. You have to complete them with where.

Use the sentences in the box to make your relative clauses

I can buy postcards there	I was born there
she had bought it there	we spent our holidays there
people are buried there	we can have a really good meal there

I recently went back to the town where I was born. The dress didn't fit her, so she to took it back the shop Do you know a restaurant.....? Is there a shop near here.....? 4 The place.....was really beautiful. A cemetery is a place 90.3 Again you have to complete the sentences with a relative clause. Use the sentences in the box to make your relative clauses. (her) dog bit me they haven't got a car (for this reason) I didn't write to you (for this reason) John is staying (there) the Second World War ended (in that year) We first met (on that day) you telephoned (that evening) (his/her) parents are dead Do you remember the day (that) we first met? An orphan is a child 2 The reason......was that I didn't know your address. 3 Unfortunately I wasn't at the evening I protested to the woman The reason.....is that they can't afford one. Do you know the name of the hotel, .....? 1945 was the year..... **KEY** ...where I can buy postcards? 90.1 2. What was the name of the man 4 ...where we spent our holidays... whose wife became ill and was 5 ... where people are buried taken to hospital? 3 What was the name of the woman. 90.3 2 ...whose parents are dead. whose husband was arrested by ...(why/that)1 didn't write to you... the police? ...(that) you telephoned 4 What was the name of the girl .. whose dog bit me whose passport was stolen? \_(why/that) they haven't got a 5 What was the name of the couple whose luggage disappeared? ...where John is staying? ...(that) the Second World War 90.2 2 ... where she had bought it. ...where we can have a really good ended.

meal?

# BÀI 91: RELATIVE CLAUSES (mệnh đề quan hệ) (4): mệnh đề "cung cấp thêm thông tin" (1)

- a) Xem lại các thí dụ sau:
  - The man who lives next door is very friendly.
     (Người đàn ông sống ở nhà bên cạnh rất thân thiện)
  - Gerry works for a company that makes typewriters.
     (Gerry làm việc cho một công ty sản xuất máy đánh chữ)
  - Have you found the keys (that) you lost?
     (Ban đã tim thấy chùm chia khoá mà bạn đánh mất chưa?)

Trong các thí dụ trên, các mệnh để quan hệ cho chúng ta biết *người* hay *vật nào* (hoặc loại người hay vật nào) người nói muốn ám chỉ:

"The man who lives next door"cho chúng ta biết người đàn ông nào.

"The keys (that) you lost"cho chúng ta biết những chiếc chia khoá nào.

"A company that makes typewriters"cho chúng ta biết loại công ty gì.

Nhưng không phải tất cả các mệnh đề quan hệ điều tương tự như vậy. Thí dụ:

- Tom's father, who is 78, goes swimming everyday. (Cha của Tom, đã 78 tuổi, đi bơi hàng ngày.)
- The house at the end of the street, which has been empty for two years, has just been sold.

(Căn nhà cuối phố, bỏ không đã hai năm nay,vưà mởi được bán đi)

Trong các thí dụ trên, các mệnh để quan hệ (who is 78 và which has been empty for two years) không cho chúng ta biết người hay vật nào người nói muốn ám chỉ; vì chúng ta đã biết người hay vật nào được để cập đến, đó là "Tom's father" và "the house at the of end the street". Vì vậy mệnh để quan hệ trong các câu này chỉ cung cấp thêm thông tin về người hay vật đã nêu

b) Trong những mệnh để quan hệ "cung cấp thêm thông tin", bạn phải dùng who để chỉ người và which để chỉ vật. Bạn không thể dùng that và không thể lược bỏ who hoặc which.

Khi viết những mệnh để quan hệ như thế, bạn phải đặc *dấu phẩy* (,) ở đấu hoặc cuối mệnh để. Hāy xem thí dụ sau:

- Yesterday i met John, who told me he was getting married.
   (Hôm qua tôi gặp John, anh ta cho tôi biết anh ta sắp lấy vợ)
- Mr. Yates, who has worked for the same company all his life, is retiring next month.
   (Ông Yates, cả cuộc đời chỉ làm việc duy nhất cho một công ty, tháng tới sẽ về hưu).
- She told me her address, which I wrote down on a piece of paper.
   (Cô ta cho tôi địa chỉ, tôi đã viết nó vào 1 tổ giấy)
- The strike at the car factory, which lasted ten days, is now over.

  (Cuộc đình công tại nhà máy sản xuất xe hơi, kéo dài 10 ngày, nay đã kết thúc)

Hay nhỏ rằng chúng ta dùng who/which thay cho he/she/it/they:

- Last night we went to Ann's party, which we enjoyed very much (không nói ".which we enjoyed it very much")
  - (Tối hôm qua chúng tôi có đến dự tiệc của Ann, chúng tôi rất vui thích)
- c) Bạn cũng có thể dùng whose, whom và where trong các mệnh để quan hệ "cung cấp thêm thông tin":
  - Martin, whose mother is Spanish, speaks both Spanish and English fluently. (Martin, có mẹ là người Tây Ban Nha, nói trôi chảy các tiếng Tây Ban Nha lẫn tiếng Anh).
  - Mr Hogg is going to Canada, where his son has been living for five years. (Ông Hogg see đi Canada, nơi con trai ông ta đã sống được 5 năm).
  - My sister, whom(who) you once met, is visiting us next week.(Chị tội , mà có lần bạn đã gặp, sẽ đến thăm chúng ta tuần tới)

Để biết thêm về whose, whom và where, hãy xem bài 90.

Xem bài kế tiếp để hiểu rỏ hơn về mệnh để quan hệ "cung cấp thêm thông tin"

NI	T 91: Exercises
5	this exercise you have to write these sentences again together with a relative clause. Sometimes the relative clause is in the middle of the sentence, sometimes at the end. Use the sentences in brackets to make your relative clauses.
Ex	amples: Tom's father goes swimming every day (Tom's father is 78)  Tom's father, who is 78, goes swimming every day.  She told me her address (I wrote her address down on a piece of paper)  She told me her address, which I wrote down on a piece of paper.
1	She showed me a photograph of her son (Her son is a policeman)
2	She showed me a photograph of her son,
3	The new stadium will be opened next month (The stadium holds 90,000 people) The
4	John is one of my closest friends (I have known John for eight years)
5	That man over there is an artist (I don't remember his name) (use whose)
6	Opposite our house there is a nice park ( There are some beautiful trees in this park) (use where)
7	The storm caused a lot of damage (Nobody had been expecting the storm)
8	The postman was late this morning (The postman is nearly always on time)
9	We often go to visit our friends in Bristol (Bristol is only 30 miles away)

10	Mr Edwards has gone into hospital for some tests (His health hasn't been good recently) (use whose)
11	Jack lools much nicer without his beard (His beard made him look much older)
12	I went to see the doctor (The doctor told me to rest for a few days)
13	Thank you for your letter (I was very happy to get your letter)
14	A friend of mine helped me to get a job (His father is the manager of a company) (use whose)
15	Next week-end I'm going to Glasgow (My sister lives in Glasow) (use where)
16	The population of London is now falling (London was once the largest city in the world)
17	I looked up at the moon (The moon was very bright that evening)
18	We spent a pleasant day by the lake (We had a picnic by the lake) (use where)

## **KEY**

- 91.1 1 She showed me a photograph of her son, who is a policeman.
  - 2 We decided not to swim in the sea, which looked rather dirty.
  - 3 The new stadium, which holds 90,000 people, will be opened next month.
  - 4 John, who (or whom) I have known for eight year, is one of my closest friends.
  - 5 That man over there, whose name I don't remember, is an artist.
  - 6 Opposite our house there is a nice park, where there are some beautiful trees.
  - 7 The storm, which nobody had been expecting, caused a lot of damage.
  - 8 The postman, who is nearly always their on time, was late this morning.
  - 9 We often go to visit our friends in Bristol, which is only 30 miles away.
  - 10 Mr Edwards, whose health hasn't been good recently, has gone into hospital for some tests.
  - 11 Jack looks much nicer without his beard, which made him look much older.
  - 12. I went to see the doctor, who told me to rest for a few days.
  - 13 Thank you for your letter, which I was very happy to get.
  - 14 A friend of mine, whose father is the manager of a company, helped me to get a iob.
  - 15 Next week-end I'm going to Glasgow, where my sister lives.
  - 16 The population of London, which was once the largest city in the world, is now falling.
  - 17 I looked up at the moon which was very bright that evening.
  - 18 We spent a pleasant day by the lake, where we had a picnic.

## BÀI 92: RELATIVE CLAUSES (mệnh đề quan hệ) (5): Mệnh đề "cung cấp thêm thông tin" (2)

Bạn xem bài trước khi xem bài này

## a) Giới từ + whom/ which:

Frong các mệnh để cung cấp thêm thông tin, bạn có thể dùng một giới từ (preposition) trước **whom** (chỉ người) và **which** (chỉ vật). Vi vậy bạn có thể nói "to whom/ **with**, whom / **about** which/for which"...

- Mr Carter, to whom I spoke on the phone last night, is very interested in our plan.
   (Ông Carter, người mà tôi nói chuyện qua điện thoại tối hôm qua rất quan tâm đến kế hoạch của chúng ta)
- Fortunately we had a map, without which we would have lost (Thật may mắn là chúng tôi có bản đổ, nểu không chắc hắn chúng tôi đã lạc đường)

Nhưng trong văn nói (spoken English), chúng ta thường đặt giới từ sau động từ trong mệnh để quan hệ. Trong trường hợp đó, chúng ta thường dùng who (không dùng whom):

- This is Mr Carter, who I was telling you about.
  (Đây là ông Carter, người mà tôi đã nói với bạn đó)
  - Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.
     (Ngày hôm qua chúng tôi đến thăm Viện Bảo Tàng Thành Phố, nơi mà trước đây tôi chưa từng đến)

## b) All of/most of... + whom/which. Hảy xem thí dụ sau:

- Jack has three brothers. All of them are married. (2 cau)
- → Jack has three brothers, all of whom are married. (1 câu) (Jack có ba người anh, tất cả điều đã lập gia đình rồi) Ann has a lot of books. She hasn't read most of them (2 câu)
- → Ann has a lot of books, most of which she hasn't read. (1 câu) (Ann có nhiều sách, nhưng cô ấy chưa đọc hầu hết chúng).

Bạn cũng có thể nói:

None of / many of / much of / (a) few of / some of Any of / half of / each of / both of / neither of / Either of / one of / two of...

+ who (chỉ người), which (chỉ vật)

- He tried on three jackets, none of which fitted him.
   (Anh ta mặt thứ ba cái áo vét, nhưng không có cái nào vừa với anh ta)
- They've got three cars, two of which they never use.
   (Ho có ba chiếc xe hơi, hai trong số đó họ chẳng bao giờ dùng đến).
- Tom has a lot of friends, many of whom he was at school with.
   (Tom có nhiều bạn, trong đó có nhiều người học cùng trường với anh ta)

- Two men, neither of whom I had seen before, came into my office.
   (Hai người đàn ông, không có ai trước đây tôi đã từng gặp, bước vào văn phòng của tôi)
- c) Which (không phải " what"): Xem thí du sau:

Jim passed his driving test. This surprised everybody (2 câu)

(Jim đã đậu kỳ thi lấy bằng lái. Điều này làm mọi người ngạc nhiên)

Jim passed his driving test, which surprised everybody (1 câu)

(Việc Jim đậu kỳ thi lấy bằng lái đã làm mọi người ngạc nhiên)

Trong thí dụ này whích =" việc anh ta đậu kỳ thi lấy bằng lái."

Ban không thể dùng what thay cho which trong những cấu tương tự như trên:

- She wouldn't come to the party, which was a pity "không nói"... what was a pity"
   (Cô ấy không đến dự tiệc được, đó là điều đáng tiếc)
- The weather was very good, which we hadn't expected (không nói "... what we hadn't expected").
  (Thời tiết rất tổt, đô không phải là điều chùng tôi mông đơi)

Về what, xem bài 89c.

## UNIT 92: Exercises

OIA	UNIT 92. Exercises					
92.1	in this ex Use the	ercise you have to write these sentences again, together with a relative clause. sentences in brackets to make your relative clauses.				
Example:		Mr. Carter is very interested in our plan (I spoke to him on the phone last night).				
		Mr. Carter, who I spoke to on the phone last night., is very interested in our plan.				
		or: Mr Carter, to whom I spoke on the phone last night, is very interested in our plan.				
1		a photograph of our friends (We went on holiday with them)				
2	The w	edding took place last Friday (only members of the family were invited to it)				
3	l've ju:	st bought some books about astronomy (I'm very interested in astronomy)				
92.2	Now you	have to make sentences with all of / most of etc. + whom/ which.				
Ε	xample:	Jack has three brothers. All of them are married.  Jack has three brothers, all of whom are married.				
1		gave us a lot of information. Most of it was useless				

	2	I nere were a lot of people at the party. I had met only a few of them before.				
;						
4	1 1	t to his parents.				
ţ	5	Ten people applied for the job. None of				
•	3	Tom made a number of suggestions. Me	ost of them were very helpful.			
92.3	No the	w you have to complete these sentences e box to make your relative clauses.	s with a relative clause. Use the sentences			
	t	this means I can't leave the country this makes it difficult to contact her this makes it difficult to sleep I thought this was very rude of them	this was very nice of him this was perfectly true this was a pity			
1 2 3 4 5 6	? }   }   5   6	They said they didn't have any money, . I haven't got a passpost, He offered to let me stay in his house, They didn't thank us for the meal before	they left,			
<b>K</b> E	Y	-				
2.1	1 2 3	with whom we went on holiday). The wedding, which only members of Friday (or The wedding, to which only	the family were invited to, took place last members of the family were invited to invited,). ronomy, which I'm very interested in (or ed).			
)2.2	1 2 3 4 5	They gave us a lot of information, most There were a lot of people at the party I have sent him two letters, neither of Norman won £20,0000, half of which the Ten people, none of whom were suital Tom made a number of suggestions, the suggestions of the suggestions of the suggestions of the suggestions.	r, only a few of whom I had met before. which has arrived. ne gave to his parents. ble, applied for the job.			

- 92.3 2 ... which makes it difficult to contact her.
  - 3 ... which was perfectly true.
  - 4 ... which means I can't leave the country.
  - 5 ... which was very nice of him.
  - 6 ... which I thought was very rude of them.
  - 7 ... which makes it difficult to sleep.

## BÀI 93: -ING and -ED CLAUSES (Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng -ing và -ed)

- a) Mệnh để là thành phần của câu. Một số mệnh để bắt đầu bằng -ing hoặc -ed:
  - Do you know the girl talking to Tom? (mệnh để -ing)
     (Bạn có biết cô gái đang nói chuyện với Tom không?)
  - The man injured in the accident was taken to the hospital. (mệnh để -ed) (Người đàn ông bị thương trong tại nạn đã được đưa vào bệnh viên).
- D) Chúng ta dùng mệnh để -ing để nói rằng ai đó đang làm điều gì hoặc sự việc nào đó đang diễn ra vào một thời diểm cụ thể:
  - Do you know the girl talking to Tom? (the girl is talking to Tom).
     (Ban có biết cổ gái đang nói chuyện với Tom không?) (cổ gái đó đang nói chuyện với Tom).
  - The policemen investigating the robbery are looking for three men. (the policemen are investigating the robbery).
     (Các cảnh sát điều tra vụ cướp đang tìm kiếm ba người dàn ông) (cảnh sát đang điều tra vụ án).
  - I was woken up by a bell ringing. (the bell was ringing).
     (Tôi bị đánh thức dậy bởi một hối chuông reo) (chuông đang reo).
  - Who was that man standing outside? (the man was standing outside).
     (Người đàn ông đang đứng ngoài kia là ai thế?) (người đàn ông đang đứng bên ngoài).
  - Can you hear someone singing? (someone is singing)
     (Ban có nghe ai đang hát không?) (ai đó đang hát)

Đối với see / hear someone doing something, xem bài 66.

Khi bạn đang nói về các sự việc (và đôi khi về con người), bạn có thể dùng một mệnh để --ing để miêu tả các đặc tính cố định (các đặc tính tổn tại lâu đài chứ không phải chỉ có trong một thời gian cụ thể nào đó):

- The road joining the two villages is very narrow (the road joins the two villages). (Con đường nổi liên hai ngôi làng rất hẹp) (con đường nổi liên hai ngôi làng).
- I live in a pleasant room overlooking the garden. (the room overlooks the garden.)
  (Tôi ở trong một căn phòng để chịu trong ra vườn) (căn phòng trông ra vườn.)
- c) Các mệnh để -ed. mang nghĩa bị động (passive)
  - The man injured in the accident was taken to hospital (the man was injured in the accident).
    - (Người đàn ông bị thương trong tai nạn đã được đưa vào bệnh viện.)
  - None of the people invited to the party can come (the people have been invited to the party).
    - (Tất cả mọi người được mời dự tiệc đều không đến được) (những người đã được mời dự tiệc).

Injured và invited là các phân từ quá khứ (past participles). Nhiều động từ có phân từ quá khứ bất qui tắc không tận cùng bằng -ed.Thí dụ: stolen / made / bought / written\_

- The money stolen in the robbery was never found (the money was stolen in the robbery).

  (Sổ tiến bị lấy đi trong vụ cuớp không bao giờ được tìm thấy) (số tiến bị lấy đi trong vụ cướp).
- Most of the goods made in this factory are exported (the goods are made in this factory).
   (Hau hit hang hoa san xuất tại nhà máy này đều được xuất khẩu.) (hàng hoa được

(Hầu tiết hàng hoá sản xuất tại nhà máy này đều được xuất khẩu.) (hàng hoá được sản xuất tại nhà máy này).

Xem bảng động từ bất qui tắc ở phần phụ lục 2

- d) Chúng ta thường dùng các mệnh để -ing và -ed sau there is / there was...
  - Is there anybody waiting for me? (Có ai dang đợi tôi không?)
  - There were some children swimming in the river.
     (Lúc đó có vài đứa trẻ đang bởi trên sông)
  - When I arrived, there was a big red car parked outside the house.
     (Khi tội đến, đã có một chiếc xe hơi to màu đỏ đậu bên ngoài ngôi nhà)

Để biết thêm mệnh để -ing, xem bài 67.

## **UNIT 93: Exercises**

ь	rackets	rercise you have to re-write the sentences. Each time use the information in to make an -ing clause.  That girl is Australian (she is talking to Tom).  The girl talking to Tom is Australian.
1 2	A plan	e crashed into the sea yesterday (it was carrying 28 passengers)  e,yesterday.  I was walking home, there was a man (he was following me)
3	I was t	woken up by the baby (she was crying) end of the street there is a path (the path leads to the river)
5	At Some	paintings were stolen from the palace (they belong to the Queen)
	ample:	The man was taken to hospital (he was injured in the accident)  The man injured in the accident was taken to hospital.  Indow has now been repaired (it was broken in last night's storm)  indow

2	N	st of the suggestion were not very practical (they were made at the meeting)			
3	T	paintings haven't been found yet, (they were stolen from the museum)			
4	_	Did you hear about the boy? (he was knocked down in way to school this morning)			
93.3		lete these sentences with the following verbs. Each time you have to put the verbe correct from:			
		w call invite live offer post read sit study g wait work			
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	N T e S A W m A T	as woken up by a bell ringing. The of the people invited to the party can come. The has got a brother			
93.1	1 2 3 4 5	plane carrying 28 passengers crashed into the sea yesterday When I was walking home, there was a man following was woken up by the bady crying. It the end of the street there is a path leading to the river Some paintings belonging to the Queen were stolen from the palace			
93.2	1 2 3 4	The window broken in last night's storm has now been repaired fost of the suggestions made at the meeting were not very practical the paintings stolen from the museum haven't been found yet bid you hear about the boy knocked down on his way to school this morning?			
93.3	3 4 5 6	vorking studying called costed vaiting sitting reading			

7 offering 8 blown 9 living

## BÀI 94: ADJECTIVES (Tính từ) tận cùng bằng-ING và -ED

 a) Có rất nhiều cặp tính từ (adjectives) tận cùng bằng -ing và -ed. Thí dụ như boring và bored. Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



- Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn't enjoy it any more and would like to do something different.

(Jane đã làm cùng một công việc trong một thời gian rất c'ài. Hằng ngày cứ làm đi làm lại mỗi một công việc đó. Cô ấy không còn thích công việc ấy nữa và muốn làm một việc gì khác).

Jane's job is **boring.** (*Công việc của Jane quá nhẫm chán.*) Jane is **bored** (with her job.) (*Jane cảm thấy chán*) (công việc của cô ta.)

Ai đó -ed (nhận hành động nào) niếu cái gì đó (hay ai đó) -ing, (tạo ra hành động) Hoặc, nếu một cái gì đó -ing, nó làm cho ban -ed. Vì vây:

- Jane is bored because her job is boring.
(Jane chán nắn vì công việc của cô ấy quá nhàm.)

- Jane's job is boring, so Jane is bored. (không nói "Jane is boring") (Công việc của Jane quá nhàm chán, vì vậy cô ấy chán nản.)

Hãy xem các thí dụ sau:

Ai đó "interested" (thích, quan tâm) vì có điều qi đó (hay ai đó) "interesting" (hay, hấp dẫn, lý thú):

- Tom is interested in politics. (không nói "in politics")
   (Tom quan tâm đến chính trị).
- Tom finds politics interesting. (Tom thấy chính trị rất lý thú).
- Are you interested in buying a car?
   (Ban có quan tâm đến chuyên mua một chiếc xe hơi không?)
- Did you meet anyone interesung at the party?
   (Ban có gặp ai đó dể mến tại bữa tiệc không?)

Ai đó "surprised" (ngạc nhiên) vì điều gì đó "surprising" (làm ngạc nhiên):

- Everyone was surprised that he passed the examination. (Mọi người ai cũng ngạc nhiên vì anh ta đã thi đậu)
- It was quite *surprising* that he passed the examination. (Thật đáng ngạc nhiên là anh ta đã thi đậu)

Ai đó "disappointed" (thất vọng) vì điều gì đó "disappointing" (làm thất vọng):

I was disappointed with the film. I expected it to be much better.
 (Tôi thất vọng về bộ phim. Tôi đã nghĩ nò hay hơn nhiều)

The film was disappointing. I expected it to be much better.
 (Bộ phim làm tôi thất vọng. Tôi đã nghĩ rằng nó phải hay hơn nhiều).

Ai đó "tired" (mệt mỏi) vì có điều gi đò "tiring" (làm mệt mỏi).

- He is always very tired when he gets home from work.
   (Anh ta luôn thấy mệt mỏi khi đi làm về).
- He has a very tiring job.
   (Anh ta có một công việc nặng nhọc).

Những cặp tính từ khác tận cùng bằng -lng và -ed:

Fascinating (lội cuốn; hấp dẫn) Exciting (sôi đông) Amusing (hay, vui) Amazing (làm kinh ngạc) Astonishing (låm kinh ngạc) Shocking (làm sửng sốt) Disgusting (làm kinh tởm) Embarrassing (làm bối rối) Confusing (làm bối rối) Horrifying (làm kinh hoàng) . Terrifying (kinh khiếp) Frightening (làm sợ hãi) Depressing (làm nắn chí) Worrying (làm lo lắng) Annoying (làm phiến, quấy rấy) Exhausting (làm mệt nhoài) Satisfying (làm thỏa mãn)

fascinated (bị lôi cuốn; bị thu hút) excited (bi kích đông) amused (thấy vui thích) amazed (kinh ngạc; thấy lạ lùng) astonished (kinh ngac) shocked (sửng sốt) disgusted (kinh tởm) embarrassed (cảm thấy bối rối) confused (cảm thấy bối rối) horrified (kinh hoàng) terrified (khiếp sợ) frightened (sợ hãi) depressed (nån chi) worried (lo lång) annoyed (thấy khó chíu) exhausted (mệt nhoài) satisfied (thỏa mãn)

## **UNIT 94: Exercises**

94.1	In this exercise you have to complete two sentences for each situation. Use an adjective ending in -ing or -ed to complete each sentence.
E	The film wasn't as good as we had expected (disappoint).  a) The film was disappointing. b) We were disappointed with the film.
1.	It's been raining all day. I hate this weather (depress-) a) This weather is
2.	Astronomy is one of Tom's main interests (interest-) a) Tom isin astronomy b) He finds astronomy very
3	I turned off the television in the middle of the program me (bor-) a) The program me was
4	
5	
	b) At the end of the day's work she is often

94.2	Choose	the	right	adjective.
------	--------	-----	-------	------------

Example: I was disappointed / disappointing with the film. I had expected it to be better.

- 1 We were all horrifying/horrified when we heard about the disaster.
- 2 It's sometimes <u>embarrassing/embarrassed</u> when you have to ask people for money.
- 3 Are you interesting/interested in football?
- 4 I enjoyed the football match. It was quite exciting/excited.
- 5 It was a reality terrifying/terrified experience. Afterwards everybody was very shocking/shocked.
- 6 I had never expected to be offered the job. I was really <u>amazing/amazed</u> when I was offered it.
- 7 The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. I was really disgusting/disgusted.
- 8 Do you easity get embarrassing/ embarrassed?

94.3 Complete these sentence with an adjective ending in -Ing or -ed. The first letter(s) of the adjective are given each time.

Example: Jane finds her job boring. She wants to do something different

- 1 I seldom visit art galleries. I'm not very in...... in art.
- 2 We went for a very long walk. It was very ti.....
- 3 Why do you always look so b.....? Is your life really so b.....?
- 5 I wasas ....... when I heard they were getting divorced. They had always seemed so happy together.
- 5 I'm starting a new job next week. I'm quite ex...... about it.

## **KEY**

- 94.1 1 a) depressing
  2 a) interested
  3 a) boring
  4 a) excited
  5 a) exhausting
  94.2 1 horrified
- 3 interested 5 terrifying... shocked 7 disgusting
- 94.3 1 interested 3 bored... boring 5 astonished

- b) depressed b) interesting
- b) bored
- b) exciting
- b) exhausted
- 2 embarrassing
- 4 exciting 6 amazed
- 8 embarrassed
- 2 tirina
- 4 boring... interesting
- 6 excited

## BÀI 95: Thứ tự của tính từ ("a nice new house") Tính từ đứng sau động từ ("Do you feel tired?")

- a) Đôi khi chúng ta sử dụng hai hay nhiều tính từ cùng một lúc:
  - Tom lives in a nice new house.
    - (Tom sống trong một căn nhà mới xinh xắn).
  - In the kitchen there was a beautiful large round wooden table.

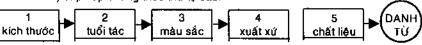
(Trong nhà bếp có một cái bàn gỗ tròn lớn và đẹp.)

Các tính từ như new / large round / wooden là các tính từ miêu tả, chỉ sự kiện (fact adjectives). Chúng cho ta biết những thông tin khách quan về một vật hay một điều gì đó(tuổi tác, kích thước, màu sắc...). Các tính từ như nice / beautiful là những tính từ chỉ ý kiến (oplnion adjectives) của người nói. Chúng cho ta biết cảm nghĩ của ai đó về một vật hay một sự việc nào đó.

Các tính từ chỉ ý kiến thường đứng trước các tính từ miễu tả:

	Ý <u>kiến</u>	miêu tả	ĐANH TỪ	
a	nice	sunny	day	(một ngày nắng đẹp)
	delicious	hot	soup	(món xúp nóng ngon lành)
an	intelligent	young	man	(một thanh niên thông minh)
а	beautiful	large round w	ooden table	(một bản gỗ tròn và đẹp)

 b) Đôi khi có hai hoặc nhiều tính từ miêu tả đứng liền nhau. Chúng ta thường (không phải luôn luôn) sắp xép chúng theo thứ tự sau:



a tall young man (1-2) (một thanh niên cao lớn) big blue eyes (1-3)

(đôi mắt xanh và to)

a small black plastic bag (1-3-5)

(một chiếc tùi nhựa nhỏ màu đen)

a large wooden table (1-5) (một chiếc bàn lớn bằng gỗ) an old Russian song (2-4) (một bài hát Nga cổ)

an old white cotton strirt (2-3-5) (một chiếc áo sơ mi vải trắng cũ kỹ)

Các tính từ chỉ kích thước và chiều dài (bìg/smail/tail/short/long v.v...) thường đứng trước các tính từ chỉ hình dáng và chiều rộng (round/fat/thin/slim/wide\_).

a large round table

(một cái bàn tròn lớn)

a long narrow street

(một con đường đầi và hẹp)

a tali thin girl (một cô gái cao gấy)

 c) Chúng ta cũng dùng tính từ sau một số động từ, đặc biệt là các động từ be/get/ become

Are you tired?

Be careful! (Hāy cẩn thân!) I'm getting hungry. (Tôi đang đối bụng đây) Chúng ta cũng dùng tính từ sau các động từ feel/smell/taste/sound/seem/look:

- Do you feel tired? (Ban có mét khôna?)
- The dinner smells good. (Bữa cơm tối tỏa mùi ngọn quá)
- Tom sounded angry when I spoke to him on the phone (Giọng Tom có vẻ giân dữ khi tôi nói chuyên qua điện thoại với anh ta)
- This tea tastes a bit strange (Loại trà này có ví hơi lạ)
- Your friend seems very nice (Ban của anh có vẻ rất tử tế)

Nhưng sau các động từ khác bạn dùng một trạng từ (adverb) (xem thêm các bài 96 và 97)

- Drive carefully! (không nói "drive careful") (Hāy lái xe cẩn thân!)
- Susan plays the piano very well (không nói "plays... very good") (Susan chơi piano rất giỏi)
- Tom shouted at me angrily. (không nói "shouted ... angry") (Tom quát tháo tôi một cách giản dữ.)

Look: Chúng ta dùng một tính từ sau động từ look khi nó có nghĩa là "dường như, có vě".

Tom looked sad when I saw him. (Tom có vẻ buốn khi tội gặp anh ta).

Nhưng sau look at, chúng tạ phải dùng một trang từ:

Tom looked at me sadly, (không nói" looked at me sad") (Tom nhìn tôi một cách buồn rấu)

## UNIT 95: Exercises

95.1 Pu	it the adjectives in brackets in the correct po	sition.
Exa	mple: a beautiful table (wooden round)	a beautiful round wooden table.
1	an unusual ring (gold)	#
2	an old lady (nice)	7H447447777774444444444444444444444444
3	a good-looking man (young)	
4	a modern house (attractive)	
5	black gloves (leather)	***************************************
6	an American film (old)	4001 041 441 441 441 441 441 441 441 441
7	a large nose (red)	***************************************
8	a sunny day (lovely)	
9	a hot bath (nice)	
10.	an ugly dress (orange)	
11	a red car (old/little)	
12	a metal box (black/small)	***************************************
13	a long face (thin)	##Fb++><

a little long h	at (fat/black) village (old/lov air (fair/beautifu	•	<b></b>		
long h	• •	•		********	
_	air (fair/beautifu				. *************************************
	1	. (اد			***************************************
18 an old painting (interesting/French)					
omplete	each sentence	with a verb and	an adjective	from the box	
feel	look	seemed	awful	fine	interesting
smell	sounded	tastes	nice	upset	wet
Ann see	med upset this	morning. Do yo	ou know wh	at was wrong	?
I can't ea	at this. I've just	tried it and it	- 1 - 1 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7		
		ew job last nigl	nt. It1	qı	uite, much
l wasn't	very well yeste	rday but 1		todav.	
	- •	•		•	
You		Have	e you been o	out in the rain	?
Please s Can you This sou Tom coo Don't go We were Do you!	shut the door gi be <u>quiet/quietl</u> p tastes <u>nice/n</u> oks very <u>good/v</u> up that ladder e relieved that l feel <u>nervous/ne</u>	uiet/quietly. y, please? icely. yell. . It doesn't look he arrived <u>safe/</u> ervously before	safely after examination	his long journ	
		•	-	him	
THE HOURI	an erune eriöli.≹	terrifinit musicu	interrupteu i	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
,					
	feel smell  Ann see I can't ea Jim told better the I wasn't What be You	feel look smell sounded  Ann seemed upset this I can't eat this. I've just Jim told me about his n better than his old job. I wasn't very well yeste What beautiful flowers! You  thoose the right word, add amples. The dinner smell Please shut the door qu Can you be quiet/quiet! This soup tastes nice/n Tom cooks very good/y Don't go up that ladder We were relieved that I Do you feel neryous/ne Hurry up! Your' re alwa He looked at me angry	feel look seemed smell sounded tastes  Ann seemed upset this morning. Do you I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it	feel look seemed awful smell sounded tastes nice  Ann seemed upset this morning. Do you know what I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it	Ann seemed upset this morning. Do you know what was wrong I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it

- 95.1 an unusual gold ring
  - a nice old lady
  - a good-looking young man
  - an attractive modern house
  - 5 black leather gloves
  - an old American film
  - a large red nose

- 8 a lovely sunny day
- 9 a nice hot bath
- 10 an ugly orange dress
- 11 a litter old car
- 12 a small black metal box
- 13 a long thin face
- 14 a long wide avenue
- 15 a big fat black cat
- 16 a lovely little old village
- 17 beautiful long fair hair
- 18 an interesting old French painting

95.2	2 tastes awful	3 sounded interesting
	4 feel fine	5 smell nice
	6 look wet	-
05.2	1 aviatly	o auto
95.3	1 quietly	2 quiet
	3 nice	4 well
	5 safe	6 safely
	7 nervous	8 slow
		9 angrily

## BÀi 96: TÍNH TỪ và TRẠNG TỪ (1) (quick/quickly)

- a) Hāy xem các thí dụ sau:
  - Our holiday was too short -the time went quickly.
     (Kỳ nghỉ hè chúng tôi quá ngắn -thời gian trôi nhanh ghê.)
  - The driver of the car was seriously injured in the accident. (Người tài xế bị thương nặng trong tai nạn đó.)

Quicly và seriously là các trạng từ (adverbs). Nhiều trạng từ được thành lập từ một tính từ +ly.

Tính tử: quick serious careful quite heavy bad Trạng tử: quíckly seriously carefully quitely heavily badly Về luật chính tả, xem phần phụ lục 3. Đối với hard / fast / well xem bài 97.

Không phải tất cả những chữ tận cùng bằng -ly điều là trạng từ. Có một số tính từ cũng tận cùng bằng -ly.Thí dụ:

Friendly lively elderly tonely silly lovely (Thân thiện) (Sống động) (Đứng tuổi) (Cô đơn) (Ngu ngốc) (Đáng yêu)

## b) Tính từ hay trạng từ?

Tính từ cho chúng ta biết thêm về danh từ (tính từ bổ nghĩa cho danh từ). Chúng ta dùng tính từ trước danh từ và sau một động từ (nhất là động từ to be):

- Tom is a careful driver.
  - (Tom là một tài xế cẩn thận.)
- Be quiet, please! (Xin hây giữ yên lăng!)
- We didn't go out because of the heavy rain.
   (Chúng tôi đã không ra ngoài vì trời mưa to.)
- I was disappointed that my exam results were so bad.
   (Tôi thất vọng vì kết quả thi của tôi quá tê.)

Đối với các tính từ sau look/smell/feel... hãy xem bài 95c

Trạng từ cho chúng ta biết thêm về động từ (trạng từ bổ nghĩa cho động từ). Trạng từ mô tả một người làm một việc như thế nào, hoặc một sự việc nào đó xảy ra như thế nào:

- Tom drove carefully along the narrow road. (không nói "drove careful")
   (Tom lái xe một cách thận trọng dọc theo con đường nhỏ hẹp.)
- Speak quietly, please! (không nói "speak quiet")
   (Làm ơn nói nhỏ thôi !)
- We didn't go out because it was raining heavilly. (không nói" raining heavy")
   (Chúng tội không ra ngoài vì lùc đó trời đang mưa nặng hạt)
- I was disappointed that I did so badly in the exam. (không nói" did so bad")
   (Tôi thất vọng vì tôi đã làm bài thi quá tệ.)
- We didn't go out because it was raining heavily (không nói " raining heavy")
   (Chúng tôi không ra ngoài vì lúc đó trời đạng mưa năng hạt.)
- I was disappointed that I did so badly in the exam. (không nói "did so bad")
   (Tôi thất vọng vì tôi đã làm bài thi quá tệ.)

### Hāy so sánh:

She speaks perfect English. (Cô ấy nói tiếng Anh hòan hảo.) (tính từ +danh từ)

- She speaks English perfectly. (động từ+túc từ +trang từ) (Cô ấy nói tiếng Anh một cách hoàn hảo)
- c) Chúng ta cũng dùng trạng tử trước tính từ và các trạng từ khác. Ví dụ:

Reasonably cheap

(trang từ + tính từ)

rẻ một cách hợp lý.

Terribly sorry

(trạng từ+tính từ)

rất lấy làm tiếc.

Incredibly quickly (trạng từ + trạng từ) nhanh đến khó tin.

- It's a reasonbly cheap restaurant and the food is extremely good. (Đó là một nhà hàng giá cả rẻ phải chặng và thức ăn thì ngọn vô cùng.)
- Oh, I'm terribly sorry. I didn't mean to push you. (Ő, thành thật xin lỗi. Tôi không có ý đẩy ban đậu.)
- Maria learns languages incredibly quickly. (Maria học ngọai ngữ nhanh đến khó tin).
- I was bittely disappointed that I didn't get the job. (Tôi thất vọng vô cùng vì không nhận được công việc đó.)
- The examination was surprisingly easy. (Kỳ thi dễ đến kinh ngạc)

Bạn có thể dùng một **trạng từ trư**ớc một *phân từ quá khứ* (injured/ organised...)

- The meeting was very badly organsied.
  - (Buổi họp được tổ chức rất tồi.)
- The driver of the car was seriously injured in the accident.
  - (Người tài xế bị thương năng trong tại nạn đó.)
- The building was totally destroyed in the fire. (Tòa nhà bi thiệu hủy hoàn toàn trong vụ hỏa hoạn.)

## UNIT 96: Exercises

96.1 In this exercise you have to decide whether the underlined words are right or wrong Correct those which are wrong. Examples: The driver of the car was serious injured. WRONG -seriously Be guiet, please! I'm trying to concentrate. I waited nervous in the waiting -room before the interview ..... 2 Why were you so unfriendly when I saw you yesterday? ..... 3 It rained continuous for three days \_\_\_\_\_\_ Alice and Stan are very happy married ...... Tom's French is not very good but his German is almost <u>fluent</u>..... 6 Eva lived in America for five year, so she speaks very well English ..... 7 Everybody at the party was very colourful dressed ...... Ann likes wearing colourful clothes ..... Sue is terrible upset about losing her job ......

96.2 This time you have to complete the sentences with adverbs. The first letter (s) of each adverb are given. Example: We didn't go out because it was raining heavily. We had to wait for a long time but we didn't complain. We waited pat..... 1 2 I lost the match because I played very ba ...... I don't think he trusted me. He looked at me so sus Sorry; I didn't mean to kick you. I didn't do it int Nobody knew he was coming. He arrived unex..... Jill has just got a job in a shop but she won't be staying there long. She is only working there tem..... until she can find another job My French isn't very good but I can understand per...... if people speak sl ...... and cl 8 I had little difficulty finding a flat. I found one quite ea..... 96.3 Choose two words (one from each box) complete each sentence. absolutely reasonably badly <del>cheap</del> enormous planned changed completely seriouly fully iĦ quiet extremely unsually damaged slightly insured sorry I thought the restaurant would be expensive but it was reasonablly cheap. 2 George's mother is...... in hospital. The fire destroyed our house but luckly we were What a big house! It's ..... 5 It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only..... A lot of things went wrong during our holiday because it was..... 7 The children are normally very lively but they're...... today. 8 When I returned home after 20 year, everything had ..... I'm..... about your book. I'll buy you another one. **KEY** 96.1 1 wrong-nervously 5 unexpectedly 6 temporarily right 3 wrong-cotinuously. 7 perfectly... slowly... clearly 4 wrong-happily easily 96.3 2 seriously ill 5 right fully insured (or: completely wrong-speaks very good English (or speaks English very well) insured) 7 wrong colourfully absolutely enormous 8 5 slightly damaged right

6

badly planned

extremely sorry

unusually quiet (or:

completely changed

extremely/completely quiet)

wrong-terribly

suspiciously

intentionally

patienbly

badly

96.2 1

2

## BÀI 97: TÍNH TỪ và TRẠNG TỪ (2)

## (Good/well, fast/hard/late, hardly)

- a) Good/well: Good là tính tử. Trạng từ của good là well:
  - Your English is very good. (Tiếng Anh của bạn rất tốt).
  - You speak English well. (Ban nói tiếng Anh giỏi).
  - Susan is a good pianist (Susan là một người chơi dương cầm giỏi).
  - She plays the piano well. (Cô ta chơi dương cấm giỏi).

Chúng ta thường dùng well với các phân từ quá khứ (dressed, known...):

Well-dressed (ăn mặc đẹp) (không nói "good- dressed")

Well-known (nổi tiếng)

well-educated (có học vấn cao)

Nhưng well cũng là tính từ với nghĩa " mạnh giỏi, khỏe".

How are you today? "I'm very well, thanks"
 ("Hôm nay bạn có khỏe không?) ("Tôi rất khỏe, cám ơn") >

b) Fast / hard / late: Những từ này vừa là tính từ vừa là trạng từ :

Tính tử:

Jack is a very fast runner.
(Jack là một người chạy rất nhanh)
Ann is a hard woker.
(Ann là một công nhân tích cực)
The train was late.
(Chuyển xe lửa bi trễ)

trạng từ: Jack can run very fast. (Jack có thể chạy rất nhanh) Ann works hard.

400 WORKS NAIG. (Ann làm viên tích erte

(Ann làm việc tích cực / cấn củ)

l got late this morning. (Sáng nay tôi dây trễ)

## Trạng từ lately = recently:

- Have you seen Tom lately?
   (Gần đây bạn có gặp Tom không?)
- c) Hardly mang ý nghĩa hoàn toàn khác nhau với hard:

Hardly = hầu như không. Hãy xem các thí dụ sau:

- George asked Hilda to marry him. She was surpried because they had only known each other for two days. She said: "We can't get married now! We hardly known each other" (= we know each other very little; we almost don't know each other).
  - (George yêu cấu Hilda lấy anh ta. Cô rất ngạc nhiên vì họ chỉ mới biết nhau có hai ngày thói. Cô nói:" Chúng ta không thể lấy nhau vào lúc này được! Chúng ta hầu như chưa biết gì về nhau cả).
  - (= chúng ta biết về nhau quá it; chúng ta hầu như không biết gì về nhau cả).
- Why was Tom so unfriendly at the party last night? He hardly spoke to me.
   (Tai sao Tom lại có vẻ không thân thiện như thế tại bữa tiệc tối hôm qua? Anh ta hầu như chẳng nói chuyển với tôi).

### Chúng ta thường dùng hardly với can / could:

 Your writing is terrible. I can hardly read it (= I can read it but only with a lot of difficulty).

(Chữ viết của bạn xấu quá. Tôi hầu như không đọc được gì cả) (=tôi có thể đọc được nhưng phải rất khó khân).

My leg was hurting me. I could hardly walk.
 (Chân tôi đau quá. Tôi hấu như không đi nỗi nữa)

## Chúng ta cũng dùng hardly với any / anyone / anything / anywhere:\*

- "How much money have you got?" "Hardly any" (=almost none, very little).
  (Ban có bao nhiều tiền?" "Hầu như không." (=rất (t)
- I'll have to go shopping. We've got hardly any food (=almost no food, very little food).
  - (Tới sẻ phải đi chợ. Chúng tôi hấu như chẳng còn tí thức ăn nào) (≃cò⊓ rất ít thức ăn).
- The examination results were very bad. Hardly any passed (=almost no-one passed, very few people passed.)
  - (Kết quả thi rất kém. Hấu như không có ai đậu cả.) (=rất ít người đậu).
- She ate hardly anything because she didn't feel hungry (=she ate almost nothing, she ate very little).

(Cô ta hầu như chẳng ăn gì cả bởi vì cô ta không thấy đội.) (=cô ta ăn rất ít).

Hây lưu ý rằng bạn có thể nói:

- She ate hardly anything hoặc She hardly ate anything.
   (Cô ta hầu như không ăn gì cả).
- We've got hardly any food hoặc We've hardly got any food. (Chúng tôi hấu như chẳng còn tí thức ăn nào)

Hardly ever = almost never (hau như chưa bao giờ) :

I'm nearly always at home in the evenings. I hardly ever go out.
 (Tôi gắn như luôn có ở nhà vào buổi tối. Tôi hầu như không đi đầu cả.)

## **UNIT 97: Exercises**

97.1 In this exercise you have to decide whether the underlied words are right or wrong. Correct those which are wrong.

Examples: We lost the match because we didn't play very good.

Ann has been working very hard recently.

WRONG-well RIGHT

- 1 Give my best wishes to your parents. I hope they are well.
- 2 The children behaved themselves very good.
- 3 I tried hardly to remember his name but I couldn't.
- 4 The company's financial situation is not well at present.
- 5 Jack has started his own business. Everything is going quite good.
- 6 Don't walk so fast! Can't you walk more slowly?
- 7 See you soon! Don't work too <u>hard</u>.
- 97.2 This time you have to finish these sentences with well+one of the following words: balanced period dressed informed kept known.
  - 1 The childen were very good. They were well behaved
  - 2 Many people have heard of him. He is quite well- .....

3	The	Their garden is neat and tidy. It is very							
4	You								
5									
6	His								
97.3	Now y	ou have to make sentences with he	ardly.	Jse	the words in brackets.				
E	xampl	<ul> <li>George and I have only met or each other.</li> </ul>	nce. (ki	now	/ each other) We hardly know				
1		very tired this morning (slept/last r							
2		i're speaking very quietly (can/hea							
3	1 m	et Keith a few days ago. ⊦hadr	ı't seei	n hi	m for a long time. He looks very				
		erent now (recognised) I							
4		y were really shocked when they							
			,,		<i>.</i>				
97.4	Comp	lete these sentences with hardly +	anyth	ing	/ any / anyone / anywhere / ever.				
		e. I'll have to go shopping. We've	-	-					
1	-	ten to the radio a lot but i	-	_					
2		weather was good during our hol							
3		is not very popular							
4		crowded in here. There's							
5	We	used to be good friends but we			see each other now.				
6	⊥ha	te this town. There's		to	do and to go.				
7	l en	joyed driving this morning. There	was		traffic.				
KE	Υ								
97.1	1 rie	ght	97.3	1	I-hardly slept last night				
	,	rong-well		2	I can hardly hear you				
	3 w	rong-hard		3	I hardly recognised him				
	4 w	rong-good		4	They could hardly speak				
		rong-well	97.4	1	hardly ever				
		ght	91.4	2	hardly any				
		ght		3	Hardly anyone/anybody				
97.2	2 w	ell-known		4	hardly anywhere				
	3 w	ell-kept		5	hardly ever				
		N. Janaka a sa al		9	manany aven				

6 hardly anything... hardly anywhere

hardly any

well-balanced

well-informed

6 well-dressed

## BÀI 98:

## SO và SUCH

- a) Hãy xem các thí dụ sau:
  - I didn't enjoy the book. The story was so stupid.
     (Tôi không thích quyển sách đó. Câu chuyện quá nhâm nhì)
  - I didn't enjoy the book. It was such a stupid story.
     (Tôi không thích quyển sách đó. Đó là một câu chuyện quá nhãm nhí)

Chúng ta dùng so với một tính từ không kèm theo đanh từ: so stupid Chúng ta dùng such với một tính từ có kèm theo đanh từ: such a stupid story

Bạn cũng có thể dùng so với một trạng từ:

- He's difficult to understand because he speaks so quickly. (Khó mà hiểu được anh ta bởi vì anh ta nói quá nhanh)
- b) So và such làm cho ý nghĩa của tính từ mạnh hơn:
  - It's a lovely day, isn't it? It's so warm. (=really warm)
     (Thật là một ngày đẹp trời, phải không? Trời ấm thật)
  - We enjoyed our holiday. We had such a good time. (=a really good time)
     (Chúng tôi rất thích kỳ nghỉ vừa qua. Chúng tôi đã hưởng được những giờ phút thật thủ vi)

Hãy so sánh so và such trong hai câu sau đây:

- I like Tom and Ann. They are so nice.
   (Tôi thích Tom và Ann. Họ thật tử tế)
- I like Tom and Ann. They are such nice people. (không nói" so nice people") (Tôi thích Tom và Ann Họ là những người thật tử tế)

Chúng ta thường nói so... that... và such... that... (quá...đến nổi...):

- was so tired that I went to bed at seven o'clock..
   (Tôi mệt đến nổi tôi đã phải đi ngủ vào lúc bảy giờ)
- She worked so hard that she made herself ill. (Cô ấy làm việc cực nhọc đến nỗi ngà bệnh)
- It was such lovely weather that we spent the whole day in the garden.
   (Thời tiết hôm đó dễ chịu đến độ chúng tôi đã ở cả ngày ngoài vườn)
- The book was so good that I couldn't put it down.
   (Quyển sách hay đến nổi tôi không thể nào bỏ nó xuống được)
- It was such a good that I couldn't put it down.
   (Đó là một quyển sách hay đến nổi tôi không thể bỏ nó xuống được)

Bạn có thể lược bỏ that trong những câu trên:

- I was so tired (fhat) I went to bed at 7 o'clock.
   (Tôi mệt mỏi đến nổi tôi đã phải đi ngủ vào lúc 7 giờ)
- c) Trong những cấu sau đầy, chúng ta dùng so và such theo một cách khác:
  - 1 expected the weather to be much cooler. I didn't expect it to be so warm. (=as warm as it is).

(Tôi nghĩ thời tiết sẽ màt hơn nhiều. Tôi không ngờ nó lại ẩm như thế)

- I'm tired because I got up at 6 o'clock. I don't usually get up so early. (=as early as 6 o'clock)
  - (Tội thấy mệt vì đã thức dậy lúc sáu giờ. Tôi không thường dậy sớm như thế)
- Hurry up! Don't walk so slowly. (=as slowly as you are walking)
   (Nhanh lên. Đừng đi chậm như vậy).
- 1 was surpried when Jack told me the house was built 100 year ago
   (Tôi đã ngạc nhiên khi Jack cho tôi biết căn nhà được xây cách đây 100 năm)

I didn't realise it was so old. (Tôi không nhận ra là nó lâu đời đến thế) I didn't realise it was such an old house. (Tôi không nhận ra căn nhà đó lại lâu đời đến thế)

- d) Chúng ta nói: so long nhưng phải nói "such a long tìme", so far nhưng "such a long way", so many, so much nhưng "such alot (of)":
  - I haven't seen him for so long that I've forgotten what he looks like.
     (Tôi không gặp anh ta lâu đến nổi tôi đã quên anh ta hình dáng thế nào)
  - I didn't know you lived so far from the city centre (or... such a long way from...)
     (Tôi không biết là bạn sống xa trung tâm thành phổ đến như vậy)
  - Why did you buy so much food? (or... such a lot of food?)
     (Sao ban mua nhiều thức ăn quả vậy?)

## **UNIT 98: Exercises**

Ex	amples: Come on! Don't walk <u>so</u> slowly. I've never read <u>such</u> a stupid book
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I was surpried that he looked
98.2 7	his time you have to make a sentence with so from two sentences.
E	sample: She worked very hard. She made herself ill.  She worked so hard (that) she made herself ill.
1	I was very excited about going away. I couldn't sleep I was so
2	The water was very dirty. We decided not to go swimming

3	3 5	She speaks English very well. You wou										
98.3	In t	this exercise you have to use such inste										
E	xar	mple: The book was so good that I co										
1	the read to the real tractile anneal for the date to pass each of the											
2	! 1	It is The weather was so warm that I didn't nead a coat.  It										
3	}	His feet are so big that he has difficulty He has got	findir	ng s	hoes to fit him.							
4	1	There were so many people in the roon	n that	we	couldn't move.							
98.4	No	w you have to complete these sentence	s.		•							
E	xai	mple: We had a lot of problems. We had	dn't e	xpe	cted to flave so many problems.							
1	1	It's quite a long way from your house to	the s	stati	ion.							
		didn't know it was so			***************************************							
2		It took us a long time to get home this e			•							
		It doesn't usually take us so		••••								
3		You've got a lot of funiture in this room.										
	,	Why have you got so										
ΚE	Ϋ́											
98.1	1 5	so 2 such 3 such		2	It was such warm weather (that) I							
	45	o 5 such 6 such			didn't need a coat.							
	7 s			3	He has got such big feet (that) he							
98.2	1	I was so excited about going away			has difficulty finding shoes to fit							
		(that) I couldn't sleep.			him.							
	2	The water was so dirty (that) we		4	There were such a lot of people i							
		decided not to go swimming,			the room (that) we couldn't move.							
	3		98.4	1	I didn't know it was so far from							
		you would think it was her native		_	your house to the station.							
00 C		language.		2	It doesn't usually take us so long							
98.3	1	It is such a narrow road (that) it is		2	to get home (in the evening)							
		difficult for cars to pass each		3	Why have you got so much							
		other.			furniture in this room?							

## BÀi 99:

## **ENOUGH và TOO**

## a) Vị trí của enough:

Enough đứng sau tính từ và trạng từ:

 He didn't get the job because he wasn't experienced enough. (không nói "enough experienced")

(Anh ta không nhận được công việc đó vì anh ta không đủ kinh nghiệm)

You won't pass the examination if you don't work hard enough.
 (Ban sē không thi dâu nếu bạn không học hành chẳm chỉ đúng mức)

She can't get married yet. She's not old enough. (Cô ta chưa thể lập gia đình được. Cô ta chưa đủ tuổi)

Enough đứng trước danh từ:

- He didn't get the job because he didn't have enough experience (không nói "experience enough").

(Anh ta không nhận được công việc đó vì anh ta không có đủ kinh nghiệm)

- l'd like to go on holiday but I haven't got enough money. (Tôi muốn đi nghỉ mát nhưng chưa có đủ tiến)

Some of had to sit on the floor because there weren't enough chairs. (Một vài người trong chúng tối phải ngôi trên sản nhà vì không có đủ ghế)

Ban cũng có thể dùng enough một mình (không có danh từ đi kèm):

I'll lend you some money if you haven't got enough.
 (Tôi sẽ cho bạn mượn một ít tiến nếu bạn không có đủ)

## b) Sau enough và too ban có thể dùng for someone / something:

I haven't got enough money for a holiday.
 (Tôi chưa có đủ tiển để đi nghỉ mặt).

He wasn't experienced enough for the job.
 (Anh ta không đủ kinh nghiệm đối với công việc đó).

This shirt is too big for me. I need a smaller size.
 (Cái áo sơ mi này quá to đối với tối. Tôi cắn cổ nhỏ hơn).

Nhưng thường thi chúng ta không nói "enough / too... for doing something". Chúng ta dùng to + động từ nguyên mẫu sau enough và too. Vì vậy chúng ta nói "enough money to do something", "old enough to do something", "too young to do something" v.v...

I haven't got enough money to go on holiday (không nóì "for going").
(Tôi không có đủ tiến để đi nghỉ mát).

He wasn't exeperienced enough to do the job. (Anh ta không đủ kinh nghiệm đối với công việc đó).

 She's only sixteen. She's not old enough to get married (or She's too young to get married).

(Cô ta mới mười sáu tuổi. Cô ta chừa đủ tuổi để lập gia đình (hoặc Cô ta còn quá trẻ không thể lập gia đình được).

Let's get a taxi. It's too far to walk.
 (Chung ta hāy đón một chiếc taxi. Đường quá xa không thể đi bộ được).

- There weren't enough chairs for everyone to sit down.
  (Không có đủ ghế cho mọi người ngôi).
  - The weather wasn't nice enough to go swimming. (Thời tiết không được tốt lầm để đi bơi).
- He spoke too quickly for us to understand.
   (Anh ta nói nhanh quá khiến chúng tôi không hiểu được).
- c) Chúng ta nói:
  - The food was not that we couldn't eat it.
    (Thức ăn nóng đến nỗi tôi không thể àn được).

và:

- The food was very hot. We couldn't eat / it.

(Thức ăn rất nóng. Chúng tôi không thể ăn được).

hoặc chúng ta nói:

The food was too hot to eat. (không có "it"). (Thức ân nóng quả không thể ăn dược).

Sau đây là một số thi dụ tương tự:

That picture is too heavy to hang on the wall.

(Bức tranh đó quá nặng không thể treo trên tường được).

I had to carry my wallet in my hand. It was too big to put in my pocket. (Tôi phải cầm cái ví trong tay. Nó quả to không thể bỏ vào túi được).

The water wasn't clean enough to swim in.
(Nước không đủ sạch để có thể bơi được).

## **UNIT 99: Exercises**

big	warm	well	cups	топеу	qualifications	room	time	) વ
1	She can't	get mar	ried yet.	She's not o	ld enough.	· .		
2	Tom woul	d like to	buy a ca	r but he has	sn't got			
					There weren't			
					switch on the hea			
					for all			
6	George di	dn't feel			to go work this me	ornina.		
					have			
					to apply for t			
9.	Try this ja	cket on	and see i	if it's		fo	or you.	
.2 An	swer thes	e questio	ons using	the word in	brackets.	1.	. ,	
Exa	<i>mple</i> : "Is	she ge	tting mar	ried?" (not d	old enough).		$(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{1})$	
	· "N	o, she is	sn't old er	nough to ge	t married".	· .		٠.
1 .	"Why can	t you tal	k to me r	now?" (toa l	ousy) "I'm too		r	ow" -
2	"Let's go t	o the cir	nema" (to	o late) "No,	it's	ci	nema"	
					warm enough)			

. 4	"Would you like to be a politician?" (too nice)									
5	"Are you going on holiday this year?" (not enough money)									
-	"No. I haven't got"									
6	"₹	Shall we take a photograph?" (too dark	<) "No.							
7.	"[	Did you hear what he was saving?" (to	o far a	wa	y)					
	"Ի	lo, we								
8	"(	Can he make himself understood (in E	nglish	)?"	(not enough English)					
	"l	No, he doesn't speak			11					
9	"[	Does Harry work?" (too lazy) "No, he's	3	•••••						
		his exercise you have to make one settences given.	entend	e (i	using too or enough) from the two					
		aplie: We couldn't eat the food. It was t	too ho	t. <b>I</b>	he food was too hot (for us) to eat.					
1	•	can't drink this coffee. It's too hot. This	S COIIE	e	S.T.,,,,,,,					
2	. N	lobody could move the piano. It was to the piano	30 Hea	ıvy.	•					
3					la					
3	'n	his coathis coat in winter, it's not the	*******	ψ1.TO	<b>-9</b>					
4	ŗ	on't stand on that chair. It's not strong	enou	ıah.						
•	T	hat chair								
5	Ť	we people can't sleep in this bed. It's	not w	de	enough for two people.					
•	ī	his bed		****						
ΚE	Υ									
99.1		enough money		7	No, we were too far away to hear					
	3	enough cups			what he was saying.					
	4	warm enough		8	No, he doen't speak enough					
	5	enough room			English to make himself					
	6	well enough			understood.					
	7	enough time		9	No, he's too lazy to work.					
	8	enough qualifications								
	9	big enough	99.3	1	This coffee is too hot (for me) to					
99.2	1	I'm too busy to talk to you now.			drink.					
	2	No, it's too late to go to the		2	The piano was too heavy (for					
		cinema.			anybody) to move.					
	3	It's not warm enough to sit in the		3	This coat is not warm enough (for					
		garden.		-	me) to wear in winter.					
	4	No, I'm too nice to be a politician.		4	That chair isn't strong enough (fo					
	5	No, I haven't got enough money to		•	you) to stand on.					
		go on holiday this year.		5	This bed is not wide enough for					
	6	No, it's too dark to take a			the seeds to close in					

two people to sleep in.

photograph.

# BÀI 100: TO + ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU sau TÍNH TỪ

a) Hāy so sánh hai câu sau đây:

A. It is difficult to understand him.

(Jim nói không rõ ràng lám.)

Hai câu A và B có cùng ý nghĩa. Nhưng hây lưu ý rằng chúng ta nói "He is difficult to understand him.")

Bạn có thể dùng cấu trúc câu B sau difficult/easy / impossible / hard và sau một số tinh từ khác:

- Your writing is almost impossible to read. (không nói "\_to read it").
   (=It is almost impossible to read your writing.)
   (Chữ viết của bạn hầu như không thể đọc được).
- Do you think this water is safe to drink? (không nói "...to drink it")
   (Bạn có cho rằng nước này uống được không?)
- Jill is very interesting to talk to. (không nói "...to talk to her") (Thật thủ vị khi nói chuyện với Jill).

Bạn cũng có thể đùng cấu trúc này với một tính từ + danh từ:

- This is a very difficult question to answer. (không nói "...to answers it").
   (Đây là câu hỏi rất khó trả lời)
- Jill is an interesting person to talk to.
   (Jill là một người thú vị để cùng trò chuyện)
- I enjoyed the football match. It was an exciting game to watch.
   (Tôi thích trận bóng đá đó. Nó hào hững đáng để xem).
- b) Chúng ta dùng to-infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu có to) sau the fist / the second / the third\_và sau the next / the last.
  - Who was the fist man to reach South Pole? (Ai là người đầu tiên đặc chân đến nam cực?)

  - The next train to arrive at platform 4 will be the 6.58 to Cardiff.
     (Chuyến xe lửa kế tiếp đến ga số 4 sẽ là chuyển 6 giờ 58 đi Cardiff).
  - Who was the last person to leave the building last night?)
     (Ai là người cuối cùng rời khỏi tòa nhà tối hôm qua?)
- c) Bạn có thể dùng to-infinitive sau một số tính từ để nói ai đó cảm thấy thế nào về một diều gi đó, thí dụ:
  - I was sorry to hear that your father was ill.
     (Tôi rất tiếc khi nghe nói rằng bạn bị bệnh)
  - Was Tom surprised to see you when you visited him? (Khi bạn đến thăm, Tom có ngạt nhiên khi gặp bạn không?)

I was delighted to get your lettler last week...
(Tôi rất vui khi nhân được thự của bạn tuần rồi))

Sau đây là một số tính từ khác bạn có thể dùng theo cách này:

Happy	pleased	disappoited	amazed
(vui)	(hài lòng)	(thất vọng)	(kinh ngạc)
glad	sad	relieved	astonished
(hân hạnh; vui )	(buốn)	(nhẹ nhỏm)	(ngạc nhiên)

 d. Hây lưu ý đến cấu trúc (it is) nice of someone to do something. Mẫu này có thể được dùng sau một số tính từ bao gồm:

Nice (từ tế)	mean (kém cči)	silly (dai: ngốc)	polite (lễ phép)	generous (rộng lượng)
kind	stupid	clever	careless	100
(từ tế, tốt)	(ngu)	(thông minh)	(bất cẩn)	* *

- I was nice of you to take me to the station. Thank you very much.
   (Ban thật tử tế khi dựa tôi đến nhà ga. Cám ơn bạn rất nhiều).
- It was careless of Jack to leave the door unlocked when he went out. (Jack thát bắt cắn đã không khóa cửa khi đi ra ngoài).
- It's stupid of him to give up his job when he needs the money.

  (Anh ta thật ngu ngốc khi bỏ việc trong lúc đạng cắn tiền).
- It was generous of Ann to lend us the money.
   (Ann thật rộng lượng đã cho chúng tôi mượn tiền).

## UNIT 100: Exercises

100.1 Ex	Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.  ample: It is difficult to understand him. He is difficult to understand.
1	It's quite easy to find our house. Our house is
2	It was very difficult to open the window. The window
3	It's impossible to translate some words. Some words
4	It's not very difficult to make bread. Bread
5	It's not safe to stand on that chair. That chair
6	It's difficult to explain some grammatical rules.
	Some grammatical rules
7	It's hard to find a good restaurant in this town.
	A good restaurant
	Use the following words to complete each sentence: nan/walk fish/complain last/arrive last person/see next train/arrive The next train to arrive at platform 2 will be the 7.45 to Birmingham.
2	When anything goes wrong, harry is always
3	Nobody has seen Keith for days. Who was
	Neil Armstrong was on the moon.
4	We always have to wait for him. He's always
5	AAR SIMBAR IN MOUTON THE TIES CHARAST

100.3 <i>Us</i>	e the following words to complete sen	tences:	
del	ighted/get astonished/find s	orry/hear	pleased/see glad/hear
2 T 3 V s 4 H	was really <u>delighted to get</u> your letter hank you for your letter. I'm	as really	that you're keeping wella complete strangeryou again.
100.4 Ma	tke sentences using the word in brack	ets.	
Exan		en he wer	
11 2 Y	om offered to help me (kind). wasou ou make the same mistake again and 's	d again (c	areless).
3 8	She went out in the rain without a raing	coat (stup	id).
	on and Jenny invited me to stay with		
	ie left without saying thank you (not p t wasn't		<del>-</del>
KEY			
100.11	Our house is quite easy to find	5	the last (person) to arrive
2	The window was very diffficult to	100.3 2	glad to hear
3	open. Some words are impossible to	3	astonished to find
J	translate.	4	pleased to see
4	Bread is not very difficult to make.	5	sorry to hear
5	That chair isn't safe to stand on.	100.4 1	It was kind of Tom to offer to help
6	Some grammatical rules are		me.
	difficult to explain.	2.	It's careless of you to make the
7	A good restaurant is hard to find in	_	same mistake again and again.
	this town.	3	It was stupid of her to go out in the
100.2 2			rain without a raincoat.
3 4	the last person to see him the first man to walk on the moon	. 4	It was nice of Don and Jenny to invite me to stay with them for a few days.
		5	

# BÀI 101: SO SÁNH của TÍNH TỪ và TRẠNG TỪ

(1) : cheaper, more expensive, v.v...

a) Hāy xem các thí du sau:

Let's go by car. It's cheaper.
(Chúng ta hāy đi xe hơi. Như thế rẻ tiến hơn).
Don't go by train. It's more expensive.
(Đừng đi bằng xe lửa. Nó đác tiến hơn).
Cheaper và more expensive là hình thức so sánh bặc hơn (comparative).

Sau cấp độ so sánh hơn, ta dùng than:

 It's cheaper to go by car than to go by train (Di bằng xe hơi rẻ tiến hơn đi bằng xe tửa)

Về than xem thêm bài 103

b) Chúng ta thêm -er vào tính từ và trạng từ ngắn (1 vẫn):

Cheap/cheaper hard/harder large/larger

thin/thinner

- This jacket is too small. I need a larger size (Cái áo vét này quá nhỏ. Tôi cần một cở lớn hơn)
- Ann works harder than most of her friends (Ann làm việc chăm chỉ hơn hấu hết các bạn của cô ta)

Chúng ta cũng thêm-er vào một số tính từ hai vẫn, đặc biệt là các tính từ tận cũng bằng -y. Thídụ:

lucky/luckier, funny/funnier, easy/easier, pretty/prettier, quiet/quieter, clever/cleverer, narrow/narrower, simple/simpler

Jhe examination was easier than we expected. (Kỳ thi dễ hơn là chúng tối nghĩ).

It's too noisy here. Can we go some where quieter?
(Ở đây ổn ào quá. Chúng ta có thể đi đầu đó yên tĩnh hơn không?)

Về qui tắc chính tả xem phần phụ lục 3.

c) Chúng ta dùng more.. (không dùng "-er") đối với các tính từ dài (tính từ hai vấn trở lên, ngoại trừ các tính từ hai vấn đã liệt kê ở phần b:

more modern more serious more expensive more comfortable

- More expensive hotels are usually more comfortable than cheaper ones. (Khách sạn đắc tiền thường tiện nghi hơn khách sạn rễ tiến.)
- Her illness was more serious than we at first thought.
   (Bệnh tình của cô ta trấm trọng hơn là chúng tôi nghỉ lúc đầu).

Chúng ta cũng dùng more\_cho các trạng từ tặn cũng bằng-ly: more slowly more seiously more quietly more carefully.

Could you speak more slowly, please?
 (Ban làm do nói chậm hơn được không?)

#### Chúng ta cũng nói more often:

I don't play tennis much now. I used to play more often.
 (Bây giờ tôi không chơi quần vợt nhiều. Trước kia tôi chơi thường xuyên hơn).

Nhưng chủng ta lại nói earlier (không nói "more early").

- You always tired in the mornings. You should go to bed earlier. (Ban luôn mệt mỗi vào buổi sáng. Ban nên đi ngủ sớm hơn).
- d) Trước hình thức so sánh hơn của tính từ và trạng từ, bạn có thể dùng kèm:

#### a bit a little much a lot far (=a lot).

- Let's go by car. It's much (hoặc a lot) cheaper.
   (Chúng ta hày đi bằng xe hơi. Như thế sẽ rẽ tiến hơn nhiều).
- Don't go by train. It's much (hoặc a lot) more expensive.
   Đừng đi bằng xe lửa. Như thể đắc tiến hơn nhiều).
- Ann works a lot (hoặc much) harder than most of her friends.
   (Ann làm việc siêng năng hơn hầu hết các bạn của cô ta nhiều).
- Could you speak a bit (hoặc a little) more slowly?
   (Bạn có thể nói chậm hơn một chút được không?)
- Her illness was far more serious than we at first thought.
   (Bệnh tình của có ta trầm trọng hơn nhiều so với lúc đầu chúng tôi nghĩ).

### **UNIT 101:Exercises**

101.1 Complete these sentences. Each time use the comparative from of one of the following adjectives or adverbs: crowded early easily expensive interested quiet thin Laktie 1 This jacket is too small. I need a larger size. 2 You look...... Have you lost weight? He's not so keen on his studiens. He's\_\_\_\_\_ in having a good time. You'll find your way around the town...... if you have a map. You're making too much noise. Can you be a bit.....? 5 6 There were a lot of people on the bus. It was \_\_\_\_\_ than usual. You're late. I expected you to be here 8 You hardly ever write to me. Why don't you write a bit......? The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be much...... 10 It's a pity you live so far alway. I wish you lived ...... 101.2 Complete these sentences. Use the comparative of the words in brakets + than. Example: Her illness was more serious than we at fist thought. (serious). Sorry I'm late. It took me...... to get here...... I expected (long). My toothache is...... it was yesterday (painful). The problem is not so complicated. It's...... you think (simple).

<ul> <li>5 Your English has improved. You s last met (fluently).</li> <li>6 Health and happiness are</li></ul>	go on holiday	/. It's much staying
101.3 This exercise is similar but this time I far_ Use than where necessary  Example: Her illness was much more	serious than	we at first thought (much/serious)
1 It's	ive	? (a bit/ slowly)  (far/interesting) other one. (much/comfortable) c
101.1 2 thinner	6	more important than
3 more interested	. 7	cheaper than
4 more easily	8	healthier (or more healthy) and
5 quieter (or more quiet)		more peaceful than
6 more crowded	101.3 1	a little warmer today than
7 earlier	2	a bit more slowly
8 more often	3	far more interesting than
9 more expensive	4	much more comfortable than
10 nearer	5	
101.2 1 longer than	. 6	much bigger
2 more painful than 3 older than	. 7	a lot easier (or a lot more easy)
4 simpler than (or more simple tha	ın)	
5 more fluently than	,	

# BÀI 102:

# SO SÁNH (2)

 a) Một số tính từ và trạng từ có hình thức so sánh bậc hơn bất qui tắc (irregular comparative);

Good / well	better	Let me ask him, I know him better than you do.
:	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	(Hãy để tôi hỏi anh ta. Tôi biết anh ta rõ hơn là bạn
		biết)
		The garden looks better since you tidied it up.
		(Khu vườn trông khá hơn từ lúc bạn dọn đẹp nó).
Bad / badly	worse	"Is your headache better?" "No, it's worse".
		("Chứng nhức đầu của bạn có để hơn không?"
		"Không, nó còn tệ hại hơn nữa").
		The situation was much worse than we expected.
		(Tình hình tệ hơn chúng tôi nghĩ nhiều)
Far	further	I'm very tired.l can't walk much futher (hoặc much
	(hoặc farther)	farther).
		(Tôi mệt quá. Tôi không thể đi bộ xa hơn được nữa).

Furthe (không phải "farther") cũng có nghĩa là "hơn, thêm, thêm nữa" :

Let me know immediately if you hear any further news (=any more news).

(Hāy cho tôi biết ngay nếu bạn có thêm bất cứ tin tức gl).

Hãy lưu ý đến hai từ so sánh more và less:

- I smoke more than I used to.
   (Tôi hút thuốc nhiều hơn trước đây).
- We've got less time than I thought.
   (Chung tôi có lt thời gian hơn là tôi nghĩ).

#### b) Older vå elder:

Hình thức so sánh hơn của oid là older:

Tom looks older than he really is.
 (Tom trong già hơn tuổi thật của minh).

Chúng ta dùng elder khi chúng ta nói về các thành viên trong gia đình. Chúng ta nói: (my) elder brother (anh trai) / sister (chị gái) / son (con trai lớn) / daughter (con gái lớn):

- My elder brother is a pilot. (Anh tôi là một phi công).
  - Chúng ta cũng dùng elder trước danh từ:
- My brother is older than me. (không nói "elder than me").

Vé eldest, xem bài 104c.

c) Đội khi bạn có thể dùng 2 từ so sánh bật hơn cùng một lúc. Thí dụ: harder and harder, more and more, more and more difficult. Chúng ta dùng cấu trúc này để diễn tả sự thay đổi liên tục của một sự việc nào đó:

- It's becoming harder and harder to find a job.
   (Tim việc làm càng ngày càng trở nên khó khăn hơn).
- Your English is improving. It's getting better and better.
   (Vốn tiếng Anh của bạn đang khá lên đấy. Nó đang trở nên ngày càng tốt hơn).
- It's becoming more and more difficult to find a job.
   (Cang ngày càng khó kiểm việc làm hơn).
- These days more and more people are learning English.
   (Ngày nay càng ngày càng có nhiều người học tiếng Anh hơn).
- d) Hāy lưu ý đến cấu trúc: the + so sánh hơn + the better. Thí dụ:
  - "What time shall we leave?" "The sooner the better".
     (=it will be best if we leave as soon as possible).
     ("Chúng ta sẽ lên đường lúc mấy giờ?" "Càng sớm càng tốt")
  - "What size box do you want?" "The bigger the better".

    (=it will be best if the box is as big as possible).

    ("Anh muốn hộp cỡ nào?" "Càng to càng tốt").

Chúng ta cũng dùng the... (với hai từ so sánh bậc hơn) để diễn tả sự phụ thuộc của việc này vào việc khác:

- The warmer the weather, the better I feel.
  - (Thời tiết càng ấm tôi càng cảm thấy khá hơn).
- The earlier we leave, the sconer we will arrive.
   (Chúng ta càng đi sớm chừng nào chúng ta càng đến sớm chừng ấy).
- The more expensive the hotel, the better the service. (Khách san càng đất tiền sự phục vụ càng tốt).
- The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
   (Ban càng dùng nhiều điện bạn càng phải trả tiến nhiều).
- The more you have, the more you want.
   (Ban càng có nhiều bạn càng muốn nhiều).

### UNIT 102: Exercises

	Complete these sentences using these words: better, worse, futher, older, elder You have to use some of these words more than once. Use than where necessary cample: Let me ask him. I know him better than you do.
1	We complained about the food in our hotel. But intead of improving, it got
2	Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do this.
3	Ann's younger sister is still at school. Her sister is a nurse.
4	Our teamp layed really badly this afternoon. We played we have ever played before.
5	augu?
6	"Is Jim younger thanTom?" "No, he's
7	The damage to our car wasn't so bad. It could have been much
В	If you need any information, please contact our head office.

102.2 In this exercise you have to use the structure and (see section c).  Examples: It's becoming harder and harder to find a job (hard).  It's becoming more and morre difficult to find a job (difficult).					
2 \1 3 1 4 / 5 / 6 1	That hole in your put The suitcase seemen As the day went on, As the conversation Travelling is becoming	iover is getting  I to get  the weather got  went on, he became			
		ave to write sentend half-sentence from	ces with the _ the _ Choose a half-sentence box B.		
2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	A the earlier we leave the longer he waited the more you have to pay the more I got to know him the sooner we arrive the more you practise your English the more profit you'll make the longer the telephone call the more impatient he became the more goods you sell the more I liked him  1 The earlier we leave, the sooner we'll arrive.  2				
KEY			1		
102.1 1 3 5 7	worse	2 better than 4 worse than 6 older (than him) 8 further	102.3 2-6  The longer he waited, the more impatient he became.  The more I got to know him, the more liked him.		
102.2 1 2 3 4 5	more and more ne bigger and bigger heavier and heavie worse and worse more and more tal more and more ex	er kative	The more you practise your English, the faster you'll learn. The longer the telephone call, the more you have to pay.		

7 better and better

The more goods you sell, the more profit you'll make.

# BÀI 103: SO SÁNH (3): as ... as; than

#### a) Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Joe, Henry và Arthur đều là triệu phú. Họ rất giàu có. Joe có 5 triệu, Henry có 4 triệu và Arthur có 2 triệu. Như vậy:

Henry is rich. (Henry giàu có). He is richer than Arthur. (Ông ta giàu hơn Arthur.)

But he isn't as rich as Joe (= Joe is richer than he is). (Nhưng ông ta không giàu bằng Joe) = (Joe giàu hơn ông ta).

Sau đầy là một số thí du khác có cấu trúc as... as:

- Jack isn't as old as he looks (=He looks older than he is) (Jack không lớn tuổi như vẻ mặt của anh ta) (=Anh ta trông già hơn tuổi thật)
- The city centre wasn't as crowded this morning as it usually is. (= it is usually more crowded).
  - (Sáng nay trung tâm thành phố không đông đúc như mọi khi) (= Mọi khi ở đó đông đúc hơn)
- Jim didn't do as well in his examination as he had hoped (= he had hoped to do better).
  - (Jim làm bài thi không tốt như là anh ta đã hy vọng) (= Anh ta đã hy vọng làm bài thi tốt hơn).
- "The weather's better today, isn't it?" "Yes, it's not as cold" (=yesterday was colder). ("Hôm nay thời tiết tốt hơn, phải không?" "Phải, trời không lạnh bằng hôm qua") (=hôm qua lạnh hơn).
  - I don't know as many people as you do (=you know more people).

    (Tôi không quen biết nhiều người bạn) (=bạn quen biết nhiều người hơn).

Ban có thể nói "not so... as" (thay cho "not as... as"):

- Henry isn't so rich as Joe. (Henry không giàu bằng Joe).
- b) Bạn cũng có thể dùng **as... as** ( nhưng *không* dùng "so... as") trong các câu xác định (affirmative) và câu hỏi (question):
  - I'm sorry I'm late. I got here as fast as I could. (Xin lỗi vì tôi đến trể. Tôi đã cố hết sức đến đây thật nhanh).
  - There's plenty of food, so eat as much as you like.

    (Có rất nhiều thức ăn, vì vậy cứ ăn bao nhiều tùy thích).
  - Let's walk. It's just as quick as taking the bus.
     (Chúng ta hãy đi bộ. Như vậy cũng nhanh như xe buýt).

Can you send me the money as soon as possible, please?
 (Anh làm dn gôi tiến cho tối càng sôm càng tốt được không?)

Chúng ta cũng có thể nói twice as... as, three times as... as v.v.:

- Petrot is twice as expensive as it was a few year ago.
   (Hiện nay xăng đất gấp hai lần vài năm trước đây).
- Their house is about three times as big as ours.
   (Nhà của họ lớn khoảng gấp ba lần nhà của chúng tôi)
- c) Chúng ta nói the same as (không nói "the same like"):
  - Ann's salary is the same as mine. (hoặc: Ann gets the same salary as me).
     (Lương của Ann bằng lương của tôi) (= Ann lãnh cùng một mức lương như tôi).
  - Tom is the same age as George. (Tom bang tuổi George).
  - "What would you like to drink?" "I'll have the same as last time".
     ("Ban muốn ướng gì?" "cũng như lẫn trước thôi").
- d) Sau than và as ta thường dùng me / him / her / them / us khi không có động từ theo sau. Hãy so sánh các câu sau đây;
  - You are taller than I am. nhưng: You are taller than me. (Ban cao hơn tôi).
  - They have more money than we have nhung: They have more money than us.
     (Ho co nhiều tiến hơn chúng tôi).
  - I can't run as fast as he can, nhưng: I can't run as fast as him.
     (Tôi không thể chạy nhanh bằng anh ta).

## **UNIT 103: Exercises**

E	xample: I'm quite tall but you are taller. I'm not as tall as you.
	Ann works reasonably hard but she used to work much harder.
	Ann doesn't work as hard as she used to.
1	My salary is high but yours is higher. My salary isn't_
2	You know a bit about cars but I know more. You don't
3	I still smoke but I used to smoke a lot more. I don't
4	I still feel quite tired but I felt a lot more tired yesterday.
5	They've lived here for quite a long time but we've lived here longer. They haven't
6	I was a bit nervous before the interview but usually I'm a lot more nervous.  I wasn't
7	The weather is still unpleasant today but yesterday it was worse.

103.	03.2 Re-write these sentences so that they have the same meaning. Begin as shown.						
E	Example: Jack is younger than he looks. Jack isn't as old as he looks.						
1	1 It's warmer today than yesterday. It isn't						
2		he station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't					
3	3 E	go out less than I used to. I don't					
4	l T	he hotel is cheaper than I expected. The hotel isn't					
5	5 T	here were fewer people at this meeting than at the last one.					
	Ť	here weren't					
€	<b>5</b> T	he examination was easier than we expected.					
	Т	he examination wasn't					
103.	3 Cc	implete these sentences using just as with one of the following words:					
t	ad	comfortable expensive well-qualified - purek					
1	L	et's walk. It's just as quick as taking the bus.					
. 2	? ľ	m going to sleep on the floor. It'ssleeping in that bed.					
3	3 V	Vhy did he get the job? I'mhim.					
4	1	thought you were nice but you're everybody else.					
5	5 Y	ou won't find a cheaper restaurant than this. They'll all be					
103.	4 No	ow you have to make sentences with the same as.					
ı	Exan	nple: (Tom/same age/George) <u>Tom is the same age as George.</u>					
		your hair/same colour/mine) Your hair					
	2 (	I arrived here/same time/you)					
		you made/same mistake/l made)					
	•						
KE	ΈΥ						
103.	11	My salary isn't as high as yours.					
	2	You don't know as much about cars as I do (or., as me).					
	3	I don't smoke as much as I used to.					
	4	I don't feel as tired as I felt yesterday (or as I did yesterday).					
	5	They haven't lived here as long as we have (or as us).					
	6	I wasn't as nervous before the interview as I usually am (or as usual).					
	7	The weather isn't as bad today as it was yesterday (or _ isn't as unpleasant					
		today_).					
103	.2 1	It isn't as cold today as (it was) yesterday.					

2 The station wasn't as far as I thought.

- 3 I don't go out as much as I used to (or... as often as I used to).
- 4 The hotel isn't as expensive as I expected (or... as dear as I expected).
- 5 There weren't as many people at this meeting as (at) the last one.
- 6 The examination wasn't as difficult as we expected (or., as hard as we expected).
- 103.3 2 just as comfortable as.
  - 3 just as well-qualified as.
  - 4 just as bad as. \*\*
  - 5 just as expensive (as this one).
- 103.4 1 Your hair is the same colour as mine.
  - 2 I arrived here at the same time as you.
  - 3 You made the same mistake as I made (oer... as me).

# BÀI 104: SO SÁNH CỰC CẤP: the longer, the most ejoyable; ...

a) Hãy xem các thí dụ sau:

What is the longest river in the world?

(Con sông dài nhất trên thế giới là con sông nào?)

What was the most enjoyable holiday you've ever had?

(Kỳ nghỉ nào là kỳ nghỉ vui nhất mà bạn đã từng trải qua?)

Longest và most enjoyable là hình thức so sánh cực cấp (superlative)

b) Chúng tả thêm sest hoặc dùng most... để thành lập hình thức cực cấp của tính từ và trạng từ. Nói chung, chúng tạ dùng sest cho những từ ngắn (một vẫn) và most... cho những từ đải (hai vấn trở lên). Qui tắc cũng tương tự như ở bài 101. Ví dụ:

long / longest nbung: most famous

most boring

easy / easiest most difficult hard / hardest most expensive

Về các qui tắc chính tả xem phần phụ lục 3

- Yesterday was the hottest day of the year. (Hôm qua là ngày nóng nhất trong năm).
- That was the most boring film I've ever seen.
   (Đó là bộ phim dỡ nhất mà tôi từng xem).
- "Why did you stay at that hotel?" "It was the cheapest we could find". ("Tai sao bạn ở khách sạn đó?" "Đờ là khách sạn rẽ nhất mà chúng tới có thể tìm được").
- She is really nice person-one of the nicest people I know.
   (Cô ấy quả là một người từ tế-một trong những người từ tế nhất mà tôi biết).

Hãy lưu ý đến hai từ cực cấp bất qui tắc best và worst;

- That was a delicious meal. It's one of the best I've ever had.

  (Đó là một bữa ăn ngọn Nó là một trong những bữa ăn mà tối thưởng thức).
- Why does he always come to see me at the worst possible moment? (Tai sao lúc não anh ta cũng đến gặp tôi vào những lúc bất tiện nhất?)

Đừng quên là chúng ta thường dùng mạo từ the với so sánh cực cấp: "the best, the most boring"...

#### c) Oldest vå eidest:

Hình thức cực cấp của old và oldest:

 That house over there is the oldest building in the town (Ngôi nhà đẳng kia là ngôi nhà lâu đời nhất trong thị trấn)

Chúng tạ dùng eldest khi chúng ta đạng nói về các thành viên trong gia đình:

- My eldest son is 13 year old.
   (Con trai lôn nhất của tôi được 13 tuổi).
- Are you the eldest in your family? (Ban là con cả trong gia đình phải không?)

- d) Sau các từ cực cấp, chúng ta dùng in với nơi chốn (thành phố, nhà...).
  - What is the longest river in the world? (không nói "of the world").
     (Con sông dài nhất là con sông nào?)
  - We were lucky to have one of the nicest rooms in the hotel.
     (Chúng tôi may mắn được ở một trong những phòng tốt nhất khách sạn).

Ngoài ra: "(the best\_) in the class / in the team / in the company, ..."

Nhưng: "the happiest day of my-life, the hottest day of the year" (ngày hạnh phúc nhất trong đời tôi / ngày nóng nhất trong năm).

Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng ta thường dùng thì present perfect (I have done) sau so sánh cực cấp (xem thêm bài 14a):

- What's the best film you've ever seen?
   (Phim hay nhất mà bạn đã từng xem là phim gì?)
- That was the most delicious meal I've had for a long time.
   (Đó là bữa ăn ngon nhất tôi được thưởng thức từ lâu nay.)
- e) Đôi khi chúng ta dùng most + tính từ (không có "the") với nghĩa "very":
  - The book you lent me was most interesting. (=very interesting).
     (Quyen sach ban cho tôi mượn rất hay).
  - Thank you for the money. It was most generous of you. (=very generous).
     (Cám ơn về số tiến đó. Bạn thát rộng rãi).

# UNIT 104: Exercises

••••	Complete the sentences with a superlative and preposition.	.,
Ex	ample: It's a very nice room. It's the nicest room in the hotel,	
. 1	It's a very cheap restaurant. It's	the town
2	It was a very happy day. It was	mv life
3	one's a very intelligent student. She	the school
4	It's a very valuable painting. It	the gallery.
In Ex	the following sentences use one of the + superlative.  ample: It's a very nice room. It's one of the nicest rooms in the hot	
5	He's a very rich man. He's one	the world
6 -	It's a very old castle, it's	Britain
7	He's a very good player. He	the team
8	It was a very bad experience. It was	my life
9	He's a very dangerous criminal. He	

3	1 ( T	haven't tasted such good coffee for a	long-time		time ;		
4	15	That'stime. I've never slept in such an uncomfortable bed. This is					
_	T)	his isve never had such a big meal. It's		***************************************			
5		ve never nad such a big meal. It's ve never met such a generous persor		<del>-</del>			
۰		nn is			•		
7	į.	ve never had such a good friend as y	ou. You	······································	**************		
8	- 1	haven't had to make such a difficult d	acision fo	/ears			
	Т	his is			years.		
104.3		ow here are some questions for you estions using the words in brackets. The			to write the		
1	(1	what/large/city/your country?) What is	the large	city in your country?			
2	(1	who/ famous singer/your country? Wh	10	your			
3		what/popular sport/your country?) Wh					
4		what/expensive thing/you/ever bough					
5		what/happy/day/your life?) What was					
6	()	what/stupid thing/you/ever done?)					
7 8		who/intelligent person/you know?) who/beautiful person/you know?)					
. •	1,	wno/peaudiui person/you know?)		······	48488888888		
KE	Y	<u>.</u>	· 		·		
104.1	1	It's the cheapest restaurant in the town.	4	This is the most uncom sed I've ever slept in.	nfortable		
	2,	It was the happiest day of my life.	_ 5	t's the biggest meal I'v			
	3	She is the most intelligent student	6	Ann is the most genero	ous person		
		in the school.	•	've ever met.	•		
	4	It is the most valuable painting in	. 7	You are the best friend	i I've ever		
,		the gallery.	_	nad.			
	5	He's one of the richest men in the	8	This is the most difficu			
	_	world.		've had to make for ye			
	6	It's one of the oldest castles in	104.3 2	Who is the most famou	ıs singer in		
•	_	Britain.		your country?	ا حاضمت بدا		
	7	He is one of the best players in	3	What is the most popu	ıar sport in		
		the team.	4	your country? What is the most expe	neiva thina		
	8	It was one of the worst experiences of my life (or in my	*	you have ever bought	-		
		life).	. 5	What was the happies			
	9	He is one of the most dangerous		lite?	t day or your		
	, <b>.</b> .	criminals on the country.	. 6	What is the most stup	id thing you		
404		•	•	have ever done?			
104.	<b>4</b> 1	That's the funniest story I've ever heard.	7	Who is the most intelli	gent person		
	2	neard. It's the worst mistake he's ever		you know?	- ,		
	2	made.	. 8	Who is the most beau	tiful person		
	3	That's the best coffee I've tasted	77	you know?	•		

for a long time.

# BÀI 105: TRẬT TỰ TỪ (1) : động từ+túc từ; nơi chốn và thời gián

#### a) Động từ+túc từ (verb+object) :

Động từ và các tức từ của động từ thường đi chung với nhau, thường thì chúng ta không thêm chữ nào khác vào giữa chúng:

Động từ túc từ

I like children very much (không nói "I like very much children).

(Tôi rất thích trẻ con).

Did you see Norman yesterday?

- (Hôm qua ban có gặp Noman không?)

Ann often plays tennis.
(Ann thường xuyên chơi quần vớt).

Sau đây là một số thí dụ:

- Do you clean the house every week-end? (không nói "Do you clean every week-end the house?").

(Bạn có lau nhà vào mỗi cuối tuần không?)

 Everybody enjoyed the party very much. (không nói "Everybody enjoyed very much the party").

(Mọi người đều rất thích buổi tiệc đó). 🦂

Our guide spoke English fluently. (không nói '\_ spoke fluently English")
 (Người hướng dẫn của chúng tôi nói tiếng Anh trôi chảy).

I not only lost all money-I also lost my passport. (không nói 'l lost also my passport")
 (Tôi không chỉ mất hết tiến-tôi còn mất cả hộ chiếu nữa).

At the end of the street you'll see a supermarket on your left. (không nói."... see on your left a supermarket")
 (Ở cuối con đường, bạn sẽ thấy một siêu thị nằm bên tay trái).

Về vị trí của các từ như also và often trước động từ, xem bài 106.

#### b) Nơi chốn và thời gian:

Chúng ta thường dùng từ chỉ gợi chốn (where?) trước từ chỉ thời gian (when? / how often? / how long?):

Nơi chốn thời gian

Tom walks to work every morning (không nói "Tom walks every

morning to work).

(Tom đi bộ đến chỗ làm mỗi buổi sáng).

She hes been in Canada since April.

(Cô ta đã ở Canada từ tháng tư).

We arrived at the aiport early. (Chúng tôi đã đến sân bay sởm). Sau đây là một số thí dụ khác:

- I'm going to Paris on Monday (không nói :I'm going on Monday to Paris").
   (Tôi sẽ đi Parisvào thứ hai).
- Don't be late. Make sure you're here by 8 o'clock.
   (Đừng đến trễ. Nhô là bạn phải có mặt ở đây vào lúc 8 giờ).
- Why weren't you at home last night?
   (Tại sao tối hôm qua bạn không có ở nhà?)
- You really shouldn't go to bed so late.
   (Ban thực sự không nên đi ngủ quá trễ như thế).

Ta cũng có thể đặt từ chỉ thời gian ở đầu câu:

- On Monday I'm going to Paris, (Thứ hai tôi sẽ đi Paris).
- Every morning Tom walks to work.
   (Môi sáng Tom đi bộ đến chỗ làm).

Hāy lưu ý rằng bạn không thể dùng early hoặc late ở đầu cấu theo cách này được. Hāyxem bài 106 để biết thêm về trật tự từ.

## **UNIT 105: Exercises**

105,1 In this exercises you have to decide whether the word order is right or wrong. Correct the sentences which are wrong. Example: I like children very much RIGHT. Tom walks every morning to work WRONG -to work every morning. Jim doesn't like very much football Ann drives every day her car to work 3 When I heard the news, I phoned Tom immediately...... 4 Maria spēaks very well English ..... 5 After eating quickly my dinner, I went out ...... 6 You watch all the time television. Can't you do something else? Jim smokes about 20 cigarettes every day...... 8 I think I'll go early to bed tonight..... You should go to the dentist every six months..... 10 When I heard the alarm, I got immediately out of bed...... \* 11 Did you learn a lot of things at school today? ...... 12 How many people do you know who go on Sundays to church? ..... 105.2 Now you have to put the parts of a sentences in the correct order. The first nine sentences are like those in section a. Example: (chilldren/very much/l like) Like chilldren very much. (he won/easily/the game) He won...... (again/please don't ask/that question) Please..... (football/every week-end/does Ken play?) Does ......

· 4	(quietly / the door / I closed)
- 5	(his name / after a few minutes / I remembered)
6	(a letter to her parents / Ann writes / every week)
·· 7	(at the top of the page / your name / please write)
8.	
. 9	(opposite the park/ a new hotel / they are building)
The n	ext six sentences are like those in section b.
. 10	(to the bank / every Friday / I go) I go
11	(home / why did you come/so late?) Why
	(around the town / all morning / I've been waiking)
	(recently / to the theatre /have you been?)
	(to London-/ for a few days next week / I'm going)
	(on Saturday night / I didn't see you/at the party)

#### **KFY**

- 105.1 1 wrong-Jim doesn't like football very much
  - 2 wrong-Ann drives her car to work every day
  - 3 right
  - 4 wrong-Maria speaks English very well
  - 5 wrong-After eating my dinner quickly, I went out
  - 6 wrong-You watch television all the time
  - 7 right
  - 8 wrong- I think I'll go to bed early tonight
  - 9 right
  - 10 wrong- I got out of bed " immediately"
  - 11 right
  - 12 wrong: \_ who go to church on Sundays
- 105.2.1 He won the game easily
  - 2 Please don't ask that question again.
  - 3 Does Ken play football every week-end?
  - 4 I closed the door quietiy.

- I remembered his name after a few minutes (or After a few minutes I remembered his name).
- 6 Ann writes a letter to her parents every week ( or Every week Ann...)
- 7 Please write your name at the top of the page.
- 8 We found some interesting books in the library.
- 9 They are building a new hotel opposite the park.
- 10 i go to the bank every Friday (or Every Friday I go to the bank).
- 11 Why did you come home so late?
- 12 I've been walking around the town all morning.
- . 13 Have you been to the theatre recently?
- 14 I'm going to London for a few days next week.
- 15 I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night.

# BÀI 106: TRẬT TỰ TỪ (2) : trạng từ đi với động từ

- a) Chúng ta dùng một số trạng từ (ví dụ như always, also, probably) cùng với động từ ở giữa câu:
  - Tom always goes to work by car.
     (Tom luôn luôn đi làm bằng xe hơi).
  - We were feeling very tired. We were also hungry.
     (Chúng tôi cấm thấy rất một. Chúng tôi lại còn thấy đói nữa).
  - Your car has probably been stolen.
     (Có lẽ xe hơi của bạn đã bị đánh cấp)
- Hāy xem những qui tắt sau về vị trí của trạng từ khi đứng giữa câu (Đây chỉ là những qui tắc tổng quát, vì vậy vẫn có những ngoại lệ).
- i) Nếu động từ chỉ là một chữ (gops, cooked...), chúng ta thường đặt trạng từ trước động từ:

•	trạng từ	động từ
Tom	always	goes to work by car.
(Tom	luôn	đi làm bằng xe hơi).

- I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner (không nói "cooked also")
   (Tôi đã lau nhà và còn nấu luôn bữa tối).
- Jack hardly ever watches television and rarely reads newspapers.

  (Jack hau như không bao giờ xem ti vi và ít khi nào đọc báo).
- She almost fell over as she came down the stairs.
   (Cô ta suýt té nhàp khí đi xuống cấu thang).

Hãy lưu ý rằng các trạng từ này (always / often / also...) luôn luôn đứng trước have to:

 We always have to wait a long time for the bus. (Chúng tối luôn phải đơi xe buýt rất lâu).

Nhưng các trạng từ thường đứng sau am / is / are / was / were:

- We were feeling very tired. We were also hungry.
   (Chúng tôi cảm thấy rất một. Chúng tôi lại thấy đói nữa).
- Why are you always late? You're never on time.
   (Tai sao lúc nào bạn cũng đến trễ thế? Bạn chẳng bao giờ đến đúng giờ cả).
- The traffic isn't usually as bad as it was this morning.

  (Thường thị giao thông không đến nỗi tệ như sáng nay).
- ii) Đôi khi động từ gồm hai hay nhiều chữ (can remember, doesn't smoke; has been stolen...). Khi đó chúng ta thường đặc trạng từ sau chữ đầu tiên của cụm động từ:.

dộng từ 1 trạng từ động từ 2 I can never remember his name. (Tôi không bao giờ có thể nhớ được tên anh ta). Ann doesn't usually smoke. (Ann không thường xuyên hút thuốc lá). động từ 1 trạng từ động từ 2
Are you definitely going to the party tomorrow?
(Ngày mai bạn có chắc chắn đến dự tiệc không?)
Your car has probably been stolen
(Có lẽ xe hơi của bạn đã bị đánh cấp)

- My parents have always lived in London. (Cha me tôi lướn luôn sống ở Luân Đôn)
- Jack can't cook. He can't even boil an egg.
   (Jack không biết nấu ăn. Ngay cả luộc trứng anh ta cũng không biết).
- The house was only built a year ago and it's already falling down.
   (Căn nhà chỉ mới được xây cách đây một năm mà đã đổ sup xuống).

Trong câu phủ định probaply đứng trước từ phủ định. Vì vậy ta nói:

- I probably won't see you. Hoặc: I will probably not see you (nhưng không nói "I won't probably see you")
   (Có lẽ tôi sẽ không gặp bạn).
- c) Chúng ta cũng dùng all và both ở những vi trí tương tư:
  - We all felt ill after the meal.
    - (Tất cả chúng tôi đều cảm thấy khó chịu sau bữa ăn),
  - Jack and Tom have both applied for the job.
  - (Cả Jack và Tom đều nộp đơn xin làm công việc đó).
  - We are all going out for a meal this evening.
     (Tối nay tất cả chúng tôi sẽ đi ăn tiêm).
  - My parents are both teachers. (Cha me tôi đều là giáo viên).

## **UNIT 106: Exercises**

	In this exercies you have to decide whether the underlined words postion or not. Correct the sentences which are wrong:	are in the rig
E	kample: Tom goes always to work by car WRONG-Tom :	always goes
	I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner RIGHT.	
1	I have a good memory for faces but I always forget names.	
2	Those tourists over there probably are American.	,
3	Tom gets hardly ever angry.	
4	We both were astonished when we heard the news.	
5	I soon found the keys I had lost.	********
6	I dld some shopping and I went also to the bank.	
7	Tom has always to hurry in the morning because he gets up so late.	
8	The baby is very good. She seldom cries during the night.	`
9	I usually am very tired when I get home from work.	
-	Lusually have a bath when I get home from work.	***************************************
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	<u>, i asamit nate a paul Alleii i Serimine finit Molt,                                     </u>	

106.2 T Exa	This time you have to re-write the sente ample: Ann doesn't smoke (usually)	nces to inc an doesn	clude the worti in brakets. 't usually smoke.
· · 1	Have you been arrested? (ever) Have	·	
2	I don't have to work on Saturdays (us	ually) (	
- 3	Does Tom sing when he's in the bath	? (always)	
- 4	I'll be home this evening (probably)		147111114
5	We are going away tomorrow (all)		
6	(Don't take me seriously) ! was joking	(only) I	
7	Did you enjoy the party? (both)		
8	(I've got a lot of housework to-do) I me	ust write a	ome letters (also).
<u> </u>	J	******	
106.3 / Exe	Now you have to put the words in brack ample: I can never remember his name	ets into the (rememb	e sentences in the correct order. per/never/can).
1	I sugar in my tea (take /	usualiv).	•
2	"Where's Jim?" "Heho	me early".	(does / has / probably)
3	Ann very generous.	(is / alway	(glood) has producty).
4	Ann and Tomin Ma	nchester.	(both / were / born)
5	Tim is a good planist. He	verv w	all. (sing / also/can)
· 6	Our television set do	wn. (often	/ hreaks)
. 7	Wea long time for ti	he bus. (h:	ave / elways / to wait)
8	My sight isn't very good. !	with class	es. (read / can / only)
9	l early tomorrow. (pr	obably / le	aving / will / he)
10	I'm afraid Iable to c	ome to the	party (probably / he / won't)
11	If we hadn't taken the same train, we:		BCh Other (never/met/micht/heve)
			and the terminating intractor.
KEY	/		
106.1 1	right	7	Did you both enjoy the party?
. 2		8	I must also write some letters
3		456.5.4	
4	wrong-We were both astonished		usually take
5	right	2	has probably gone
6	wrong I also went to the bank	3	is always
7	wrong-Tom always has to hurry	.4	were both born,
8			can also sing
9	wrong-i am usually very tired	6	often breaks
1	0 right	7	always have to wait
106.2 1	Have you ever been arrested?	. 8	can only read ("I can read only
2			with glasses" is also possible)
_	Saturdays	9	will probably be leaving
3	· ·	10	probably won't be (or will probably
	in the bath?		not be)
4		11	might never have met
4	evening		<u>-</u>
e			
5			
Ö	l was only joking		•

# BÀI 107: STILL và YET ANY MORE/ANY LONGER/NO LONGER

#### a) Still và yet

Chúng ta dùng still để nói rằng một hành động hoặc một tính hướng nào đó van đang tiếp diễn. Still thường đứng giữa câu cùng với động từ (xem 106b để biết vị trí chính xác):

It's 10 o'clock and Tom is still in bed.

(Bây giờ 10 giờ, vậy mà Tom vẫn còn ngủ).

- "Have you given up smoking?" 'No, I still smoke" ("Anh đã bỏ thuốc chưa?" "Chưa tôi vẫn còn hút").
- Are you still living in the same house or have you moved?
   (Ban van dang sống ở nhà cũ hay đã dọn đi nơi khác rối?)
- When I went to bed, Ann was still working.
   (Đôi khi đi ngủ, Ann vẫn còn đang làm việc).
- Do you still want to go to the party or have you changed your mind?

(Ban vẫn còn muốn đến dự tiệc hay đã đối ý rồi?)

Chúng ta dùng yet để hỏi một sự việc nào đó đã xảy ra chưa, hoặc để nói rằng một sự việc nào đó vẫn chưa xãy ra. Chúng ta dùng yet chủ yếu trong *câu hỏi* và câu *phủ định.* Yet thường đứng *cuối* câu:

I'm hungry. Is dinner ready yet?
 (Tôi đói rồi. Buổi tối đã sắn sàng chưa?)

- Have you finished writing that letter yet?
   (Ban đã viết xong lá thư đó chứa?)
- It's 10 o'clock and Tom hasn't got up yet (hoặc "... isn't up yet")
   (Đã 10 giờ rồi mà Tom vẫn chưa thức dây)
- We don't know where we're going for our holidays yet.
   (Chúng tôi vẫn chưa biết sẽ đi nghỉ ở đầu).

Chúng la thường dùng yet với từ present perfect ("Have you finished writing that letter yet?") Xem thêm bài 15b.

Bảy giờ hãy so sánh still và yet trong các câu sau đây:

- Jack lost his job a year ago and he is still unemployed.
   (Jack mất việc cách đây một năm và bây giờ anh ta vẫn thất nghiệp)
- Jack fost his job a year ago and hasn't found another job yet."
- (Jack mất việc cách đây một năm và vẫn chưa tìm được việc làm khác)
- Is It still raining?

(Trời vẫn còn mưa phải không?)

 Has it stopped raining yet? (Trôi đã tạnh mưa chưa?)

Still cũng có thể được dùng trong câu phủ định:

He said he would be here an hour ago and he still hasn't come.

(Anh ta nói là sẽ có ở đây cách đây một giờ, vậy mà hiện giờ anh ta vẫn chưa đến)

Câu trên có cùng ý nghĩa với câu "he hasn't come yet". Nhưng still... not biểu lộ sự ngạc nhiên hay nôn nóng mạnh hơn. Hãy so sánh:

- She hasn't written to me yet (but I expect she will write soon).
   (Cô ta chưa viết thư cho tôi). (nhưng tôi mong cô ta sẽ sôm viết thư cho tôi).
- She still hasn't written to me. (she should have written before now).

  (Cô ta vẫn chưa viết thư cho tôi.) (đáng lẽ cô ta phải viết rối).
- b) Chúng ta dùng not... any more, not... any ionger và no longer để nói rằng một tình hướng nào đó đã thay đổi.

Any more và any longer đứng ở cuối câu:

- Mr Dawis doesn't work here any more (hoặc any longer). He left about six months ago.
  - (Ông Davis không còn làm việc ở đây nữa. Ông ta đã thôi việc cách đây 6 tháng).
- We were good friends once but we aren't friends any more (hoặc any longer).
   (Trước kia chúng tôi là bạn thân nhưng bây giờ chúng tôi không còn là bạn nữa).

No longer đứng ở giữa câu (xem bài 106b):

- We are no longer friends.
   (Chúng tôi không còn là bạn của nhau nữa)
- She no longer loves him.
   (Cô ta không còn yêu anh ta nữa).

Chúng ta thường không dùng nơ more theo cách này:

he was living in Harrow Road

He is no longer a student. (không nói "He is no more a student.")
(Anh ta không còn là sinh viên nữa.)

# **UNIT 107: Exercises**

107.1 In this exercise you have to ask some questions about a friend, Dave. You haven't seen Dave for a very long time. When you last saw him:

he had a beard

	2	ne was single	5	he wanted to be a politician
	3	he was working in a factory	6	he smoked a lot
· Y	ou meet			Ask questions about Dave using still.
	. 1	Is he still living in Harrow Road?	4	
	2	single	5	
•	3		6	
1 2 3	Goerg The co			• • •
_				,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
. 4				
5				
6	We're	still waiting for him to reply to our	iett	er (replied)
7	l'm sti	II thinking about what colour to pai	int t	ne wall (decided)

107.3	In this exercise you have to use still and not any more.
	ample: Tom used to play tennis and football (still/tennis but).
٠.	He still plays tennis but he doesn't play football any more.
1	Jack used to have long hair and a beard (still/long hair but).  Hebut
2	She was in hospital and she was on the danger list (still/hospital but_)
3	She used to believe in God and go to church on Sündays (still/God but).
4	I was feeling tired and sick (still/tired but).
<sup>*</sup> 5	He was a good player and he was the best in the team (still/good player but).
. 6	I used to like George and Ken (still/George but).  Now use no longer instead of not any more in sentences 1-4.
7	(1) He no longer has a beard. 8 (2)
. 9	(3) She

### **KEY**

- 107.1 2 "Is he still single?...
  - 3 Is he still working in a factory?
  - 4 Has he still got a beard? (or Does he still have a beard?)
  - 5 Does he still want to be a politician?
  - 6 Does he still smoke a lot?
- 107.2 1 He hasn't gone yet.
  - 2 It hasn't finished yet.
  - 3 They haven't woken up yet.
  - 4 She hasn't come back yet (or She isn't back yet).
  - 5 He hasn't gone to bed yet.
  - 6 He hasn't replied to our letter yet.
  - 7 I haven't decided what colour to paint the wall yet (or I haven't yet decided what colour...).
- 107.3 1 He has still got long hair (or He still has long hair) but he hasn't got a beard any more (or he doesn't have a beard any more).

- She is still in hospital but she isn't on the danger list any more.
- 3 She still believes in God but she doesn't go to church on
- Sundays any more.
- 4 I'm still feeling tired (or I still feel tired) but I'm not feeling sick any more (or I don't feel sick any more).
- 5 He is still a good player but he isn't the best in the team any more.
- 6 I still like George but I don't like Ken any more.
- 8 She is no longer on the danger list.
- 9 She no longer goes to church on Sundays.
- 10 I'm no longer feeling sick (or I no longer feel sick).

# BÀI 108:

## **QUITE và RATHER**

- a) Quite: không bằng "very" nhưng nhiều hơn (hoặc lớn hơn) "a little":
  - I'm surprised you haven't heard of him. He's quite famous. (=less than very famous but more than a little famous).

(Tôi ngạc nhiên là bạn chưa nghe gì về ông ta. Ông ta khá nổi tiếng).

- It's quite cold. You'd better wear your coat.
  - (Trời khá lạnh. Bạn nên mặt áo khoác).
- Tom lives quite near me, so we see each other quite often.

  (Tom sống khá gắn chổ tôi, vì vậy chúng tôi gặp nhau khá thường xuyên)
- Quite đứng trước a / an:

quite a nice day quite an old house

quite a long way

Chúng ta cũng dùng quite với một số động từ, đặc biệt là like và enjoy:

I quite like tennis but it's not my favourite sport.

(Tôi khá thích quần vợt nhưng nó không phải môn thể thao tôi ưa thích).

Quite còn có một nghĩa khác, xem ở phần c.

- b) Rather mang ý nghĩa tương tự như quíte nhưng chúng ta dùng rather chủ yếu với những từ và những ý phủ định:
  - It's rather cold, so you'd better wear your coat.
     (Trời khá lạnh, vì vậy bạn nên mặt áo khoác vào)
  - "What was the examination like?" "Rather difficult, I'm afraid" ("Kỳ thi thể nào?" "Khá khó, tôi e rằng thế").
  - Let's get a taxi. It's rather a long way to walk.
     (Chúng ta hày đi taxi. Nếu không ta phải đi bộ một quảng khá xa đấy).

Quite cũng có thể được dùng trong các câu trên.

Chúng ta thường dùng quitê với ý nghĩa *tích cực* (positive) và rather với ý nghĩa *phủ định* (tiêu cực) (negative):

She is quite intelligent but rather lazy.
 (Cô ta khá thông minh nhưng hơi lười).

Khi chúng ta dùng rather với những từ tích cực (nice / interesting...), nó sẽ có nghĩa là ""khác thường", "bất ngờ ".Thí dụ:

Rather nice = tốt / tử tế không ngờ.

- These oranges are rather nice. Where did you get them?
  - · (Mấy quả cam này ngọn quá. Bạn mua chúng ở đầu thế?)
- Ann didn't like the book but I thought it was rather interesting. (=more interesting than expected).

(Ann không thích quyển sách đó nhưng tôi nghĩ nó khá hay).

Rather có thể đi trước hay sau a / an:

a rather interesting book, hoặc: rather an interesting book.

- c) Quite còn có thể mang nghĩa "hoàn toàn". Thí dụ:
  - "Are you sure?" "Yes, quite sure" (=completely sure).
    ("Ban chác thể chữ?" "Vâng, chắc trăm phần trăm").

		,				
C	luite mang i	nghĩa " <i>hoài</i>	<i>toàn</i> " kh	i đi với một tính từ,	đặc biệt là:	•
	SUFE	right	true	unnecessary	different	amazing
	certain	wrong	safe	extraordinary	impossible	amazed
•	She was	quite differe	ent from w	hat I expected (=c	ompletely different	
	(Cô ta ho	àn toàn kh.	ác với nhi	Ing gì tôi nghĩ).		
-	Everythin	g they said	was quit	e <i>true</i> (=complete t	rue).	•
	(Mọi điều	họ nói để:	i hoàn toá	tn đúng).		
. C	húng ta cũr	ng dùng qu	ite (hoàn	toàn) với một số độ	ona từ:	
-	quite ag	ree with you	u (≕Î com;	pletely agree).	_	
	(Tôi hoạn	toàn đồng	ý với bạn	1)		
-	They hav	en't <i>quite fi</i>	nished the	elr dinner yet.		
		ăn xong bi		•		
· -	l don't <i>qu</i>	ite understa	ind what y	ou mean.		
	(Tôi hoàn	toàn khôn	g hi <b>ể</b> u ani	h ta muốn nói gì).	-	
1 48 1	ISE 400	_				* .
UN	IT 108	: Exer	cises			
			<del></del> .	<u> </u>		4
108.1	Re-write the	ese senten	ces to incl	lude quite.		No.
E:		ney like in a			•	
		ney like in c			2.5	
1	Tom's got	t a good vo	lce		*************************	
2	They bou	ght an expe	ensive car	mera		***************************************
3	it was a n	ice day	·····	***************************************		
4	we nad to	walk a lon	ig way		***************************************	
. 5	It was a ir	ightening e	xperience	<b></b>	***************************************	
6 7	I nere was	s a strong v	vind		***************************************	
8	You've ma	ade a lot of	mistakes			
	ve nad a	tiring day		•		
108.2	Complete t	hese senter	nces usino	g the words in brac	keta Fach time us	o quite with the
	positive wor	d and rathe	or with the	negative word.		a drine wini nia
	<i>(ample:</i> Ca	arol is <u>quite</u>	intelligen	t but <u>rather lazy.</u> (ir	ntelligent/lazv)	
1.	The weath	ner is		but		/arm/windy)
.2	JHI'S HAT IS	,,,,,,,		.but		lean/untidu/
3	i ne water	in the pool	was	but		warm/dirh/\
4	THE CONCE	∍π was		but		(good/long)
5	ine tilm w	/as		but	exciting	(friabtening)
6	Trie car go	œs		but it's		(wall/noieu)
7	He IS			but he's	(a hard w	(orker/slow)
8	Jim lives	**************	ا ۔۔۔۔۔ ا	me but it'sto (	get to his house (ne	ear/difficult).
۵	Lom's plac			E		•

Tom's plan was... (interesting/complicated).

108.3 Co differen	emplete these sentences using quite want amazing impossible		the fol afe	lowing sure	words: unnecessary	y <b>X</b> (e
	Ve didn't believe them at first, but the	•	-		• • •	
2 Y	ou needn't have done that. It was					
	m afraid I can'd do what you ask. It's					
	couldn't agree with you more, You al	re				
	ou can't compare the two things. The					
	think I saw him go out but I'm not					
	couldn't believe what had happened					
	•					
	•		-		- ·	
KEY				•	•	•
					- 2	<del></del> -
108.1 1	Tom's got quite a good voice.	8	diffic		ne but it's rather	
2	They bought quite an expensive	9			sting-but rather	
٠.	camera.			plicated		
3 4	It was quite a nice day.  We had to walk quite a long way.	10		-	-paid job but it's r	ather
5	It was quite a frightening			work	, mar jan on i i	
3	experience.	11			d with the hotel	but
6	There was quite a strong wind.		•	•	her disappointed	
7	You've made quite a lot of					
	mistakes.	108.3 2		unnec	-	
8	I've had quite a tiring day.	3	•	impos	SIDIE	
108.2 1	quite warm but rather windy.	. 4 	•	right safe		
2	quite clean but rather untidy	5 6	•	s sale e differe	ant .	
3	quite warm but rather dirty	7	•	e sure		
´ 4	quite good but rather long	. 8	-	e amazi	Ína	
5	quite exciting but rather	·	40.00	- 40111146		٠ -
٠.	frightening					
6	quite well but it's rather noisy					
7	quite a hard wroker but he's rather	•				

slow

# BÀI 109 ALTHOUGH / THOUGH / EVEN THOUGH IN SPITE OF / DESPITE

#### a) Hāy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau:



Năm ngoài Jack và Jili nghỉ mát bên bờ biển. Trời mưa nhiều nhưng họ vẫn vui thích. Bạn có thể nói:

Although it rained a lot, they enjoyed themselves. (= It rain a lot but they enjoy themselves)

(Mặc dù trởi mưa nhiều, họ vẫn vui thích). hoặc: Inspite of the rain, they enjoyed Despite themselves.

(Bắt chấp trời mưa, họ vẫn vui thích).

- , b) Sau aithough chúng ta dùng chủ từ + động từ:
  - Although she smokes 40 cigarettes a day, she is quite fit.
     (Dù hút 40 điểu thuốc mỗi ngày, bà ta vẫn hoàn toàn khỏe mạnh).
  - Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
     (Mặc dù trời mưa nhiều, chúng tôi vẫn nghỉ mát vui vẻ).
  - I didn't get the job although I had all the necessary qualifications.
     (Tôi không nhận được công việc đó mặc dù tôi có tất cả những bằng cấp cần thiết).

Sau in spite of (hoặc despite) chúng ta dùng một danh từ, một đại từ (this/that/what v.v...) hoặc động từ -ing:

- In spite of the rain, we enjoyed our holiday.
   (Mặc dù trời mưa, chúng tôi văn nghỉ mát vui vẻ).
- 1 didn't get the job cespite my qualifications.
   (Tôi không nhận được công việc đó mặc dù có đủ bằng cấp).
- She wasn't well, but in spite of this she went to work.
   (Cô ta không được khỏe, mặc dù vậy cô ta vẫn đi làm).
- Despite what I said last night, I still love you.
   (Dù tối qua anh có nói gì đi nữa, anh vẫn yêu em).
- I'm not tired in spite of working hard all day.
   (Tôi không thấy mệt mặc dù đã làm việc vất và suốt ngày).

Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng ta nói "in spite of" nhưng nói "despite" (không có giới từ of): Bạn cũng có thể nói in spite of/despite the fact (that)...

- In spite of the fact (that) I was tired, I couldn't sleep.
   (Mặc dù một mỗi, tôi vẫn không ngủ được).
- She's quite fit despite the fact (that) she smokes 40 cigarettes a day.
   (Bà ta vẫn hoàn toàn khỏe mạnh mặc dù hút 40 điểu thuốc mỗi ngày).

#### Hảy so sánh although và in spite of/despite:

- Although the traffic was bad, I arrive on time.
  - In spite of the traffic, I arrived on time.
  - (Dù tình hình giao thông rất tối tệ, tôi vẫn đến đúng giờ).
- I couldn't sleep although I was very tired.
  - I couldn't sleep despite being very tired.
  - (Tôi không ngủ được dù rất mệt).
- c) Đội khi chúng ta dùng though thay cho although:
  - I didn't get the job though I had all the necessary qualifications.
     (Tôi không nhận được công việc đó mặc dù tôi có tất cả những bằng cấp cần thiết).

Trong văn nói tiếng Anh (spoken English), chúng ta thường dúng though ở cuối câu:

- The house isn't very nice. I like the garden though. (= but I like the garden). (Căn nhà không đẹp lầm. Tuy nhiên tôi thích khu vườn).
- I see him every day. I've never spoken to him though. (= but I've never spoken to him).

(Tối gặp anh ta hằng ngày. Tuy vậy tôi chưa bao giờ nói chuyện với anh ta).

#### Even though là hình thức nhấn mạnh của although:

6 Keith decided to give up his job ......

Even though I was really tired, I couldn't sleep.
 (Cho dù tôi thực sự một mỗi, tôi vẫn không ngủ được).

### **UNIT 109: Exercises**

I didn't speak the language

109.1 Complete these sentences. Each time use although + a sentence from the box.

I had never seen him before it was quite cold	we don't like her very much he had promised to be on time
2 Although	onsible job, he isn't particularly well-paid.  I recognised him from a photograph.  ther to the party
109.2 Complete these sentences with	although or ly spite of.
2l had pl 3 t love music	we enjoyed our holiday.  ny careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.  anned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.

he has a very responsible job

109.3 R wa	ead these sentences and then write a ord(s) in brackets in your sentences.	new sentence with the same meaning. Use th
Exa	mple: I couldn't sleep although I was i couldn't sleep despite being	s tired. (despite) tired (or despite the fact (that) I was tired).
1 ,	Although he's got an English name, h	e is in fact German. (despite)
· 2 i	Despite In spite of her injured foot, she manaç	ged to walk to the village. (although)
3 1	decided to accept the job although the	ne salary was low. (in spite of)
4 \	We lost the match although we were t	the better team. (despite)
5 I	In spite of not having eaten for 24 hou	ırs, I didn't feel hungry. (even though)
109.4 No	ow use the words in brackets to make	a sentence with though at the end.
Exar	mple: The house isn't very nice. (like	e/garden) <u>Llike the garden though.</u>
. 1 5	She's very nice. (don't like/husband) I	
2 1	t's quite warm. (a bit windy) It	
3 \	We didn't like the food. (ate) We	**************************************
KEY		
109.1 2	Although I had never seen him	2 Although she had an injured foot, she
٠.	before	managed to walk to the
. 4	although it was quite cold	village./Although her foot was
. 4	although we don't like her very much	injured
5	Although I didn't speak the	3 I decided to accept the job in spite of
_	language	the low salary./, in spite of the salary
6	although he had promised to be	being low./in spite of the fact (that) the salary was low.
·	on time	4 We lost the match despite being the
109.2 1	In spite of (or despite)	better team./ despite the fact (that)
2	Although	we were the better team.
- 3	although	5 Even though I hadn't eaten for 24
4	In spite of (or despite)	hours, I didn't feel hungry.
5	in spite of (or despite)	109.4 1 I don't like her husband though.
6	although	2 It's a bit windy though.
109.3 1	Despite his English name, he is in	3 We ate it though.
	fact German /Despite having an English name/Despite the fact (that) he has	

#### a) Hãy xem thí dụ sau:

không).

Our football team lost yesterday. We all played badly. Bill is our best player but yesterday even Bill played badly.

(Hôm qua đội bóng chúng tôi bị thua. Tất cả chúng tôi đều chơi rất tệ. Bill là cầu thủ giới nhất nhưng hôm qua ngay cả Bill cũng chơi rất tồi).

Chúng ta dùng **even** để nói rằng một việc gi đó là bất thường hoặc đáng ngạc nhiên. Chúng tôi nói "**ngay cả Bill...**" vì anh ta là một cấu thủ giỏi và hiếm khi nào anh ta chơi tối. Nếu anh ta chơi tối, quả thật đó là một ngày đen tối của đội bóng.

These photographs aren't very good. Even I could take better photographs than these. (I'm certainly not a good photographer, so they must be bad). (Những tấm ảnh này không đẹp lắm. Ngay cả tôi cũng có thể chụp những tấm ảnh đẹp hơn những tấm ảnh này.) (chắc chắn tôi không phải là một thợ chụp hình giỏi, vì vậy chúng quả là xấu thật).

 It's a very rich country. Even the poorest people own cars. (so the rich people must be very rich).

(Đó là một quốc gia giàu có. Ngay cả những người nghèo nhất cũng có xe hơi.) (vì vậy những người giàu ắt hắn là rất giàu).

He always wears a coat - even in summer.
 (Anh ta luôn luôn mặc áo khoác - ngay cả vào mùa hè).

- Nobody would lend him the money not even his best friend. (= Een his best friend wouldn't lend him the money).
   (Không ai cho anh ta mượn tiến cả ngay cả người bạn thân nhất của anh ta cũng
- b) Chúng ta rất hay dùng even + động từ ở giữa câu (xem bài 106b để biết vị trí chính xác):
  - Don has travelled all over the world. He has even been to the Antarctic. (It's
    especially unusual to go to the Antarctic, so he must have travelled a lot).
  - (Don đã đi khắp thế giới. Anh ta đã đặt chân đến ngay cả Nam cực.) (Đặt chân đến Nam cực là một điều hết sức đặc biệt, vì vậy ất hẳn anh ta đã đi rất nhiều nơi).
  - He always wears tie. He even wears tie in bed!
    - (Anh ta luôn luôn đeo cả vạt. Anh ta đeo cả vạt ngay cả lúc ngủ!).
  - They are very rich. They even have their own private jet.
    (He rất giàu. Họ có cả máy bay phản lực riêng).

#### Sau đây là một vài ví dụ với not even:

- I can't cook. I can't even boil an egg. (so I certainly can't cook, because boiling an egg is very simple).
  - (Tôi không biết nấu ăn. Ngay cả trừng tôi cũng không biết luộc nữa.) (Vì vậy chắc chấn là tôi không biết nấu ăn, vì luộc trừng là một việc rất đơn giản).

- They weren't very friendly to us. They didn't even say hello. (Họ không thân thiện với chúng tôi lắm. Ngay cả chào hỏi họ cũng không màng
- He's very fit. He's just run five miles and he's not even out of breath. (Anh ta rất khỏe. Anh ta vừa mới chạy năm dặm mà vẫn chưa đứt hơi).
- c) Bạn có thể dùng even với các hình thức so sánh bậc hơn (hotter I more surprised v.v...):
  - it was very hot yesterday but today it's even hotter. (Hôm qua trởi rất nóng nhưng hôm nay trời còn nóng hơn nữa).
  - I got up at six o'clock but Jack got up even earlier. (Tôi dây lúc 6 giờ nhưng Jack dây còn sớm hơn nữa).
  - I knew I didn't have much money but I've got even less than I thought. (Tội biết tội không có nhiều tiền nhưng hóa ra tội có còn ít tiền hơn là tội tưởng).
  - I was surprised to get a letter from her. I was even more surprised when she appeared at my door the next day. (Tôi rất ngạc nhiên khi nhận được thư của cô ta. Nhưng tối lại còn ngạc nhiên hơn nữa khi có ta xuất hiện trước cửa nhà tôi ngày hóm sau).
- d) Ban có thể dùng even với lí, when và though:
  - I'll probably see you tomorrow. But even if I don't, we're sure to see each other before the week-end.
    - (Có thể tôi sẽ gặp bạn vào ngày mai. Nhưng dù nếu tôi không đến, chúng ta chắc chắn sẽ gặp nhau trước ngày nghỉ cuối tuần).
  - He never shouts even when he's angry. (Anh ta không bao giờ là hét ngay cả khi giận dữ).
  - He has bought a car even though he can't drive.

(Anh ta đã mua xe hơi mặc dù anh ta không biết lái xe).

## **UNIT 110: Exercises**

E)	In this exercise you have to complete a consample. A: We lost the match. The whole B; Really? Evan Bill?	team played badly.
1	A: Everyone was on time for work this n	noming.
	B: Really? Sue?	7
· 2	A: Everyone makes mistakes sometime	s.
	B: Really? you?	A: Yes,
3		
	B: Really? the police?	A: Yes,
	A: Nobody knows where Peter has gone	).
	B: Really? Not his wife?	A: No,
5	A: Everybody passed the examination.	
	B: Really? George?	A: Yes,

	Make sentences with even. Use the words in brackets.
Exa	ample: He wears a tie all the time. (in bed) He even wears a tie in bed.
1	They painted the whole room white. (the floor)
	They white.
2	He has to work every day. (on Sundays) He
3	You could heat the noise from a long way away. (front the next street)
4	They have the window open all the time. (when it's freezing)
in . Ex	these sentences you have to use <b>not even</b> . ample: She didn't say anything to me. (hello) She didn't even say hello.
5	I can't remember anything about her. (her name) !
6	There isn't anything in this town. (a clnema) There
· 7:	I haven't eaten anything today. (a piece of bread)
. 8	He didn't tell anyone where he was going. (his wife)
9	I don't know anyone in our street. (the people next door).
<u> </u>	
110.3	Complete these sentences with even + a comparative.
Ex	cample: It was very hot yesterday but today it's even hotter.
1	We found a very cheap hotel but the one Jack found was
2	That's a very good idea, but I've got anone.
3	The shop is always quite crowded but today it's than usual.
4	This church is 500 years old but the house next to it is
5	I did very little work for the examination but you did
•	
KE'	Υ
110.1	1, B: Even Sue?
	A: Yes, even Sue was on time.
	2 B: Even you?
	A: Yes, even I make mistakes sometimes.
	3 B: Even the police?
	A: Yes, even the police are going on strike.
٠	4 B: Not even his wife?
•	A: No, not even his wife knows where he has gone.
	5 B: Even George?
	A: Yes, even George passed (the examination).

- . 110.2 1 They even painted the floor white.
  - 2 He even has to work on Sundays.
  - 3 You could even hear the noise from the next street.
  - 4 They even have the window open when it's freezing. (or They have the window open even when it's freezing).
  - 5 I can't even remember her name.
  - 6 There isn't even a cinema (in this town).
  - 7 I haven't even eaten a piece of bread (today).
  - 8 He didn't even tell his wife (where he was going).
  - 9 I don't even know the people next door.
  - 110.3 1 even cheaper
    - 2 even better
    - even more crowded
    - 4 even older
    - 5 even less

# BÀI 111: Liên từ AS (chỉ lý do và chỉ thời gian) As (chỉ lý do)

- "As I was feeling tired, I went to bed early" As (chỉ thời gian)
- "I watched her as she opened the letter"
- a) As (chỉ lý do):

As thường có nghĩa là "because" (vì, bởi vì);

- As I was feeling tired, I went to bed early. (= because I was feeling tired).
   (VI cảm thấy một tôi đã đi ngủ sớm).
- As they live near us, we see them quite often.
  (VI ho sống gần chỗ chúng tôi, chúng tôi gặp họ khá thường xuyên).
- As tomorrow is a public holiday, all the shops will be shut.
   (Vì ngây mai là lễ, tất cả các cửa tiệm đều sẽ đóng của).
- As we had nothing better to do, we watched television the whole evening.
   (Vì chúng tôi không có việc gì lý thủ hơn để làm chúng tôi đã xem ti-vi suốt buổi tối).

Nhưng chúng ta cũng dùng **as** để nói rằng hai sự việc n<del>à</del>o đó xây ra cùng một lúc. Hãy xem phần kế tiếp.

b) As (chỉ thời gian): -> Hal sự việc xảy ra cùng lúc.

Bạn có thể dùng as khi hai sự việc xảy ra cùng lúc hay cùng trong một khoảng thời gian:

- I watched her as she opened the letter.'
  (Tôi quan sát cô ta khi cô ta mô lá thư).
- As they walked along the street, they looked in the shop windows.
   (Khi họ đi dọc theo con đường, họ nhìn vào các tử kính bày hàng).
- Turn off the light as you go out please.
   (Làm on tất đèn khi ban đi ra ngoài).

Chúng ta thường dùng as khi có hai hành động ngắn ngủi xây ra cùng lúc.

- George arrived as I left. (= he arrived and I left at the same time).
   (George den khi tôi di.) (= anh tá den và tôi di cùng một lúc).
- We all waved goodbye to Tom as he drove away in his car.
  (Tất cả chúng tôi đều vẫy chào tạm biệt Tom khi anh ta lái xe đi).

Ban cũng có thể dùng just as (= ngay khi):

- George arrived just as I left.
   (George den ngay khi tôi ra di).
- Just as I sat down, the phone rang.
   (Ngay khi tôi ngôi xuống thì chuông điện thoại reo).

Chúng ta cũng dùng as khi có hai việc chuyển biến xảy ra trong cùng một khoảng thời gian:

As the day went on, the weather got worse. (Khi ngày trôi qua, thời tiết trở nên tối tệ hơn),

I began to enjoy the job more as I got used to it.

(Tôi bắt đầu thích công việc đó hơn khi tôi đã quen với nó).

- c) As (chỉ thời gian): --> Một việc xảy ra trong khi một sự việc khác đang tiếp diễn: Bạn có thể nói rằng bạn đã làm một việc này trong khi (= as) bạn đang làm một việc khác. Khi chúng ta dùng as theo cách này, thường cả hai hành động đều rất ngắn ngủi.
  - The man slipped as he was getting off the train.
     (Người đàn ông đó đã trượt chân khi đang bước xuống xe lửa).
  - Jill burnt herself as she was taking the cakes out of the oven.
     (Jill đã bị phỏng khi có ta lấy bánh ra khỏi lò).
  - The thief was seen as he was climbing over the wall. (Tên trộm bị phát hiện khi hán đang leo qua tưởng).

Ban cũng có thể dùng just as:

- Just as we were going out, it started to rain.
   (Ngay khi chúng tôi đang đi ra, trời bắt đầu mựa).
- I had to leave just as the conversation was getting interesting.
   (Tôi đã phải đi ngay khi cuộc nói chuyện trở nên lý thú dẫn).

Đối với thì **past continuous** (was getting / were going v.v...) xin xem bài 12. Hảy lưu ý rằng chúng ta chỉ dùng as khi hai hành động xảy ra cùng lúc. Đừng dùng as khi hành động này xảy ra sau hành động kia:

When I got home, I had a bath. (không nói "as I got home")
 (Khi về đến nhà, tôi đi tâm).

## UNIT 111: Exercises

111.1	In this exercise you have to join a sentence from box A with a sentence	from	box 8
	Begin each of your sentences with as (reason)		•

A	tomorrow is a public holiday	В	I walked in	
	there isn't anything to eat in the house	• :	I had to walk home	
	it was a nice day		we came in very quietly	
	we didn't want to wake anyone up		the shops will be shut	
	the door was open	-	let's go out for a meal	
	I didn't have enough money for a taxi		we decided to go for a walk	

t	As tomorrow is a public holiday, the shops will be shut.
	As
3	**************************************
4	***************************************
5	·
_	
3	

111.2	Fron	each pair of sentences make one sentence with as (time).
<i>E.</i> 1	We	e: She opened the letter. I watched her, I watched her as she opened the letter. posed for the photograph. We smiled.
2	He	explained what I had to do. I listened carefully.
3	The	two teams ran onto the pitch. The crowd cheered.
4	She	passed me in the street. She didn't look at me.
		ollowing sentences use just as.
_	ханир	le: I sat down. Just at that moment the phone rang.  The phone rang just as I sat down.
5	We	arrived at the beach, Just at that moment it stafted to rain.
-		tarted
6		gk the photograph. Just at that moment you moved.
fr		e sentences, one thing happens during another.
		le: Jill was taking the cakes out of the oven. She burnt herself.
	·	Jill burnt herself as she was taking the cakes out of the oven.
7		n was climbing out of the window. He fell.
_		n fell
8		were driving along the road. A dog ran out in front of the car.
9		e was getting out of the car. She dropped her bag.
KE	Υ	
411	1 2 6	As there isn't anything to eat in the house, let's go out for a meal.
111.	1 2-0	As it was a nice day, we decided to go for a walk.
•		As we didn't want to wake anyone up, we came in very quietty.
		As the door was open, I walked in,
		As I didn't have enough money for a taxi, I had to walk home.
111.		We smiled as we posed for the photograph.
	. 2	I listened carefully as he explained what I had to do.
1	3 4	The crowd cheered as the two teams ran onto the pitch.  She didn't look at me as she passed me in the street.
	- 5	It started to rain just as we arrived at the beach.
	6	You moved just as I took the photograph.
	7	Tom fell as he was climbing out of the window.
	8	A dog ran out in front of the car as we were driving along the road.
	9	She dropped her bag as she was getting out of the car.

## BÀI 112: LIKE và AS

- a) Like mang nghĩa "similar to, the same as, for example" (tương tự như; chẳng hạn);
  - What a beautiful house! It's like a palace.
    (không nói "as a palace").

    (Mgái phá mái den làm sao! Tráca abu mát.

(Ngôi nhà mới đẹp làm sao! Trông như một dinh thự vậy).

- "What does George do?" "He's a teacher, like me". ("George làm nghế gì?" "Anh ấy là giáo viên như tôi").
- Why do you always talk about boring things like your job?
   (Tai sao anh luôn nói về những điều nhàm chán như việc làm của anh?)
- Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's like walking on ice. (Hāy cẩn thận! Sàn nhà vừa được đánh bóng. Nó trơn như đi trên băng vậy).
- It's raining again. I hate weather like this.
   (Trởi lại mưa. Tôi ghét thời tiết như thế này quá).

Like là một giới từ (preposition). Vì vậy nó được theo sau bởi một danh từ ("like a palace / like your job"), một đại từ ("like me / like this) hoặc -ing ("like walking"). Bạn cũng có thể nói "like (someone / something) -ing".

- "What's that noise?" "It sounds like a baby crying".
   ("Tiếng gì thế?" "Nghe như tiếng con nít khóc ấy").
- b) Chúng ta dùng as (không dùng "like") trước một chủ từ + động từ:
  - Don't move anything. Leave everything as it is.
     (Dừng di chuyển bất cứ vật gì. Hãy để yên mọi thứ tại chỗ).

Hãy so sánh like và as trong hai câu sau:

- You should have done it like this. (like + dai từ)
   (Đáng lẽ anh nên làm như thể này).
- You should have done it as I showed you. (as + chủ từ + động từ).
   (Đáng lẽ anh phải làm như tôi đã chỉ anh).

Nhưng chúng ta dùng such as (= for example) không có động từ:

Some sports, such as motor-racing, can be dangerous.
 (Vài môn thể thao, chẳng hạn như đua xe hơi có thể nguy hiểm).

Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng ta nói as usual:

- You're late as usual.
   (Anh lai đi trễ như mọi khi).
- c) As + chủ từ + động từ có thể có những ý nghĩa khác. Thí dụ:
  - Do as you are told! (= Do what you are told).
     (Häy làm theo những gì anh đã được dặn dò).
  - They did as they promised. (= They did what they promised)
     (Ho đã làm như họ hứa).

Ban cũng có thể nói as you know / as we expected / as i said v.v...:

- As you know, it's Tom's birthday next week. (= you know this already). (Như bạn biết đấy, tuần sau là sinh nhật của Tom).
- Ann failed her driving test, as we expected.
   (Đứng như chúng ta nghĩ, Ann không đầu kỳ thí lấy bằng lái).
- d) As cũng có thể là giới từ (có nghĩa là bạn có thể dùng nó với một danh từ), nhưng khi đó as mang nghĩa khác với like.

Chúng ta dùng like khi chúng ta so sánh các sự việc:

- She looks beautiful like a princess. (she isn't really a princess).

  (Cô ta trông đẹp như một nàng công chúa.) (thực sự cô ấy không phải là công chúa).
- Everyone is ill at home. Our house is like a hospital. (it isn't really a hospital)
   (Mọi người đều bệnh phải nằm bạp ở nhà. Nhà tôi như một bệnh viện ấy.) (thực ra nó không phải là bệnh viện).

Chúng ta dùng as + danh từ để nói rằng một điều gì đó thực sự đã hoặc hiện điển ra (nhất là khi chúng ta nói về nghề nghiệp của ai, hay cách chúng ta sử dụng một thứ gì):

- A few years ago I worked as a bus driver. (I really was a bus driver).
   (Cách đây vài năm tôi làm nghế tài xế xe buýt). (Tôi thực sự đã là một tài xế xe buýt).
- Sue has just found a job as a shop assistant.
   (Sue vừa mới tìm được công việc làm người bán hàng).
- During the war this hotel was used as a hospital (so it really was a hospital) (Trong chiến tranh khách sạn này được dùng làm bệnh viện).
- We haven't got a car, so we use the garage as a workshop.
   (Chúng tôi chưa có xe hơi, vì thể chúng tôi dùng ga-ra làm nhà xưởng).

## **UNIT 112: Exercises**

t/	Complete these sentences with like or as. The sentences in this exercise are like hose in sections a, b and c.
Exa	amples: This house is beautiful. It's <u>like</u> a palace.  Ann failed her driving test <u>as</u> we expected.
1	Do you think Ann looks
2	He really gets on my nerves, I can't stand peoplehim.
3	Why didn't you do it! told you to do it?
. 4	"Where does Bill work?" "He works in a bank, most of his friends".
5	He never listens. Talking to him is talking to a wall.
6	I said yesterday, I'm thinking of going to Canada.
7	Tom's idea seemed a good one, so we did he suggested.
8	It's a difficult problem. I never know what to do in situations this.
9	t'll phone you tomorrow evening usual, okay?
10	This coffee is terrible. It tastes
11	Suddenly there was a terrible noise, it was
12	She's a really good swimmer. She swimsa fish.

-	xamples: She looks beautiful this evening - <u>like</u> a princess.  A few years ago I worked <u>as</u> a bus driver.
ŧ	He's been learning English for a few years but he still speaks a beginner.
2	My feet are really cold. They're blocks of ices
.3	
4	
5	His house is full of lots of interesting things. It's
6	Have you ever workeda labourer on a building site?
7	The news that he was getting married came
8	He's 35 but he sometimes behaves
12.3	In this exercise there are sentences of all types. Put in like or as.
12.3	in this exercise there are sentences of all types. Full if like or as,
`1	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak
1 2 3	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak
1 2	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak
1 2 3	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak
1 2 3 4	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak
1 2 3 4 5	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak
1 2 3 4 5 6	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak

# **KEY**

112.1	1 like	2 like	•
, ·	3 as	4 like	
	5 like	6 As	
	7 as	8 like	
	9 as	10 like	
	11 like	12 like	: "
112.2	1 like	2 like	
	3 as	4 as	
	5 like	6 as	
	7 as	8 like	, .
112.3	1 like		2 as
	3 like		4 as
	5 like		6 as
	7 as		8 as
	9 like (or such		10 as
	· ·		

## AS IF

- a) Bạn có thể dung as if để nói rằng ai đó hay cái gì đó trông như thế nào (look)/nghe có vẻ thế nào (sound)/cảm thấy thế nào (feel) v.v...:
  - The house looked as if nobody was living in it.
     (Căn nhà trông như thể không có người ở vậy).
  - Ann sounds as if she's got a cold, doesn't she?
  - . (Giọng Ann nghe như thể cô ta bị cảm lạnh, phải không?)
  - I've just come back from holiday but I feel tired and depressed. I don't feel as if I've had a holiday.
    - (Tôi vừa đi nghỉ mát về nhưng tôi cảm thấy mệt mỏi và chán năn. Tôi cảm thấy như thể mình chưa đi nghỉ vậy).

#### Hãy so sánh:

- You look tired. (look + tinh từ) (Bạn trông có vẻ mệt mỗi).
  You look as if you haven't slept. (look + as if + chủ từ + động từ)
  (Bạn trông như là đã không ngủ vậy).
- Tom sounded worried. (sound + tính từ). (Giọng Tom có vẻ lo lắng).
  Tom sounded as if he was worried. (sound + as if + chủ từ + động từ).
  (Giọng Tom nghe có vẻ như anh ta đang lo lắng).

#### Bạn có thể dùng as though thay cho as if:

- Ann sounds as though she's got a cold. (Giong Ann nghe như thể cô ta bị cảm lạnh vậy).
- b) Ban cũng có thể nói It looks/sounds/smells as if (hoặc as though):
  - Tom is very late, isn't he? It looks as if he isn't coming.
     (Tom trê lâm rôi, phải không? Có. về như anh ta sẽ không đến).
  - We took an umbrella because it looked as if it was going to rain.
     (Chúng tôi đã mang dù theo vì có vẻ như trời sắp mưa).
  - Do you hear that music next door? It sounds as if they are having a party, doesn't it?
    - (Bạn có nghe thấy tiếng nhạc ở nhà bên cạnh không? Nghe như họ đang có tiệc, phải không?)
  - It smells as though someone has been smoking in here.
    (Co mùi như ai đó hút thuốc trong này).
  - Sau It looks/sounds/smells, ta cung có thể dùng like thay cho as if / as though:
    - It looks like Tom isn't coming.
      (Có vẻ như Tom sẽ không đến).
- c) Bạn cũng có thể dùng as if với những động từ khác để diễn tả ai đó làm một điều gi đó như thể nào:
  - He ran as if he was running for his life.
     (Hån chay như thể gặp nguy hiểm chết người).
  - After the interruption, she carried on talking as if nothing had happened.
     (Sau khi bị ngắt lời, cô ta đã tiếp tục nói như thể chẳng có chuyện gì xảy ra cả).

- When I told them my plan, they looked at me as if I was mad.
   (Khi tôi nói cho họ biết kế hoạch của tôi, họ đã nhìn tôi như thể tôi bị điện vậy).
- d) Sau as if đôi khi chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ (past form) khi chúng ta nói về hiện tại. Thí
  dụ:
  - I don't like Norman. He talks as if he knew everything.
     (Tôi không thích Norman. Anh ta nói cứ như thể anh ta biết hết mọi thứ).

Ý nghĩa của câu trên *không phải* ở quá khứ. Chúng ta dùng hình thức quá khứ ("as if he knew") bởi vì câu này không đúng sự thật (thực sự anh ta không biết hết mọi thứ). Chúng ta cũng dùng thì quá khứ tương tự như vậy trong **câu điều kiện** và sau **wish** (xem bài 37).

Khi dùng thì quá khứ theo cách này, bạn có thể dùng were thay cho was:

- Harry's only 50. Why do you talk about him as if he were (hoặc was) an old man? (Harry chỉ mới có 50 tuổi thôi. Tại sao anh lại nói về ông ta như thể ông ta là một ông già vậy?).
- They treat me as if I were (hoặc was) their own son. (I'm not their son.)
   (Họ đối xử với tôi như thể tôi là con trai của họ vậy.) (Tôi không phải là con trai của họ.)

"he hadn't washed for ages

## **UNIT 113: Exercises**

she had hurt her leg

113.1 Use the sentences in the box to make sentences with as if.

	e was enjoying it u've seen a ghost	she was going to throw it at him they hadn't eaten for a week	he was half-asleep I'm going to be sick
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
1	Tom looks very tired	I. You say to him: You look as if you	need a good rest.
2	When you talked to	Jack on the phone last night, he had	d difficulty speaking. And he
3		xpression on her face during the co	
•			
4	You could smell him	from a long way away. He badly ne	eded a bath.
5	Your friend comes in	nto the room looking absolutely terri matter? You look	fied. His face is white.
6	You've just eaten a	whole box of chocolates. Now you a	re feeling III.
7	When you saw Sue,	she was walking in a strange way.	
8		y hungry and ate their dinner very q	
		r	
9	Ann and Tom were I	having an argument. She was very	angry. Suddenly she picked

you need a good rest

113.2 Now you have to make sentences beginning it looks/sounds as if...

	, ,		
	he isn't going to come we'll have to walk home	you had a good time it's going to rain	there's been an accident they are having an argument
. 1 2 3	The sky is full of black clo	uds You say: Itouting at each other r	s as if he isn't going to come.
4		ome policemen and two	damaged cars at the side of the
5 6	You and your friend have	just missed the last bus I	nome. You say:the interesting things they did on
	holiday. You say		
13,3	These sentences are like th	e ones in section d. Com	olete each sentence.
E.	x <i>ample:</i> Norman doesn't ki	now everything, but he fa	lks as if he knew everything.
2	She doesn't know me, so w	hy did she smile at me	a child.

### **KEY**

- 113.1 2 He sounded as if he was half-asleep.
  - 3 She didn't look as if she was enjoying it.
  - 4 He smelt as if he hadn't washed for ages.
  - 5 You look as if you've seen a ghost.
  - 6 I feel as if I'm going to be sick.
  - 7 She looked as if she had hurt her leg.
  - 8 They are their dinner as if they hadn't eaten for a week.
  - 9 She looked as if she was going to throw it at him.
- 113.2 2 It looks as if it's going to rain.
  - 3 It sounds as if they are having an argument.
  - 4 It looks as if there's been an accident.
  - 5 It looks as if we'll have to walk home.
  - 6 It sounds as if you had a good time.
- 113.3 1 as if I were (or was) a child.
  - 2 as if she knew me.
  - 3 as if he were (or) was my boss.

# BÀI 114: AT / ON / IN (chỉ thời gian)

a) At: Chúng ta dùng at để chỉ thời điểm (point of time):

at 5 o'clock

at 11.45

at midnight

at lunchtime

(vào lúc 5 giờ) (vào lúc 11 giờ 45)

(vào nửa đệm)

(vào lúc ăn trưa)

Tom usually leaves work at five o'clock.

(Tom thường rời sở làm lúc 5 giờ).

Nhưng chúng ta thường bỏ at đi khi chúng ta hỏi (At) what time...?:

What time are you going out this evening? (Tối nay bạn sẽ ra ngoài chơi lúc mấy giờ?).

Chúng ta cũng dùng at trong các thành ngữ sau:

at night

I don't like going out at night.

at the week-end / at week-ends

(Tôi không thích đi chợi vào ban đêm.) Will you be here at the week-end?

at Christmas / at Easter

(Bạn sẽ có ở đây vào cuối tuần chứ?)

(những kỳ nghỉ lễ chính thức) at the moment / at present

We give each other presents at Christmas. (Chúng tối tặng quả nhau nhân dịp lễ Giáng sinh.)

Mr. Benn is busy at the moment / at present. (Hiện giờ ông Benn đang bắn.)

at the same time

Ann and I arrive at the same time. (Ann và tôi đến cùng một lúc.)

at the age of...

Tom left school at the age of 16 / at 16.

(Tom rði ghế nhà trường lúc 16 tuổi.)

b) On: Chúng ta dùng on với ngày (day) và nhật kỳ (date).

on 12 March

on Friday(s)

on Christmas Day (hoặc at Christmas)

They got married on 12 March. (Ho cười nhau vào ngày 12 tháng Ba.)

Chúng ta cũng nói:

on Friday morning(s) on Monday evening(s) on Sunday afternoon(s)

on Saturday night(s) v.v...

- I usually go out on Monday evenings. (Tôi thường đi chợi vào những tối thứ Hai.)
- In: Chúng ta dùng In cho những khoảng thời gian dài hơn (chẳng hạn như nói về tháng, năm, mùa):

in April

in 1968

in (the) winter

in the 18th century

in the 1970s

in the Middle Age

They got married in 1968. (Họ cưới nhau vào năm 1968.)

Chúng ta cũng nói:

in the morning(s) / in the afternoon(s) / in the evening(s)

I'll see you in the morning. (but "I'll see you on Friday morning"). (Tôi sẽ gặp bạn vào buổi sáng.) (nhưng "Tôi sẽ gặp bạn vào sáng thứ Sáu")

- d) Chúng ta không dùng at / on / in trước last và next:

   I'll see you next Friday.

  (Tôi sẽ gặp bạn vào thứ Sáu tới.)

  They gọt married (set March
  - They got married last March to be begin in \$16 to get to get to the well AA to (Ho cuti nhau vào tháng Ba rồi.)

    On the cuti nhau vào tháng Ba rồi.)

    On the cuti nhau vào tháng Ba rồi.)
- e) in + 1/khoảng thời gián = một thời điểm trong tương lại: 1 hai buy 1 diện diện trong
  - The train will be leaving in a few minutes" (= a few minutes from now)

    (Xe lửa sẽ khởi hành trong một vài phút nữa.)

องเมาะพรม อย่า ไม่ และ กระบาย (กาศั

191 Mail Billio yon simility thoughty flot mic."

rafa sharpeso achraires and r

the 15th century

Ban cũng có thể nóis "in six months' time", "in a week's time" v.v... (trong sáu tháng nữa, trong một tuần nữa):

- They are getting married in six months' time.
  - · (Sáu tháng nữa họ sẽ cười nhau.)

Chúng tạ cũng dùng in để chỉ khoảng thời gian cần thiết để làm một việc gì:

James of the late of the late of the late and late and late of the late of the

areas or the line to

the same time

Hearnt te drive in four weeks as a least of the Total of

## UNIT 114: Exercises

114.1 In this exercise you have to complete the sentences. Each time use at, on or in with one of the phrases from the box.

about five minutes.

Saturda		the age of five	21 July 196	9 the moment
1	Columbus discov	ered America in the 15t	n ceņtury.	gegennevalencesMits
2,	The first man land	ded on the moon	- Vingration de la participa	And the section of th
3	In Britain football	matches are usually pla	yed	A Maria Tali ang at a sa
4	You can see the	stars (iii). Held ii (eel de 11	if the s دست	ky is, clear# 5/3 🐰 🦠 🦠
5	In Britain children	have to start school	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
6	Jazz became pop	ular in the United States	5	
7	ista difficult to linta	muhan aveniano ie ene	akina	and the second second

7 It's difficult to listen when everyone is speaking

8 The Russian Revolution took place

114.2 Put in the correct prepositions: at you or in the correct prepositions: at you or in the correct prepositions:

Examples: The concert starts at 7.45. Flearnt to drive in four weeks.

the 1920s

Mozart was born in Salzburg 1756.  Are you doing anything special the week-end? Hurry up! We've got to go five minutes.  The won't seen Arm for a tere days. It last sew free and a labout 10 o'clock, oke I'll phone you the morning about 10 o'clock, oke I'll phone you the morning about 10 o'clock, oke I'll phone you the morning about 10 o'clock, oke I'll phone you the morning about 10 o'clock, oke I'll phone you the morning about 10 o'clock, oke I'll phone you the morning about 10 o'clock, oke I'll phone you phone afternoon instead?  Tom's grandmother died 1977 the ags of 79.  Tom's grandmother died 1977 the ags of 79.  The price of electricity is going up.  Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk in the country.  There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve.  I like walking round the town night. It's always so peaceful.  Do you fancy going to the chrema. New Year's Eve.  I like walking round the town night. It's always so peaceful.  Tom doesn't see his parents very often these days. Usually only Christm and sometimes the summen for a few days.  I'll phone you phone and the domest the summen for a few days.  I'll be been invited to a wedding 14 february half an hou can go marriad 17, which is rather young to get married.  Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax week-end:  It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it a day.  The telephone and the doorbeft rang. The telephone and the doorbeft rang.  The telephone and the doorbeft rang. The telephone and the doorbeft rang.  Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job' two years' time.  KEY	2	l y	vent to bed 📜 👭	t Orloin pluming 1-	Materint	≸C) paigo que ue	ztymprąligo 😋
5 Are you doing anything special the week-end? 6 Hurry up! We've got to go five minutes. 7 10 Playen't seen Ann for a few days. I last sew her had have a found to clock, oks I'll phone you be a few days. I last sew her had have a few days. I'll phone you have a few days. I last sew her had have a few days. I'll phone you have a few days. I last sew her had have a few days. I'll phone you have a few days. I last sew her had have a few days. I'll phone you have a few days. I last sew like a few days. I last sew like walking round the town had a few days. I like walking round the town had sometimes.  18 I've been invited to a wedding the back phone and sometimes. The summer for a few days. I'll young to got married.  19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'll be back phone half an hou go card got married. I which is rather young to got married.  21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax week-end. I was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it a day. Week-end. I was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it a day. The telephone and the doorbelt raing. I want the same time. Week-end. I want the age of five in the 1920s. The telephone and the doorbelt raing. I want the same time. I way years time.  KEY  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1939 114.2 1 on on 12 on 17 at in 17 at in 17 at in 18 in 1917 7 on 1812. 20 yeat of 18 on 1917 9 at the moment. In about five 18 on 1917 19 at the moment. In about five 19 in 1917 19 at the moment. In about five 19 in 1917 19 at the moment. In about five 19 in 19 in 19 in 1917 19 at the moment. In about five 19 in 19 in 19 in 1917 19 at the moment. In about five 19 in 1918 1918 1919 1919 1919 1919 1919 191	3	W	e travelled overnight	to Paris and arriv	ed5 6'c	lock the	moming. 🚡
Playent seen Ann for a few days.   last sew her and last. An about 10 o'clock, oke   I'll phone you	•	M	ozart was born in Sal	zburg		1756.	•
Playent seen Ann for a few days.   last sew her and last. An about 10 o'clock, oke   I'll phone you		Af	e you doing anything	special	tl	he week-end?	O
I liphone you			arry up: tre re got to	4V	IIVE II	mues.	
I liphone you	3.4	oj: H	laven't seen Ann for i	tew days.∦ last:	pew her abada.	ಸಿಎಜ್.ಎ.ಪ <b>್ರಿಲ್ಲ≎sde</b>	<b>y.</b> (2.5)
afternoon instead?  10 Tom's grandmother died	8	1'11	phone you	Tuesday n	nomina	about 10 o'	clock, okay?
afternoon instead?  10 Tom's grandmother died		Ιr	might not be at home	<b>&gt;</b> ar%.D.Wi	the <i>meming</i> C	an you phone:	thethe
11 Jack's brother is an engineer but he's out of work the moment.  12 The price of electricity is going up.  13 Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk in the country.  14 There are usually a lot of parties.  15 I like walking round the town right. It's always so peaceful.  16 Do you fancy going to the chema:  17 Tom doesn't see his parents very often these days usually only Christment and sometimes.  18 I've been invited to a wedding.  19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'l be back grant half an hou carried.  20 Carol got married.  21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax.  22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it.  23 The telephone and the doorbeft rang.  24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal.  25 Mir. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job.  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1969  3 on Saturdays  4 at night  5 at the age of five.  6 in the 1920s  7 at the same time.  8 in 1917  9 at the moment in about five.  8 in 1917  9 at the moment in about five.  10 in at 23 at 15 at 1		aft	temoon instead?	Ben County	this and been	9 m 7 8000	is the company
11 Jack's brother is an engineer but he's out of work the moment.  12 The price of electricity is going up.  13 Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk in the country.  14 There are usually a lot of parties.  15 I like walking round the town right. It's always so peaceful.  16 Do you fancy going to the chema:  17 Tom doesn't see his parents very often these days usually only Christment and sometimes.  18 I've been invited to a wedding.  19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'l be back grant half an hou carried.  20 Carol got married.  21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax.  22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it.  23 The telephone and the doorbeft rang.  24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal.  25 Mir. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job.  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1969  3 on Saturdays  4 at night  5 at the age of five.  6 in the 1920s  7 at the same time.  8 in 1917  9 at the moment in about five.  8 in 1917  9 at the moment in about five.  10 in at 23 at 15 at 1	10	То	m's grandmother die	d .:	. 1977 <u></u>	the age	of 79.
The price of electricity is going up.  Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk in the country.  There are usually a lot of parties.  New Year's Eve.  I like walking round the town	11	Ja	ick's brother is an eng	ineer but he's ou	t of work had no	the r	noment.
Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk in the country.  14 There are usually a lot of parties such as the sum of the country.  15 I like walking round the town night. Its always so peaceful.  16 Do you fancy going to the chrema had sometimes the summer for a few days.  17 Tom doesn't see his parents very often these days usually only Christmand sometimes the summer for a few days.  18 I've been invited to a wedding the same for a few days.  19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'll be back to relax week end.  21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax week end.  22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it aday.  23 The telephone and the doorbelt rang.  24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal.  25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years' time.  KEY  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1969 114.2 1 on, on 14 on 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five 6 in the 1920s 5 at the age of five 6 in 19 in 19 in 19 in 1917 7 on sin 20, gat and 1917 9 at the moment. In about five 9 in, in 22 in 1914 at 23 in 1914 at 24 on 1914 at 25 in 1914 at 25 arithmeters.	12	Th	e price of electricity i	د مناسبان going up	allelinging 🔾	ciober di barrier	W 5 - 5
14 There are usually a lot of parties	13		Sunda	v afternoons l'usi	ally go for a w	tauco-edf ni Ma	W.
15 I like walking round the town	14	Th	ere are usually a lot :	of parties amounts	silê. Bi ker v. r. e	New Year's F	MAR
16 Do you fancy going to the chrema.  17 Tom doesn't see his parents very often these days. Usually only Christm and sometimes  18 I've been invited to a wedding 14 February.  19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'll be back 17 February.  19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'll be back 18 I've been invited to a wedding 17 which is rather young to get married.  21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax week-end.  22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it a day.  23 The telephone and the doorbelt rang.  24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal.  25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job.  KEY  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1939  3 on Saturdays  4 at night 5 at the age of five 6 in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 7 on sild 20 y gated 9 at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 22 in 10 in at 23 at 15 at 24 on 16 in at 23 at 15 at 24 on 17 at 16 on 25 in at 25 in	15	l li	ke walking round the	town	night its	Abresie en neam	ofule.
Tom doesn't see his parents very often these days—usually only—Christm and sometimes—the summer for a few days—18 I've been invited to a wedding—14 February—half an hou 20 Carol got married—17, which is rather young to get married—21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax—week-end—22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it—a day—23 The telephone and the doorbelf rang—24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal—their wedding anniversal 25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job—two years' times—two years' times—15 at at night—5 at the age of five—4 at night—5 at the age of five—5 at the same time—6 in the 1920s—7 at the same time—6 in 19 in—8 in 1917—7 on—sin 20.7 gat cd—9 at the moment—in about five—9 in—in—22 in—minutes—13 Chura was the constraint of the same time—14 and 14 and 15 at 18 and 16 and 19 in—at 23 at 18 and 19 in—at 23 at 18 and 19 in—at 24 and 19 in—at 25 and 19	16	Do	you fancy going to t	ne cinema	sa char h- <b>Frid</b>	ev night?	entre de la companya
and sometimes the summen for a few days.  18 I've been invited to a wedding 14 February.  19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'll be back 17 which is rather young to get married.  20 Carol got married 17 which is rather young to get married.  21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax week-end.  22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it a day.  23 The telephone and the doorbelt rang the same time.  24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal.  25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years' times.  26 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years' times.  27 At a night 3 at in 16 on 17 at in 17 at in 17 at in 18 on 19 in 19 i	17	To	m doesn't see his o	rents very often	these days	ensilve only a 2.	Chrietmae
18 I've been invited to a wedding 19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'll be back. 20 Carol got married. 21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax. 22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it. 23 The telephone and the doorbelt rang. 24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal. 25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job.  KEY  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1969 114.2 1 on. on 14 on 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five. 6 in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 9 at the moment in about five. 8 on at 23 at 15 at 18 on 19 in 19 i		an	d sometimes	the t	mose days - a	w dove	Cantonnas
19 I'm just going out to do some shopping. I'll be back 20 Carol got married 21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax 22 It was quite a short book and easy to read I read it 23 The telephone and the doorbelt rang 24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal 25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1939 114. 2 1 on on 14 on 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five 6 in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 9 at the moment in about five minutes  13 On at 23 at 15 at 16 on 16 in at 23 at 17 at 18 on 17 at the moment in about five 18 on at 23 at 18 on 19 in in 22 in 19 in 24 on 19 on at 25 extra light 20 on 21 July 1939 21 on 25 extra light 21 on 25 extra light 22 on 21 July 1939 23 on 25 extra light 24 on 25 extra light 25 on 25 extra light 26 on 25 extra light 27 on 25 extra light 28 on 25 extra light 29 on 25 ext	18	Pv	e heen invited to a w	adding	ole car 14	Fahriani	No. 1944
20 Carol got married.  21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax week-end.  22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it a day.  23 The telephone and the doorbelt rang.  24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal two years time.  25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years time.  KEY  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1969 114.2 1 on on 14 on 3 on Saturdays 2 at at 15 at 4 at night 5 at the age of five 4 in 16 on 17 at the same time 6 in 19 in 17 at the same time 6 in 19 in 19 in 19 at the moment in about five 8 on at 20 years on 10 in at 23 at 15 at 24 on 10 in at 23 at 15 at 24 on 10 in at 23 at 15 at 24 on 10 in at 25 arguments.	19	Per	o been invited to a w	roms changing 1	u bo book	e <b>comásia</b> : (1777)	rittera Nombre
21 Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax 22 It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it aday. 23 The telephone and the doorbelf rang 24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal 25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years time.  KEY  114. 1 2 on 21 July 1969 114.2 1 on on 14 on 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five 6 in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 9 at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 20 on at the same time 10 in at 23 at 13 on at 14 on 15 on 16 on 16 on 16 on 16 on 16 on 17 on 16 on 17 at 16 on 18 on 19 in 19	20	C-9	rol oot married	some smopping. I	HOE DACK	מינית ברישים מכו	au an nour.
23 The telephone and the doorbell rang 24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal 25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years' time.  KEY  114.1 2 on 21 July 1969 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five 6 in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 9 at the moment in about five minutes  10 in at 23 at 18 on 19 in 22 in 10 in at 23 at 18 on 10 in at 23 at 18 on 10 in at 23 at 18 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 as in all 13 On 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in all 15 on 10 in at 25 as in at 25 as in at 25 as in at 26 on 10 in at 27 as in at 27 as in at 28 as in at 29 as in at 29 as in at 20 as in at	20	4-	anoi gocinianago	raumaraga saranga da da A	wincu is taliner )	konuð to ðet wa	rnea.
23 The telephone and the doorbell rang 24 Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal 25 Mr. Davis is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years time.  KEY  114.1 2 on 21 July 1969 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five 6 in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 9 at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 22 in 13 Quad noor tine 25 or side to select the same time 13 Quad noor tine 25 or side to select the same time 13 Quad noor tine 25 or side to select the same time 13 Quad noor tine 25 or side to select the same time 13 Quad noor tine 25 or side to select the same time 13 Quad noor tine 25 or side to select the same time 13 Quad noor tine 25 or side to select the same time 15 at the same time 16 on 19 in 20 or side to select the same time 10 in at 23 at the same time 10 in at 23 at the same time 13 Quad noor tine core so or the same time.	21	All	in works hard during	ine week, so sne	likes to relax	والأواء المطالك الطولتان المكالد	veek-ends.
Mary and Henry always go out for a meal their wedding anniversal two years time.  KEY  114.1 2 on 21 July 1969 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 9 at the moment in about five minutes  10 in at 23 at 18 on 20 in in 22 in in 22 in in 22 in in 24 on 25 in in 25 at 18 on 26 in in 25 in in 22 in in 24 on 25 in in 26 in in 27 in in 27 in in 27 in in 28 in in 27 in in 28 in in 28 in in 29 in in 27 in in 27 in in 27 in in 28 in in 28 in in 29 in in 29 in in 20 in in 20 in in 20 in in 25 in in 27 in in 28 in in 29 in in 29 in in 20 i	22						
The image of five   114.2   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1		. <u>13 )</u>	was quite a snort boo	k and easy to rea	a. I read it	a (	oay.
The image of five   114.2   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1	23	Th	e telephone and the	k and easy to rea doorbelt rand	de so bi desp	* Moreama	time.
The image of the content of the co	23 24	Th	e telephone and the	k and easy to rea doorbelt rand	de so bi desp	* Moreama	uay. time. unniversary.
The image of the content of the co	23 24 25	Th	e telephone and the	k and easy to rea doorbelt rand	de so bi desp	* Moreama	time. Inniversary.
114.1 2 on 21 July 1969 3 on Saturdays 4 at night 5 at the age of five 6 in the 1920s 7 at the same time 8 in 1917 9 at the moment in about five 9 in in 10 in at 12 in 10 in at 23 at 18 on 29 in in 20 y gat at 18 on 20 y gat at 21 at 22 in 23 in 24 on 25 at 26 on 26 on 27 at the moment in about five 9 in in 22 in 24 on 25 at 25 at 26 on 27 at the moment in about five 9 in in 22 in 23 at 24 on 25 at 25 at 26 on 26 of 27 at the moment in about five 9 in in 22 in 23 at 24 on 25 at 25 at 26 on 26 of 27 at the moment in about five 9 in in 27 at the moment in about five 9 in in 28 on 29 on 20 on	23 24 25	Th	e telephone and the	k and easy to rea doorbelt rand	or established	the same their wedding a two yea	inniversary. Is time:
7 at the same time 6 in 19 in 8 in 1917 7 on slid 20 y gat to 0 slid 21 y at y minutes 9 in in 22 slid in 22 slid in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 sestingly to 0 slid 25 sestingly to 0 sli	24 25	Th Ma Mr	e telephone and the	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	on 60 bit desp	their wedding a two year	inniversary.
7 at the same time 6 in 19 in 8 in 1917 7 on slin 20 y gat the grant of at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 22 in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 are in in 19 in 19 in 20	24 25	Th Ma Mr	e telephone and the	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	on 60 bit desp	their wedding a two year	inniversary.
7 at the same time 6 in 19 in 8 in 1917 7 on slin 20 y gat the grant of at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 22 in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 are in in 19 in 19 in 20	24 25	Th Ma Mr	e telephone and the ary and Henry always Lavis is 63. He'll be	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	or Collings	their wedding a two years to make their wedding a two years to make the two years the two years to make the years to make the years the two years to make the years the year	inniversary.
7 at the same time 6 in 19 in 8 in 1917 7 on slid 20 y gat to 0 slid 21 y at y minutes 9 in in 22 slid in 22 slid in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 sestingly to 0 slid 25 sestingly to 0 sli	24 25 KE	Th Ma Mr	e telephone and the ary and Henry always Lavis is 63. He'll be	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	or Collings	their wedding a two years to make their wedding a two years to make the two years the two years to make the years to make the years the two years to make the years the year	unniversary
7 at the same time 6 in 19 in 8 in 1917 7 on slin 20 y gat the grant of at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 22 in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 are in in 19 in 19 in 20	24 25 KE	Th Ma Mi	e telephone and the ary and Henry always Lavis is 63. He'll be	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	or Collings	their wedding a two years to make their wedding a two years to make the two years the two years to make the years to make the years the two years to make the years the year	inniversary.
7 at the same time 6 in 19 in 8 in 1917 7 on slin 20 y gat the grant of at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 22 in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 are in in 19 in 19 in 20	24 25 KE	7 Mar	e telephone and the ary and Henry always Lavis is 63. He'll be	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	or Collings	their wedding a two years to make their wedding a two years to make the two years the two years to make the years to make the years the two years to make the years the year	inniversary.  rs time:  on  at
7 at the same time 6 in 19 in 8 in 1917 7 on slin 20 y gat the grant of at the moment in about five minutes 9 in in 22 in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 are in in 19 in 19 in 20	24 25 KE	2 3 4	e telephone and the ary and Henry always Lavis is 63. He'll be	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	or Collings	their wedding a two years to make their wedding a two years to make the two years the two years to make the years to make the years the two years to make the years the year	on
8 in 1917 7 on sith 20 y pater 3 9 at the moment in about five serve 8 contract proteod 21 at the minutes 9 in in 22 or in 10 in at 23 at 10 in at 24 on 10 in at 25 or in in in 10 in at 25 or in in in 10 in at 25 or in in 10 in at 25 or in in in 10 in	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5	e telephone and the ary and Henry always Lavis is 63. He'll be	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	or Collings	their wedding a two years to make their wedding a two years to make the two years the two years to make the years to make the years the two years to make the years the year	on at on at in
9 at the moment in about five series 8 contract contract 21 cat contract 22 can be series 10 in in 22 can be series 10 in at 23 at series 10 in at 24 on series 13 contract 25 cas in else cas	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	114.2 1 on 2 al. 3 at 5 at	the same their wedding a two years cooling a cooling a cooling at the cooling at	on at on on at on on
### ##################################	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at right at the age of five in the same time	doorbelt rang go out for a mea retiring from his	114.2 1 on 2 at 3 at 5 at 6 in	their wedding a two years on 14 at 15 in 18	on at on in
10 inat 23 at 24 on state at 24 on another at 25 artifler at 25	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917	doorbelt rang	114.2 1 on. 2 al. 5 at 6 in 7 on	their wedding a two years of the same of t	on at in on in y pat at
はは <b>体化は、 24 on</b> .mali <b>H2</b> rin grittis <b>25</b> .ars <b>in</b> tel / turnog a <b>13</b> .c <b>o</b> nua masa tég ega és re7 。 ないないではよるな mour. vol gaidarwassa 1 addw casissa tel t	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rang	114.2 1 on 3 at 5 at 6 in 7 on 3 at 6 8 on	their wedding a two years coordinates of the same coordinates of two years of the same coordinates of two years of two yea	on at in on in y pat at
براور و و بالمنظم المنظم المن	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rang	114.2 1 on 3 at 5 at 6 in 7 on 9 in.	their wedding a two years of the same of two years of the same of two years of two	inniversary.
To de de apo pat mana na Posta parte.  Cha ila mont parte parte de la compansión de la comp	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rang	114.2 1 on 2 at 6 in 7 on 9 in. 10 in.	the same their wedding a two years coordinates of the same coordinates of the	on at in on in y patied of at in at
ರ್ಷ- ೧೯೮೮ assess white twas warding id	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rang	114.2 1 on 3 at 5 at 6 in 7 on 9 in 10 in 115 at 6 at	the same two years two years are two years a	on at in on at on
The second white two wardings of the control of the second white two wardings will be second or the second of the second or the second of the	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rang. go out for a mea retiring from his	114.2 1 on 2 al. 1 on 3 al. 1 on	their wedding a two years of the same of two years of the same of two years of two	inniversary.
tiet assect white I was warehing let a con-	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rang. go out for a mea retiring from his	114.2 1 on 2 al. 1 on 3 al. 1 on	their wedding a two years of the same of two years of the same of two years of two	inniversary.
	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rand measurement of the country of the cou	114.2 1 on. 114.2 1 on. 12.3 al. 5 at 6 on. 9 in. 10 in. 10 in.	their wedding a two years of the same of two years of the same of two years of two	inniversary.
	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rand measurement of the country of the cou	114.2 1 on. 114.2 1 on. 12.3 al. 5 at 6 on. 9 in. 10 in. 10 in.	their wedding a two years of the same of two years of the same of two years of two	inniversary.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	doorbelt rang. go out for a mea retiring from his	114.2 1 on 2 all 1	their wedding a two years to see their wedding a two years of the see	inniversary.
	24 25 KE	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	on 21 July 1969 on Saturdays at hight at the age of five in the 1920s at the same time in 1917 at the moment in	about for a mea retiring from His and the case the state of the and the state of the case the state of the case	114.2 1 on 2 al. 10 in . 10 in	the same their wedding a two years coordinates of the same coordinates of the	inniversary.

# BÀI 115: FOR, DURING và WHILE

#### a) For và during:

Chúng ta dùng for + một khoảng thời gian để nói rằng một sự nào đó diễn ra trong bao lâu:

for six years

for two hours

for a week

(trong 6 năm

. (trong hai gið)

(trong một tuần)

- I've live in this house for six months.

(Tôi đã sống trong căn nhà này được 6 tháng rồi).

- We watched television for two hours last night.
   (Tối hôm qua chúng tôi đã xem ti-vi trong hai giờ).
- Ann is going away for a week in September.
   (Ann se váng nhà một tuần trong tháng Chín).
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for ages.
   (Ban đã ở đầu thế? Tôi đã chờ bạn lâu lầm rồi).
- Are you going away for the week-end?
   (Cuối tuần này bạn sẽ vắng nhà phải không?)

Bạn không thể dùng during trong trường hợp này;

- It rained for three days without stopping. (không nói "during three days")
(Trời đã mưa không ngới trong ba ngày.)

Chúng ta dùng during + danh từ để chỉ lúc nào sự việc xảy ra (không phải "trong bao làu"):

during the film (trong buổi chiếu phim) during our holiday (trong kỳ nghĩ của chúng tôi) during the night (trong dêm)

1 fell asleep during the film.
 (Tôi đã ngủ gật trong buổi chiếu phim.)

We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.
 (Chúng tôi đã gặp nhiều người rất thú vị trong kỳ nghĩ của chúng tôi).

The ground is wet. It must have rained during the night. (Mặt đất ẩm ướt. Chắc hẳn trong đếm trời đã mưa).

I'll phone you sometime during the afternoon.
 (Tôi sẽ gọi điện thoại cho bạn vào một lúc nào đó trong buổi chiều nay).

#### b) During va while:

Chúng ta dùng during + danh tử; while + chủ từ + động tử. Hãy so sánh:

Danh từ

l fell asleep during the film. (Tôi đã ngủ gật trong buổi chiếu phim.)

Chủ từ + Đông từ

1 fell asleep while

! was watching television.

(Tôi đã ngủ gặt trong khi đang xem ti-vi.)

Hãy so sánh during và while trong các thí du sau:

- We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.
   (Chúng tôi đã gặp nhiều người thú vị trong kỳ nghỉ của chúng tôi).
- We met a lot of interesting people while we were on holiday.
   (Chúng tôi đã gặp nhiều người thú vị trong khi chúng tôi đi nghì).
- Robert suddenly began to feel ill during the examination. (Robert dot nhiên cầm thấy khó chiu trong kỳ thí).
- Robert suddenly began to feel III while he was doing the examination, (Robert dot nhiên câm thấy khó chịu trong khi đang làm bài thi).

#### Sau đây là một số thí dụ khác về while:

- We saw Ann while we were waiting for the bus.
   (Chúng tôi đã gặp Ann khi chúng tôi đang chở xe buýt).
- While you were out, there was a phone call you.
   (Trong khi ban vang mat, có một củ điện thoại gọi cho bạn đẩy).
- Tom read a book while I watched television.
   (Tom đã đọc sách trong khi tôi xem ti-vi).

#### Sau while ban phải dùng thì hiện tại (không dùng will) để nói về tương lai:

- I'm going to London next week. I hope to see Tom while I'm there.
   (Tuần tởi tới sẽ đi Luân Đôn. Tôi hy vọng sẽ gặp Tom khi tôi ở đó).
- What are you going to do while you are waiting?
   (Ban se lam gl trong khi chở đợi?)

Xem thêm bài 9a.

Về while ling, xem bài 67b. Về for và since, xem bài 19b.

## UNIT 115: Exercises

115.1 In this exercise you have to put in for or during.

Examples: It rained for three days without stopping.

I fell asleep during the film.

- 1 I waited for you ......... half an hour and then decided that you weren't coming.
- 2 He hasn't lived in Britain all his life. He lived in India ..... four years.
- 3 Production at the factory was seriously affected ...................... the strike,
- 4 I felt really ill last week. I couldn't eat anything ...... three days.
- 5 When we were at the theatre last night, we met Ann ..... the interval.
- 6 Sue was very angry after our argument. She didn't speak to me \_\_\_\_\_ a week.
- 7 We usually go out at week-ends, but we don't often go out ...... the week.
- 8 Jack started a new job a few weeks ago. Before that he was out of work ....... six months.

#### 115.2 This time you have to put in while or during.

Examples: We met a lot of people while we were on holiday.

We met a lot of people during our holiday.

- 1 I met Tom ...... I was waiting for the bus.
- 2 ...... we were in Paris, we stayed at a very comfortable hotel.

3	our stay in Paris, we visited a lot of museums and galleries	
	hone rang three times we were having dinner last night	
5   ha	been away tor many years community that time, many things had changed.	
	did she say shout me was saud was not st the room?	
	ead a lot of books and imagazines and imagazines was the was the was the	
	out for dinner tast night. Unfortunately Foegan to feel illeable. Health meal	
	interesting suggestions were made on the meeting of	
	# Odn timerrupt inervis sow and all with apackings of vinebous hodos.	
	were many inferruptions in 1901 1902 2008 the Prime Willister's speech.	
	·	
12 Car	ou lay the tabledigel/the dimner ready? ićm a vżh ved	
	Vielsew Applikhele we waiting for the bus.	
	e your own ideas, to complete, these, sentences, and can ab tot general:	
Examp	: I fell asleep while I was reading the newspaper.	
	I didn't sleep very well: I kept waking up during the hight.	
	୯୯୯ ଓଡ଼ିଶା ଓ ଉତ୍ତର ଜଣନ୍ତି । ଅଧ୍ୟକ୍ତ ହୋଇଥିବା	
	sleep during	
	ghts gydderily went put while passaus agrasia ar gaes isair, aae al afut west	
3 Ihu	<b>my ада while</b> хийн найт ава от арод і тэвом <del>Бальновачьі от днюрни</del> і — —	
4 The		
	ou wait here while Spoiliaw.co.c.us.asaba.asab.asab.asab.asab.asab.asab.	
	ed a lot duringgi. icog kt. ctts office	
7 I fe	of my chair duringது. அருக்கு அ	
8 Its	ted to rain while an real mean wants ray for or or or and same anner anner and	
9 She	urnt herself while	
	NIT 115: Exercises	i
	8.5 In this exercise you have to gut in for an durthig.	
KEY	Syamples of rained for three days without studence.	
	i resignation during (ne idm	
115.1 1		
	Transwitter Transport traff by a 20 The lights suddenly went out while will be a suddenly went out while will be a suddenly went out while will be a suddenly went out while went out while will be a suddenly went out while we went out while we went out while we were well as well as well as well as we were well as w	e
	r 1 tell asteep curing the party.  A for a party of the lights suddenly went out while we pring the party.  Iting 4 for a party of the lights suddenly went out while were having dinner.  Iting 6 for a party of the party of the party.  Iting 6 for a party of the party of the party.	
137	uring 8 for an inverse 13   hurt my arm while I was playing ten	nie
. %	gnufydeithe fferhiodd gewyddiaeth geled bered during the	
11 <b>6,2</b> 6:1		,
Noew 🐧		
- ∘98W, <b>5</b> ∜		
92 <b>.7</b> :		
9	uring 10 while 6 It rained a lot during the night.ca	
-	wing 12 while 7 I fall off my chair during the interview	e oren
4450 44-	N.Z. 1815 1877 Rot 1298 to 511 81 WHILE COUNTY	i i
112.3 11 1	sible, check your answers 8 It started to fain while we were waitin	y
wit	tompone who enable Enables by Edition the Bills of a 1916 984 Continued	
wit He	ore some example are wards and call of the bus.	
wit He	are some examples we stayed the first work and the some some some some some some some som	

# It's not worth going shopping now **JIT/IV AVAIL** Shut. (= they will be shut between now.a **MIT** a **MIT** a **MIT** a **MIT** a **BIT** a **MIT** a

- a) By (+ thời điểm) = không trễ hơn:
- I posted the letter today, so they should receive it by Monday. So should be converted to the letter today, on Monday at the latest) which is the latest (Hôm nay tôi bỏ thư rồi, vì vậy họ sẽ nhận được thư vào khoảng thứ Hai.) (= vào hoặc trước thứ Hai, trễ nhất là thứ Hai)
- We'd better hurry. We have to be at home by 5 o'clock.

  (= at or before 5 o'clock, at 5 o'clock at the latest)

  (Chúng ta nên khẩn trương lên. Chúng ta phải có mặt ở nhà khoảng 5 giờ.)

  (= vào hoặc trước 5 giờ, trễ nhất là 5 giờ)
- Where's Ann? She should be here by now. The should be here by now. The should be here by now. The should have already arrived) and the should have already arrived) and the should have already arrived) and the should have already arrived (Ann đâu rồi? Giờ này đáng lẽ cô ta phải có mặt rồi chứ.) and the should have already arrived (Ann đâu rồi? Giờ này hoặc sớm hơn, vì vậy đáng lẽ cô ta đã đến rồi) một such học sốm hơn, vì vậy đáng lẽ cô ta đã đến rồi) một such học sốm hơn.

Bạn không thể dùng until với nghĩa này:

- Tell me by Friday whether or not you can come to the party. Who loss as the same to the party. The last the same to the same the same to t
  - Chúng ta dùng until (hoặc till) để nói một sự việc nào đó tiếp diễn trong bao lâu:
     "Shall we go now?" "No, let's wait until (hoặc till) it stops raining".

hệt khách khứa đã ra vệ.)

- ("Bây giở chúng ta đi chứ?" "Không, hãy chở cho đến khi trởi tạnh mưa đã".) I was tired this morning, so I stayed in bed until half past ten.
- (Sáng nay tôi thấy mệt, vì vậy tôi đã nằm lì trên giường đến 10 giờ rưởi).

Hãy so sánh until và by trong những câu sau đây:

- Tom will be away until Monday. (so he'll come back on Monday.)

  (Tom sẽ vằng nhà cho đến thứ Hai.) (anh ta sẽ về vào thứ Hai.)
- Tom will be back by Monday.

  (= he'll be back on or before Monday, on Monday at the latest)

  (Tom sẽ về vào khoảng thứ Hai.)

  (= anh ta sẽ về vào hoặc trước thứ Hai, trễ nhất là thứ Hai)
- l'II be working until 11 o'clock (so l'II stop working at 11 o'clock) name a stati 1.2 l'II be working until 11 o'clock (so l'II stop working at 11 o'clock) name a stati 1.2 l'II be working until 11 o'clock (so l'II stop working at 11 o'clock) name a stati 1 o'clock) name a stati 1 o'clock) name a stati 1 o'clock (so l'II stop working at 11 o'clock) name a stati 1
- I'll have finished my work by 11 o'clock.

  (= I'll finish my work at or before 11 o'clock, at 11 o'clock at the latest) and I let (Tôi sẽ hoàn tất công việc vào khoảng 11 giờ.)

  (= Tôi sẽ hoàn tất công việc vào hoặc trước 11 giờ, trễ nhất là 11 giờ).
- Ban cũng có thể nói by the time (something happens...) Hãy xem xét kỹ những thí dụ sau:

- It's not worth going shopping now. By the time we get to the shops, they will be shut.
  - (= they will be shut between now and the time we gat there).
  - (Không ích gì khi bây giờ đi mua sắm. Vào lúc chúng ta đến cửa hàng thì chúng đã đóng cửa mất rồi.)
  - (= chúng sẽ đóng cửa trong khoảng từ bảy giờ cho đến khi chúng ta đến đó)
- (from a letter) I'm flying to the United States this evening. So by the time you receive this letter, I'll probably be in New York. (= I will arrive in New York between now and the time you received this letter.)
  - (Từ một lá thư). Tối nay tôi sẽ bay sang Mỹ: Vì vậy vào lúc bạn nhận được lá thư này, có lẽ tối đã đến New York rỗi.
  - (= tối sẽ đến New York trong khoảng từ bây giờ cho đến lúc bạn nhận được lá thư này.)

#### Khi bạn nói về quá khứ, bạn có thể dùng By the time (something happened)...

- Tom's car broke down on the way to the party last night. By the time he arrived, most of the guests had left.
  - (Xe hơi của Tom bị hư trên đường đến dự tiệc tối qua. Vào lúc anh ta đến nơi, hầu hết khách khứa đã ra về.)
- I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. By the time I finished, I was very tired.
   (Tối hôm qua tôi có nhiều việc phải làm. Vào lúc xong việc, tôi cảm thấy rất mệt mỏi).
- It took them a long time to find a place to park their car. By the time they got to the
  theatre, the play had already started.
   (Ho đã mất nhiều thời gian tìm chỗ đậu xe. Đến lúc họ đến được rạp hát thì vở kịch
  đã bắt đầu rồi.)

### Ban cũng có thể dùng by then hoặc by that time:

- Tom finally arrived at the party at midnight. But by then (hoặc by that time), most of the guests had left.
  - (Cuối cùng Tom cũng đến dự tiệc vào lúc nửa đềm. Nhưng lúc đó hấu hết khách đã ra về.)

## UNIT 116: Exercises

## 

16.2 In this exercise you have to put in by or Examples: Tom has gone away. He'll be a	away <u>until</u> Monday.`	1
Sorry, but I must go. I have to	be at home by 5 o'clock.	
1 I've been offered a job. I haven't decid		it
or not. I have to decide		doninina
3 A: I hear you're writing a book. Have		Jecision.
B: Not quite, but I hope to finish it	-, -	month
4 A: I'm going out now. I'll be back at 4		
B: I don't think so. I'll probably have g		
5 I'm moving into my new flat next w		
C. A. Da var thirt III still he manatave	al this time next user?	-
6 A: Do you think I'll still be unemploye B: No, of course not. I'm sure you'll ha	-	. that time.
16.3 Read these situations and then complete	e the sentences using By	the time
Example: Tom was invited to a party but By the time he got to the part	· .	
1 I had to catch a train but it took me lor		to the station.
2 I saw two men who looked as if the	-	nor Co I sollad tha
police. But it was some time before th	e police arrived.	cal. 30 I called the
the tw		- 4-4 4
3 A man escaped from the prison last discovered what had happened.	mgm. It was a long um	e before the guards
the e		
4 I intended to go shopping after finishing than expected.	ng my work. But I finished	my work much later
alian expected.	it was too late to go	shopping.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
		1
	•	
KEY		
116.1 1 I have to be at the airport by 10.30.	116.2 1 by	2 until
2 Let me know by Saturday whether		4 by
you can come to the party.	•	6 by
3 Please make sure that you are	116.3	<b>0</b>
here by 2 o'clock.	1 By the time I	ot to the station
4 If you want to do the examination,	2 By the time th	
you have to enter by 3 April.	3 By the time th	
5 If we leave now, we should be in		nat had happened.

London by lunchtime.

4 By the time I finished my work.

#### BÀI 117: IN AT ON CHIVE TRIPY (\*\*) NEWS ON THE CONTROL SERVICE OF THE CONTROL kacin a 2 ve senest is sellet eigent til an tearn i teal visibe. In: Hây xem các ví du รูลมะ (vē high) อาปเอาย thevari i do: ยายาอกัด need ev i or not I baye to decide . .. Vobeaur?" Thursday before making a decision. t throw III worth ... . bow II wreth t They sind you're writted a book. Have you finitely disk yelf. S. Motiguite, but I node to finish it ...... the end of this month Proposition of the back at 4.30. Will you soil be here? in the water when man is come rounds to the in a room: (trong phông) This building from the inhalities and Anounced with inding lines from in a garden: (trong vưởn) in the sea: (trên biến, dưới in a park: (trong công?vién) con emit actionablén)mens ed lits litt interqueue.(trong hàng in a towat (trong thành phố) see s in a tivere (trên sông, dưới see see see to nối đười nhau). in a country: (trong một nước) sông) 116.3 Read mace จ่านอกังกระโยกป ท้อก *เพ*ื่ที่ผู้เลีย โทย soncent นั้ว และที่ **ซิจู โทย น**ั้น**กั**ย... \*Jos There's no one in the room / in the building / in the shop of now you? (Không có abtrong phòng / trong tòa nhà /strong cử(a:tiệm)): 🕬 🤌 - afthe children are playing in the gardent in the parkind night a dates of best (Bon trẻ đang chơi trong vườn / trong công viên.) 20 boll Where we were littledly, we spent a few days in Vehice, only none out was a (Khi chúng tới ở Ý, chững tới đã sống vất ngày tại Venice. Faw 1 1981 . solog Robert lives in a small village in the mountains. A man seasped from the preson last thou is the distance of the property of the She keeps her money in her beg./ in her purse. i intended to go shopping after halak **IV-prort k dokk likt anoj) akit iko ek 60 k**uch laser What have you got in your hand / in your mouth? .behsaxo cadi (Bàn cám cái gi trong tay √ngâm cái gì trong miệng vậy?) Look at that girl swimming in the water / in the sea / in the river! (Hày nhìn có gái đang bơi dưới nước / ngoài biển / trên sông kia!) When I go to the cinema, I prefer to sit in the front row. -1 >1 (Khi đi xem phim, tôi thích ngối hàng ghế đầu hơn.) Have you read this article in the newspaper 81 vd noons on used on over 17 1.071 (Bạn đã đọc bài báo này chựa?) terfedy vabultative whether Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng tạ nội: 🕒 🦠 with the court to the marry (sit) in an arm chair (hhung "on a chair") In the street ((ngối) trong ghế bành / (ngối) trên ghế) (ở ngoại đượng) in a photograph / In a picture / In a mirror in the sky or avaginor (trong anh/trong tranh/trong gương) A but wit the lights Linguight VA Cundon by lunchtme.

- "Where did you meet Tom?" "In the street".
   ("Bạn đã gặp Tom ở đầu?" "Ngoài đường". (không nói "on the street")
   Who is the woman in that photograph?
- Who is the woman in that photograph?
   (Người đàn bà trong tấm ảnh đó là ai thế?) (không nói "on that photograph")
- It was a lovely day. There wasn't a cloud in the sky.
   (Dó là một ngày đẹp trời. Bầu trời không có một đám mây nào.)
- Don't sit in that armchair. It's broken.
   (Đừng ngồi vào cái ghế bành đó. Nó bị gãy rồi.)

b) At: Hãy xem các thí dụ sau:



at the bus stop (ở trạm xe buýt) at the door (ở cửa ra vào) had no at the window (ở cửa số) suo lum non) at the top (of the page) lisw ent no (ở đầu trang)

at the bottom (of the page) (ở cuối trang)

(loo lad neil la at the back : (ở phía sau ; ở hàng cuối)

at the end of the street (ở cuối con đường)



negación ent lo T epaq no dolam lador en la martir a page d'àu) at the front : (ở phía trước ; ở hàng đầu)

- Who is that man standing at the bus stop/at the door/at the window? (Người đàn ông đang đứng ở trạm xe buýt/ở cửa ra vào/ở cửa số là ai thế?)
- Turn left at the traffic lights.

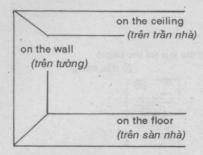
  (Hãy rẽ trái ở chỗ cột đèn giao thông.)
- If you leave the hotel, please leave your key at reception.
   (Nếu ông ta rời khỏi khách sạn, xin gởi chìa khóa ở quẩy tiếp tân.)
- Write your name at the top/at the bottom of the page.

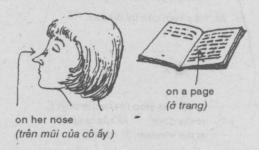
  (Hāy viết tên bạn vào đầu/vào cuối trang giấy.)

- Jack's house is the white one at the end of the street.
   (Nhà của Jack là căn màu trắng ở cuối con đường.)
- I couldn't see very well because I was standing at the back.
   (Tôi nhìn không được rõ lắm vì tôi đứng ở phía sau.)

(Xem thêm phần e.)

c) On: Hãy xem các thí dụ sau:





- Don't sit on the floor / on the ground / on the grass!
   (Dừng ngồi trên sàn nhà / trên mặt đất / trên bãi cỏ!)
- There's a dirty mark on the wall / on the ceiling / on your nose. (Có một vết bẩn trên tường / trên trần nhà / trên mũi bạn.)
- Have you seen the notice on the notice-board? (Bạn đã xem thông báo trên bảng thông báo chưa?)
- The book you are looking for is on the top shelf / on the table. (Quyển sách bạn đang tìm ở trên kệ cao nhất / trên bàn.)
- There's a report of the football match on page 7 of the newspaper. (Có một bài tường thuật về trận bóng đá đó trên trang 7 của tờ báo.)
- Don't sit on that chair. It's broken. (nhưng "sit in an armchair") (Đừng ngồi lên ghế đó. Nó bị gãy rồi.)

Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng ta nói:

on the left / on the right (hoặc on the left / right-hand side) (bên trái / bên phải (hoặc bên tay trái / bên tay phải) on the ground floor / on the first floor / on the second floor v.v... (ở tầng trệt / trên tầng một / trên tầng hai v.v...)

- In Britain we drive on the left. (hoặc on the left-hand side)
- Our flat is on the second floor of the building.
   (Căn hộ của chúng tôi nằm ở tầng hai của tòa nhà.)

Chúng ta dùng on khi nói về các hòn đảo nhỏ:

- Tom spent his holidays on a small island off the coast of Scotland. (Tom đã nghỉ mát trên một hòn đảo nhỏ nằm ngoài khơi Xcốtlen.)

Chúng ta cũng nói rằng một nơi nào đó "on the coast" (nằm trên bờ biển), "on a river" (nằm trên dòng sông), "on a road" (nằm trên con đường).



London is on the river Thames.

(Luân Đôn nằm trên dòng sông Thames.)

Portsmouth is on the south coast of England.

(Portsmouth nằm trên bờ biển phía nam nước Anh.)

Chúng ta nói một nơi nào đó "on the way" (nằm trên đường) đi đâu:

- We stopped at a pretty village on the way to London.
   (Chúng tôi đã dừng lại ở một ngôi làng xinh xắn trên đường đi Luân Đôn.)
- d) In / at / on the corner. Chung ta nói "in the corner of a room", nhưng "at the corner (hoặc on the corner) of a street":
  - The television is in the corner of the room.

    (Máy truyền hình nằm ở góc phòng.)
  - There is a telephone box at / on the corner of the street. (Có một trạm điện thoại ở góc đường.)
- e) In / at / on the front In/at/on the back:

Chúng ta nói: "in the front / in the back of a car" (ở hàng ghế trước/ở hàng ghế sau trên xe):

I was sitting in the back (of the car) when we crashed.

(Tôi đang ngồi ở hàng ghế sau (trên xe hơi) khi xe chúng tôi đụng phải một chiếc xe khác.)

Chúng ta nói "at the front / at the back of a building/hall/cinema/group of people" v.v...

- The garden is at the back of the house. (Khu vườn nằm ở phía sau ngôi nhà.)
- Let's sit at the front (of the cinema) (nhưng "in the front row")
  (Chúng ta hãy ngồi ở hàng ghế phía trước) (trong rạp chiếu bóng).

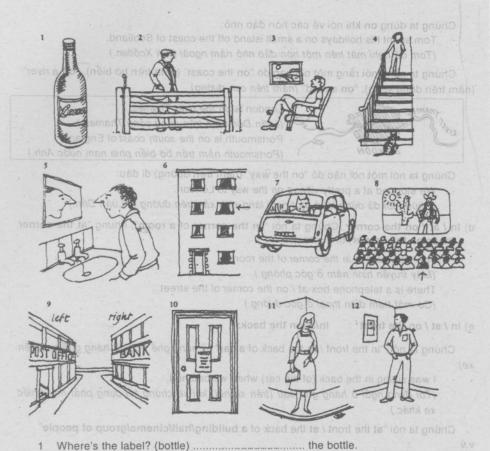
Chúng ta nói " on the front / on the back of a letter / piece of paper" v.v..

Write your name on the back of this piece of paper.
 (Hãy viết tên của bạn vào mặt sau của tờ giấy này.)

Hãy xem thêm bài 118.

## **UNIT 117: Exercises**

117.1 In this exercise you have to answer questions about the pictures. Use in, or on with the words in brackets.



2	Where's the man standing? (gate)saudd.adi.to.xoad.adi.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to.zoad.to
3	Where's Tom sitting? (armchair)
	Where's the picture? (wall) and a grand to the picture?
4	Where's Ann standing? (top/stairs)
5	What's George doing? (looking/mirror). He's
6	Tom lives in this building. Where's his flat exactly? (second floor)
7	Where is the dog? (back/car) LEID OF BUD USE 15M DOWN AND BUD HELD WELLD.
8	Tom is in the cinema. Where's he sitting? (back)
	or: (back row)
9	Where's the post office? (left) And the bank? (right)
10	Where's the notice? (door)
	Where is the girl standing? (corner) 2921019X3 1\ II II

117.1 In this exercise you have to answer questions about

117.2 Complete these sentences. Each time use in; at or on with one of the phrases from reneathe boxw sents assessed test tests per at series the 1 tests one constitution | 5 te

			BOOK STATES   DE
the front row	New York	3020 HM.	the west coast
	the back of the		the Swiss Alps
my way to work	the back of the		the window
the right	the front page of	f the newspaper	YB <u>X</u> _
1 The headquarter 2 In most countries 3 I usually buy a nu 4 Last year we had 5 San Francisco is 6 She spends all of 7 I have to walk up 8 I read about the 9 We went to the t	s of the United Nation s people drive swspaper i a lovely skiling holida of i ay sitting ar a lot of stairs every d accident. There was a	in the morni in th	eddens – Igmo of organis Machinistics of g ngleddings for to a paging of politics
		200 0 00 0 00 0	me and address
17.3 Complete these s	entences with in, at o	on.	ath rewn our - 5
			end table est no
Examples: Turn left	at the cups <u>on</u> the top :	nhalf	WOMEN WILLIAM TO A TOTAL CO.
	, , ,		may be because of the
1 It can be danger	ous when children pla	y football	the street.
	the corner (		
	a traffic jam		
	cident		ie morning
	autiful horses		
	this photo		* * * * * *
	the end of the street		
			ay sitting a desk.
	ar		•
		*	the south coast of England.
	orts results		
_	ot married		our years ago.
	the river S		en e
			hen you come out of the lift,
	you		The Section of the Se
	the back.	•	ut there's another entrance
16 If you want to go	et away from modern	life, you should a	go and livea
small island in t	he middle of the ocea	n.	**************************************
			(10) 10

- 17 The man the police are looking for has a scar .......his right cheek.
- 18 I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right flat because there was no name

## KEY ·

- 117.1 1 on the bottle
  - 2 at the gate
  - 3 in an armchair... on the wall
  - 4 at the top of the stairs... at the bottom of the stairs
  - 5 He's looking (at himself) in the mirror.
  - 6 on the second floor
  - 7 in the back of the car
  - 8 at the back (or in the back row)
  - 9 on the left... on the right
  - 10 on the door
  - 11 at/on the corner (of the street)
  - 12 in the corner (of the room)
- 117.2 2 on the right
  - 3 on my way to work
  - 4 in the Swiss Alps
  - 5 on the west coast
  - at the window
  - 7 on the third floor
  - 8 on the front page of the newspaper.
  - 9 in the front row
  - 10 at the back of the class
  - 11 on the back of the envelope
- 117.3 1 in
  - 2 at/on
  - 3 on
  - 4 at
  - 5 in
  - 6 in... in
  - 7 At
  - 8 at
  - 9 in
  - 10 in... on
  - 11 on
  - 12 in
  - 13 on
  - 14 on... on
  - 15 at
  - 16 on
  - 17 on
  - 18 on

# BÀI 118: IN / AT / ON (chỉ vị trí) (2)

a) Chúng ta nói ai đó: "at an event" (có mặt ở một dịp / sự kiện...) Các thí dụ khác; at a party / at a corcert / at a conference / at a football match.

(ở một buổi tiệc / ở một buổi hòa nhạc / ở một buổi hội thảo / ở một trận bóng đá)

- Were there many people at the party / at the meeting?
   (Có nhiều người dự tiệc / dự hòp không?)
- I saw Jack at the football match / at the concert on Saturday.
   (Tôi gặp Jack ở trận bóng đá / ở buổi hòa nhạc hôm thứ Bảy)
- b) Chúng ta nói:

at home	at university	at the seaside	In bed	on a farm
at work	at a station	at sea (on a voyage)	in hospital	
at school	at an airport		in prison	

- I'll be at work until 5.30 but I'll be at home all evening.
   (Tôi sẽ làm việc cho tôi 5 giờ 30 nhưng tôi sẽ ở nhà suốt tối.)
- Julia is studying medicine at university.
   (Julia dang học ngành Y ở đại học).
- We'll be arriving at 9.30. Can you meet us at the station?
   (Chúng tôi sẽ đến vào lúc 9 giờ 30. Bạn có thể rạ ga đón chúng tôi không?)
- Tom's father is in hospital.
   (Cha của Tom đang nằm bệnh viên.)
- Have you ever worked on a farm?
   (Ban có bao gið làm ở nông trại chứa?)
- c) Bạn có thể dùng in hoặc at với các tòa nhà (buildings). Bạn có thể nói "in a hotel" hoặc "at a hotel" (ở khách sạn); bạn có thể "eat in a restaurant" hoặc "eat at a restaurant" (ăn ở nhà hàng).

Chúng ta thường dùng at khi chúng ta nói đến nơi một sự kiện nào đó xảy ra (thí dụ: a concert, a film, a meeting, a sports event v.v...)

- We went to a concert at the Royal Festival Hall.
   (Chúng tổi đi nghe hòa nhạc ở sảnh đường Royal Festival).
- The meeting took place at the company's headquarters. (Cuộc họp diễn ra tại tru sở của công tv).
- "Where were you last night?" "At the cinema. / At the theatre". ("Tôi qua bạn ở đâu?" "Đi xem phim. / Đi xem kịch".

#### Chúng ta nói at someone's house:

I was at Tom's house last night. (hoặc: I was at Tom's last night).
 (Tôi ở nhà Tom đểm hôm qua).

Chúng ta dùng in khi chúng ta chỉ đến bản thân tòa nhà đó:

The rooms in Tom's house are very small.
 (Các phòng trong nhà Tom rất nhỏ).

- I enjoyed the film but it was very cold in the cinema.
   (Tôi thích bộ phim đó nhưng trong rạp lạnh quá).
- d) Chúng ta thường dùng in với các thành phố và làng mạc:
  - Tom's parents live in Nottingham! (không nói "at Nottingham")
     (Cha mệ Tom sống ở Nottingham).

Nhưng bạn có thể dùng at khi thành phố hay ngôi làng đó là một chặng nghỉ trong suốt lộ trình;

- Does this train stop at Nottingham?
- (Chuyển tàu này có mgừng ở Nottingham không?)
- We stopped at a pretty village on the way to London.
   (Chúng tôi đã dừng lại ở một ngôi làng xinh xắn trên đường đi Luân Đôn.)
- Chúng ta nói "arrive IN a country or town" (đến một nước / một thành phố);
  - When did he arrive in Britain / in London?
     (Anh ta đã đến Anh / Luân Đôn khi nào vày?)

Chúng ta nói arrive AT với những chỗ khác (tòa nhà, sở làm v.v...) hay những sự kiện nào đó.

What time did he arrive at school / at work / at hotel / at the party? (Anh ta đã đến trường / đến sở làm / đến khách sạn / đến dự tiệc vào lúc mấy giờ?)

Chúng ta nói arrive home (không có giới từ):

 When did he arrive home? (Anh vê nhà vào lúc nào?)

## **UNIT 118: Exercises**

118.1 Complete these sentences. Use in, at or on with one of the words or phrases from the box.

· :	bed school	sea prison	the National the airport	Theatre	a farm the cinema	hospital the station
1 2			1.30. Can you m when I woke up			
3 4	Are they	showing an	y good films		this wee	k?
5	I like the	countryside	and the fresh a	ir I think I'd I	like to work	
7	We went	to see a pla	ay	: whe	en we were in Lo	ndon.
8 9 10	It was a	very long vo	a road accident yage. We were ed. We had to w		for ten v	veeks.

#### 118.2 Complete these sentences with in or at. Example: Were there many people at the concert? I didn't see you ..... the party on Saturday. Where were you? It was a very slow train. It stopped ...... every little station. He speaks quite good French. He studied ..................... Paris for a year. 4 Tom's ill. He wasn't ...... work today. He was ......home ..... bed. 5 The exhibition ...... the art gallery finished on Saturday. 6 There will be a public meeting ...... the Town Hall next week to discuss the plan to build a new road. Paul is a student ...... London University. Don't phone tomorrow evening. I won't be ....... home. I'll be ....... Ann's. 10 It's always too hot \_\_\_\_\_ Ann's house. She has the heating on too high. 118.3 Complete these sentences with a preposition if a preposition is necessary. Example: What time did you arrive at the station? After many years away, he arrived back ...... England a month ago. 3 What time do you expect to arrive ...................... London? What time do you expect to arrive ..... the hotel? 5 What time do you usually arrive ...... home in the evening? What time do you usually arrive ...... work in the morning? We arrived .....the town with nowhere to stay. When we arrived ...... the cinema, there was a long queue outside. 10 | arrived ...... home feeling very tired. KEY. 118.1 2 in bed 7 at at the cinema 3 8 at in prison at... at ٠5. on a farm 10 at school at the National Theatre 118.3 1 in 8 in hospital at 9 at sea 3 in 10 at the airport 5 arrive home (no preposition) 118.2 1 at at at

3 in

at work... at home ... in bed

5 at ("in" is possible)

at ("in" is possible)

in

10

arrived home (no preposition)

## BÀI 119:

# TO, BEEN TO, INTO By car / in my car

a) To: Chúng ta nói go/come/travel (v.v...) to một nơi nào hay sự kiện gì. Thí dụ:

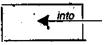
Chúng ta nổi get to (nhưng arrive in/at - xem bài 118c):

What time did you get to London/work/the party?
 (Ban đến Luân Đôn/đến sở làm/đến dự tiệc lúc máy giờ?)

Chúng ta nói go home/come home/get home v.v... (không có giới từ):

- I'm tired. Let's go home.
   (Tôi cảm thấy mệt. Chúng ta về nhà đi.)
- What time did you get home last night? (Tối qua bạn về nhà lúc mấy giờ?)
- b) Been to: I have been to (a place) = Tôi đã đến thăm nơi nào đô (tôi đã đến đó nhưng bây giờ tôi đã quay vé) (xem thêm bài 13d):
  - Have you ever been to Japan?
     (Ban có bao giờ đến Nhật chưa?).
  - I've been to Rome four times.
     (Tôi đã đến Rome bốn lần rồi).
  - Ann has never been to a football match in her life.
    - (Cả đời Ann chưa bao giờ đi xem một trận bóng đá nào.)
  - Jack has got plenty of money. He has just been to the bank. (Jack có nhiều tiến lầm. Anh ta vừa đi ngân hàng.)
- c) Into! "Go into/come into" v.v... = di vào (một căn phòng/một tòa nhà v.v...):
  - I opened the door and went into the room...
     (Tôi mở cửa và đi vào phòng.)
  - Doñ't wait outside! Come into the house.
     (Đừng chở bên ngoài! Hảy vào trong nhà đi.)
  - The man the police were chasing ran into a shop.

    (Người mà cảnh sát đang truy đuổi đã chạy vào một của tiệm.)
  - A bird flew into the room through the window.
    (Một con chim để bay vào phòng qua cửa số.)



d) By car / in my car. Chúng ta dùng by... để nói đến phương tiện đi lại.

by car (bằng by train by plane by boat/ship by bus by xé hơi) (bang xe · (bằng máy (bằng tàu) (bằng xa buýt) bicycle lửa) bay) (bằng xe đạp) Ta cũng nói: by road by rail by air (bằng by sea by Underground (bằng đường l (bằng đường đường hàng (bằng đường (bằng xe điện bô) sát) không) biển) ngåm)

- "How did you go to Paris?" "By plane". (Bạn đi Paris bằng phương tiện gì?" "Bằng máy bay".)
- Tom usually goes to work by bicycle / by car / by bus / by train. (Tom thường đi làm bằng xe đạp/bằng xe hơi/bằng xe buýt/bằng xe lữa.)

Nhưng chúng tạ nói "on foot":

Did you come here by car or on foot? (Ban đến đây bằng xe hơi hay đi bộ?)

Nhưng ban không thể dùng by nếu bạn nói "my car / the train / a taxi" v.v... Chúng ta nói: in my car (không nói "by my car"), "en the train" (không nói "by the train").

Chúng ta dùng in cho xe hơi và taxi:

in my car in Tom's car (bằng xe (bằng xe hơi in the car (bằng chiếc xe In a car

in a taxi

hơi của tới) của Tom) - hơi đó)

(bång xe hdi)

(bằng taxi)

Chung ta nói get in (to)/get out of a car/taxi.

He got into the car and drove off. (hoặc: He got in the car...) (Anh ta leo lên xe và lài đi mất.)

Chúng ta dùng on cho xe đạp và các phương tiện đi lại công cộng (xe buýt, xe lửa, v.v...).

on my bicycle (bằng xe đạp

của tôi)

on the bus (bằng xe buýt). on the 6.45 train (bằng chuyến xe lửa 6 giờ 45)

on a big ship-(bằng một con tàu lớn)·

Chúng ta nói get on/off a bicycle, bus hoặc train:

Quick! Get on the train. It's ready to leave. (Nhanh lêrit Lên xe lửa đi. Nó sắp khởi hành rồi đấy.)

## UNIT 119: Exercises

119.1 Complete these sentences with to, into, on or by. If no preposition is necessary, leave the sentence as it is:

Examples: When are you going to Spain? Tom usually goes to work by car.

went	ning. She wassed the bus, so I get around Londothe bank to I managed to crned	had to comeon is	my bike We didn't get a bus which pass foot. Underground me money, he house through after two years in	home sed me.
went	ning. She wassed the bus, so I get around Londo the bank to I managed to crned	had to comeon is	a bus which pass foot.  Linderground. The money, he house through after two years in	home sed me.
3 a.m. w Jane this mon y I'm late. I miss easiest way to y st go I lost my key bu cel has just retu n't feel like walk	ning. She wassed the bus, so i get around Londo the bank to I managed to crned	had to comeon isoday to change so	a bus which pass foot Underground. orne money. he house through after two years in	sed me.
w Jane this more y I'm late. I miss easiest way to st go I lost my key bu cel has just retu n't feel like walk s exercise you	sed the bus, so I get around Londo the bank to t I managed to c rned ing, so I came he	had to come on isoday to change so timbti	foot Underground. ome money, he house through after two years in	a window.
y I'm late. I miss easiest way to g st go	sed the bus, so I get around Londo the bank to t I managed to c rned ing, so I came he	had to come on isoday to change so timbti	foot Underground. ome money, he house through after two years in	a window.
y I'm late. I miss easiest way to g st go	sed the bus, so I get around Londo the bank to t I managed to c rned ing, so I came he	had to come on isoday to change so timbti	foot Underground. ome money, he house through after two years in	a window.
easiest way to g st go	get around London	on isoday to change so limbti	Underground. ome money, he house through after two years in	a window.
st go i lost my key bu cel has just retu n't feel like walk s exercise you	the bank to the transfer of th	oday to change so limbtl France a	ome money, he house through after two years in	a window.
i lost my key bu cel has just retu n't feel like walk s exercise you	it I managed to corneding, so I came he	imb the same a	he house through after two years in	
cel has just retu n't feel like walk s <i>exercise you</i>	rned ing, so i came h	France	after two years in	
n't feel like walk s <i>exercise you</i>	ing, so t came he			L. HURSHIU.
				- · · • -
een to these pla	aces.	n to. Write ques	tions asking some	eone if they
			. •	
aden)	*************			***********
				-
United States)				name no in me me me
oose four of thes	se places and say	whether you have	e been to them. A	nswer in the
	•	•		
,	I've been to Au	stralia once/twice/	many times etc	•
• .				
	•	· ·		
				*******
	ndon) Haveeden)sand)scow)me)United States)	ndon) Have eden) and) scow) me) United States) cose four of these places and say e: (Australia) I've been to Au or I've never baen	eden) and) scow) me) United States) cose four of these places and say whether you have e: (Australia) I've been to Australia once/twice or I've never been to Australia.	ndon) Have eden) and) scow) me) United States) pose four of these places and say whether you have been to them. A  e: (Australia)   Ye been to Australia once/twice/many times stc.

- 3 You were travelling by train to Bristol. When the train arrived at.
  Bristol, what did you do?
- 4 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then? ......

## **KEY**

- **119.1** 1 to
  - 2 going home (no preposition)
  - 3 by... on
  - 4 to... get home (no preposition)
  - 5 on ("in" is possible)
  - 6 on
  - 7 by (or on the Underground)
  - 8 to
  - 9 into
  - 10 to
  - 11 in
- 119.2 1 Have you been to London?
  - 2 Have you been to Sweden?
  - 3 Have you been to Ireland?
  - 4 Have you been to Moscow?
  - 5 Have you been to Rome?
  - 6 Have you been to the United States?

If possible check your sentences for numbers 7-10 with someone who speaks

English. Here are some example answers:

I've been to Ireland many times.

I've never been to the United States.

I've been to Rome once.

I've been to Sweden three times.

- 119.3 1 I got on the bus. ("got into the bus" is possible, but less usual)
  - 2 I got out of the car.
  - 3 I got off the train. ("got out of the train" is possible)
  - 4 I got in/into the taxi.
  - 5 I got off my bike...

# BÀI 120: On time / in time At the end / in the end

#### a) On time và in time:

On time = đúng giờ, không trễ. Nếu một sự việc nào đó xảy ra "on time", tức là nó xảy ra đúng giờ qui định hay vào đúng lúc dự tính:

- The 11.45 train left on time. (= it left at 11.45)
   (Chuyến xe lửa 11 giờ 45 khởi hành đúng giờ.) (= nó khởi hành lúc 11 giờ 45)
- A: I'll meet you at the comer at 7.30

B: Okay, but please on time. (= don't be late / be there at 7.30)

A: (Tôi sẽ gặp bạn ở góc đường lúc 7 giờ 30).

B: (Được! Nhưng làm ơn đúng giờ đấy nhé.) (= đừng đến trễ / hãy đến đó lúc 7 giờ 30).

The conference was very well organised. Everything began and finished on time.
 (Buổi hội thảo được tổ chức rất chu đáo. Mọi việc đều bắt đầu và kết thúc đúng giờ).

In time (for something / to do something) = vừa kip lúc (sớm một chút) để làm gì.

- Will you be home in time for dinner? (= soon enough for dinner).

(Bạn sẽ về nhà kịp bữa tối chứ?)

I've sent Jill her birthday present. I hope it arrives (for her birthday) in time.
 (= soon enough for her birthday)

(Tôi đã gởi quả sinh nhật cho Jill. Tôi hy vọng nó đến kịp lúc.)

I must hurry. I want to get home in time to see the football match on television.
 (= soon enough to see the football match).
 (Tôi phải vội. Tôi muốn về nhà kip giờ để xem trận bóng đá trên tivi.)

Trái nghĩa với in time là too late (quá trễ):

I got home too late to see the football match.
 (Tôi đã về nhà quá trễ nên không kịp xem trận bóng đá.)

Hãy lưu ý đến thành ngữ just in time (vừa kịp lúc, vừa đúng lúc):

- We got to the station just in time to catch the train. (Chúng tôi đến nhà ga vừa kip lúc lên tàu.)
- A dog ran across the road in front of the car, but I managed to stop just in time (to avoid hitting the dog).
   (Một con chó chạy băng qua đường trước đầu xe, nhưng tôi đã dùng được xe vừa kip lúc) (để khỏi đụng con chó).

#### b) At the end và in the end

At the end (of something) = vào lúc cuối / chót, vào phần cuối (của một sự kiện, thời gian...). Thí dụ:

at the end of the month (vào cuối tháng) at the end of the film (vào cuối bộ phim) at the end of January (vào cuối tháng Giêng) at the end of the course (vào cuối khóa) at the end of the match (vào cuối trần đấu)

at the end of the concert (vào cuối buổi hòa nhạc).

- 'm going away at the end of January / at the end of the month.
   (Tôi sẽ đi vắng vão cuối tháng Giêng / vào cuối tháng).
- At the end of the concert, there was tremendous applause.
   (Vào cuối buổi hòa nhạc, mọi người vỗ tạy vang dôi).
- All the players shook hands at the end of the match.
   (Tất cả các cấu thủ đều bắt tay nhau lúc kết thúc trận đấu).

Ban không thể nói: "in the end of something". - /

Trái nghĩa với at the end là at the beginning:

at the beginning of the concert

at the beginning of January

(vào đầu buổi hòa nhạc)

(vào đầu tháng Giêng)

In the end = *cuối cùng, sau cùng*. Chúng ta dùng **in the end** khi chúng ta muốn nói - kết quả cuối cùng của một tình huống / một sư việc là gi;

- We had a lot of problems with our car. In the end we-sold it and bought another
  one.
  - (Chúng tôi đã gặp nhiều phiên phức với chiếc xe của chúng tôi. Cuối cùng chúng tôi bán nó đi và mua một chiếc khác).
- He got more and more angry, in the end he just walked out of the room.
   (Anh ta càng lúc càng giận dữ. Cuối cùng anh ta bỏ đi ra khỗi phòng).
- Tom couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He decided to go to Italy in the end.

(Tom không thể quyết định sẽ đi nghỉ ở đầu. Cuối cùng anh ta đã quyết định đi Ý).

## **UNIT 120: Exercises**

120.1 Complete these sentences with on time or in time.

120.2 In this exercise you have to make sentences with just in time.

Example: A dog ran across the road in front of the car. You saw it at the last moment.

(i / manage / stop / time) | managed to stop just in time.

- 2 You were walking home without an umbrella. Just after you home, it started to rain very heavily. (I / get / home / time) .....
- You thought you were going to miss the beginning of the film, but it began just as you sat down in the cinema. (17 get / the cinema / time / beginning / film).

#### 120. 3 Complete these sentences with at or in.

Example: The players shook hands at the end of the match.

- 1 It took John a long time to find a job after he left school ...... the end he found a job as waiter.
- 2 "When do you get paid?" "..... the end of the month".
- 3 Are you going away ..... the beginning of August or ..... the end?
- 4 I couldn't decide what to get Ann for her birthday ...... the end I didn't get her anything at all.
- 5. We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up ...... the end and walked home.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_the end of the course the students usually have a party.
- 7 I'll be moving to a new address ..... the end of September.
- 8 His illness got worse and worse ...... the end he had to go into hospital for an operation.
- 9 Tom didn't want to lend us the money at first but ...... the end he agreed.

## **KEY**

- 120.1 1 on time 2 in time
  3 in time 4 on time
  5 in time 6 in time
  7 on time 8 in time
  9 in time
- 120.2 1 I stopped him just in time.
  - 2 I got home just in time
  - 3 I got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the film.
- 120.3 1 In 2 At 3 at... at 4 In 5 in 6 At 7 at 8 In

9 in

# BÀI 121: DANH TÙ + GIỚI TỪ ("reason for", "cause of" v.v...)

Hãy xem bảng liệt kê noun + preposition (danh từ đi với giới từ) sau đây. Đôi khi ta vẫn có thể dùng các giới từ khác. Một cuốn tự điển được biên soạn tốt sẽ cung cấp thêm chi tiết cho ban:

#### a cheque FOR (một số tiền):

They sent me a cheque for £50
 (Họ đã gởi cho tôi một tờ séc 50 bảng.)

#### a demand / a need FOR something:

The firm closed down because there wasn't enough demand for its product.
 (Hång đó đã đóng cửa vì không có đủ nhu cấu tiêu thụ sản phẩm của nó).

#### a reason FOR something:

The train was late but no-one knew the reason for the delay.

(Chuyển xe lửa đi trẻ nhưng không ai biết lý do của sự trì hoặn đó.)

#### a rise/an increase/a fall/a decrease IN something:

There has been an increase in road accidents recently. (Gắn đây số vụ tại nạn giao thông đã gia tăng.)

#### an advantage/a disadvantage OF something:

- The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like.
(Sư tiện lợi của việc sống một mình là bạn có thể làm bất cử điều gì bạn thích.)

### Nhưng chúng ta nói: "there is an advantage in doing something":

There are many advantages in living alone.

(Có nhiều sự tiện lợi trong việc sống một mình.)

#### a cause OF something:

Nobody knows what the cause of the explosion was. (Khong ai biết nguyên nhân của vụ nổ là do đầu.)

#### a photograph / a picture OF someone / something:

He always keeps a photograph of his wife in his wallet.
 (Arth ta luôn luôn giữ tấm ảnh vợ anh ta trong vt.)

#### damage TO something:

The accident was my fault, so I paid for the damage to the other car.

(Tai nan là do lỗi ở tôi, vì vậy tôi đã bối thường thiệt hại của chiếc xe kia.)

#### an invitation TO a party/a wedding v.v...:

 Did you get an invitation to the party? (Anh có được mời đến dự tiệc không?)

#### a reaction TO something:

I was surprised at his reaction to what I said. (Tôi ngạc nhiện về phản ứng của anh ta đối với điều tôi đã nói.)

a solution TO a problem / an answer TO a question / a reply TO a letter / a key TO a door: Do you think we'll find a solution to this problem? (Anh có nghĩ rằng chúng ta sẽ tìm ra giải pháp cho vấn để này không?) The answer to your question is "No"! (Câu trả lời cho câu hỏi của anh là, "Không"!) an attitude TO/TOWARDS someone/something: .. His attitude to/towards his job is very negative. (Thái độ của anh ta đối với công việc là rất tiêu cực.) a relationship/a connection/contact WITH someone/something: Do you have a good relationship with your parents? (Ban có quan hệ tốt với cha mẹ mình không?) Police want to question a man in connection with the robbery. (Cảnh sát muốn thẩm vấn một người dàn ông có liên quan đến vụ cướp.) Nhưng: a relationship/a connection/contact/a difference BETWEEN two things: Police have said that there is no connection between the two murders. (Cảnh sát nói rằng không có sự liên quan nào giữa hai vụ giết người cã.) There are some differences between British English and American English. (Có một vài điểm khác biệt giữa tiếng Anh của người Anh và tiếng Anh của người Mỹ.) UNIT 121: Exercises 121.1 In this exercise you have to read a sentance and then complete another sentance with the same meaning. Example: What caused the explosion? What was the cause of the explosion? We're trying to solve the problem. We're trying to find a solution ..... 2 Ann gets on well with her brother. Ann has a good relationship ...... 3 Prices have increased a lot. There has been a big increase ...... 4 If don't know how to answer your question, I can't think of answer 5 Nobody wants to buy shoes like these any more. There is no demand ..... 6 I think that being married has some advantages. I think that there are some advantages ...... 7 The number of people without jobs has fallen this year. There has been a fall 8 I don't think that a new road is necessary. i don't think that there is any need ..... 121.2 Complete these sentences with the correct preposition. Example: There are some differences between British English and American English. I've just received an invitation .....a wedding next week.

The cause ..... the fire in the hotel last night is still unknown.

3	Ann showed me a photograph the hotel where she stayed during her holiday.
4	Money isn't the solution every problem.
5.	The company has rejected the workers' demands
6	The two companies are completely independent. There is no connection them.
. 7	When I opened the envelope, I was delighted to find a cheque £500.
8	Have you seen this picture the town as it looked 400 years ago?
9	Sorry I haven't written to you for so long. The reason this is that I've
_	been ill recently.
	The advantage having a car is that you don't have to rely on public transport.
	There are many advantages being able to speak a foreign language.
	There has been a sharp rise the cost of living in the past few years.
	The front door is tocked. Have you got the key the back door?
	Bill and I used to be good friends but I don't have much contact him now,
	I've never met Carol but I've seen a photographher
	It wasn't serious accident. The damagethe car was only slight.
	Tom's reaction my suggestion was not very enthusiastic.
	What were George's reasonsgiving up his job?
19	The fact that he got a job in the company has no connection the fact that
	his father is the managing director.
	When he left home, his attitude his parents seemed to change.
21	I wrote to Jim last week, but I still haven't received a reply my letter.
	en e
KE,	
121.1	1 a solution to the problem.
	2 a good relationship with her brother.
	3 a big increase in prices.
	4 an answer to your question.
	5 no demand for shoes like these any more.
	6 some advantages in being married ("advantages to being married" is also
	possible).
•	7 a fall in the number of people without jobs this year.
	18 any need for a new road.
	ally fieed for a fiew toda.
121.2	.1 to 2 of
	3 of 4 to
. ′	5 for in 6 between
	7 for 8 of
	9 for 10 of
	11 in 12 in
	13 to 14 with
	15 of 16 to
	17 to 18 for

# BÀI 122: GIỚI TỪ + DANH TỪ ("by mistake", "on television", v.v...)

Học sinh thường dùng sai giới từ trước những danh từ trong bài này. Vì vậy hãy xem xét kỹ bảng liệt kê (giới từ + danh từ) và các thí dụ sau đây:

to pay BY cheque (nhưng "to pay IN cash" hoặc "to pay cash"): trả bằng ngân phiếu (séc) / trả bằng tiến mất.

Did you pay by cheque or in cash? (Bạn đã trả bằng ngắn phiếu hay bằng tiến mặt?)

(to do something) BY accident / BY mistake / BY chánce: (làm điều gi) một cách ngẫu nhiên / do nhằm lẫn / một cách tình cơ:

We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by chance.
 (Chúng tôi đã không tính gặp nhau. Chúng tôi chỉ tình có gặp gỡ thôi).

a play BY Shakespeare / a painting BY Rembrandt / a novel BY Tolstoy v.v...: một vở kịch của Shakespeare / một bức tranh của Rembrandt / một cuốn tiểu thuyết của Solstoy

Have you read any books by Agatha Christie? (= any book written by Agatha Christie?)

(Ban đã đọc cuốn sách nào của Agatha Christie chưa?)

(to be / to fall) IN love WITH someone: yêu ai

Have you ever been in love with anyone? (Ban đã từng yêu ai chưa?)

### IN (my) opinion: theo ý (tôi)

In my opinion the film wasn't very good. (Theo tôi, bộ phim đó không hay lầm).

### (to be) ON fire: dang cháy.

Look! That car is on fire. (Nhìn kia! Chiếc xe hơi đó đang bốc chảy).

### (to be) ON telephone / ON the phone

- You can't phone me. I'm not on the phone. (= I haven't got a phone).
   (Ban không thể gọi điện thoại cho tôi được đâu. Tôi không có điện thoại).
- I've never met her but I've spoken to her on the phone.
   (Tôi chưa từng gặp cô ta nhưng tôi đã nói chuyện với cô ta qua điện thoại).

#### ON television / ON the radio:

I didn't watch the match on television: I listened to it on the radio.
 (Tôi không xem trận đấu trên ti-vi. Tôi nghe nó trên đài.)

(to be/to go) ON a diet: dang an kieng.

I've put on a lot of weight. I'll have to go on a diet. (Tôi đã lên cân nhiều. Tôi sẽ phải ăn kiếng thôi).

(to be/to go) ON strike: dang dinh công.

There are no trains today. The railway workers are on strike.

(Hôm nay không có chuyển xe lửa nào cả. Công nhân đường sắt đang định công).

(to be/to go) ON holiday / ON business / ON a trip / ON a tour / ON an excursion / ON a crulse / ON an expedition v.v...: di nghī / di công tác / di du ngoạn / di du lịch / di tham quan / di tàu / di thám hiểm v.v...

- Tom's away at the moment. He is on holiday in France.
- (Hiện giờ Tom đi vắng rồi. Anh ta đang đi nghỉ ở Pháp). Did you go to Paris on business or on holiday?

(Anh sang Paris để công tác hay để nghỉ mát?)

--- One day I'd like to go on a world tour.

(Một ngày nào đó tôi muốn đi du lịch vòng quanh thế giới).

Nhưng ban cũng có thể nói 'go to a place FOR a holiday / FOR my holiday(s)":

Tom has gone to France for a holiday.

(Tom đã đi Pháp để nghì mát).

- Where are you going for your holidays this year?

(Năm nay bạn sẽ đi nghỉ mát ở đậu?)

(to go/to come) FOR a walk / FOR a swim / FOR a drink v.v...; di dao / di bdi / di uéng nuéc...

- She always goes for a walk with her dog in the morning.
  (Câ ta luôn luôn đi dạo cũng với con chó vào buổi sáng.)
- After work we went to a calé for a drink, (Sau giộ làm việc chúng tôi đi ra quán để uặng nước).

(to have something) FOR breakfast / FOR lunch / FOR dinner: (ăn gi) trong bữa diểm tâm / bữa trưa / bữa tôi.

What did you have for lunch? (Ban đã ăn gì trong bữa trưa?)

### **UNIT 122: Exercises**

122.1 Complete these sentences. Each time use a preposition with one of the words or phrases from the box.

mistake the phone	business television	a diet	breakfast Shakespeare	a swim	strike
<del></del>				cheque	love
		o a café <u>for a c</u>			
2 The fac	tory has close	ed because the	workers have gone		· .
3 I didn't	intend to take	your umbrella	. I took it		
4 Igotup	late this mor	ning and had t	oʻrush. All I had	wasa cu	p of coffee.
5 I feel la	zý this evenir	g. Is there any	thing worth watching		2
6 They f	ell		th each other almost	immediately	and were
married	in a few wee	ks.			, and #510
			went	in the ri	ver
8 Jim's io	b involves a l	ot of travelling	He often goes to other	towne	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
9 Ldidn't	have any moi	NAV OR THE CO.	paid	Юниз	10 th are 100 mm and 149
10 George	has out on a	lot of weight r	ecently. I think he shoul		
11 It's diffi	cuit to contde	Sue because	she's not	u yu	
12 Hamlet	decharacter	vice pecause	Sile \$ not		
is Planiner	and Machett	are plays			

### 122.2 Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.

Example: We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by chance. I'm hungry. What's ......dinner this evening? 2 ..... my opinion, violent films shouldn't be shown ..... I think I need a bit of exercise. Shall we go .....a walk? 4 Do you know any songs ...... the Beatles? There was panic when people realised the building was ....... fire. 7 The weather was terrible when we were ....... holiday in Scotland. 8 Next month I'm going to Scotland ...... a short holiday. Where did you go ......your holidays last year? 10 I won't be at work next week. I'll be ....... holiday. 11 We're going ...... holiday with some friends of ours in September. 13 The shop assitant wouldn't accept my cheque and insisted that I paid ........... cash. 14 Ann reads a lot of books ...... American women writers. 15 Did you hear the news this morning ...... the radio? 16 It was only ...... accident that I found out who the man really was. 18 I wouldn't like his job. He spends most of his time talking ...... the telephone. 19 What's that music? I can't remember the title but I know it's ...... Beethoven. 21 Ann liked the dress, but \_\_\_\_\_ my opinion it didn't suit her.

### KEY

<b>122.1</b> 2 on strike	122.2	1	for	13	paid in cash (or paid
3 by mistake		2	in on		cash-no preposition)
4 for breakfast		3	for	. 14	by
5 on television		4	by ·	. 15	on
6 in love		5	on ,	16	by
7 for a swim		6	.on		on
8 on business "	• .	7	on	18	on
9 by cheque		8	for	19	by
10 on a diet		9	for .	- 20	on
· · 11 on the phone		10	on	21	in
12 by Shakespeare	•	11	oň ·		
	,	12	on		• •

# **BÀI 123:** TÍNH TỪ + GIỚI TỪ (1)

Hãy xem xét các nhóm tính từ + giới từ dưới đây. Đôi khi ta vẫn có thể dùng các giới từ khác. Một cuốn tự điển được biên soạn tốt sẽ cung cấp thêm chi tiết cho bạn.

nice / kind / good / generous / mean / stupid / silly / Intelligent / clever / sensible / (im) polite / rude / unreasonable OF someone (to do something):

- Thank you. It was very nice / kind of you to help me. (Cám ơn. Bận thật tử tế đã giúp đỡ tới.)
- It's stupid of her to go out without a coat. She'll catch cold.
   (Cô ta thật ngốc khi đi ra ngoài mà không mặc áo khoác. Cô ta sẽ bị cảm lạnh.)

nhung: (to be) nice / kind / good / generous / mean / (im)polite / rude / (un)pleasant / (un)friendly / cruel TO someone:

- She has always been very nice / kind to me. (không nói "with me").
   (Cô ta đã luôn rất tử tế với tôi).
- Why were you so rude / unfriendly to Ann?
   (Tại sao bạn lại thô lỗ / không thân thiện với Ann như thế?)

# angry / annoyed / furious ABOUT something

ed / furious L WITH someone FOR doing something.

- What are you so angry / annoyed about? (Ban giặn dữ / bực mình chuyện gì thế?)
- They were furious with me for not inviting them to the party.

  (Họ tức giận vì tôi đã không mởi họ đến dự tiệc).

### delighted / pleased / satisfied / disappointed WITH something:

- I was delighted / pleased with the present you gave me.
   (Tôi rất vui thích / hài lòng với món quả bạn đã tặng tôi).
- Were you disappointed with your examination results?
   (Ban dā thất vọng về kết quả thi của bạn phải không?)

#### bored / fed up WITH something:

You get bored / fed up with doing the same thing every day.
 (Ban chán ngắn vì ngày nào cũng phải làm cùng một công việc đó.)

### surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished AT / BY something:

Everybody was surprised / shocked at / by the news.
 (Moi người ai cũng ngạc nhiên / sửng sốt vì tin đó.)

### excited / worried / upset ABOUT something:

- Are you excited about going on holiday next week?
   (Ban có phần khởi về việc di nghĩ mát vào tuần tới không?)
- Ann is upset about not being invited to the party.
   (Ann bực bội vì không được mởi đến dự tiệc.)

### airaid / frightened / terrified / scared OF someone / something:

"Are you afraid of dogs?" "Yes, I'm terrified of them".
 (Ban có sợ chó không?" "Có, tôi sợ chúng tắm").

#### proud / ashamed OF someone / something:

l'm not ashamed of what I dld. In fact I'm quite proud of it. (Tôi không xấu hổ về điều tôi đã làm. Thật ra tôi rất hãnh diện về nô.)

### jealous / envious / suspicious OF someone / something:

- Why are you always so jealous of other people?
   (Tai sao luc não ban cũng ganh tị với người khác thế?)
- He didn't trust me. He was suspicious of my intentions.

  (Anh ta không tin tưởng tôi. Anh ta nghi ngỡ những ý định của tôi.)

#### aware / conscious OF something:

"Did you know they were married?" "No, I wasn't aware of that". ("Ban có biết rằng họ đã cưới nhau không?" "Không, tôi không biết chuyện đó").

### good / bad / excellent / brilliant / hopeless AT (doing) something:

I'm not very good at repairing things.
(Tôi sửa chữa đổ vật không được giải lắm).

#### married / engaged TO someone:

Linda is married to an American. (không nói "with an American")
 (Linda đã kết hôn với một người Mỹ),

### **UNIT 123: Exercises**

	In this exercise you have to say how you feel about George in each situation.
E	xample: George has kept you waiting for hours. (annoyed) I'm annoyed with him.
1	George hasn't been eating well recently. (worried) I'mhim.
2	George has been telling lies about you. (angry) I'mhim.
3	George is much better at everything than you are. (jealous)
4	George is big, strong, aggressive and violent. (afraid)
5	You've had enough of George. (fed up) I'm
6	(ladies only) But George is your husband. (married)
E	Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.  cample: I was delighted with the present you sent me.
E	cample: I was delighted <u>with</u> the present you sent me.
E:	kample: I was delighted with the present you sent me.  It's very nice
£: 1 2	kample: I was delighted with the present you sent me.  It's very nice
1 2 3	kample: I was delighted with the present you sent me.  It's very nice
1 2 3 4	It's very nice
1 2 3 4 5	It's very nice
1 2 3 4	It's very nice
1 2 3 4 5	It's very nice
1 2 3 4 5 6	It's very nice

12 13 14 16 16 17	2   1   2   1   3   D   4	was shocked	you said. ged eople be for too k what I sa	You fore	should be ashamed yourself
123.3 F	Not	w you have to write sentences :	about you	rsei	f. Are you good at these things or not?
2.7	, carry	ples: (repairing things) I'm hop (tennis) I'm not very good	eless at r I at tennis	epa S	iring things.
1 2 3 4 5	(te	emembering people's names) . elling jokes)	**************************************		
KE'	Y	·			
123.1	1 2 3 4 5 6	I'm worried about him. I'm angry with him, I'm jealous of him. I'm afraid of him. I'm fed up with him. I'm married to him!		,	
123.2	6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13	of to to of to about with for with at/by of with about shocked at/by ashamed of to at/by	123	1/2 3	15 with 16 of 17 about ("by" is also possible) 18 to 19 of 18 possible check your sentences 19 with someone who speaks 19 English. Here are some example 19 answers: 19 see examples 19 with 1

# **BÀI 124:** TÍNH TỪ + GIỚI TỪ (2)

Hãy xem bảng liệt kê các tính từ + giới từ sau đây:

sorry ABOUT something: lấy làm tiếc, hối tiếc về điều gì.

I'm sorry about the noise last night. We were having a party.

(Tôi xin tỗi về tiếng ôn đêm qua. Chúng tôi có tiệc).

nhưng sorry FOR doing something: hối tiếc vì đã làm gì.

I'm sorry for shouting at you yesterday.

(Tôi xin lỗi vì đã quát tháo bạn ngày hôm qua).

Thông thường chúng tạ hay nói: I'm sorry I...

I'm sorry I shouted at you yesterday.

(Tôi xin lỗi vì tôi đã quát tháo bạn ngày hộm qua).

(to feel / to be) sorry FOR someone: (cảm thấy) tội nghiệp si.

- 1 feet sorry for George. He has got no friends and no money.

(Tôi cầm thấy tội nghiệp cho George. Anh ta không có bạn và cũng chẳng có tiến). Impressed BY / WiTH someone / something: có ấn tượng / xúc động về...

I wasn't very impressed by / with the film.
 (Tôi không có ấn tượng gì nhiều về bộ phim đó.)

famous FOR something: nổi tiếng về...

- The Italian city od Florence is famous for its art treasures.

(Thành phố Florence của Ý nổi tiếng về những kho tàng nghệ thuật).

responsible FOR something: chiu trách nhiệm về...

Who was responsible for all that noise last night?
(Ai chiu trách nhiệm về tất cả những tiếng ôn ào tối hôm qua?).

different FROM (hoặc TO) someone / something: khác với...

The film was quite different from (or to) what 1 expected.

(Bộ phim hoàn toàn khác với những gì tôi mong đợi.)

Interested IN something: thích, quan tâm đến...

Are you interested in art and architecture?
(Ban có quan tâm đến nghệ thuật và kiến trúc không?)

capable / incapable OF something: có khả năng, đủ sức / không đủ khả nắng, không đủ sức làm điều gi:

I'm sure you are capable of passing the examination.
 (Tôi tin chắc rằng bạn có đủ khả năng vượt qua kỳ thi.)

fond OF someone / something: thích ai / cái gl:

Mary is very fond of animals. She has three cats and two dogs. (Mary rất thích súc vật. Cô ta có bà con mèo và hai con chó.)

full OF something: đầy (cái gì).

- The letter I wrote was full of mistakes. (Lá thư tôi viết đẩy lỗi.)

short OF something: thiểu (cái gi).

I'm a bit short of money. Can you lend me some?
(Tôi hơi kẹt tiền. Bạn có thể cho tôi mươn một ít không?)

tired OF something: chán (cái gi).

Come on, let's go! I'm tired of waiting. (Nào, ta đi thôi! Tôi chán cảnh chờ đợi lắm rồi.)

keen ON something: thích, quan tâm, nhiệt tính với...

- We stayed at home because Ann wasn't very keen on going out in the rain. (Chúng tôi đã ở nhà vì Ann không mấy thích thủ với việc đi chơi dười mưa.)
- similar TO something: tương tự như...
  - Your writing is similar to mine. (Chữ viết của anh tựa như chữ viết của tôi.)

crowded WITH (people v.v...): đẩy, đồng đúc... The city centre was crowded with tourists.

(Trung tâm thành phố đồng nghệt du khách.)

### **UNIT 124: Exercises**

124.1 In this exercise you have to complete the sentences. Each time use the most suitable word in the box with the correct preposition.

	different short	full similar	<del>sorry</del> tired	responsible capable	interested impressed
1 2 3	Can't stop	to talk to you ant to watch footba	now, I'm a bit . the football n II".		"No, thanks, I'm not
4	Your shoes	are	mine b	out they're not exactly	the same.
5	My new job did before:	b is a comple	tely new exper	ience for me. It's qui	te what I
6	Man is nov	·	destroyin	g the whole world wit	h nuclear weapons.
7 8 ·	i wasn't ve	ry	s to eat. The fi the service in	ridge is n the restaurant. We l	food: had to wait ages before
9		ave somethin hing day after		eat for a change? I'm	having
10	The editor	is	what appe	are in his newspaper	
			•	ct preposition. We were having a pa	rtv

- I'd rather not go to an Indian restaurant. I'm not very keen .
- 2 Ann is very fond ..... her younger brother.
- 3 This part of town is always very lively at night. It's usually crowded-s.
- in the Cupboard I found a box full ..... old letters.

I felt sorry ...... the children when we went on holiday. It rained every day and they had to spend most of the time indoors. 6. He said he was sorry ...... the situation but that there was nothing he could do. 7 Britain certainly isn't famous ...... its food. They looked bored. I don't think they were interested ...... what I was saying. 9 That man's very honest. He isn't capable ..... telling a lie. 10 The man we interviewed for the job was quite intelligent but we weren't very impressed ......his appearance. 11 Travelling is great at first but you get tired ...... it after a while. 12 Do you know anyone who might be interested ...... buying an old car? 13 Our house is similar ..... theirs - I think ours is a bit larger, 14 Bill and I come from the same town but my accent is different ...... his. 15 The police are responsible ...... maintaining law and order. 16. We're short ...... staff in our office at the moment. There aren't enough people to do the work that has to be done. 17 I'm sorry ........... the smell in this room. It's just been painted. KEY 124.1 2 short of 3 interested in 4 similar to 5 different from / to 6 capable of 7 full of 8 impressed with / by 9 tired of 10 responsible for 124.2 1 On: of-3 with 5 for about 7 for in 9 of 10 with/by 11 of 12 in

14 from / to

16 of

13 to

15 for

17 about

# Bài 125: ĐỘNG TỪ + GIỚI TỪ (1)

Hāy xem bảng liệt kê các động từ + giới từ sau đây:

apologise (TO someone) FOR something: xin lỗi (ai) về điều gì (xem thêm bài 60a):

When I realised I was wrong, I apologised to him for my mistake.
 (Khi tôi nhận ra là tôi sai, tôi đã xin lỗi anh ta về lỗi lầm của mình.)

apply FOR a job/a place at university v.v...: xin việc/xin học đại học:

I think this job would suit you. Why don't you apply for it? (Tôi nghĩ công việc này hợp với bạn đấy. Tại sao bạn không nộp đơn xin đị?)

believe IN something: tin (vào) điều gì:

- Do you believe in God? (= Do you believe that God exists?)
   (Ban có tin vào Thượng để không?) (= Ban có tin là có Thượng để không?)
- I believe in saying what I think. (= I believe that It is a good thing to say what I think)
   (To it in rang noi ra didu mình nghĩ là tốt.)

beiong TO someone: thuộc về ai.

Who does this coat belong to?
 (Cái áo khoác này của ai thế?)

care ABOUT someone/something: quan tâm đến ai/cái gì.

He is very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.
 (Anh ta rất ích kỳ, Anh ta chẳng quan tâm đến ai cầ.)

care FOR someone/something:

- i) thích cái gì đó (thường dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỗi)
- Would you care for a cup of coffee?
   (Ban có muốn uống một tách cà phê không?)
- I don't care for hot weather.
   (Tôi không thích thời tiết nóng nực.)
- ii) chăm sóc ai đó.
- She is very old. She needs someone to care for her. (Bà ta già lầm rồi. Bà ta cần có người chặm sóc.)

take care OF someone/something: chăm sóc ai/trông coi cái gl.

Have a nice holiday. Take care of yourself.
 (Di nghī vui vê nhê. Hāy nhô bảo trọng đấy!)

collide WITH someone/something: va chạm, đụng phải ai/cái gl.

There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

(Sáng nay có một tại nạn. Một chiếc xe buýt đụng phải một chiếc xe hơi.)

comptain (TO someone) ABOUT someone/something: phản nàn, than phiến (với ai) về ại/điều gì.

We complained to the manager of the restaurant about the food.
 (Chung tôi đã than phiên với người quần lý nhà hàng về thức ăn.)

concentrate ON something: tập trung vào việc gì:

Don't look out of the window. Concentrate on your work.
 (Đừng nhìn ra ngoài cửa số. Hây tập trung vào công việc đi.)

consist OF something; gồm, bao gồm cái gì.

We had an enormous meal. It consisted of seven courses. (Chúng tôi đã ăn một bữa linh đình. Nó gồm có bảy món.)

crash / drive / bump / run INTO someone/something: (lái xe) đâm sắm vào ai/cái gì.

He lost control of the car and crashed into a wall. (Ông ta lạc tay lái và đâm sắm vào một bức tường.)

depend ON someone/something: lê thuộc, tùy thuộc vào ai/điều gì:

"What time will you arrive?" "I don't know, it depends on the traffic". ("Bạn sẽ đến vào lúc mấy giớ?" "Tôi không biết nữa. Điều đó còn tùy thuộc vào tình trạng giao thông").

Ban có thể lược bỏ on trước các từ nghi vấn (when/where/how v.v...)

"Are you going to buy it?" "It depends (on) how much it is" ("Bạn sẽ mua nó chứ?" "Cái đó còn tùy thuộc vào giá tiến của nó"),

dle OF an illness: chết vì bênh đị,

"What did he die of?" "A heart attack". ("Ông ta chết vì bênh gì thế?" "Bênh đầu tim").

### INIT 125. Everciese

<b>, , ,</b>	
25.1	In this exercise you have to complete the sentences. Each time use one of the following words with the correct preposition: belong applied die concentrate believe crashed depends apologised
1	When I realised that I had taken the wrong umbrella, I immediately applogised for my mistake.
2	I was driving along when the car in front of me stopped suddenly. Unfortunately I couldn't stop in time and the back of it.
3	"Does this bag you?" "No, it isn't mine".
4	Don't try and do two things at once, one thing at a time.
5	
6	"Are you playing tennis tomorrow?" "I hope so, but it the weather".
7	If you smoke, there is a greater chance that you will lung cancer.
8	I don't ghosts. I think people only imagine that they see them.
25.2	Complete these sentences with a preposition (if a preposition is necessary).
, E	xample. There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.
1	He loves complaining. He complains everything.

2 Our neighbours complained ..... us ...... the noise we made last night.

She hasn't got a job. She depends ...... her parents for money.

You were very rude to Tom. Don't think you should apologise \_\_\_\_\_him?

Are you going to apologise .................................. what you did?

Tom and I ran ..... each other in town yesterday afternoon.

He decided to give up sport in order to concentrate his studies.  I don't believe working hard. It's not worth it.  A football team consists high and it's not worth it.  It is terrible that some people are dying hunger while others eat too much. It's least going out of the room, I collided some one who was coming in. There was an awful noise as the car crashed high the tree.  Do you belong how how to put in the correct preposition after care.  Example: He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.  Are you hungry? Would you care something to eat?  He doesn't care money. It's not worried whether he passes or fails. Please let me borrow your camera. I promise I'll take good care had. It.  I don't care money. It's not important to me.  Don't worry about arranging our holiday. I'll take care that.  "Do you like this coat?" "No, I don't care the colour".  KEY  125.1 2 crashed into 3 belong to 4 Concentrate on 5 applied for 6 depends on 7 die of 8 believe in  125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff 9 of 10 of		•				
8 I don't believe working hard. It's not worth it. 9 A football team consists	7	He decided to give up s	port in order to conce	entrate	his	studies.
10 It is terrible that some people are dying hunger while others eat too much.  11 As I was going out of the room, I collided someone who was coming in.  12 There was an awful noise as the car crashed	8		•			
11 As I was going out of the room, I collidedsomeone who was coming in 12 There was an awful noise as the car crashed the tree. 13 Do you belong a political party? how I feel. 14 I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends how I feel. 15.3 In this exercise you have to put in the correct preposition after care.  Example: He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.  1 Are you hungry? Would you care something to eat? 2 He doesn't care the examination. He's not worried whether he passes or fails and I don't care money. It's not important to me Don't worry about arranging our holiday. I'll take care that. 6 "Do you like this coat?" "No, I don't care the colour".  KEY  125.1 2 crashed into	9	A football team consists	11 pla	ıyers.		
12 There was an awful noise as the car crashed	10	It is terrible that some po	eople are dying	hunger v	vhile others	eat too much.
13 Do you belong			_			
125.3 In this exercise you have to put in the correct preposition after care.  Example: He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.  1 Are you hungry? Would you care	12	There was an awful nois	se as the car crashed		the tree	
Example: He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.  1	13	Do you belong	a political part	ty?		
Example: He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.  1    Are you hungry? Would you caresomething to eat?  2    He doesn't carethe examination. He's not worried whether he passes or fails  3    Please let me borrow your camera. I promise I'll take good careit.  4    I don't care money. It's not important to me.  5    Don't worry about arranging our holiday. I'll take care that.  6    "Do you like this coat?" "No, I don't care the colour".  KEY  125.1 2 crashed into	14	I don't know whether I'll	go out tonight. It dep	ends	ho	w I feel.
1 Are you hungry? Would you care something to eat? 2 He doesn't care the examination. He's not worried whether he passes or fails 3 Please let me borrow your camera. I promise I'll take good care	125.3	In this exercise you have	to put in the correct p	preposition at	ler care.	
1 Are you hungry? Would you care something to eat? 2 He doesn't care the examination. He's not worried whether he passes or fails 3 Please let me borrow your camera. I promise I'll take good care	Ex	ample: He's very selfish.	He doesn't care abo	ut other peop	ie.	
2 He doesn't carethe examination. He's not worried whether he passes or fails 3 Please let me borrow your camera. I promise I'll take good care		•				
Please let me borrow your camera. I promise I'll take good care			•			passes or fails
4   don't care money. It's not important to me. 5   Don't worry about arranging our holiday. I'll take care that. 6 "Do you like this coat?" "No, I don't care the colour".    KEY     125.1   2   crashed into   3   belong to   4   Concentrate on   5   applied for   6   depends on   7   die of   8   believe in     125.2   1   about   2   to   about   3   on   4   to   5   for   6   into   7   on   8   iff	_		· ·			•
5 Don't worry about arranging our holiday. I'll take care	-				<b>u</b> caro	
6 "Do you like this coat?" "No, I don't care			•		· th	at
KEY  125.1 2 crashed into 3 belong to 4 Concentrate on 5 applied for 6 depends on 7 die of 8 believe in  125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff	_	*	• •			а.,
125.1 2 crashed into 3 belong to 4 Concentrate on 5 applied for 6 depends on 7 die of 8 believe in  125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff	·		No, I don't cale		coloui .	
125.1 2 crashed into 3 belong to 4 Concentrate on 5 applied for 6 depends on 7 die of 8 believe in  125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff						
4 Concentrate on 5 applied for 6 depends on 7 die of 8 believe in 125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff	KE'	Ý	•			·
4 Concentrate on 5 applied for 6 depends on 7 die of 8 believe in 125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff	125.1	2 graphed into	3 bolone to	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-	
6 depends on 7 die of 8 believe in    125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff	123.1		<del></del>			. 🔨
8 believe in  125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff						
125.2 1 about 2 to about 3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff		•	/ QIE OI			-
3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff		8 Delieve in		F		
3 on 4 to 5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff	125.2	1 about	2 to about	* * ** ** ** *		•
5 for 6 into 7 on 8 iff	15014	· ·				
7 on 8 iff		= =				
				the second		•
		. ••••	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		•	

12 into

2 about

4 about 6 for

14 on (or "depends how I feel" - no preposition)

11 with

13 to

3 of

5 of

125.3 1 for

# BÀI 126: ĐỘNG TỪ + GIỚI TỪ (2)

Hãy xem bảng liệt kê các động từ + giới từ sau đây:

dream ABOUT someone / something: mơ về, mơ thấy, mơ đến ai / cái gì:

I dream about you last night.
 (Đêm qua tôi nằm mơ thấy bạn.)

dream OF being something / doing something: md, tưởng tượng trở thành cái gì / làm gì:

I often dream of being rich.
 (Tôi thường mơ mình trở nên giàu có.)

Ta cũng có thể nói: (I) wouldn't dream (of doing something): (tôi) không hế nghĩ đến...

"Don't tell anyone what I said" "No, I wouldn't dream of it".
("Đừng kể cho ai điều tôi đã nói". "Ó không, tôi không hể nghĩ đến chuyện đó".)

happen TO someone / something: xãy đến với ai / cái gì:

A strange thing happened to me the other day.
 (Ngày hôm kia có một điều lạ xảy đến với tôi.)

 What happened to that gold watch you used to have? (Chuyện gì đã xảy ra với cái đồng hổ vàng anh vẫn thường đeo?)

hear ABOUT something: nghe nói về điều gì.

- Did you hear about the fight in the club on Saturday night?
   (Ban có nghe nói về vụ ấu đả trong câu lạc bộ tối thứ Bây không?)
- Have you heard about Jane? She's getting married.
   (Ban đã nghe gì về Jane chưa? Cô ta sắp lấy chồng đấy.)

hear OF someone / something: nghe về, biết về ai / cái gì.

- "Who is Tom Madely?" "I have no idea. I've never heard of him".
   ("Tom Madely là ai thé?" "Tôi không biết. Tôi chưa bao giờ biết đến anh ta")
- Have you heard of a company called "Smith Electrics"?
   (Ben có nghe nói đến một công ty tên là "Smith Electrics" không?)

hear FROM someone: được tin ai.

- "Have you heard from Ann recently?" "Yes, she wrote to me last week".
("Gần đây bạn có được tin Ann không?" "Có, tuần trước cô ấy có viết thư cho tôi").

laugh / smile AT someone / something: cười / mim cười về ai / chuyện g).

I look stupid with this haircut. Everyone will laugh at me.
 (Tôi có vẻ ngổ với kiểu tóc này. Mọi người sẽ cười tôi mất thôi.)

listen TO someone / something: lång nghe ai / cái gì.

We spent the evening listening to records.
 (Chúng tôi dành buổi tối để nghe nhạc.)

live ON money / food: sống nhờ vào tiến / thức ăn.

 George's salary is very low. It isn't enough to live on. (Lương của George rất thấp. Nó không đủ sống.) look AT someone / something: nhìn ai / cái gì.

- Why are you looking at me like that? (Tai sao ban lai nhìn tôi như thế?)

Ta cũng có thể nói: have a look AT, stare AT, glance AT

look AFTER someone / something (= take care of): chăm sốc ai / trông coi cái gl.

- She's very old. She needs someone to look after her. (Bà ta già lắm rồi. Bà ta cần có người chăm sóc.)
- You can borrow this book if you promise to look after it.
   (Ban có thể mượn quyển sách này nếu bạn hứa giữ gìn nó cẩn thận.)

look FOR someone / something (= try to find): tìm kiếm ai / cái gì.

I've lost my keys. Can you help me look for them?
 (Tôi đã đánh mất chùm chia khóa rối. Bạn có thể giúp tôi tìm chúng không?)

pay (someone) FOR something: trả tiến (ai) về cái gì.

t didn't have enough money to pay for the meal.
 (Tôi không có đủ tiến để trả cho bữa ăn.)

Nhưng: pay a bill / a fine / £50 / a fare / taxes v.v... (không có giới từ). (thanh toán hóa đơn / đóng phạt / trả 50 bảng / trả tiền cước phí / đóng thuế v.v...)

rely ON someone / something : tin cây, tin tưởng ại / điều gì.

You can rely on Jack. He always keep his promise.
 (Ban có thể tin cậy Jack. Anh ta luôn luôn giữ lời hứa.)

### **UNIT 126: Exercises**

126.1	Complete these sentences. Each time use one of the following words with a preposition: rely listen look live laughing glanced paid happened
1	She's very old and can't live alone. She needs someone to look after her.
2	I haven't seen Harry for ages. I wonder what'shim.
3	You mustthis record. You'll love it.
4	ithe newspaper to see if there was anything interesting in it.
5	When you went to the theatre with Paul, who the tickets?
6	it's not a very good bus service. You can't it.
7	What are you? I don't understand what's funny.
8	It's a very cheap country. You canvery little money there.
26.2	Complete these sentences with a preposition (if a preposition is necessary).
Ех	cample: She smiled at me as she passed me in the street.
1	Don't listen what he says. He's stupid.
2	What happened the picture that used to be on that wall?
3	A: You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you?
	B: Of course not. I wouldn't dreamit.
4	I dreamt

5 6 7 8 9	The accident was my fault, so I had to pay
in	these sentences put in the correct preposition after hear.
11 12 13 14	"Did you hear
lń	these sentences put in the correct preposition after look.
.17 18 19	When I looked my watch, I couldn't believe that it was so late. " Who looked you when you were ill? The police are still looking the seven-year-old boy who disappeared from his home last week. Nobody knows where the boy is. When we went out for the evening, a neighbour of ours looked the children. I'm looking Tom. Have you seen him anywhere?
KE'	
126.1	2_happened to 3 listen to 4 glanced at 5 paid for 6 rely on 7 laughing at 8 live on
126.2	1 to 2 to 3 of 4 about 5 for 6 pay the bill (no preposition) 7 on 8 at 9 on 10 about 11 from 12 of 14 about
1	13 from 14 about 15 of 16 at 17 after 18 for 19 after 20 for

# **BÀI 127:** ĐỘNG TỪ + GIỚI TỪ (3)

Hãy xem bảng liệt kê các động từ + giới từ sau đây:

search (a person / a place / a bag v.v..) FOR someone / something: khám xét (một người / một ngi / một cái tùi v.v...) để tìm ai / cái gì:

- I've searched the whole house for my keys but. I still can't find them.
   (Tôi đã lục tung cả nhà lên để tìm chùm chìa khóa nhưng vẫn không tìm ra được.)
- The police are searching for the escaped prisoner. (Canh sát dang truy tìm tên tù vươt ngục.)

shout AT someone: quát tháo ai (khi giản dữ)

He was very angry and started shouting at me.
 (Anh ta đã nổi giản đùng dùng và bắt đầu quát tháo tôi.).

nhưng shout TO someone: la lớn (để người khác có thể nghe thấy bạn.)

He shouted to me from the other of the street.
 (Anh ta gọi to tên tôi từ bên kia đường.)

speak / talk TO someone: nói chuyển với ai.

- (on the telephone) Hello, can I speak to Jane, please?
   (trên điện thoại) (Alô, tôi nói chuyển với Jane được không s?)
- Who was that man I saw you talking to in the pub?
   (Người đàn ông mà tôi thấy cũng bạn chuyện trò trong quán rượu là ai thế?)

suffer FROM an illness: bi benh ol.

 The number of people suffering from heart disease has increased. (Số người bị bệnh tim đã gia tăng.)

think ABOUT someone / something; suy nghĩ về ai / điều gì:

- You're quiet this morning. What are you thinking about?
   (Săng nay bạn có vẻ trấm tư. Bạn đang nghì về chuyện gì thế?)
- I've thought about what you said and I've decided to take your advice:
   (Tôi đã suy nghĩ về điều bạn nói và đã quyết định nghe theo lời khuyên của bạn.)
- "Will you lend me the money?" "I'll think about it".
   (Ban se cho tôi mươn tiên chứ?" "Tôi sẽ xem xét chuyên đó").

think OF someone / something: nhỏ đến, nghĩ đến ai / điều gi.

- He told me his name but I can't think of it now. (không nói "think about it").
   (Anh ta đã cho tôi biết tên nhưng bây gið tôi không nhỏ ra được.)
- That's a good idea. Why didn't think of that?
   (Đó là một ý kiến hay. Tại sao tôi lại không nghĩ ra được nhỉ?)

Chúng ta cũng dùng thìnk OF khi chúng ta nêu ý kiến hoặc hỏi ý kiến người khác:

"What did you think of the film?" "I didn't think much of it".
 ("Ban nghī gì về bộ phim đó?" "Tôi không thích nó lắm.")

Sự khác biệt giữa thìnk OF và thìnk ABOUT đôi khi rất nhỏ. Thông thường ta có thể dùng cả OF lẫn ABOUT:

- My sister is thinking of (or about) going to Canada.
  - (Chị tôi đang suy xét việc đi Canada).

- Tom was thinking of (or about) buying a new car but changed his mind.
   (Tom đã nghĩ đến chuyên mua một chiếc xe hơi mới nhưng sau đó lại thay đổi ý định).
- When I'm alone, I often think of (or about) you.
   (Mỗi khi có đơn, anh thường nghĩ đến em.)

wait FOR someone / something: chở đợi ai / cái gì:

I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting for the rain to stop.
 (Tôi chưa đi ra ngoài. Tôi đang chờ mưa tạnh.)

write TO someone: viết thự cho ai.

Sorry I haven't written to you for such a long time.
 (Xin lỗi vì đã lâu quá rỗi tôi không viết thư cho ban.)

Chúng ta không dùng giới từ với các động từ sau đây: phone someone: gọi điện thoại cho ai.

Did you phone your father yesterday?
 (Hôm qua bạn có gọi điện thoại cho cha bạn không?)

discuss something: bản luận, bản bạc chuyện gì.

We discussed many things at the meeting. (Chung tội đã bàn luận nhiều việc tại buổi họp.)

enter (= go into a place): đi vào nơi nào đó.

She fett nervous as she entered the room.
 (Cô ta cảm thấy bối rối khi bước vào phòng.)

### UNIT 127: Exercises

127.1 Complete these sentences with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the sentence as it is.

Ex	ample: He was angry and started shouting at me.
1	I've seached everywhere John but I haven't been able to find him.
2	Ken gets very jealous. He doesn't like his girlfriend talking other men.
3	I don't want to go out yet. I'm waiting the post to arrive.
4	Please don't shout me! Be nice to me.
5	We passed Tom as we were driving along. I shouted him but he didn't hear.
6	Ann doesn't writeher parents very often but she phone
7	Can I speak you a moment? There's something I want to ask you.
8	Sally is often not well. She sufferssevere headaches.
9	The police have been searching the countrysidethe missing girl.
10	She's a bit lonely. She needs someone to talk
	I don't want to discuss what happened last night. I want to forget about it
12	We're going out for a meal tonight. I must phone the restaurant to

1 16	tnese senten emember that	ces you have t sometimes you	o use the correct can use either <b>o</b> f	of preposition or about.	on (of or abou	ut) after think.
13	Before you i	make a final dici	ision, think caref	ully	what I said	d.
14	I don't know	what to get Ann	n for her birthday	. Can you t	hink	anvthing?
15	You're selfis	h. You only thin	ık	vourself.		
			ent me". "Oh, ha			nkit?"
17	We're thinking	лд go	ing out for a mea	al tónight. V	Vould you like	to come?
. 18	l don't really excuse.	want to go out	to dinner with To	m tonight.	I'll have to thin	ık an
19	When he as	ked her to mar	ry him, she said e.	that she w	anted to go a	way and think
20	She is rathe	r homesick. She	e's always thinkir	na	her famil	v back home.
21	I don't think	much	this col	fee. It's like	water.	,
127.2	Complete the necessary.	ese sentences	with one of the	following	words. Use a	preposition if
				•	-	, proposition in
	phoned	discussed	entered	wrote	waited	shouted
1				wrote	waited	
1 2	He got angr	y and shouted a	t me.			shouted
-	He got angr	y and <u>shouted a</u> Ann last w	t me. eek but she has	n't replied to	o my letter yet	shouted
2	He got angr	y and <u>shouted a</u> Ann last w Tom yeste	it me. eek but she has rday but there w	n't replied to as no answ	o my letter yet rer. He must h	shouted
2 3	He got angr	y and shouted a Ann last w Tom yeste the prob	t me. eek but she has	n't replied to as no answ t reach a do	o my letter yet er. He must h ecision.	shouted

# KEY.

127.1	1	for		14	of
	2	to ("with" is possible)			of/about
	3	for			of
•	4	at '	•		of/about
	5	to			of
	6	write to her parents she		_	about
		phones them (no preposition)			of/about
	7	to ("with" is possible)		21	
	8	from			
	9	for	127.2	2	wrote to
	10	to (*with" is possible)		3	phoned (no preposition)
		discuss what happened (no		4	discussed (no preposition)
		preposition)		5	waited for
	12	phone the restaurant (no		6	entered (no preposition)
		preposition)			, , ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	13	about			

# **BÀI 128:** ĐỘNG TỪ + TÚC TỪ + GIỚI TỪ (1)

Hāy xem bảng liệt kê các động từ + túc từ + giới từ sau đây:

accuse someone OF doing something: tổ các ai đã làm gì (xem thêm bài 60b):

- Tom accused Ann of being selfish.

(Tom buộc tôi Ann là ích kỷ).

Three students were accused of cheating in the examination.
 (Ba sinh viên bi tố cáo là đã gian lận trong kỳ thi.)

ask (someone) FOR something: hôi (ai) về điều gì / hỏi xin ai cái gì:

I wrote to the company asking them for more information about the job.
 (Tôi đã viết thư cho công ty để hỏi thêm chi tiết về công việc đó.)

nhưng: "ask (someone) a question (không có giới tử); hỗi (ai) một câu hỗi. blame someone / something FOR something: để lỗi cho ai / cái gì về chuyện gì:

Everybody blamed me far the accident.
 (Moi người đều đổ lỗi cho tôi về tai nạn đó.)

hoặc: blame something ON someone / something:

Everybody blamed the accident on me.
 (Mọi người đều đổ lỗi cho tôi về tại nạn đó.)

Chúng ta cũng có thể nói: "(someone is) to blame for something": (ai đó) có lỗi trong chuyên gì.

Everybody said that I was to blame for the accident.
 (Moi người đều nói rằng tôi có lỗi trong tại nạn đó.)

borrow something FROM someone: mượn cái gì của ai.

I didn't have any money. I had to borrow some from a friend of mine.
 (Tôi chẳng có đồng nào cả. Tôi đã phải mượn một người bạn của tôi ít tiến.)

charge someone WITH (an offence / a crime): buộc tội ai (đã phạm pháp / phạm tôi hình sự):

- Three man have been arrested and charged with robbery.
- (Ba người dàn ông đã bị bắt và bị buộc tội ăn cướp.)

congratulate someone ON (doing) something: chúc mừng ai làm được điều gì (xem thêm bài 60b).

When I heard that he passed his examination, I phoned him to congratulate him on his success.

(Khi tôi hay tin anh la thi đậu, tôi đã gọi điển thoại để chúc mừng sự thành công của anh ta.)

divide / cut / split something INTO (two or more parts): chia / cât câi gì thành {hai hay nhiều phần):

- The book is divided into three parts.
   (Cuốn sách được chía thành ba phần.)
- Cut the meat into small pieces before frying it.
   (Hāy cắt thịt ra thành những miếng nhỏ trước khi rắn.)

do something ABOUT something: làm gì để cải thiên (một tình trạng xấu):

 The economic situation is getting worse and worse. The government ought to do something about it.

(Tình hình kinh tế càng ngày càng xấu đi. Chính phủ cần phải làm một điều gì đó để cải thiện nó.)

explain (a problem / a situation / a word v.v...) TO someone: giải thích (một vấn để / một tình hướng / một từ v.v...) cho ai hiểu:

Can you explain this word to me? (không nói "explain me this word")
 (Ban có thể giải thích cho tôi chữ này không?)

Ta cũng có thể nói: "explain (to someone) that / what / how / why..." (hāy lưu ý đến trật tự từ).

- Let me explain to you what I mean.

(Để tôi giải thích cho bạn điều tôi muốn nói.)

Invite someone TO (a party / a wedding, v.v...): mởi ai đến (dự tiệc dự tiệc cưới v.v...):

- Have you been invited to any parties recently?

(Gần đây bạn có được mời đến dự bữa tiệc nào không?)

leave (a place) FOR (another place): rời khỏi (một shỗ) để đến (một chỗ khác).

I haven't seen her since she left home for work this morning.
 (Tôi chưa gặp cô ta từ lúc cô ta rời khỏi nhà để đi làm sáng nay.)

point / aim something AT someone / something: chĩa, chỉ cái gì vào ại / cái gì:

Don't point that knife at me! it's dangerous.

(Đừng chĩa con dao đó vào tôi! Như thế nguy hiểm đấy.)

### **UNIT 128: Exercises**

	Complete these sentences with a preposition.
<b>C</b> X	nample: I didn't have any money, so I had to borrow some from a friend of mine.
1	You're always asking me money. Why don't you ask someone else for a change?
2	I've been invited the wedding but unfortunately I can't go.
3	When I saw Dave, I congratulated him passing his driving test.
4	Be careful with those scissors. Don't point them me!
5	It's not very pleasant when you are accused something you didn't do.
6	The driver of the car was taken to the police station and later charged
7	"Is that your own book?" "No, I borrowed it the library".
8	It's a very large house. It's divided four flats.
9	Mr and Mrs Roberts are on a tour of Europe at the moment. They're in Rome now, but tomorrow they leave
10	The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we ought to do something

		•			
		nis exercise you have to use the o to use for, and sometimes on.	correct pr	epo:	sition after blame. Sometimes you
1 2 3 4	An Yo Do Do I th	vies: Tom said that the accident was Tom said that the accident was no said that what happened was Jimus always say that everything is my byou think that the economic situally you blame the government	as my fau m's fault. / fault. Yo tion is the me is the	ilt. T Ann u al fau faul	om blamed the accident on me. blamed Jim ways blame everything lit of the government??
. <i>Ex</i> 5 (	<i>amp</i> (3) D	e-write sentences 3 and 4 using tele: Tom said that I was to blame to you think that the government is think that	or the ac	cide	ent.
		his exercise you have to make s ain somethings that you don't unde		usii	ng explain. You ask someone to
Ex	amp	oles: (I don't understand this word			
		(I don't understand what ye	ou mean)	) Ci	an you explain to me what you
mean'	2				
1	(1 c	ion't understand this question.) Ca	an you ex	plair	n?
2	(Lo	ion't understand the system.) Can	you		?
3		ion't understand how this machine			
4	(I ć	don't understand why English food	is so bac	J.)	7 * * 1 * 5 * 5 * 5 * 5 * 5 * 5 * 6 * 60 * 60 *
KE	Y			. •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
128.1	1	for		5	Do you think that the
	2	to			government is to blame for the
	3	on .			economic situation?
	4	at		6	I think that television is to blame
	5 6	of with			for the increase in violent crime.
	7	from	128.3	1	Can you explain this question to
	8	into			me?
	9	for		2	
	10	about		3	me?
128.2	1	Ann blamed Jim for what		3	Can you explain to me how this machine works?
	happened.			4	
	2	You always blame everything on	ı	-	English food is so bad?
		me.			
		iiiQ.			•
	3	Do you blame the government			
		Do you blame the government for the economic situation?			
	3	Do you blame the government			

# **BÀI 129:** ĐỘNG TỪ + TÚC TỪ + GIỚI TỪ (2)

Hãy xem bảng liệt kê các động từ + túc từ + giới từ sau đây:

prefer someone / something TO someone / something: thích ai / cái gì hơn ai / cái gì (xem thêm bài 64):

1 prefer tea to coffee. (Tôi thích trà hơn cả phê.)

protect someone / something FROM (or against) someone / something: che chỗ, bảo vê ai / cái gì tránh khỗi ai / cái gì:

He put sun-tan oil on his body to protect his skin from the sun. (or... against the sun.)

(Anh ta đã thoa dẫu chống nắng lên người để bảo vệ da khỏi ánh nắng mặt trời.)

provide someone WITH something: cung cấp cho ại cái gì:

The school provides all its students with books. (Trường học cung cấp sách cho tất cả học sinh.)

regard someone / something AS something: xem ai / cái gl như...

I've always regarded you as one of my best friends.
(Tôi đã luôn xem anh như một trong những người ban tốt nhất của tội.)

remind someone OF someone / something: nhắc / gợi / làm cho ai nhớ đến ai đó / điều gì:

- This house reminds me of the one I lived in when I was a child.
  (Ngôi nhà này làm cho tôi nhở đến ngôi nhà tôi đã sống khi còn bé.)
- Look at this photograph of Tom. Who does he remind you of?
   (Hây xem tấm ảnh của Tom đây. Anh ta làm bạn nhớ đến ai?)

nhưng: remind someone ABOUT something: nhắc nhở ai về điều gì:

I'm glad you reminded me about the party, I had completed forgotten it. (Tôi rất mùng là bạn đã nhắc tôi về bữa tiệc. Tôi đã hoàn toàn quên bằng đi.) Về "remind someone to do something", xem bài 55b.

sentence someone TO (a period of imprisonment): kết án ai (một thời gian tù):

He was found guilty and sentenced to six months' imprisonment. (Anh ta bị xem là có tội và đã bị kết án 6 tháng tù.)
spend (money) ON something: tiêu xải, dùng (tiên) vào việc gì:

How much money do you spend on tood each week?
 (Ban tôn bao nhiều tiến để ăn ướng hàng tuần?)

Hãy lưu ý rằng chúng ta thường nói "spend (tìme) doing something" (dành thời gian để làm việc gì).

I spent a lot of time reading.
 (Tôi đã dành nhiều thì giờ để đọc sách.)

throw something AT someone / something: ném vật gì vào ai / cái gì:

Someone threw an egg at the minister while he was speaking.
 (Ai đó đã ném một quả trứng vào ông bộ trưởng khi ông ta đang phát biểu.)

nhưng: throw something TO someone: ném cái gì cho ai (để người đó bắt lấy).

Ann shouted "Catch!" and threw the keys to me from the window. (Ann la lên: "Bất lấy!" và ném chùm chia khóa cho tôi từ cửa số.)

translate (a book v.v...) FROM one language INTO another one: dich (một quyển sách...) từ ngôn ngữ này sang ngôn ngữ khác.

George Orwell's books have been translated into many languages. (Sách của George Orwell đã được dịch sang nhiều thứ tiếng.)

warn someone ABOUT someone / something (đôi khi có thể dùng OF): lưu ý, cảnh cáo, báo cho ai biết trước về ai đó / cái gì:

- I knew she was a bit strange before I met her. Tom had warned me about her. (Trước khi gặp cô ta, tôi đã biết cô ta hơi kỳ quặc. Tom đã báo cho tôi biết trước về cô ta.)
- Everybody has been warned about the dangers of smoking. (Moi người đã được cảnh cáo về các điều nguy hiểm của việc hút thuốc là.)

Về "warn someone against doing something", xem bài 60b.

Vé "warn someone not to do something", xem bài 55b.

### UNIT 129: Exercises

129.1 In this e	xercise you have to read a sentence and then complete another sentence will
the same	meaning. Each time begin in the way shown.
Example:	Many people think he is one of the greatest planists in the world.
	Many people regard him so one of the greatest pignists in the world:

1	I don't mind pop music but I prefer classical music.
2	He has enemies but he has a bodyguard to protect him.  He has a bodyguard to protecthis enemies.
3	I got all the information I needed from Tom.  Tom provided
4	bought a pair of shoes this morning - they cost 40.  This morning I spent
5	Ann said to Tom, "Don't forget your appointment with Mr Fox".  Ann reminded
9.2	Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.

Example: Ann shouted "Catch!" and threw the keys to me from the window.

- Do you prefer your present job ...... the one you had before?
- 2 They were warm clothes to protect themselves ..... the cold.
- 3 He's written many books but most people regard his first book ...... his best.
- Do you spend much money ..... clothes?
- Do you see that girl over there? Does she remind you ...... anyone you know?

6 Remind me ....... the meeting tomorrow night, I'm sure to forget otherwise. 7 I love this music. It always makes me feel very happy. It reminds me ......... a warm spring day. 8 When we went on our skiing holiday last year, the organisers provided us ........ all the equipment we needed. 9 Before he came to Britain, many people had warned him ..... the weather. So he was prepared for plenty of rain. 10 He was sentenced ......life imprisonment for the murder of a policeman. 11 Don't throw stones .\_\_\_\_\_ the birdsl it's cruel. 12 If you don't want to eat that sandwich, throw it ...... the birds. They'll eat it. 13 I couldn't understand the letter because it was in Spanish. So a friend of mine translated it ..... English for me. 14. I prefer travelling by train ...... driving. It's much more pleasant. 15 What do you spend most of your money .....? 16 She got really angry. She even threw a chair .\_\_\_\_\_ me! 17 You remind me very much ...... someone I used to know a long time ago. You are really like him in many ways. 18 Some words are difficult to translate ........... one language ........... another, 19 Before you go into the house, I must warn you ...... the dog. He can be very aggressive sometimes.

2 He has a bodyguard to protect him from (or against) his enemies.

3 Tom provided me with all the information I needed. 4 This morning I spent 40 on a pair of shoes.

5 Ann reminded Tom about his appointment with Mr Fex.

18 from... into

### **KEY**

	-	
129.2	1 to .	2 from/against
	3 as	4 on
	5 of	6 about
	7 of	8 with
	9 about	10 to
	11 at	12 to
	13 into	14 to
	15 on	16∙at

17 of

19 about

129.1 1 I prefer classical music to pop music.

# BÀI 130: ĐỘNG TỪ KÉP

(get up, break down, fill in v.v...)

,	on back	off over	In about	với những c out round	up forward	down through	away along
- 'hí						hỉ sự di chuyể	_
	get on (/	ên xe):	The b (Xe b được	uýt đã chật d	We couldn't go cứng. Chúng to	et on. ôi không thể n	ào leo lên
	drive off	•	She g	ot into the c	ar and <i>drive o</i> : hơi rối lái đi.)	ff.	
		ick (trở về): und (quay )	<i>(Tom</i> <i>ai):</i> When	<i>sẽ đi vào ng</i> I touched h	<i>pày mai và trở</i> im on the shoi	ming back on về vào thứ Bả ulder, he tưme	iy.)
ha	Nhưng th	เมติกฐ nhữn Thí du			vai anh ta, an down v.v)		r nghĩa đặc biệt
oh	(Xin I Look (Coi d It was (Đó li V I was How (Hôm Những đơ rasal verb	r I'm late. T lỗi vì tôi đếi out! There' chừng! Có : s my first fli à lần đi má : so tired th g nay tôi m đi dyou gel ir qua bạn la ộng từ này is).	n trễ. Xe hơ sa car com một chiếc x ght. I was v y bay đầu i is morning fệt mỏi đến on in your chim bài thi rư (break dow	ti của tôi bị h ning. re hơi đang c very nervous tiến của tôi. that I couldn độ không dá examination a sao?) tn / get up / (	iến đấy.)  as the plane Tôi rất bốn chi t get ưp. iy nổi.) yesterday?	ớn khi máy ba ược gọi là <b>độ</b> r	ng từ kép
)	Đời khi n hai vị trí k	nột động từ chác nhau.	í kép có <i>tú</i> Thí dụ bạn	c từ theo sa có thể nói:	u. Thông thướ	ờng một túc từ	r có thể đứng ở
	i turned d (Tôi đã tắ		-	c I turned t	ic từ ———————————————————————————————————	· ·	
	Sau đây i	là một số ti	ní dụ khác:				
	Could	i you nây điển và	L fill this	his form? s form <i>in</i> ? này)			•
	· It's wa	arm.	•	<i>off your coat</i> your coat off			
	(Trời	ấm mà. Hâ			• •		

The fire-brigade soon arrived and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ put out the fire.

put the fire out.

(Đội cứu hỏa đến ngay và dập tắt đám cháy.)

I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ throw away these old newspapers.

throw these old newspapers away.

(Tôi nghĩ tôi sẽ vứt những tờ báo cũ này đi.)

The police got-into the house by \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ breaking down the door.

breaking the door down.

(Cảnh sát vào nhà bằng cách phá cửa.)

Đôi khi túc từ của động từ kép là một đại từ (it / them / me / you / him / her / us). Những đại từ này thường đứng trước on / off / in / out / up / down v.v...

- They gave me a form and told me to fill it in. (không nói "to fill in it") (Ho đưa cho tôi một mẫu đơn và bảo tôi điển vào chỗ trống.)
- Ann's asleep. Don't wake her up. (không nói "wake up her")
   (Ann đang ngủ. Đừng đánh thức có ta.)
- "What shall I do with these old newspapers?" "Throw them away".
   ("Tôi nên làm gì với những tờ báo cũ này?" "Vút chúng đị".)
- Here's the money you need. Don't forget to pay me back.

(Đây là số tiến anh cần. Đừng quên trả lại tôi đầy nhé.)

- c) Đôi khi chúng tả dùng một **động từ kép + giới từ.** Thí dụ: look forward *to (mong đợi)* / keep up with (theo kip) / cut down on (giảm bởi). Túc từ luôn luôn đi šau giới từ:
  - Are you looking forward to your holiday?
     (Ban có mong đợi kỳ nghỉ đến không?)
  - You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.
     (Ban di nhanh quá. Tôi không thể theo kio ban.)
  - Jack has cut down on smoking. He only smokes five cigarettes a day now. (Jack đã bởt hút thuốc. Hiện giờ anh ta chỉ hút năm điểu mỗi ngày thôi.)

### **UNIT 130: Exercises**

130.1 In this exercise you have to complete the sentences using a suitable phrasal verb from the box. Use the correct form of the verb each time.

break down
speak up (= become bright- for get on
speak up (= speak louder)
turn up (= appear/arrive)
close down
sclear up (= become bright- for get on
weather)
show off (= show how good you are
at something)
show off (= show how good you are
at something)

- 1 Be careful on that horse! Don't fail off!
- 2 Sorry I'm late. The car broke down on the way here.
- 3 How did you ......in your interview yesterday?
- 4 There used to be a very good shop on the corner but it ................ a year ago.

5	"We've bought a new house". "Oh, have you? When are you?"
6	Wayne is eight years old. When he, he wants to be a pilot.
7	I arranged to meet Jim after work last night but he didn't
8	The weather's horrible, isn't it? I hope it
9	We all know how wonderful you are. There's no need to
10	(on the telephone) I can't hear you very well. Can you a bit?
130.2	Complete these sentences as shown in the examples:
Ex	amples: He told me to fill in the form, so I filled it in.
	He told me to throw away the newspapers, so I threw them away.
1	He told me to put out my cigarette, so !
2	He told me to take off my shoes, so I
3	He told me to turn on the heating, so
4	He told me to ring up Ann, so
5	
. 6	He told me to put on my glasses, so
· 7	He told me to write down my address, so
loc	Complete these sentences using a suitable phrasal verb from the box. Whe ecessary use the past tense of the verb. Each time use It I them I me with the verb kup wake up turb them shave off sk up cross out knock out try on
1	The radio is a bit loud. Can you turn it down a bit, please?
2	There was a 20 note lying on the pavement, so I
-3	The children are asleep. Don't
4	If you make a mistake, just
5	I saw a jacket which I liked in the shop. So I went in and to see if it fitted m
6	There were a few words that I didn't understand, so I in my dictionary.
7	He had a beard for a long time but he got fed up with it. So he
8	A stone fell on my head and I was unconscibus for half an hour.

# KEY

- **130**.1 3
- get on closed down
  - moving in
  - grows up

- 7 turn up
- 8 clears up (or will clear up)
- 9 show off
- 10 speak up
- 130.2 1 | I put it out.
  - 2 I took them off.
  - 3 I turned it on.
  - 4 I rang her up.
  - 5 I gave it up.
  - 6 I put them on.
  - 7 I wrote it down.
- 130.3 2 picked it up
  - 3 wake them up
  - 4 cross it out
  - 5 tried it on
  - 6 looked them up
  - 7 shaved it off
  - 8 knocked me out

### PHŲ LŲC 1:

### DANH MỤC CÁC THÌ HIỆN TẠI VÀ QUÁ KHỨ

#### Hiện tại đơn (simple present) i do (Bài 2-4)

- ! work in a bank but ! don't enjoy it very much.
   (Tôi làm việc ở một ngân hàng nhưng tôi không thích nó lắm.)
- Tom watches television every evening.
   (Tom xem truyén hình mỗi tối.)
- Do you like parties?
   (Anh thich tiéc tùng không?)
- We don't go out very often. We usually stay at home.
   (Chúng tôi không đi chơi thường lâm. Chúng tôi thường ở nhà.)

#### Hiện tại tiếp diễn (Present continuous) I am doing (Bài 1,3 và 4)

- Please don't disturb me. I'm working.
   (Xin đừng làm phiên tôi. Tôi đang làm việc.)
- What's Tom doing?" "He's watching television".
   ("Tom dang làm g)?" "Anh ấy đang xem truyền hình".)
- Hello, Ann. Are you enjoying the party?
   (Chào Ann. Cô thích bữa tiệc chứ?)
- We aren't going to the party tomorrow night. (Chúng ta sẽ không đi dự tiệc tối mai.)

### Hiện tại hoàn thành (Present perfect) / have done (Bài 13-21)

- l've lost my key. Have you seen it any where?
   (Tôi đã mất chia khóa rồi. Bạn có nhìn thấy nó đậu không?)
- "Is Tom here?" "No, he has gone home". ("Phải Tom ở đây không?" "Không, câu ấy đã đi về nhà rồi".)
- How long have they been married? (Ho đã lấy nhau được bao làu rối?)
- The house is very dirty. We haven't cleaned it for weeks.
   (Nhà dơ quá. Chúng ta đã không lau nó mấy tuần rồi.)

#### Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn (Present perfect continuous) I have been doing (Bài 16-18)

- I'm tired. I've been working hard all day.
   (Tôi mệt. Tôi đã làm việc vất và suốt ngày.)
- You're out of breath. Have you been running?
   (Anh thở hết hơi rồi. Phải anh đã chạy suốt không?)
- How long has he been learning English?
   (Anh ấy đã học tiếng Anh được bao lâu rồi?)
- I haven't been feeling very well recently.
   (Gán đây tôi đã không cảm thấy khỏe lắm.)

#### Quá khứ đơn (simple past) / did (Bài 11)

- I lost my key yesterday.
   (Tôi mất chìa khóa ngày hôm qua.)
- They went to the cinema but they didn't enjoy the film.
   (Ho đã đi xem xinê nhưng họ không thích cuốn phim.)
- What time did you get up this morning? (Sáng nay anh thức dây lúc mấy giờ?)
- It was not in the room, so she opened the window.
   (Trong phong khá nóng, vì thể có ta đã mở cửa số.)

#### Quá khứ tiếp diễn (Past continuous) / was doing (Bài 12)

- When I arrived, Tom was watching television.
   (Khi tôi đến, Tom đang xem truyền hình.)
- This time last year I was living in Brazil.
   (Giờ này năm ngoái tôi đang sống ở Brazil.)
- What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?
   (Lúc 10 giờ tối qua ban đạng làm gì?)
- The television was on but they weren't watching it. (Truyén hình đã mở nhưng họ không xem nó.)

#### Quá khứ hoàn thành (Past perfect) / had done (Bài 22)

- I couldn't get into the house because I had lost my key.
   (Tôi không thể vào nhà bởi vì tôi đã đánh mất chìa khóa.)
- When I arrived at the party, Tom wasn't there. He had gone home. (Khi tôi đến dự tiệc, Tom không có ở đó. Cậu ấy đã về nhà rối.)
- They didn't come to the cinema with us because they had already seen the film.
   (Ho đã không đến rạp xinê với chúng tôi bởi vì họ đã xem phim đô rồi.)
- The house was dirty because we hadn't cleaned it for weeks.
   (Căn nhà thật đơ bởi vì chúng tôi đã không lau nó mấy tuần rồi.)

### Quá khử hoàn thành tiếp diễn (Past perfect continuous) / had been doing (Bài 23)

- I was very tired. I had been working hard all day.
   (Tôi đã mệt lắm rồi. Tôi đã làm việc vất vả suốt ngày.)
- He was leaning against a wall, out of breath. He had been running. (Anh ta dang dựa vào tường thở hết hơi. Anh ta đã chạy suốt.)

### PHŲ LŲC 2:

# ĐỘNG TỪ QUI TẮC VÀ BẤT QUI TẮC

Động từ qui tắc (Regular verbs)

Quá khứ đơn (simple past) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle) của những động từ qui tắc là thêm -ed ở cuối động từ. Ví dụ:

nguyên mẫu quá khứ đơn, quá khứ phân từ: Về luật chính tả xem phụ lục 3,	clean cleaned	improve improved	paint painted	carry carried	
--	------------------	---------------------	------------------	------------------	--

Về quá khứ đơn xem bài 11.

Chúng ta dùng **quá khứ phân từ** để tạo thành các **thì hoàn thành** (perfect tenses) (have / has / had cleaned) và cho tất cả các dạng bị động (passive) (xem bài 42-4):

- I cleaned my room yesterday. (quá khú đơn)
   (Hôm qua tôi đã lau phòng mình.)
- Your English has improved. (hiện tại hoàn thành Bài 13-21)
   (Tiếng Anh của bạn đã được cải thiện.)
- The house was dirty. We hadn't cleaned it for a long time. (quá khủ hoàn thành -Bài 22)

(Nhà đơ thật. Chúng ta đã không lau nó lâu rối.)

- This door has just been painted. (hiện tại hoàn thành bị động)
   (Cánh cửa này đã vừa mới được sơn.)
- He was carried out of the room. (quá khứ đơn bị động).
   (Nó đã được bế ra khỏi phòng.)

Khi quá khứ đơn và quá khứ phân từ không tận cùng bằng -ed thì đó là động từ bất qui tắc (irregular).

Những động từ dưới đây có thể là qui tắc hay bất qui tắc:

nguyên mẫu	quá khứ đơn nguyên mẫu quá khứ phân từ			nguyên mẫu	quá khử đơn quá khử phân từ		
burn	burnt	hay	burned	smell	smelt	hay	smelled
dream	dreamt	hay	dreamed	spell	spelt	hay	spelled
lean	leant.	hay	ieaned	spiil	spilt	hay	spilled
learn	learnt	hay	learned	spoil	spoilt	hay	spoiled

Vì thế bạn có thể nói:

- I leant out of the window. hay

I leaned out of the window.

(Tôi nghiệng ra ngoài cửa số.)
The dinner has been spoilt.

The dinner has been spailed.

(Bữa ăn tối đã hỏng.)

Trong tiếng Anh hình thức bất qui tắc (burnt/learnt v.v...) được dùng nhiều hơn.

hay

#### 3. Dộng từ bất qui tắc (Irregular verbs)

Có một số động từ bất qui tắc có cả 3 hình thúc giống nhau (nguyên mẫu, qua khứ đơn, quá khứ phân từ). Thí du: hit:

- Someone hit me as I came into the room. (quá khứ đơn)
   (Người nào đó đã đụng tối lúc tôi vào phòng.)
- I've never hit anyone in my life. (quá khứ phân từ) (Trong đời của mình tội chưa hể đánh ai.)
- George was hit on the head by a stone (quá khứ phân từ)
   (George bị một viên đá va vào đấu.)

Có một số động từ bất qui tắc khác có *quá khứ đơn* giống quá khứ phân từ (nhưng khác nguyên mẫu). Thí dụ: tell - told.

- He told me to come back the next day. (quá khử đơn)
   (Ông ta bảo tối trở lại ngày hôm sau.)
- Have you told anyone about your new job? (quá khứ phân từ)
   (Anh có bảo ai về việc làm mởi của anh không?)
- I was told to come back the next day. (quá khứ phân từ)
   (Tôi được bảo trở lại ngày hôm sau.)

Có những động từ bất qui tắc có cả 3 hình thức *khác nhau.* Thí dụ: **break** - *broke* - *broken*:

- He broke his arm in a climbing accident. (quá khử đơn)
   (Ông ta đã gây tay trong một tai nạn leo núi.)
- Somebody has broken the window. (quá khứ phân từ)
   (Người nào đó đã làm vở kinh cửa sổ.)
- When was the window broken? (quá khứ phân từ)
   (Kính cửa sổ bị vỡ lúc nào vậy?)

### 4. List of irregular verbs (Bảng động từ bất qui tắc)

Infinitive	past simple	past participle		infinitive	past simple	past participle
be	was/were	been	1	buy	bought	bought
beat	beat	beaten		catch	caught	caught
become	became	become		choose	chose	chosen
begin	began	begun		come	came	come
bend	bent	bent		cost	cost	cost
bet	bet	bet		cut	cut	cut
bite	bit	bitten		deal	dealt	dealt
blow	blew	blown		dig	dug	dug
break	broke	broken		do	did	done
bring	brought	brought		draw	drew	drawn
build	built	built	]	drink	drank-	drunk
burst	burst	burst		drive	drove	driven

eat	ate	eaten	т-	T		<del></del>
fall .	fell	fallen		S86	saw	seen
feed	fed	fed		seek	sought	sought
feel	felt	feit	1	sell	sold	sold
fight	fought	fought	]	set	sent	sent
find	found	found	1		set	set
fly	flew	flown		sew shake	sewed	sewn/sewed
forbid	forbade	forbidden			shook	shaken
forget	forgot	forgotten		shine shoot	shone	shone
forgive	forgave	forgiven		show	shot	shot
freeze	froze	frozen	1	1	showed	shown
get	got	got .		shrink	shrank	shrunk
give	gave	•		shut	shut	shut
go	yave went	given	1 :	sing	sang	sung
grow	grew	gone		sink	sank	sunk
hang	hung	grown		sit	sat	sat
have	nung had	hung had		sleep	slept *	slept
hear	heard		1	speak	spoke	spoken
hide	hid	heard		spend	spent	spent
hit	hit	hidden	1 1	split	split	split
hold	held	hit		spread	spread	spread
hurt	hurt	held		spring	sprang	sprung
		hurt		stand	stood	stood
keep	kept	kept	i i	steal	stole	stolen
know	knew	known		stick	stuck	stuck
lay	laid	laid		sting	stung	stung
lead	led	fed	+ 1	stink	stank.	stunk
leave	left	left	:.	strike	struck	struck
lend	lent	lent		swear	swore	sworn
let 	let	let		sweep	swept	swept
lie	lay 	lain		swim	swam	swum
light	lit	lit	] [	swing	swung	swung
lose	lost	lost	1 1	take	took	taken
make	made	made		teach	taught	taught
mean	meant	meant		tear	tore	torn
meet	met	met		tefl	told	told
pay	paid	paid		think	thought	thought
put	put	put	] ]	throw	threw	thrown
read/ri:d/	read/red/	read/red/	]	understant	understood	understood
ride	rode	ridden		wake	woke ·	woken
ring	rang	rung		wèar	wore	worn
rise	rose	risen		<b>w</b> in	won	won
run	ran	run		write	wrote	written
say	said	said	1 1		•	

### PHU LUC 3:

# CHÍNH TẢ (SPELLING)

Các danh từ, động từ và tính từ có thể có tận cùng (ending) là:

danh từ + -s/es (số nhiều) động từ + -s/es (sau he/she/it) động từ + -Ing động từ + -ed tính từ + -er (so sánh hơn)	books works working worked cheaper	ideas enjoys enjoying enjoyed quicker	matches washes washing washed brighter
tính từ + -est (cực cấp)	cheapest	quickest	brightest
tính từ + -ly (trạng từ)	cheaply	quickly	brightly

Khi dùng các tận cùng này, đôi khi có sự thay đổi về chính tả. Hãy xem những thay đổi ở dạnh sách dưới đây:

Nguyên âm và phụ âm a,e,o,u,i là nguyên âm (vowel). Các mẫu tự khác (b,c,d,f v.v...) là *phụ âm* (consonant).

Danh từ và động từ + -s/es
 Khi một từ tận cùng bằng -s/-ss/-sh/-ch/-x thì ta thêm -es:

match / matches

bus / buses

box / boxes

wash / washes

miss / misses

search / searches

Cũng lưu ý:

potato / potatoes do / does tomato / tomatoes go / goes

Các từ tận cùng bằng y (baby, carry, easy v.v...)
 Nếu một từ tận cùng là một phụ âm + y (-by/-ry/-sy v.v...);

v đổi thành ie trước khi thêm -s: secretary/secretaries country/countries lorry/lorries baby/babies apply/applies try/tries study/studies hurry/hurries y đổi thành i trước khi thêm -ed: apply/applied try/tried study/studied hurry/hurried y đổi thành i trước khi thêm -er và -est: lucky/luckier/luckiest heavy/heavier/heaviest easy/easier/easiest y đổi thành i trước khi thêm -ly: temporary/temporarily heavy/heavily easy/easily

y không thay đổi nếu ta thêm -ing:

hurrying

studying

applying

trying

y không thay đổi nếu từ tận cùng là một nguyên âm +y (-ay/-ey/-oy/uy): play/plays/played

enjoy/enjoys/enjoyed

monkey/monkeys

Trit

day/daily

Cũng lưu ý:

pay/paid lay/laid say/said

Các động từ tận cùng bằng -ie (die, lie, tie)

Nếu một động từ tận cùng bằng -ie thì le đổi thành y trước khi thêm -ing:

lie/lying

tie/tying

4. Các từ tận cùng bằng -e (smoke, hope, wide v.v...)

die/dying

#### Đông từ

Nếu một động từ tận cùng bằng -e thì chúng ta bỏ e trước khi thêm -ing: smoke/smoking

hope/hoping

dance/dancing

confuse/confusing

Tru: be/being

Những động từ tận cũng bằng -ee:

see/seeing

agree/agreeing

Nếu một động từ tặn cùng bằng -e, ta thêm -d ở quá khứ: (đối với động từ qui tắc): smoke/smoked hope/hoped

dance/danced

confuse/confused

### Tính từ và trang từ:

Nếu tính từ tận cùng bằng -e, ta thêm -r và -st cho so sánh hơn và so sánh cực cấp: wide/wider/widest

late/later/latest

large/larger/largest

Nếu tính từ tận cùng bằng -e, ta giữ e trước khi thêm -ly để tạo thành trạng từ: polite/politely

extreme/extremely

absolute/absolutely

Nếu tính từ tận cùng bằng -le (terrible, probable v.v...) ta bỏ e và thêm -y để tạo thành trạng tử:

terrible/terribly

probable/probably

reasonable/reasonably

Gấp đôi phụ âm (stop/stopping/stopped, hot/hotter/hottest v.v...)

Đối khi một động từ hay tính từ tận cùng bằng phụ âm - nguyên âm - phụ âm. Ví dụ: stop plan hot thin wat prefer begin

Chúng ta gấp đôi phụ âm cuối (-pp, -nn, v.v...) của những từ này trước khi thêm -ing, ed, -er và -est:

stop/stopping/stopped hot/hotter/hottest

plan/planning/planned thin/thinner/thinnest

rob/robbing/robbed wet/wetter/wettest

 Nếu từ có hơn một vẫn (prefer, begin v.v...), ta gấp đội phụ âm cuối nếu chỉ có vẫn cuối được nhấn giọng:

prefer/preferring/preferred regret/regretting/regretted

permit/permitting/permitted

begin beginning

Nêu vấn cuối không được nhấn thì không gấp đôi phụ âm cuối:

visit/visiting/visited

develop/developing/developed

remember/remembering/remembered listen/listening/listened

Ngoại lệ: Trong tiếng Anh động từ tận cùng bằng -l trở thành -li trước -ing và -ed (dù phụ âm cuối có nhấn giọng hay không):

travel/travelling/travelled

cancel/cancelling/cancelled

Chúng ta không gấp đôi phụ âm cuối nếu từ tận cùng bằng hai phụ âm (-rt, -rn, -ck v.v...)

start/starting/started

turn/turning/turned

\_ thick/thicker/thickest

Chúng ta không gấp đôi phụ âm nếu *trước* nó có *hai nguyên âm* (-oil, -eed, -ain v.v...) boil/boiling/boiled

need/needing/needed

explain/explaining/explained

cheap/cheaper/cheapest loud/louder/loudest quiet/quieter/quietest

Lưu ý rằng chúng ta không gấp đôi phụ âm y hay w ở cuối các từ (y và w không phải là phụ âm, chúng là một bộ phân của hệ thống nguyên âm);

stay/staying/stayed

grow/growing

new/newer/newest

### PHŲ LŲC 4

# DẠNG RÚT GỌN (l'm/you've/didn't, v.v...)

Trong tiếng Anh dàm thoại (spoken English) chúng ta thường nói "l'm/you've/didn't, v.v...) (= I am/you have/dld not). Chúng ta cũng dùng dạng rút gọn trong văn viết tiếng Anh thần mật (informal writing). (thí dụ như thư từ cho bạn bè). Khi viết theo dạng rút gọn, chúng ta dùng dấu (') thể cho một hay nhiều mẫu tự bỏ đi:

I'm = I am

you've = you have

didn't ≈ did not

Dạng rút gọn của trợ động từ (am/is/are/have/has/had/will/shall/would):

'm = am 's = is hay has	)'m	he's	she's	it's	-		
're = are 've = have	ľve				you're you've	we're	they're they've
'il = will hay shall 'd = would hay had	l'il	he'll he'd	she'll she'd	itII	you'll you'd	we'll we'd	they'll they'd

's có thể là is hay has:

- He's ill (= He is ill)
- He's gone away (= He has gone away)

'd có thể là would hay had:

- I'd see a doctor if I were you. (= I would see)
- I'd never seen her before. (= I had never seen)

Chúng ta dùng một số dạng rút gọn sau các từ nghi vấn (who/what/how v.v...) và sau that/there/here:

who's	what's	where's	that's	there's	
who'll	what'll	when's	that'il	there'li	
who'd	how's	here's			

- Who's that girl over there? (= who is)
- What's happened? (= what has)
- I think there'll be a lot of people at the party. (= there will)

Đôi khí chúng ta dùng dạng rút gọn (đặc biệt là 's) sau một danh từ:

- John's going out tonight. (= John is going)
- My friend's just got married. (= My friend has just got)

Không được dùng dạng rút gọn ('m/'s/'ve v.v...) ở *cuối* một câu. (Bởi vì động từ ở vị trí này được nhấn giọng).

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I am". (không dùng "Yes, I'm").
- Do you know where he is? (không dùng "Do you know where he's?)

Đạng rút gọn của trợ động từ + not (isn't/didn't v.v...)

isn't (= is not)	haven't	(= have not)	wouldn't	(= would not)
aren't (= are not)	hasn't	(= has not)	shouldn't	(= should not)
wasn't (= was not)	hadn't	(= had not)	mightn"t	(= might not)
weren't (= were not)	can't	(= cannot)	mustn't	(= must not)
don't (= do not)	couldn't	(= could not)	needn't	(= need not)
doesn't (= does not)	won't	(= will not)	daren't	(= dare not)
didn't (= did not)	shan't	(= shall not)		

### Lưu ý là bạn có thể nói:

he isn't/she isn't/it isn't	hay	he's not/she's not/it's not
you aren't/we aren't/they aren't	hay	you're not/we're not/they're not

### PHŲ LŲC 5:

# TIẾNG MỸ (Tiếng Anh của người Mỹ)

Có một vài sự khác biệt về văn phạm giữa tiếng Anh (British English) và tiếng Mỹ (American English).

Bài 13: Trong tiếng Mỹ th) quá khứ đơn (simple past) thường được dùng để cung cấp thông tin mới hay để thông báo một điều gì xảy ra gần đây:

I lost my key. Can you help me look for it?
 (Tôi đánh mắt chia khóa rối. Ban giúp tôi tìm nó nhé?)

Thì quá khứ đơn được dùng với just và already:

I'm not hungry. I just had lunch.
 (Tôi không đói. Tôi vừa ăn cơn trưa xong.)

"Don't forget to post the letter". "I already posted it". ("Đứng quên gỗi lá thư". "Tôi đã gỗi rối".)

Bài 15b: Người Mỹ dùng quá khứ đơn với yet:

I didn't tell them about the accident yet.
 (Tôi đã chưa nói với họ về tại nạn.)

Bàl 24a: Trong tiếng Mỹ hình thức I have/I don't have/do you have? thường dùng hơn "I've got/I haven't got/have you got?"

- We have a new car. (Chúng tôi có chiếc xe mới.)
- Do you have any change? (Anh có tiến lễ không?)

Bài 35c: Người Mỹ thường dùng nguyên mẫu (infinitive) không có to trong cấu trúc với insist/suggest v.v...

- They insisted that we have dinner with them.
   (Ho nài nì chúng tôi dùng bữa tôi với họ.)
- Jim suggested that I buy a car.
   (Jim đã để nghị tôi mua một chiếc xe hơi.)

Cấu trúc này cũng được dùng trong tiếng Anh.

Bài 75a: Người Mỹ nói "the hospital":

The injured man was taken to the hospital.
 (Người bị thương được đưa đến bệnh viện.)

Bài 104d: Người Mỹ nói "on a team":

He's the best player on the team.
 (Anh ta là cầu thủ giỏi nhất trong đội.)

Bài 108a: "Quite" không thường được dùng với nghĩa này trong tiếng Mỹ. Trong tiếng Mỹ "quite" thường có nghĩa là "hoàn toàn" như trong mục c.

Bài 114d: Người Mỹ nói "on the week-end/on week-ends".

Bài 124: Trong tiếng Mỹ "different than" (khác hơn) cũng có thể được dùng. "Different to" thì không dùng.

Bài 127: Người Mỹ nói "write someone" (không có to):

Please write me soon and tell me how you are.
 (Vui long viết thư cho tôi sôm và cho tôi biết bạn khỏe không.)

Phụ lục 2.2.: Các động từ này (burn, learn v.v...) thường là có quí tắc (regular) trong tiếng Mỹ: burned, learned v.v...

Phụ lục 2.4.: Quá khữ phân từ (past participle) của get là gotten trong tiếng Mỹ:

Your English has gotten much better since I last saw you.
 (Tiếng Anh của bạn đã trở nên khá hơn nhiều kể từ khí tôi gặp bạn lần trước.)

Phụ lục 3.5.: Lưu ý lối chính tả Mỹ của các từ này: traveling, traveled canceling, canceled

### **ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE**

Trần Huỳnh Phúc (Dịch và chú giải) \*\*\*

> Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản-: QUÁCH THU NGUYỆT

Biến tập : THÀNH NAM Sửa bản in : THANH BÌNH

### NHÀ XUẤT BẢN TRỂ

161B Lý Chính Thắng - Q. 3 - Thành Phố Hồ Chí Minh ĐT: 9316289 - 9316211 - 8465595 - 8465596 - 9350973

Fax: 84.8.8437450 - Email: nxbtre@hcm.vnn.vn Website: http://www.nxbtre.com.vn

Thực hiện liên doanh : Nhà sách NGỌC TRÂM

In 1.000 cuốn khổ (14,5x20.5)cm tại Xường In Trung Tâm Hội Chợ Triển Làm Việt Nam. GPXB số 316-213/XB-QLXB do Cục Xuất Bản cấp ngày 26/03/2003 và giấy trích ngang KHXB số 161/2004. In xong và nộp lưu chiếu quý 1 năm 2004.

# English Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students



This unique book for intermediate and more advanced students combines reference grammar and practice exercises in a single volume.

- ★ Easy to use : on each Left-hand a grammar point is explained and on the facing page there are exercises to check understanding.
- \* Provides comprehensive coverage in simple language of the problems intermediate students encounter.
- ★ Designed for self-study: lesarners choose and study those points which they find difficult.
- Contents list and detailed index ensure that users can easily find the unit (s) they need.
- \* Key section contains answers to all the exercises.
- \* Appendices deal with formation of tenses, irregular verbs, speelling, short forms and American English.

"This is a really excellent book - lively, reliable and attractively produced".

Sylvia Chalker in EFL Gazette

Nhà sách NGỌC TRÂM

410D Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai, Q.3, TP.HCM

Giá: 20.000d